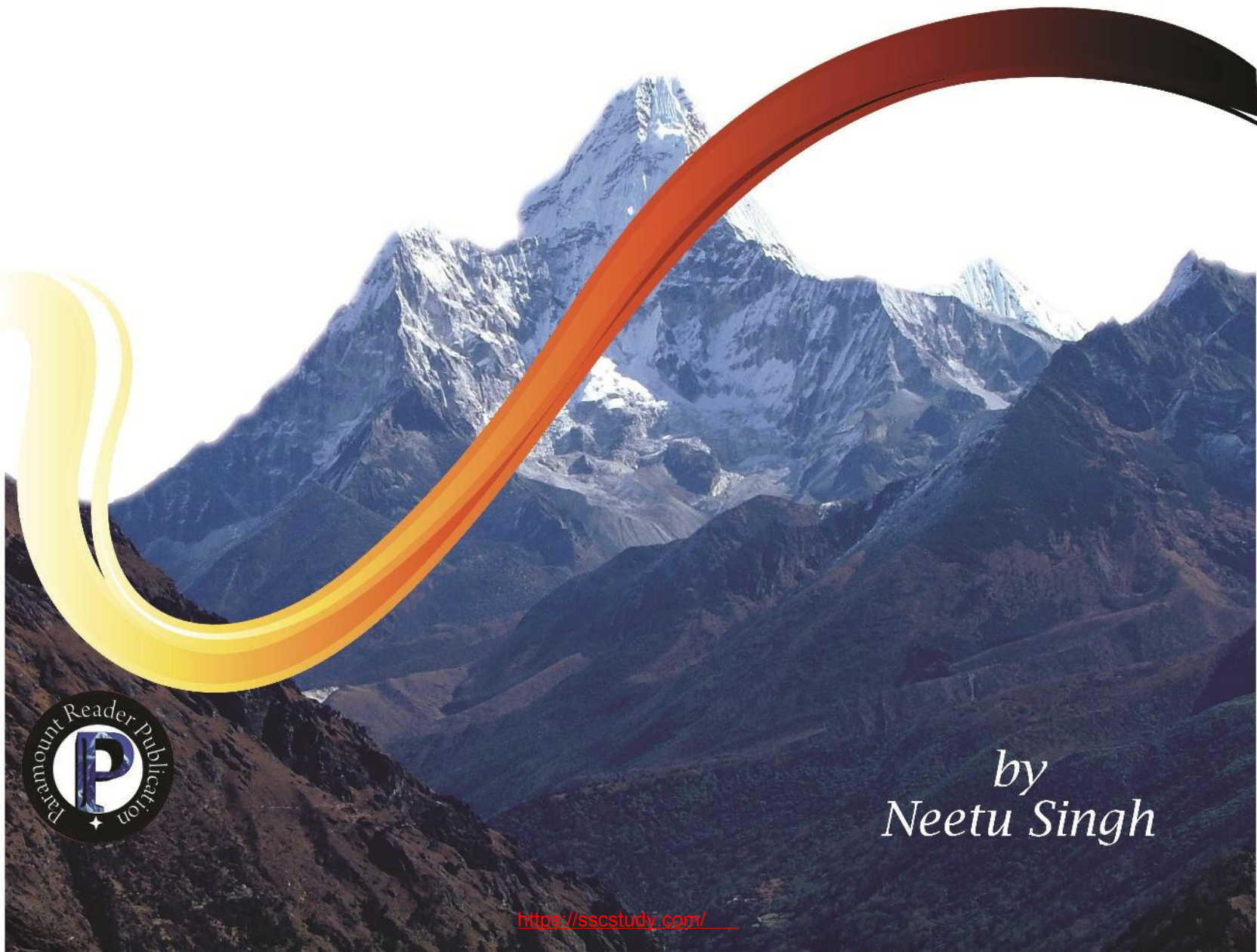


# English for general competitions

## from **Plinth** to **Paramount**



by  
*Neetu Singh*

# ENGLISH

*For General Competitions*

from  
Plinth  
to  
Paramount

*Indispensable for-  
All Competitive Exams*

*By*  
**Neetu Singh**

(Director)  
Paramount Coaching Centre Pvt. Ltd.  
Delhi

---

Published by:

**Paramount Reader Publication**  
704, 1st floor, Dr. Mukherjee Nagar, Delhi-110009

**First Edition – May 2012**  
**Second Edition –February, 2013**

Price: ` 300/-

- All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means-electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the author and the publishers.
- The publishers have taken utmost precaution in publishing the book, yet if any mistake has inadvertently crept in, the publishers shall not be responsible for the same.



***Dedicated to my beloved son  
whose time I stole to write this one***

## **PREFACE**

**To the First Edition**

*This book ‘English for General Competitions- from Plinth to Paramount’ is my gift to the aspirants of competitive exams who will surely be benefited by the approach of this book alongwith the numerous questions given at the end of every chapter carefully picked from different question papers of various competitive exams. The solution of every question has detailed explanation for easy understanding . All the latest questions especially of Passive Voice and Narration have been incorporated to help the students know the latest pattern of the questions being asked in different competitive exams. In nutshell, I would like to say that this book is an attempt to fill the void that aspirants of Hindi Medium felt when it came to preparing English for Competitive Exams.*

*I earnestly thank the students of Paramount Coaching Centre Pvt. Ltd. who helped me detect all the typographical and other mistakes, that might have crept inadvertently, had they not detected them with their keen sight.*

*Our students’ constructive feedback and suggestions are most welcome which have always remained and will remain our guiding light . I will be highly obliged if you message/mail me your feedback or suggestion on 8860330003 or on paramount.no1@gmail.com.*

**Neetu Singh**

May 31, 2012

# Contents

1.	VERB (BASIC) .....	01 - 24
2.	TENSE .....	25 - 40
3.	PASSIVE VOICE .....	41 - 75
4.	NARRATION .....	76 - 109
5.	QUESTION TAG .....	110 - 112
6.	SUBJECT VERB AGREEMENT .....	113 - 126
7.	CONDITIONAL SENTENCE .....	127 - 133
8.	VERB (ADVANCE) .....	134 - 148
9.	NOUN .....	149 - 165
10.	PRONOUN .....	166 - 185
11.	ADJECTIVE .....	186 - 201
12.	CONJUNCTION .....	202 - 215
13.	ARTICLE .....	216 - 230
14.	PREPOSITION .....	231 - 269
15.	ADVERB .....	270 - 283
16.	WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED .....	284 - 294
17.	VOCABULARIES .....	295 - 318
18.	SYNONYMS (PRACTICE SET) .....	319 - 328
19.	ANTONYMS (PRACTICE SET) .....	329 - 338
20.	ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION .....	339 - 356
21.	ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION (PRACTICE SET) .....	357 - 366
22.	IDIOMS & PHRASES- 1 .....	367 - 380
23.	IDIOMS & PHRASES- 2 .....	381 - 396
24.	IDIOMS & PHRASES (PRACTICE SET) .....	397 - 416

## इस किताब में प्रयुक्त *abbreviations*

**S/ Sub** → Subject

**O/Obj** → Object

**V** → Verb

**S.V** → Singular Verb

**P.V** → Plural Verb

**N** → Noun

**S.N** → Singular Noun

**P.N** → Plural Noun

**P** → Pronoun

**S.P** → Singular Pronoun

**P.P** → Plural Pronoun

**Adj.** → Adjective

**Adv.** → Adverb

**Prep** → Preposition

**H.V** → Helping Verb

**M.V** → Main Verb

**V<sub>1</sub>** → First Form of Verb

**V<sub>2</sub>** → Second Form of Verb

**V<sub>3</sub>** → Third Form of Verb

**Aux. Verb** → Auxilliary Verb

**U.N** → Uncountable Noun

**S.C.N.** → Singular Countable Noun

**P.C.N.** → Plural Countable Noun

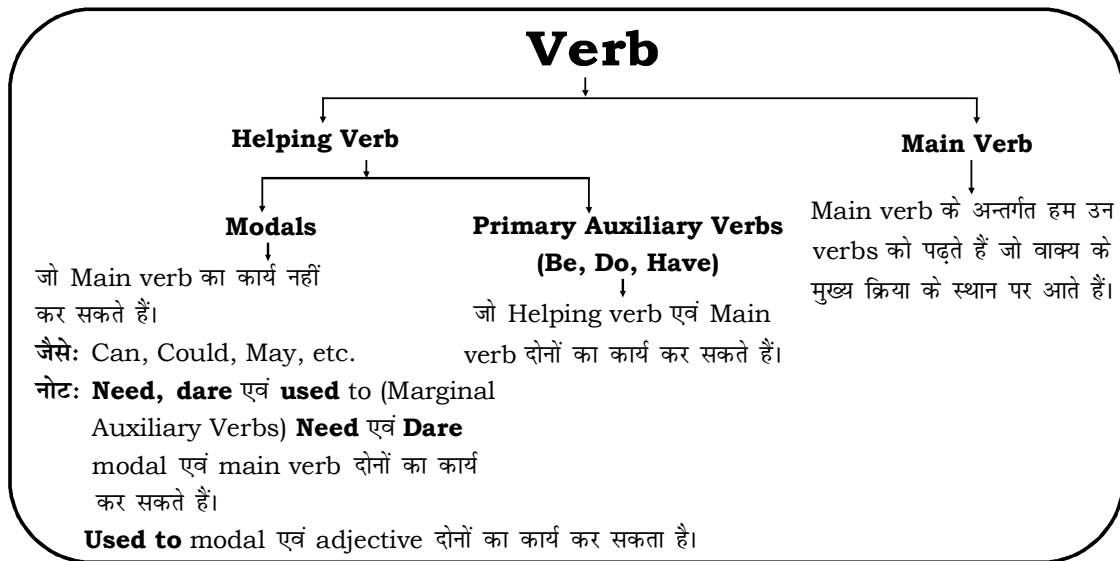
# 1

## VERB (BASIC)

### CHAPTER

**Verb** कार्य का होना दर्शाता है। अतः verb को 'doing word' भी कहते हैं।

**Verb** को दो वर्गों में बाँटा जा सकता है-



**AUXILIARY VERBS:** वे verbs जो अन्य verbs के साथ प्रयुक्त होते हैं **Auxiliary verbs** कहलाते हैं। इन्हें **helping verbs** भी कहा जाता है।

- MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS : Can, Could, May, Might, Shall, Will, Would, Should, Must, Ought to** Modal Auxiliary Verbs है। इनका प्रयोग सिर्फ **helping verb** के रूप में ही किया जा सकता है।

जैसे: 1. (a) She can run fast.  
                  Modal     M.V.

(b) You should study English.  
                  Modal     M.V.

- MARGINAL AUXILIARY VERBS : Used to, need, dare** Marginal Auxiliary Verbs हैं। ये ऐसे Modals हैं जिनका प्रयोग वाक्य में **Main Verb (need एवं dare)** और **adjective (used to)** के रूप में भी हो सकता है।

- जैसे: 1. I am used to sleeping late at night.  
H.V. Adjective Gerund
2. (a) I need you.  
M.V.
- (b) You need not come tomorrow.  
H.V. Direct infinitive
3. (a) She does not dare to come home late.  
M.V. Infinitive
- (b) I dare not enter his room without permission.  
H.V. Direct infinitive

### AUXILIARY VERBS के कुछ मुख्य बिन्द

**Rule (1): Modal Auxiliary Verbs** का प्रयोग **Main Verbs** के रूप में नहीं होता है। इसका प्रयोग Helping Verbs के रूप में होता है। जैसे:

I can lift this box  
H.V. M.V

He should work hard.  
H.V. M.V

**Rule (2):** Modal Auxiliary verbs का **V<sub>1</sub>, V<sub>2</sub>, V<sub>3</sub>, ing-form** या **s/es-form** नहीं होते हैं। इसका प्रयोग सभी **Numbers** तथा **persons** के **Subjects** के साथ हमेशा एक ही रूप में होता है। अर्थात इसके रूप (form) में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है।

जैसे: She can help you.  
V<sub>1</sub>

You should understand you friends.  
V<sub>1</sub>

**Rule (3): Ought** तथा **Used** के बाद **Infinitive 'to + V<sub>1</sub>'** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: We ought to respect our parents.  
to + V<sub>1</sub>

He used to come late.  
to + V<sub>1</sub>

### USE OF MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS

#### CAN एवं COULD

**Rule (1): Can** का प्रयोग **power** ( शक्ति ), **ability** ( योग्यता ) तथा **capacity** ( सामर्थ्य/क्षमता ) को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। **Could** का प्रयोग **Past ability/ power/ capacity** ( भूतकाल की योग्यता/शक्ति/सामर्थ्य ) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

- जैसे: 1. He **can** lift the box.  
 2. I **could** not come yesterday.

**Rule (2): Can** का प्रयोग **permission** ( अनमति ) देने के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

- जैसे: 1. You **can** go now.



**Verb (Basic)**

**Rule (3): Can** का प्रयोग **theoretical possibility** ( सैद्धांतिक सम्भावना ) को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: Everyone **can** make a mistake.

**Rule (4): Could** का प्रयोग **remote possibility** व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: There **could** be a bomb under your seat.

**Rule (5): Can** का प्रयोग 'दोस्ताना निवेदन' करने वाले प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में किया जाता है एवं **Could** 'औपचारिक निवेदन' करने वाले प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में।

जैसे: 1. **Can** I take your scooter?

2. **Could** I talk to Mr. Shukla?

**Note: 'able to' का प्रयोग 'can/could' के साथ न करें** क्योंकि दोनों क्षमता दर्शाते हैं।

I cannot be able to come tomorrow. (×)

**नोट:** ऐसा करके हम अपने वाक्य को **superfluous** बना देते हैं। **'superfluous'** के अर्थ हैं **'more than what is needed'**.

इस वाक्य का सही formation होगा-

I **cannot** come tomorrow. (✓)

I will not be **able to** come tomorrow. (✓)

**MAY, MIGHT , or MUST**

**Rule (1): May** का प्रयोग संभावना/अनिश्चितता के भाव को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: It **may** rain tonight.

**Rule (2): May** का प्रयोग इच्छा को व्यक्त करने के लिए **optative sentence** में होता है।

जैसे: **May** you live long !

**Rule (3): यदि Principal clause Present Tense में हो तथा subordinate clause that/so that/ in order that से प्रारंभ हो तथा इससे purpose ( उद्देश्य ) का बोध हो तो subordinate clause में may का प्रयोग होता है।**

जैसे: We eat **so that** we **may** live.

**Rule (4): Might** का प्रयोग **less possibility** ( कम संभावना ) के भाव को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जबकि **may** का प्रयोग **more possibility** ( ज्यादा संभावना ) के भाव को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: He **might** pass the exam but seeing his intelligence, I do not have much hope.

**Rule (5): अगर सम्भावना बहुत अधिक हो तो Must का प्रयोग करें ।**

जैसे: He stays in five-star hotels and travels by flight. He **must** be very rich.

**Rule (6): 'May'** का प्रयोग सम्मान के साथ निवेदन करने के लिए प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में किया जाता है।

जैसे: May I come in sir?

**नोट: May एवं Might के साथ 'Possibly' एवं 'likely' का प्रयोग न करें** क्योंकि दोनों सम्भावना दर्शाते हैं।

We may possibly come tomorrow. (×) (Superfluous)

We **may** come tomorrow. (✓)

We will **possibly** come tomorrow. (✓)

## **SHALL ,oa WILL**

**Rule (1):** Shall का प्रयोग **first person** के **Subjects I/We** के साथ **future** के किसी कार्य को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। बाकी **subjects** के साथ **'will'** का का प्रयोग करें ।

जैसे: I **shall** go to college tomorrow and he **will** come with me.

➤ Modern English में हम **'I'** एवं **'we'** के साथ **'will'** का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं जो अब स्वीकार्य है लेकिन **interrogative sentence** में अब भी **'I'** एवं **'we'** के साथ **'shall'** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Will I go? (×)

**Shall** I go? (✓)

**नोट:** **Shall** का प्रयोग **second person** के **Subject – you** तथा **third person** के **Subjects – He, she, it, they,** के साथ **command** (आदेश), **promise** (वादा) **threat** (धमकी), **determination** (दृढ़ संकल्प), **compulsion** (अनिवार्यता) एवं **Advice** (सलाह) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। इसी प्रकार के वाक्यों में **will** का प्रयोग **I** एवं **We** के साथ होता है।

जैसे: (a) **Command** (आदेश)

You shall leave the room at once.

(b) **Promise** (प्रतिज्ञा/वादा)

You shall be awarded.

I will help you come what may.

(c) **Threat** (धमकी)

Trespassers shall be prosecuted.

I will punish you.

(d) **Determination** (दृढ़ संकल्प)

I will work hard and score good marks.

(e) **Compulsion** (अनिवार्यता)

You shall be here for the meeting.

I will have to finish this work.

**Rule (2):** Let us/ let's से शुरू होने वाले **Imperative sentences** के **question tags** में भी **'shall'** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Let us dance together, **shall we** ?

**Rule (3):** Shall का प्रयोग **suggestions** (सुझावों) को व्यक्त करने वाले **Interrogative sentence** में **first person** के **subjects** के साथ होता है

जैसे: **Shall** we talk to the management?

**नोट:** **'Shall'** एवं **'will'** का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित प्रकार के वाक्यों में नहीं होता है-

1. अगर वाक्य **past** से शुरू हो-

जैसे: He hoped that he ~~will~~ **would** pass the test.

अगर वाक्य **past** से शुरू हो तो **'Will/ shall'** नहीं **'would/ should'** का प्रयोग होगा।

दरअसल ये नियम तब भी लागू होते हैं जब **'will/shall'** के स्थान पर कोई और **Modal** या **verb** का प्रयोग हुआ हो।

**Verb (Basic)**

जैसे: He said that he ~~is~~ **was** coming.

2. अगर दो कार्य भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो और दूसरे कार्य पहले कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करे तो पहला कार्य **Simple Present Tense** में होगा और दूसरा **simple future tense** में। हमें हिन्दी से English Translation करने की आदत होती है जिसकी वजह से हम पहले कार्य को भी simple future में प्रयोग कर लेते हैं।

जैसे: अगर मैं आऊँगी तो आप से मिलूँगी।

If I will come, I will meet you. (×)

If I come, I will meet you. (✓)

➤ निम्नलिखित शब्दों को देखे। इनके तुरंत बाद simple future tense का प्रयोग नहीं होता है बल्कि simple present tense का प्रयोग होता है।

**If, as soon as, in case, provided, unless, until, before, after, when.** (Conditional Sentence Chapter देखें)

**WOULD**

**Rule (1):** Would का प्रयोग **Past habit** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: I **would** go to school by bus.

**Rule (2):** 'Would' का प्रयोग **'preference'** (पसंद/प्राथमिकता) या **'choice'** (पसंद/चनाव) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। सामान्यतः ऐसे वाक्यों में **'rather'** का भी प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He **would rather die than** beg.

**Rule (3):** अगर वाक्य का आरम्भ **Past** से हो तो वाक्य आगे **Past** में ही रहेगा और **'Will'** का Past Tense **'Would'** होता है।

जैसे: He hoped that he ~~will~~ would pass.

**Rule (4):** **'Would', 'used to'** एवं **'Simple Past tense'** तीनों का प्रयोग भतकाल के **Routine Action** को दर्शाने के लिए भी किया जाता है।

जैसे: I **used to go** to school by bus. I **would return** on foot. We **played** for hours before returning home.  
used to + V<sub>1</sub>                      would + V<sub>1</sub>                      V<sub>2</sub>

**Rule (5):** Would का प्रयोग **Present** या **Past** के कोरी कल्पना को व्यक्त करने वाले वाक्यों के **principal clause** में होता है।

जैसे: If I were a bird, I **would** fly in the sky.

**नोट:** अगर वाक्य काल्पनिक पद से संबंधित हो तो सभी subjects के साथ **were** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: I wish, I **were** a bird.

निम्नलिखित शब्दों से वाक्य के काल्पनिक होने का आभास होता है। इनके साथ **'was'** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

जैसे: **I wish, as though, if, as if, would that** एवं **suppose.**

**Rule (6):** 'Would' का प्रयोग **'will'** के **Past form** के रूप में **Indirect speech** में होता है। जैसे:

He said, "He **will** go there."                      **(Direct)**

He said that he **would** go there.                      **(Indirect)**

**Rule (7):** Would का प्रयोग **Polite request** को व्यक्त करने के लिए प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में होता है।

जैसे: **Would** you help me ?

**Rule (8):** Would का प्रयोग **Probability (संभावना)** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: He **would** be sleeping.

**Rule (9):** Would का प्रयोग **wish (इच्छा)** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: I wish, India **would** become a developed country soon.

**Rule (10): 'Would like to'** का प्रयोग भी **wish (इच्छा)** को व्यक्त करने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: I **would like to** talk to the manager

### **SHOULD**

**Rule (1):** Should का प्रयोग **suggestion (सलाह)** देने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: You **should** study English.

**Rule (2):** 'Should' का प्रयोग **'advice'** देने के भाव को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: You **should** not laugh at his mistakes.

**Rule (3):** Should का प्रयोग **lest के बाद negative purpose (नकारात्मक उद्देश्य)** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: He ran fast **lest** he **should** miss the train.

नोट: **lest** के साथ **Simple present tense** का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: Take care lest you fall.

### **OUGHT TO**

**Rule (1):** Ought to का प्रयोग **moral obligation (नैतिक कर्तव्य)** या **duty** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: We **ought to** love our country.

### **MUST**

**Rule (1):** Must का प्रयोग **compulsion (बाध्यता)** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: Candidates **must** write in ink.

**Rule (2):** Must का प्रयोग **fixed determination (पक्का इरादा/दृढ़ संकल्प)** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: India **must** win the world cup.

**Rule (3):** Must का प्रयोग **duty (कर्तव्य)** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: A soldier **must** fight for his country.

### **USED TO**

Used to का प्रयोग **Past habit/situation (भूतकाल की आदत/अवस्था)** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: He **used to** study till 10 PM.

(ii) 'Use to' or 'uses to' का प्रयोग **Present routine action** को व्यक्त करने के लिए नहीं होता है बल्कि

**Verb (Basic)**

Present routine action को व्यक्त करने के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He uses to study till 10 p.m and then goes to bed. (×)

He studies till 10 p.m and then goes to bed. (✓)

नोट: (i) Used to का प्रयोग **affirmative, negative तथा Interrogative sentences** में इस प्रकार होता है। जैसे:

**(a) Affirmative**

He **used to** come here.

**(b) Negative**

He **used not to** come here.

He **did not use to** come here.

**(c) Interrogative**

**Used** he to come here?

**Did** he use to come here?

नोट: 'Verb + used to' के बाद 'V<sub>1</sub> + ing' का प्रयोग होता है और ये 'habitual action' को दर्शाता है।

जैसे: I **am used to** getting up late in the morning.  
V<sub>1</sub> +ing

नोट: कई Verbs/adjective/phrase के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ to के बाद V<sub>1</sub> का प्रयोग नहीं होगा बल्कि 'V<sub>1</sub> + ing' का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: **Be used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, prone to.**

- जैसे:
1. He is **addicted to** smoking.
  2. I am **looking forward to** meeting you.
  3. He was **used to** driving on the right when he was in London.

**DARE ,or NEED**

- 'Dare' दुस्साहस व्यक्त करता है और 'Need' जरूरत।
- **Dare** तथा **Need** का प्रयोग **Main Verb** एवं **modal** दोनों ही रूप में होता है।

जैसे: (1) He needs me.  
M. V

(2) She does not dare to go there.  
M. V

(3) You need not come tomorrow.  
Modal

➤ **Need** एवं **Dare** का प्रयोग **modal** के रूप में +ve वाक्यों में नहीं होता।

जैसे: (1) I need help him. (×)  
Sub. modal V<sub>1</sub> Obj.

(2) I need to help him. (✓)  
M. V Infinitive

- अगर 'dare' एवं 'need' का प्रयोग +ve वाक्यों में हो तो उसके बाद 'to + V<sub>1</sub>' का प्रयोग होता है।  
जैसे: (1) He **needs to work** hard.  
(2) He **will not dare** to come here.
- अगर need एवं dare का प्रयोग helping verb के रूप में हो तो -ve वाक्यों में **need** एवं **dare** के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।  
जैसे: (1) I **need not** come tomorrow.  
(2) He **dare not** cheat anyone again.

निवेदन करने के लिए निम्नलिखित Modals का प्रयोग किया जाता है-

Modals	Use	Example
Can	Friendly request	Can I take your bike?
Could	Formal request	Could I talk to Mr. Singh?
May	Request with respect	May I come in Sir?
Would	Polite Request	Would you help me?

विभिन्न काल एवं Voice में Modals अलग-अलग formulae में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। नीचे दिए गए सारणी में इनका प्रयोग देखें:-

MODALS	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
<b>Indefinite</b>	Sub+modal+V <sub>1</sub> +obj.	Obj + modal + be + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub.
<b>Continuous</b>	Sub + modal + be + V <sub>1</sub> + ing + obj.	xxxxx
<b>Perfect</b>	Sub + modal + have + V <sub>3</sub> + obj.	Obj + modal + have + been + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub.
<b>Perfect Continuous</b>	Sub + modal + have + been + V <sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for / since + time.	xxxxx

- ऊपर दिए गये सभी formulae को देखें। आप पाएंगे कि **Modal** के तुरंत बाद **verb** का प्रयोग 'V<sub>1</sub>' form में होता है।
- **Modals** का प्रयोग 'Perfect' में नीचे दिए गये formula में देखें और उसका विशेष अर्थ भी उदाहरण में देखें।

**Sub + modal + have +V<sub>3</sub> + obj**

- कई बार जब हम **Modal + have + V<sub>3</sub>** का प्रयोग करते हैं, (जैसे: should have come, could have gone, need not have seen इत्यादि) तो वाक्य में एक छिपा हुआ अर्थ भी होता है जो वाक्य के अर्थ के विपरीत होता है।  
जैसे: (1) I **could** score good marks. (**Meaning-I had the ability**)  
(2) I **could have** scored good marks. (**Hidden meaning -I didn't score though I had the ability**)  
(3) You **should** work hard. (**Just a suggestion**)

**Verb (Basic)**

(4) You **should have** worked hard. (**Hidden Meaning - You didn't**)

**PRIMARY AUXILIARY VERBS: Do, Have, Be Primary Auxiliary Verbs** है। इन verbs का प्रयोग **Main Verb** एवं **Helping Verb** दोनों ही रूप में किए जा सकते हैं।

जैसे: 1. **Do** का forms इस प्रकार है-  $\underbrace{\text{Do/Does}}_{V_1}$   $\underbrace{\text{Did}}_{V_2}$   $\underbrace{\text{Done}}_{V_3}$

(a) I **do** my work.  
M.V.

(b) I **did** not **know** him.  
H.V. M.V.

2. **Have** के forms इस प्रकार है-  $\underbrace{\text{Has/have}}_{V_1}$   $\underbrace{\text{Had}}_{V_2}$   $\underbrace{\text{Had}}_{V_3}$

(i) Have का प्रयोग **possession ( अधिकार )** दर्शाने के लिए किया जाता है।

I **have** a car.  
M.V.

(ii) Have का प्रयोग **'helping verb'** के रूप में **Perfect** एवं **Perfect continuous tense** में होता है।

(a) I **have** not **seen** him.  
H.V. M.V.

(b) I **had** been **waiting** for him for a long time.  
H.V. M.V.

(ii) **Have + infinitive** का प्रयोग **forced action ( दबाव में किया जाने वाले कार्य )** दर्शाने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: (a) I **have to** work hard.

(b) She **had to** leave her job.

3. **Be** के forms इस प्रकार है-  $\underbrace{\text{Be, is, am, are}}_{V_1}$   $\underbrace{\text{was, were}}_{V_2}$   $\underbrace{\text{been}}_{V_3}$

अब **H.V.** एवं **M. V.** के रूप में इनका प्रयोग देखे-

(a) I **am** a doctor.  
M.V.

(b) He **was** **working** hard.  
H.V. M.V.

(b) He **has** **been** to London.  
H.V. M.V.

**MAIN VERB**

**I. MAIN VERBS:** वे Verbs जो **Sentence** में **Main verbs** के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं और जिनके **V<sub>1</sub>, V<sub>2</sub>, V<sub>3</sub>, ing-form**, तथा **s/es-form** वाक्य में प्रयुक्त होते हैं **Main verb** कहलाते हैं।

जैसे: I **know** you.  
V<sub>1</sub>

I **knew** you.  
V<sub>2</sub>

I have **known** you for two years.  
V<sub>3</sub>

➤ 'Main verb' वाक्य के tense के अनुसार विभिन्न forms में परिवर्तित होते हैं।

**FORMS OF VERB**

1. Present (1<sup>st</sup> form)

2. Past (2<sup>nd</sup> form)

3. Past Participle (3<sup>rd</sup> form)

4. Present Participle (-ing form)

**GROUP - I**

Present (1 <sup>st</sup> Form)	अर्थ	Past (2 <sup>nd</sup> Form)	P. Participle (3 <sup>rd</sup> Form)	- ing Form	s/es Form
Arise	उठना	arose	arisen	arising	arises
Awake	जागना	awoke	awaken	awaking	awakes
Be	होना	was, were	been	being	is/was
Bear	जन्म देना	bore	born	bearing	bears
Bear	सहन करना	bore	borne	bearing	bears
Become	बनना	became	become	becoming	becomes
Begin	आरंभ करना	began	begun	beginning	begins
Bite	दाँत से काटना	bit	bitten	biting	bites
Blow	हवा का चलना	blew	blown	blowing	blows
Bind	बाँधना	bound	bound	binding	binds
Bid	आज्ञा देना/बोली लगाना	bade	bidden	bidding	bids
Break	तोड़ना	broke	broken	breaking	breaks
Choose	चुनना	chose	chosen	choosing	chooses
Cling	चिपटना	clung	clung	clinging	clings
Come	आना	came	come	coming	comes
Dig	खोदना	dug	dug	digging	digs
Do	करना	did	done	doing	does
Draw	खींचना	drew	drawn	drawing	draws
Drink	पीना	drank	drunk	drinking	drinks
Drive	चलाना	drove	driven	driving	drives
Eat	खाना	ate	eaten	eating	eats
Fall	गिरना	fell	fallen	falling	falls
Find	पाना	found	found	finding	finds
Fly	उड़ना, उड़ाना	flew	flown	flying	flies
Forbid	मना करना	forbade	forbidden	forbidding	forbids
Forget	भूल जाना	forgot	forgotten	forgetting	forgets
Freeze	जमाना/जमना	froze	frozen	freezing	freezes
Get	पाना	got	got	getting	gets
Give	देना	gave	given	giving	gives
Grind	पीसना	ground	ground	grinding	grinds
Grow	बढ़ना, उगना	grew	grown	growing	grows
Hang	लटकाना	hung	hung	hanging	hangs



**Verb (Basic)**

Hide	छिपाना/छिपना	hid	hidden	hiding	hides
Hold	थामना	held	held	holding	holds
Know	जानना	knew	known	knowing	knows
Lie	लेटना	lay	lain	lying	lies
Ride	सवारी करना	rode	ridden	riding	rides
Ring	बजाना/बजाना	rang	rung	ringing	rings
Rise	उठना/उगना	rose	risen	rising	rises
See	देखना	saw	seen	seeing	sees
Shake	हिलाना	shook	shaken	shaking	shakes
Shine	चमकना	shone	shone	shining	shines
Shoot	फोटे निकालना/गोली मारना	shot	shot	shooting	shoots
Shrink	सिकुडना	shrank	shrunk	shrinking	shrinks
Sing	गाना	sang	sung	singing	sings
Sink	डूबना	sank	sunk	sinking	sinks
Sit	बैठना	sat	sat	sitting	sits
Slay	वध करना	slew	slain	slaying	slays
Speak	बोलना	spoke	spoken	speaking	speaks
Spit	थूकना	spat	spat	spitting	spits
Stand	खड़ा होना	stood	stood	standing	stands
Steal	चुराना	stole	stolen	stealing	steals
Stick	चिपकना	stuck	stuck	sticking	sticks
Strike	चोट मारना/ हडताल करना	struck	struck	striking	strikes
Swear	शपथ लेना	swore	sworn	swearing	swears
Swim	तैरना	swam	swum	swimming	swims
Swing	झूलना	swung	swung	swinging	swings
Take	लेना	took	taken	taking	takes
Tear	फाड़ना	tore	torn	tearing	tears
Wear	पहनना	wore	worn	wearing	wears
Weave	बुनना	wove	woven	weaving	weaves
Win	जीतना	won	won	winning	wins
Wind	चाबी लगाना	wound	wound	winding	winds
Write	लिखना	wrote	written	writing	writes
Wring	निचोडना	wrung	wrung	wringing	wrings

**GROUP - II**

नीचे दिए गए Verbs में 2<sup>nd</sup> form एवं 3<sup>rd</sup> form एक जैसे हैं और 1<sup>st</sup> form में ed, en अथवा t लगाकर 2<sup>nd</sup> एवं 3<sup>rd</sup> form बनाए गये हैं।

Present (1 <sup>st</sup> Form)	अर्थ	Past (2 <sup>nd</sup> Form)	P. Participle (3 <sup>rd</sup> Form)	- ing Form	s/es Form
Abuse	गाली देना/दुपयॉग करना	abused	abused	abusing	abuses
Act	काम करना/अभिनय करना	acted	acted	acting	acts

Add	जोड़ना	added	added	adding	adds
Admire	प्रशंसा करना	admired	admired	admiring	admires
Advise	उपदेश देना	advised	advised	advising	advises
Allow	अनुमति देना	allowed	allowed	allowing	allows
Answer	उत्तर देना	answered	answered	answering	answers
Appoint	नियुक्त करना	appointed	appointed	appointing	appoints
Appear	प्रकट होना	appeared	appeared	appearing	appears
Arrive	पहुँचना	arrived	arrived	arriving	arrives
Arrest	गिरफ्तार करना	arrested	arrested	arresting	arrests
Ask	पूछना/कहना	asked	asked	asking	asks
Attack	आक्रमण करना	attacked	attacked	attacking	attacks
Bark	भौंकना	barked	barked	barking	barks
Bathe	स्नान करना	bathed	bathed	bathing	bathes
Beg	भीख माँगना	begged	begged	begging	begs
Believe	विश्वास करना	believed	believed	believing	believes
Behave	व्यवहार करना	behaved	behaved	behaving	behaves
Bleed	खून बहना	bled	bled	bleeding	bleeds
Bless	आशीर्वाद देना	blessed	blessed	blessing	blesses
Break	तोड़ना/टटना	broke	broken	breaking	breaks
Bring	लाना	brought	brought	bringing	brings
Boil	उबालना	boiled	boiled	boiling	boils
Boast	डींगें मारना	boasted	boasted	boasting	boasts
Borrow	उधार लेना	borrowed	borrowed	borrowing	borrows
Build	बनाना/ निर्माण करना	built	built	building	builds
Burn	जलना / जलाना	burnt	burnt	burning	burns
Buy	खरीदना	bought	bought	buying	buys
Call	पुकारना	called	called	calling	calls
Carry	ले जाना	carried	carried	carrying	carries
Catch	पकड़ना	caught	caught	catching	catches
Clean	साफ करना	cleaned	cleaned	cleaning	cleans
Close	बंद करना	closed	closed	closing	closes
Change	बदलना	changed	changed	changing	changes
Check	रोकना/जाँच करना	checked	checked	checking	checks
Climb	चढ़ना	climbed	climbed	climbing	climbs
Clap	ताली बजाना	clapped	clapped	clapping	claps
Copy	नकल करना	copied	copied	copying	copies
Collect	इकट्ठा करना	collected	collected	collecting	collects
Complain	शिकायत करना	complained	complained	complaining	complains
Cook	पकाना	cooked	cooked	cooking	cooks
Count	गिनना	counted	counted	counting	counts
Confuse	उलझन में डाल देना	confused	confused	confusing	confuses

**Verb (Basic)**

Consult	सलाह देना	consulted	consulted	consulting	consults
Cover	ढकना	covered	covered	covering	covers
Crow	बांग लगाना	crowed	crowed	crowing	crowds
Cross	पार करना	crossed	crossed	crossing	crosses
Creep	रेंगना	crept	crept	creeping	creeps
Cry	चिल्लाना	cried	cried	crying	cries
Decorate	सजाना	decorated	decorated	decorating	decorates
Dance	नाचना	danced	danced	dancing	dances
Deceive	धोखा देना	deceived	deceived	deceiving	deceives
Defeat	हराना	defeated	defeated	defeating	defeats
Decide	निर्णय करना	decided	decided	deciding	decides
Desire	इच्छा करना	desired	desired	desiring	desires
Discover	खोज करना	discovered	discovered	discovering	discovers
Dip	डुबाना	dipped	dipped	dipping	dips
Die	मरना	died	died	dying	dies
Divide	बाँटना	divided	divided	dividing	divides
Dream	स्वप्न देखना	dreamed	dreamed	dreaming	dreams
Dry	सुखना/सखाना	dried	dried	drying	dries
Drown	डुबाना	drowned	drowned	drowning	drowns
Dye	रंगना	dyed	dyed	dyeing	dyes
Earn	कमाना	earned	earned	earning	earns
Enter	प्रवेश करना	entered	entered	entering	enters
Employ	काम पर रखना	employed	employed	employing	employs
Explain	समझाना	explained	explained	explaining	explains
Face	सामना करना	faced	faced	facing	faces
Fail	असफल होना	failed	failed	failing	fails
Fear	डरना	feared	feared	fearing	fears
Feed	खिलाना	fed	fed	feeding	feeds
Feel	महसूस/ अनभव करना	felt	felt	feeling	feels
Fell	गिराना	felled	felled	felling	fells
Flee	भागना	fled	fled	fleeing	flees
Fight	लड़ना	fought	fought	fighting	fight
Finish	समाप्त करना	finished	finished	finishing	finishes
Fine	जुर्माना लगाना	fined	fined	fining	fines
Float	तैरना (सतह पर)	floated	floated	floating	floats
Graze	चरना	grazed	grazed	grazing	grazes
Gather	इकट्ठा करना/होना	gathered	gathered	gathering	gathers
Have	रखना/प्राप्त करना	had	had	having	has
Hate	घृणा करना	hated	hated	hating	hates
Hang	फाँसी लगाना	hanged	hanged	hanging	hangs

**Verb (Basic)**

Hear	सुनना	heard	heard	hearing	hears
Help	सहायता करना	helped	helped	helping	helps
Improve	सुधारना/ बेहतर होना	improved	improved	improving	improves
Invite	निमंत्रण देना	invited	invited	inviting	invites
Join	साथ में होना.	joined	joined	joining	joins
Jump	कूदना	jumped	jumped	jumping	jumps
Keep	रखना	kept	kept	keeping	keeps
Kill	जान से मारना	killed	killed	killing	kills
Knit	बुनना	knitted	knitted	knitting	knits
Kneel	घुटनों के बल झुकना	knelt	knelt	kneeling	kneels
Lay	रखना/(अंडा) देना. न्योछावर करना	laid	laid	laying	lays
Lie	झूठ बोलना	lied	lied	lying	lies
Laugh	हंसना	laughed	laughed	laughing	laughs
Learn	याद करना. सीखना	learned	learned	learning	learns
Leave	छोड़ना	left	left	leaving	leaves
Lend	उधार देना	lent	lent	lending	lends
Lose	खोना/हारना	lost	lost	losing	loses
Like	चाहना	liked	liked	liking	likes
Listen	सुनना (ध्यान से)	listened	listened	listening	listens
Look	देखना	looked	looked	looking	looks
Live	रहना	lived	lived	living	lives
Love	प्रेम करना	loved	loved	loving	loves
Lead	मार्ग दिखाना	led	led	leading	leads
Marry	विवाह करना	married	married	marrying	marries
Make	बनाना	made	made	making	makes
Mean	अर्थ लगाना	meant	meant	meaning	means
Meet	मिलना	met	met	meeting	meets
Move	हिलना	moved	moved	moving	moves
Melt	पिघलना. पिघलाना	melted	melted	melting	melts
Mend	सुधारना	mended	mended	mending	mends
Mix	मिलाना, मिलना	mixed	mixed	mixing	mixes
Name	नाम रखना	named	named	naming	names
Need	आवश्यकता होना	needed	needed	needing	needs
Nip	सख्ती से कुचलना	nipped	nipped	nipping	nips
Obey	आज्ञा मानना	obeyed	obeyed	obeying	obeys
Open	खोलना	opened	opened	opening	opens
Order	आदेश देना	ordered	ordered	ordering	orders
Oppose	विरोध करना	opposed	opposed	opposing	opposes
Pay	चकाना	paid	paid	paying	pays

**Verb (Basic)**

Play	खेलना	played	played	playing	plays
Pray	प्रार्थना करना	prayed	prayed	praying	prays
Praise	प्रशंसा करना	praised	praised	praising	praises
Preach	उपदेश करना	preached	preached	preaching	preaches
Peep	झाँकना	peeped	peeped	peeping	peeps
Plant	पौधा लगाना	planted	planted	planting	plants
Pluck	तोड़ना (जैसे फल तोड़ते हैं)	plucked	plucked	plucking	plucks
Prepare	तैयार करना	prepared	prepared	preparing	prepares
Pull	खींचना	pulled	pulled	pulling	pulls
Prevent	रोकना	prevented	prevented	preventing	prevents
Punish	दण्ड देना	punished	punished	punishing	punishes
Prove	सिद्ध करना	proved	proved	proving	proves
Promise	वचन देना	promised	promised	promising	promises
Push	धक्का देना	pushed	pushed	pushing	pushes
Plough	खेत जोतना	ploughed	ploughed	ploughing	ploughs
Quarrel	झगड़ना	quarrelled	quarrelled	quarrelling	quarrels
Rain	वर्षा होना	rained	rained	raining	rains
Reply	जबाब देना	replied	replied	replying	replies
Reach	पहुँचना	reached	reached	reaching	reaches
Receive	पाना, प्राप्त करना	received	received	receiving	receives
Refuse	इंकार करना	refused	refused	refusing	refuses
Rest	आराम करना	rested	rested	resting	rests
Resign	त्यागपत्र देना	resigned	resigned	resigning	resigns
Repair	मरम्मत करना	repaired	repaired	repairing	repairs
Remember	याद करना	remembered	remembered	remembering	remembers
Return	लौटाना. लौटना	returned	returned	returning	returns
Roar	गरजना	roared	roared	roaring	roars
Say	कहना	said	said	saying	says
Seek	अपेक्षा करना/ढँढना	sought	sought	seeking	seeks
Sell	बेचना	sold	sold	selling	sells
Save	बचाना	saved	saved	saving	saves
Saw	आरे से चीरना	sawed	sawed	sawing	saws
Send	भेजना	sent	sent	sending	sends
Select	चुनना (छांटकर)	selected	selected	selecting	selects
Sleep	सोना	slept	slept	sleeping	sleeps
Stand	खड़ा होना	stood	stood	standing	stands
Stay	ठहरना	stayed	stayed	staying	stays
Spend	खर्च करना	spent	spent	spending	spends
Stop	रोकना	stopped	stopped	stopping	stops

**Verb (Basic)**

Sweep	झाड़ू देना	swept	swept	sweeping	sweeps
Study	पढ़ना	studied	studied	studying	studies
Slip	फिसलना	slipped	slipped	slipping	slips
Talk	बात करना	talked	talked	talking	talks
Tell	कहना	told	told	telling	tells
Teach	पढ़ाना/सिखाना	taught	taught	teaching	teaches
Think	सोचना	thought	thought	thinking	thinks
Tie	बांधना	tied	tied	tying	ties
Touch	छूना	touched	touched	touching	touches
Try	प्रयत्न करना	tried	tried	trying	tries
Trust	विश्वास करना	trusted	trusted	trusting	trusts
Use	इस्तेमाल करना	used	used	using	uses
Understand	समझना	understood	understood	understanding	understands
Walk	चलना	walked	walked	walking	walks
Wash	धोना	washed	washed	washing	washes
Wait	प्रतीक्षा करना	waited	waited	waiting	waits
Weep	रोना	wept	wept	weeping	weeps
Work	काम करना	worked	worked	working	works
Watch	निगरानी करना	watched	watched	watching	watches
Wish	चाहना	wished	wished	wishing	wishes
Wander	घूमना	wandered	wandered	wandering	wanders
Waste	नष्ट करना	wasted	wasted	wasting	wastes
Wed	विवाह करना	wedded	wedded	wedding	weds
Wound	घायल करना	wounded	wounded	wounding	wounds
Worship	पूजा करना	worshipped	worshipped	worshipping	worships
Wonder	हैरान होना	wondered	wondered	wondering	wonders
Wrap	लपेटना	wrapped	wrapped	wrapping	wraps
Yield	झकना/ पैदा करना	yielded	yielded	yielding	yields

**GROUP - III**

नीचे दिए गए Verbs के सभी forms एक जैसे हैं।

<b>Present (1<sup>st</sup> Form)</b>	<b>अर्थ</b>	<b>Past (2<sup>nd</sup> Form)</b>	<b>P. Participle (3<sup>rd</sup> Form)</b>	<b>- ing Form</b>	<b>s/es Form</b>
Bid	बोली लगाना	bid	bid	bidding	bids
Bet	शर्त लगाना	bet	bet	betting	bets
Burst	फटना	burst	burst	bursting	bursts
Cast	फेंकना/डालना	cast	cast	casting	casts
Cost	मूल्य लगाना	cost	cost	costing	costs
Cut	काटना	cut	cut	cutting	cuts
Hurt	पीडा पहुँचाना	hurt	hurt	hurting	hurts

**Verb (Basic)**

Let	करने देना	let	let	letting	lets
Put	रखना	put	put	putting	puts
Read	पढ़ना *	read	read	reading	reads
Set	अस्त होना	set	set	setting	sets
Shed	बहाना/त्याग देना	shed	shed	shedding	sheds
Shut	बंद करना	shut	shut	shutting	shuts
Spread	फैलाना	spread	spread	spreading	spreads
Thrust	ढूँसना/थोपना	thrust	thrust	thrusting	thrusts
Quit	छोड़ना	quit	quit	quitting	quits

\* Read एवं Study में अंतर है। **Study** का अर्थ अध्ययन करना है जबकि **Read** हम **Magazine, newspaper** इत्यादि को करते हैं।

**CONFUSING PAIR**

1. Bear	bore	born	→ पैदा करना
Bear	bore	borne	→ बर्दाश्त करना
2. Fall	fell	fallen	→ गिरना
Fell	felled	felled	→ गिराना
3. Find	found	found	→ पाना
Found	founded	founded	→ स्थापित करना
4. Grind	ground	ground	→ पीसना
Ground	grounded	grounded	→ जमीन पर लाना/ उड़ान भरने पर पाबंदी लगाया
5. Hang	hanged	hanged	→ फांसी पर चढ़ाना
Hang	hung	hung	→ टांगना, लटकाना
6. Lie	lied	lied	→ झूठ बोलना
Lie	lay	lain	→ लेटना
Lay	laid	laid	→ <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>क्षैतिज (Horizontally) रखना</li><li>न्यौछावर करना</li><li>Hens lay eggs</li></ul>
7. Rend	rent	rent	→ चीरना/फाड़ना
Rent	rented	rented	→ किराये पर देना
8. Rise	rose	risen	→ उगना, बढ़ना, उठना, तरक्की करना
Raise	raised	raised	→ उठाना (मुद्दा, प्रश्न इत्यादि)
Raze	razed	razed	→ ध्वस्त करना
9. See	saw	seen	→ देखना
Saw	sawed	sawed/sawn	→ आरी से चीड़ना/ काटना
10. Wind	wound	wound	→ मोड़ना/ लपेटना/ चाबी लगाना
Wound	wounded	wounded	→ घायल करना
11. Fly	flew	flown	→ उड़ना
Flow	flowed	flowed	→ बहना

**VERBS CONFUED WITH VERB/ NOUN/ ADJECTIVE**

1. Practice - Practise  
Noun                      Verb  
↓                              ↓  
अभ्यास -      अभ्यास करना
2. Advice - Advise  
Noun                      Verb  
↓                              ↓  
सलाह -      सलाह देना
3. Complain - Complaint  
Verb                              Noun  
↓                                      ↓  
शिकायत करना -      शिकायत
4. Affect - Effect  
Verb                      Noun/ Verb  
↓                              ↓  
असर करना- परिणाम/ बदलाव लाना
5. Assure - Ensure - Insure  
Verb                      Verb                      Verb  
↓                              ↓                              ↓  
तसल्ली देना - सनिश्चित करना - बीमा करना
6. Hear - Listen  
Verb                      Verb  
↓                              ↓  
सनना -      ध्यान से सनना
7. Heal - Heel  
Verb                              Noun  
↓                                      ↓  
ठीक होना -      ऐडी  
(घाव या जख्म का)
8. Prescribe - Proscribe  
Verb                              Verb  
↓                                      ↓  
सलाह देना -      पाबंदी लगाना
9. Adopt - Adapt - Adept  
Verb                      Verb                      Adj.  
↓                              ↓                              ↓  
गोद लेना -      ढालना -      निपण
10. Allude - Elude  
Verb                                      Verb  
↓    ↓  
के संदर्भ में उल्लेख करना -      से बचना
11. Amend - Emend  
Verb                              Verb  
↓                                      ↓  
संशोधन करना - अशुद्धियाँ निकाल देना
12. Bought - Brought  
V<sub>2</sub> & V<sub>3</sub> form of buy                      V<sub>2</sub> & V<sub>3</sub> form of bring  
↓    ↓  
खरीदना -      लाना
13. Compose - Comprise  
Verb                                      Verb  
↓    ↓  
बनाना -      से बना होना
14. Deface - Efface  
Verb                                      Verb  
↓    ↓  
विकृत करना -      मिटा देना
15. Deprecate - Depreciate  
Verb                                      Verb  
↓    ↓  
नापसंद करना -      मल्य कम होना
16. Envelop - Envelope  
Verb                                      Noun  
↓    ↓  
ढकना (आवरण करना) - लिफाफा
17. Excite - Incite  
Verb                                      Verb  
↓    ↓  
उत्तेजित करना -      भडकाना
18. Flout - Flaunt  
Verb                                      Verb  
↓    ↓  
उल्लंघन करना - दिखावा करना
19. Hoard - Horde  
Verb                                      Noun  
↓    ↓  
छिपा कर जमा करना- लोगों का समूह
20. Loathe - Loath  
Verb                                      Adj.  
↓    ↓  
नापसंद करना - अनिच्छक



**Verb (Basic)**

21. Lose (Verb) - Loss (Noun) - Loose (Adj.)  
खोना / हारना - घाटा / हानि - ढीला
22. Mitigate (Verb) - Militate (Verb)  
बेहतर करना (कम कर के) - प्रतिकूल होना
23. Pour (Verb) - Pore (Noun)  
उडेलना - छिद्र
24. Proceed (Verb) - Precede (Verb)  
आगे बढ़ना - से पहले आना
25. Pray (Verb) - Prey (Verb/Noun)  
प्राथना करना - शिकार करना - शिकार
26. Rout (Verb) - Route (Noun) - Root (Noun)  
आसानी से हराना - रास्ता - जड़
27. Censure (Verb) - Censor (Verb)  
निंदा करना - पाबंदी लगाना
28. Wave (Noun/Verb) - Waive (Verb)  
लहर (N)/ लहराना (V) - छूट देना
29. Tow (Verb) - Toe (Noun) - Tiptoe (Verb)  
खींच कर ले जाना - पैर की अंगलियाँ - पैर की अंगुलियों पर चलना
30. Site (Noun) - Sight (Noun) - Cite (Verb)  
निर्माण स्थल - नजारा या दृष्टि - उल्लेख करना
31. Defuse (Verb) - Diffuse (Verb)  
तनाव कम करना - फैलाना
32. Desert (Noun/Verb) - Dessert (Noun)  
रेगिस्तान त्याग देना - Meals के बाद का sweet dish
33. Sever (Verb) - Severe (Adj) - Sewer (Noun)  
काट के अलग कर देना - तीव्र - नाला
34. See (Verb) - Look (Verb/Noun) - Stare (Verb) - Peep (Verb) - Glare / Glower (Verb/Noun) - Glance (Verb/Noun) - Glimpse (Noun)  
देखना - ताकना/नजर डालना - घूरना - झाँकना (V) - गस्से से देखना (V) - एक झलक देखना (V) - एक झलक देखना (V)  
Appearance (N) - चपके से देखना (V) - गस्से से भरी नजर (N) - एक झलक (N) - एक झलक (N)
35. Light (Adj/Noun/Verb) - Burn (Verb/Noun)  
हल्का - रोशनी - प्रज्वलित करना - जलाना - जला हुआ भाग (शरीर का)
36. Catch (Verb/Noun) - Hold (Verb/Noun)  
किसी गतिशील को पकड़ना (V) - पकड़ (N) - ठहरी हुई चीज को थामना (V) - पकड़ (N)

37. Canvass - Canvas  
Verb Noun  
↓ ↓  
घम-घम के वोट मांगना - मोटा कपडा (जिससे जते एवं टेंट बनते हैं)
38. Refuse - Deny / Refute - Decline  
Verb Verb Verb  
↓ ↓ ↓  
मना करना - खंडन करना - अस्वीकार करना/ कम होना
39. Peddle - Pedal  
Verb Noun/Verb  
↓ ↓  
घम-घम के सामान बेचना - साइकिल में जिस पर पैर रख कर घमाते हैं। (N), Pedal चलाना (V)
40. Ride - Drive  
Verb/Noun Verb/Noun  
↓ ↓  
सैर (N) / दोपहिये व जानवर की सवारी करना (V) - सैर (N) / चार पहिये की सवारी करना (V)
41. Wither - Weather - Whether - Whither  
Verb N Conj. Adj.  
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓  
मुरझाना - दिन-प्रतिदिन का मौसम - या ..... या ना - Where (कहाँ) [पुराने काल की अंग्रेजी भाषा में]  
(‘Whether ... or’ Co-relative है)
42. Sink - Drown  
Verb Verb  
↓ ↓  
डबना (निर्जीव का) - डबाना/डबना
43. Cease - Seize 44. Invent - Discover  
Verb Verb Verb Verb  
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓  
रुकना - जब्त करना अविष्कार करना - खोज करना

vc upsf, xsd, D, saam, jdr, khsack, iz, s, ms, j, sa

- जैसे: 1. The servant **hung** the picture on the wall  
~~hanged~~
2. Lay your books aside and **lie** down to rest.  
~~lay~~
3. **Practice** makes a man perfect.  
Noun
4. **Practise** the questions given in the assignment.  
Verb

**Verb (Basic)**

5. I need your **advice**.  
Noun
6. Do not **advise** me.  
Verb
7. I have lodged a **complaint** against him.  
Noun
8. He **complained** against me.  
Verb
9. Bad weather **affects** your health and the **effect** is cough and cold.  
Verb Noun
10. Many songs are not worthlistening to [नोट: listen के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन 'worthlistening' (सुनने के लायक) के बाद नहीं। अतः 'to' हटा दें]
11. He **lighted** the candle and **burnt** the papers.
12. The thief **eluded** arrest.  
Verb
13. The earth's atmosphere comprises of three layers ( Active voice में comprise के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग नहीं होता अतः 'of' हटा दें)
14. Mirabai **composed** many songs.
15. I **refused** to help him.
16. The thief **denied** the charges.
17. I **declined** the offer.
18. Silence **precedes** the storm.
19. This is a good **site** for school.
20. Please **cite** an example.

---

**SPOTTING THE ERROR**

---

1. (a) He was so inquisitive/ (b) that he rose many/ (c) questions in the class ./ (d) No error.
2. (a) He was borne of poor parents,/ (b) but brought up/ (c) in an affluent family./ (d) No error.
3. (a) The university was/ (b) found in 1950/ (c) when India was not self dependent in many aspects./ (d) No error.
4. (a) I complaint against him/ (b) as in spite of my repeated warnings/ (c) he failed to mend his ways./ (d) No error.
5. (a) Failure must not have/ (b) permanent affect on a person/ (c)because only the tough survives./ (d) No error.
6. (a) I keep my cool/ (b) and never loose my temper/ (c) even when provoked/ (d) No error.
7. (a) He lied on the grass/ (b) for hours/ (c) enjoying the cool breeze./ (d) No error.
8. (a) During the rainy season/ (b) many rivers overflowed their banks/ (c) and caused great difficulty./ (d) No error.
9. (a) He lay his luggage/ (b) aside and lay down/ (c) to rest for a while ./ (d) No error.

10. (a) When calamity fell the village,/ (b) they faced it/ (c) bravely./ (d) No error.
11. (a) The assassin was convicted/ (b) and ordered to/ (c) be hung./ (d) No error.
12. (a) If I leave now,/ (b) I will not be able to/ (c) return back before 9 p.m. / (d) No error.
13. (a) When the company offered him a purse on his retirement/ (b) he refused to/ (c) agree it ./ (d) No error.
14. (a) The timid creature was driven/ (b) into a narrow lane/ (c) where it was slewed by the kidnapper./ (d) No error.
15. (a) Being implicated in a murder case,/ (b) he was conclusively suspected/ (c) for all the unsolved murder cases./ (d) No error.
16. (a) My brother thinks/ (b) that somebody must have dared/ (c) him steal the scooter./ (d) No error.
17. (a) When I was young,/ (b) I can run/ (c) faster than Mohan./ (d) No error.
18. (a) Harish needs not/ (b) come here/ (c) as it is getting dark./ (d) No error.
19. (a) He dare/ (b) not to/ (c) go there/ (d) No error.
20. (a) I use to/ (b) play Hockey/ (c) when I was ten year old./ (d) No error.
21. (a) A soldier/ (b) could fight/ (c) for his country and save his country's honour./ (d) No error.
22. (a) I would rather/ (b) die/ (c) then beg./ (d) No error.
23. (a) Run fast/ (b) lest you/ (c) will miss the train/ (d) No error.
24. (a) He hoped/ (b) that he will/ (c) pass the exam with flying colours./ (d) No error.
25. (a) You need to work hard/ (b) but you need not/ (c) to waste time on unimportant lessons/ (d) No error.
26. (a) She would broke/ (b) a plate every day/ (c) when she came to Delhi last month./ (d) No error.
27. (a) The old lady/ (b) prayed that he/ (c) may live long./ (d) No error.
28. (a) Rama must not to/ (b) have treated his mistress/ (c) like that./ (d) No error.
29. (a) Waste material/ (b) should be recycle/ (c) if possible/ (d) No error.
30. (a) The Government cannot/ (b) be able to contain/ (c) Encephalitis by spending just 1% of GDP on Health sector./ (d) No error.
31. (a) The police think/ (b) that he may be there/ (c) yesterday at the scene of crime./ (d) No error.
32. (a) "He may live long"/ (b) his sad mother/ (c) prayed./ (d) No error.
33. (a) He returned the purse/ (b) though he could keep/ (c) it very easily./ (d) No error.
34. (a) When you were young/ (b) you ought to learn/ (c) good habits./ (d) No error.
35. (a) If you get good marks/ (b) I shall happy/ (c) as much as you./ (d) No error.
36. (a) We ought to/ (b) honest/ (c) in our dealings./ (d) No error.
37. (a) It is very cold here/ (b) I should bring/ (c) my woolen clothes but I didn't./ (d) No error.
38. (a) Are you/ (b) used to get/ (c) up early./ (d) No error.
39. (a) Our knowledge of history does not come to our help/ (b) and sometimes we even fail to remember/ (c) who invented America./ (d) No error.
40. (a) I think/ (b) the news/ (c) might true./ (d) No error.

**Verb (Basic)**

41. (a) Very soon/ (b) I realised/ (c) that he is at fault/ (d) No error.
42. (a) He remembered/ (b) that his visa/ (c) will be expired in a month/ (d) No error.
43. (a) I wasn't/ (b) at the last meeting and/ (c) neither was you/ (d) No error.
44. (a) In any case no disciplinary action/ (b) are required/ (c) to be taken/ (d) No error.
45. (a) The capital of Yemen/ (b) is situating/ (c) 2190 metres above the sea level/ (d) No error.
46. (a) Owing to the heavy rains,/ (b) the ship drowned/ (c) in the middle of the ocean./ (d) No error.
47. (a) If your jogging clothes/ (b) were not made of/ (c) permeable fabric you will drown/ (d) in your sweat.

**Answers with explanation**

1. (b) 'rose' (rise का  $V_2$ ) का अर्थ है 'उठना'। 'कई सवाल उठाना' के लिए 'raised many questions' का प्रयोग करें।
2. (a) 'Bear' (पैदा करना) का  $V_3$  'born' होता है। 'Bear' (सहन करना) का  $V_3$  'borne' होता है।
3. (b) 'found' के स्थान पर 'founded' का प्रयोग करें। 'found' (स्थापित करना) का  $V_3$  'founded' होता है।
4. (a) Complain ( $V_1$ ) का  $V_2$  एवं  $V_3$  'Complained' है। 'Complaint' (Noun) का अर्थ शिकायत है।
5. (b) 'Affect' (V) के स्थान पर 'effect' (N) का प्रयोग करें।
6. (b) 'loose' (adj.) का अर्थ है 'ढीला'। यहाँ Lose (V) का प्रयोग करें। 'Lose my temper' का अर्थ है 'आपा खोना'।
7. (a) 'lie' (लेटना) का  $V_2$  'lay' होता है। 'Lie' (झूठ बोलना) का  $V_2$  'lied' होता है।
8. (b) 'Overflow' का  $V_2$  'overflowed' होता है।
9. (a) 'lay' (रखना) का  $V_2$  'laid' होता है।
10. (a) यहाँ 'fell' के स्थान पर 'befell' का प्रयोग करें। 'Befall' का अर्थ है 'किसी घटना का होना / आ पड़ना।
11. (c) 'hang' (टाँगना) का  $V_2$  एवं  $V_3$  'hung' है। 'Hang' (फाँसी लगाना) का  $V_2$  एवं  $V_3$  'hanged' होगा।
12. (c) 'return' के साथ 'back' का प्रयोग न करें।  
नोट: इसी प्रकार 'repeat' के साथ 'again' एवं 'enter' के साथ 'into' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता।
13. (c) 'agree' के स्थान पर 'accept' का प्रयोग करें।
14. (c) 'Slay' का  $V_3$  'slain' होता है न कि 'slew'।
15. (b) 'Conclusively' का अर्थ है 'putting an end to debate, question or doubt'। 'Suspect' शब्द के साथ 'conclusively' का प्रयोग वाक्य के अर्थ को 'self contradictory' बना देता है।
16. (c) 'steal' के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग करें। 'Dare' अगर 'main verb' है तो उसके बाद 'infinitive' 'to +  $V_1$ ' का प्रयोग होता है। अतः 'to steal' का प्रयोग सही होगा।
17. (b) 'Past Tense' में 'ability' दर्शाने के लिए 'can' के स्थान पर 'could' का प्रयोग करें।
18. (a) यहाँ 'needs' Main verb नहीं बल्कि modal है अतः 'needs' के स्थान पर 'need' का प्रयोग करें।
19. (b) यहाँ 'dare' का प्रयोग modal के रूप में हो रहा है अतः 'to go' का नहीं बल्कि 'go' का प्रयोग होगा। Modal के बाद ' $V_1$ ' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'to +  $V_1$ ' का।
20. (a) 'I used to' का प्रयोग 'I use to' के स्थान पर होगा। भूतकाल के routine action को दर्शाने के लिए

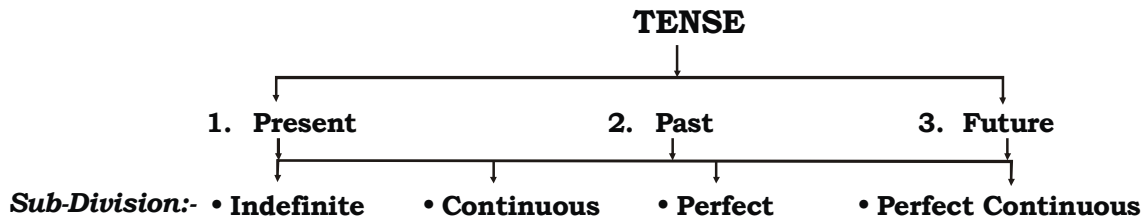
- 'used to + V<sub>1</sub>' का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (b) यहाँ 'could' के स्थान पर 'must' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।
  22. (c) 'then' के स्थान पर 'than' का प्रयोग करें। 'would rather' के साथ 'than' का प्रयोग होता है।
  23. (c) 'will' के स्थान पर 'should' का प्रयोग होगा। 'lest' के साथ 'should' का प्रयोग होता है।
  24. (b) 'will' के स्थान पर 'would' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य 'Past Tense' में है। अतः 'would' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए न कि 'will' का।
  25. (c) 'to waste' के स्थान पर सिर्फ 'waste' का प्रयोग होगा। 'need not' के साथ 'V<sub>1</sub>' का प्रयोग होता है।
  26. (a) 'would' के बाद 'V<sub>1</sub>' का प्रयोग होता है न कि V<sub>2</sub> का। 'broke' के स्थान पर 'break' का प्रयोग करें।
  27. (c) 'may' के स्थान पर 'might' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य 'Past' में है।
  28. (a) 'To' हटा दें। वाक्य, का structure होगा 'must + not + have + V<sub>3</sub>.'
  29. (b) 'should be' के बाद 'V<sub>3</sub>' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'V<sub>1</sub>' का। 'recycle' को 'recycled' में परिवर्तित करें।
  30. (b) 'be able to' हटा दें। 'Cannot' क्षमता दर्शाता है। अतः 'be able to' का प्रयोग जरूरी नहीं जो क्षमता ही दर्शाता है।
  31. (b) 'May' को 'Might' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि 'yesterday' से ज्ञात होता है कि वाक्य 'Past' में है।
  32. (a) 'May he live long' सही प्रयोग है क्योंकि वाक्य 'wish' है।
  33. (b) 'Could keep' को 'could have kept' में परिवर्तित करें।
  34. (b) 'Ought to learn' को 'Ought to have learnt' में परिवर्तित करें।
  35. (b) 'Shall' के बाद Main verb 'be' का प्रयोग करें।
  36. (a) 'Ought to' के बाद 'be' का प्रयोग करें।
  37. (b) 'Should bring' को 'should have brought' में परिवर्तित करें।
  38. (b) 'get' को 'getting' में परिवर्तित करें। वाक्य 'habitual action' है।
  39. (c) 'invented' को 'discovered' में परिवर्तित करें।
  40. (c) 'Might' के बाद 'be' लगायें।
  41. (c) 'is' को 'was' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि वाक्य 'Past Tense' में है।
  42. (c) 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि वाक्य 'Past Tense' में है।
  43. (c) 'was' को 'were' में परिवर्तित करें। 'You' के साथ 'were' का प्रयोग होता है।
  44. (b) 'are' को 'is' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि subject 'disciplinary action' singular है।
  45. (b) 'situating' को 'situated' में परिवर्तित करें।
  46. (b) निर्जीव के डबने को 'sink' कहते हैं यहाँ 'drowned' के स्थान पर 'sank' (V<sub>2</sub>) का प्रयोग करें।
  47. (c) 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि वाक्य 'Past Tense' में है।

# 2

## TENSE

### CHAPTER

**Tense** किसी कार्य के समय एवं अवस्था को व्यक्त करता है।



नोट: प्रश्न सामान्यतः formula अथवा confusing जोड़े पर आधारित होते हैं।

### CONFUSING PAIR :

- (1) **Simple Present** and **Present Continuous**
- (2) **Continous** and **Perfect Continuous**
- (3) **Present Perfect** and **Simple Past**
- (4) **Simple Past** and **Past Perfect**

(1) **PRESENT INDEFINITE:** Present Indefinite के अंतर्गत हम विभिन्न प्रकार के कार्यों को रख सकते हैं।

- (i) **Routine action • Regular action** ( नियमित कार्य ) - *I come here daily.*
  - **Irregular action** ( अनियमित कार्य ) - *Earthquakes come in Japan.*
  - **Habits** ( आदत ) - *He smokes.*
  - **Universal truth** ( सार्वभौमिक सत्य ) - *The sun rises in the east.*

(ii) नोट: **Newspaper** के **headlines** और **sports** के **commentary** में भी simple present tense का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: PM signs deal.

Sachin strikes the ball and off it goes across the boundary line.

(iii) निकट भविष्य के किसी **planned** कार्य को व्यक्त करने के लिए भी simple present tense का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: The Prime Minister leaves for China next week.

**Formulae:** + ve → Sub + V<sub>1</sub> + obj. (अगर Sub I, we, they, you अथवा plural हो)

- ve → Sub + do not (don't) + V<sub>1</sub> + obj.

**Ques** → Do + Sub + V<sub>1</sub> + obj?

Do + Sub + not + V<sub>1</sub> + obj?

Don't + Sub + V<sub>1</sub> + obj?

+ ve → Sub + V<sub>1</sub> + s/es + obj. (अगर sub he, she, it, name वा singular हो)

- ve → Sub + does not (doesn't) + V<sub>1</sub> + obj.

**Ques** → Does + Sub + V<sub>1</sub> + obj?

Does + Sub + not + V<sub>1</sub> + obj?

Doesn't + Sub + V<sub>1</sub> + obj?

**Correct the following sentences:-**

जैसे: (1) What he knows about you? (×)

What **does he know** about you? (✓)

(2) I don't know what he knows about you. (✓)

(3) The **appeal** of the victims to transfer the cases related to riots to some other States **do** not affect the merit of the case. (change do to **does**)

**वाक्य 1 एवं 2 की व्याख्या**

पहले वाक्य में 'what' का प्रयोग सवाल पुछने के लिए किया जा रहा है। अतः 'what' के बाद 'Question form' का प्रयोग करें। दूसरे वाक्य में 'what' दो वाक्यों को जोड़ रहा है। अतः 'what' के बाद 'sentence form' का प्रयोग करें न कि 'question form' का।

**वाक्य 3 की व्याख्या**

(3) एक वाक्य में **verb** उस **sub** के अनुसार होना चाहिए जो वाक्य का **main sub** हो। हम अक्सर verb को नजदीक वाले Subject से match कर देते हैं लेकिन ऐसा करना गलत है।

### SIMPLE PAST

➤ जो कार्य खत्म हो चका वह simple past के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: I saw you but you did not see me.

**Formulae:** Sub + V<sub>2</sub> + obj

Sub + did not (didn't) + V<sub>1</sub> + obj

Did + Sub + V<sub>1</sub> + obj ?

Did + Sub + not + V<sub>1</sub> + obj ?

Didn't + sub + V<sub>1</sub> + obj ?



### Tense

**नोट:** अगर वाक्य कि शुरुआत 'It's time' या 'It's high time' से हो और उसके बाद **sub** का प्रयोग हो तो **sub** के बाद **verb** के **2<sup>nd</sup> form** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: It's time you should study. (×)

It's time you studied. (✓)

➤ लेकिन अगर '**It's time**' के बाद **to** का प्रयोग हो तो **to** के बाद **verb** का **I<sup>st</sup> form** आएगा।

जैसे: It's time to study.

**नोट:** (1) You do come here everyday. (✓)  
 $V_1$

(2) He did make a mistake. (✓)  
 $V_1$

➤ सामान्यतः एक वाक्य में **do, does** एवं **did** का प्रयोग **Helping verb** के रूप में **positive** वाक्य में नहीं होता। लेकिन अगर **main verb** पर जोर देना हो तो हम **do, does** एवं **did** का प्रयोग **main verb** के पहले करते हैं। ऐसे वाक्य में **main verb 'V<sub>1</sub>' form** में होना चाहिए।

**नोट:** अगर वाक्य में भतकाल के समय का उल्लेख हो तो **Past Tense** का प्रयोग हाता है।

जैसे: I have come yesterday (×)

I came yesterday (✓)

### SIMPLE FUTURE

➤ जो कार्य भविष्य में होगा वह **Simple Future tense** के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: I shall meet you.

**Formulae:** + ve → **Sub + shall/ will + V<sub>1</sub> + obj**

-ve → **Sub + shall/ will + not + V<sub>1</sub> + obj**  
**Sub + shan't/ won't + V<sub>1</sub> + obj**

**Ques** → **Shall/will + sub + V<sub>1</sub> + obj ?**

**Shall/ will + sub + not + V<sub>1</sub> + obj ?**

**Shan't/ won't + sub + V<sub>1</sub> + obj ?**

**नोट:** Shall/will का प्रयोग Modals में विस्तार से दिया गया है।

### PRESENT CONTINUOUS

➤ जो कार्य वर्तमान में यानी वाक्य को बोलते समय हो रहा हो वह **Present Continuous tense** के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: (1) I am studying Tense now.

➤ कई बार कार्य जारी अवस्था में होते हए भी दिखाई नहीं देते। परन्तु उन्हें भी 'Present Continuous Tense' के अंतर्गत रखा जा सकता है।

जैसे: (1) Coastal areas are getting submerged.

(2) Population is increasing day by day.

**नोट:** निकट भविष्य में होने वाले किसी कार्य को व्यक्त करने के लिए भी हम **Present Continuous Tense** का प्रयोग करते हैं।

जैसे: I am going to Mumbai tomorrow.

**Formulae:** + **ve** → **Sub + is/ am/ are + v<sub>1</sub> + ing+ obj**  
- **ve** → **Sub + is/ are/ am/ + not + v<sub>1</sub> + ing+ obj**  
**Sub + isn't/ aren't/ am not + v<sub>1</sub> + ing+ obj**

**Ques** → **Is/ am/ are + S + v<sub>1</sub> + ing+ obj?**  
**Is/ am/ are + S + not + v<sub>1</sub> + ing+ obj?**  
**Isn't/ aren't + S + v<sub>1</sub> + ing+ obj?**

**नोट:** 'am not' का कोई contracted form नहीं होता है लेकिन Question Tag में **aren't** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे: I am fine, **aren't** I ?

➤ **Is/am/are** का प्रयोग

**Is** – **he/she/it/name/singular** के साथ

**Am** – **I** के साथ

**Are** – **you/we/they/all/plural** के साथ

**नोट:** My father is working in a bank and my brother is studying in a school. (×)

My father works in a bank and my brother studies in a school. (✓)

➤ जब वाक्य '**routine**' हो तो **Present Continuous** का प्रयोग न करें बल्कि '**simple present**' का प्रयोग करें। लेकिन अगर कार्य ऐसा हो जो कछ अवधि के लिए ही **routine action** रहे तो **present continuous tense** का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं।

जैसे: I am preparing for competitive exams now-a-days.

## PAST CONTINUOUS

➤ जो कार्य भूतकाल में हो रहा था वह **Past Continuous tense** के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: I was waiting for you

**Formulae:** + **Ve** → **Sub + was/were + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj**  
- **Ve** → **Sub + was/were + not + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj**  
**Sub + wasn't/weren't + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj**

**Ques** → **Was/were + Sub + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj?**  
**Was/were + Sub + not+ V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj?**  
**Wasn't/weren't + Sub + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj?**

➤ **Was/were** का प्रयोग

**Was** → **He/she/it/name/singular/I** के साथ

**Were** → **You/we/they/plural/all** के साथ

➤ काल्पनिक वाक्यों में सभी **sub** के साथ '**were**' का प्रयोग होता है चाहे '**were**' का प्रयोग '**helping verb**' के रूप में हो या '**main verb**' के रूप में।

**Tense**

जैसे: 1. I wish, I were a bird.  
M.V.

2. He pretended as if he were sleeping.  
H.V.

**FUTURE CONTINUOUS**

➤ जो कार्य भविष्य में हो रहा होगा वह **Future Continuous tense** के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: We shall be taking the exam at this time, next month.

**Formulae:** + Ve → **Sub + shall/ will + be + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj**

- Ve → **Sub + shall/ will + not + be + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj**  
**Sub + shan't/ won't + be + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj**

**Ques** → **Will/shall + Sub + be + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj?**

**Will/shall + Sub + not + be + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj?**

**Won't/shan't + Sub + be + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj?**

**नोट:** कुछ verbs का प्रयोग हम continuous tense में नहीं कर सकते क्योंकि कुछ ऐसे verbs होते हैं जिनका प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'ing' form में नहीं होता।

**VERBS**

(1) **Verbs of Perception-** See, taste, smell, hear, prefer, please, notice, recognize.

(2) **Verbs of Thinking Process-** Think, know, mean, mind, remember, suppose.

(3) **Verbs Showing Possession-** Own, have, belong, comprise, possess, contain, consist.

(4) **Verbs expressing Feelings or State of Mind-** Believe, like, dislike, love, adore, want, wish, desire, hate, agree, trust, imagine.

(5) **Verbs in General-** Look, seem, appear, affect, resemble, cost, require, become, hope, refuse.

उदाहरण देखें-

जैसे: 1. He is owing a car. (×)

He owns a car. (✓)

2. This house is belonging to me. (×)

This house belongs to me. (✓)

3. I am not meaning anything wrong. (×)

I don't mean anything wrong. (✓)

4. I am seeing a man standing there. (×)

I see a man standing there. (✓)

**नोट:** अगर 'have' का अर्थ 'अधिकार होना' हो तो 'have' में 'ing' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। अगर 'have' का अर्थ निकलता है खाना/ enjoy करना तो 'have' में 'ing' का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: I am having a piece of cake. (✓)

I am having a car. (×)

I have a car. (✓)

➤ हम **Think, remember, feel, look, appear** etc. (जिनका प्रयोग सामान्य वाक्यों में 'ing' में नहीं होना चाहिए) का प्रयोग अगर **भावनाओं को दर्शाने** के लिए करते हैं तब उनका प्रयोग '**ing form**' में किया जा सकता है। (eg- 2 एवं 4 देखें)

- जैसे:
1. I am thinking you are right. (×)  
I think you are right. (✓)
  2. I am thinking of you. (✓)
  3. It was appearing as if they were going to kill us. (×)  
It appeared as if they were going to kill us. (✓)
  4. You are looking good. (✓)

2. **Gerund एवं Present participle** में **verb 'ing' form** में होते हैं।

- जैसे:
- (1) Being ill, I could not come.
  - (2) Getting a job is easy now-a-days.
  - (3) Seeing is believing.
  - (4) Swimming is a good exercise.

नोट: विस्तार से जानकारी के लिए Verb (Advance) देखें-

3. सभी **preposition** के बाद अगर **verb** का प्रयोग होता है तो **verb 'ing' form** में होना चाहिए।

जैसे: (1) Bats are capable of hearing the ultrasonic waves.  
V<sub>1</sub>+ing

(2) We must keep away from smoking.  
V<sub>1</sub>+ing

### PRESENT PERFECT

➤ जो कार्य अभी-अभी या हाल फिलहाल खत्म हुआ हो वह **Present Perfect Tense** के अन्तर्गत आता है।

जैसे: He has come to Delhi recently.

➤ जब कार्य महत्त्वपूर्ण हो न कि कार्य होने का समय एवं कार्य होने के समय का उल्लेख भी नहीं हो तब **Present perfect Tense** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे: We have progressed a lot.

We have reached the moon.

**Formulae:** + **Ve** → **Sub + has/ have + V<sub>3</sub> + obj**

- **Ve** → **Sub + has/ have + not + V<sub>3</sub> + obj**  
**Sub + hasn't/ haven't + V<sub>3</sub> + obj**

**Ques** → **Has/ have + Sub + V<sub>3</sub> + obj ?**  
**Has/ have + Sub +not+ V<sub>3</sub> + obj ?**  
**Hasn't/ haven't + Sub + V<sub>3</sub> + obj ?**

**Tense**

**Has/have के प्रयोग**

**has - He/ She/ It/ Name/Singular** के साथ

**have- I/ We/ They/ You/ Plural/ All** के साथ

अंतर देखें:

- 1. Science has given us many new inventions. (✓)
- 2. We have reached the moon. (✓)
- 1. Science has given us many new inventions in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. (×)
- 2. We have reached the moon on 22<sup>nd</sup> Oct, 2008. (×)

➤ अगर भूतकाल के समय का उल्लेख हो तो **Present perfect** नहीं **Simple past tense** का प्रयोग करें। यानि ऊपर दिए गए दोनों वाक्यों के सही रूप होंगे।

- 1. Science gave us many life saving drugs in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. (✓)
- 2. We reached the moon on 22<sup>nd</sup> Oct, 2008. (✓)

**नोट:** 1. I have had enough problems here (✓)

He has had his breakfast (✓)

एक वाक्य में **have** के किसी भी **form** ( यहाँ have के forms helping verb होंगे) के बाद **had** ( had main verb होगा) का प्रयोग हो सकता है। क्योंकि ये **Present perfect एवं Past perfect के Formulae में fit** होते हैं।

2. सामान्यतः **recently, already, yet, so far** का प्रयोग **perfect tense** में होता है। **'yet'** का प्रयोग **perfect tense -ve** वाक्य में होता है।

जैसे: He has not reached home yet (present perfect)

He had not done any work so far. (past perfect)

3. अगर **since** के बाद **simple past** का प्रयोग हो तो **since** के पहले **present perfect** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: I haven't seen him **since** he left India.

Present perfect

Simple past

**नोट:** 1. ऐसे वाक्यों में **present perfect** के स्थान पर कोई **modal** भी **perfect form** में आ सकता है।

जैसे: He may have grown old **since** she last saw him.

Modal in perfect form

Simple past

2. अगर **since** का प्रयोग वाक्य के शरूआत में कर लिया जाए तो **simple past** भी **since** के साथ वाक्य के प्रथम भाग में आ जाएगा।

जैसे: **Since** he joined the army, he has not taken any leave.

Simple past

Present perfect

## PAST PERFECT

नीचे दिए गये विभिन्न वाक्यों को देखें:-

1. I saw him **before** he stopped his car. (×)  
I had seen him **before** he stopped his car. (✓)
2. **Before** he understood anything the robber fled. (×)  
**Before** he understood anything the robber had fled. (✓)
3. I met him **after** I finished my work. (×)  
I met him **after** I had finished my work. (✓)
4. **By the time** I reached the theatre, the show started. (×)  
**By the time** I reached the theatre, the show had started. (✓)
5. When Anand reached his village, he found that the news about him had preceded him. (✓)

➤ प्रथम वाक्य का formation निम्न प्रकार से है-

<u>1<sup>st</sup> action</u>	<b>before</b>	<u>2<sup>nd</sup> action</u>
<b>Past Perfect</b>		<b>Simple Past</b>

➤ द्वितीय वाक्य का formation निम्न प्रकार से है-

**Before** का प्रयोग अगर शरू में हो तो 2<sup>nd</sup> action 'S.Past', 1<sup>st</sup> action 'Past Perfect'

➤ तीसरे वाक्य का formation निम्न प्रकार से है-

<u>2<sup>nd</sup> action</u>	<b>after</b>	<u>1<sup>st</sup> action</u>
<b>Simple Past</b>		<b>Past Perfect</b>

➤ चौथे वाक्य का formation निम्न प्रकार से है-

**By the time** 2<sup>nd</sup> action 'Simple Past', 1<sup>st</sup> action 'Past Perfect'

➤ अगर दो कार्य **Past** में एक के बाद एक हो. तो पहला कार्य **Past perfect** में होगा। और दूसरा **Simple Past tense**.

**Formulae:** + Ve → **Sub + had + V<sub>3</sub> + obj**  
 - Ve → **Sub + had + not (hadn't) + V<sub>3</sub> + obj**  
**Ques** → **Had + sub + V<sub>3</sub> + obj ?**  
**Had + sub + not + V<sub>3</sub> + obj ?**  
**Hadn't + sub + V<sub>3</sub> + obj ?**

नोट: वाक्य 5 को देखें:-

When Anand reached his village, he found that the news about him had preceded him.  
वाक्य की व्याख्या-

➤ जब Anand गाँव पहुँच (Simple Past) तो पाया कि उसके बारे में जो News थी वह उससे पहले पहुँच चुकी थी। (Precede का अर्थ है 'से पहले आना')। अगर कोई action 'simple past' से पहले होता है तो वह 'past perfect tense' में होता है। अतः 'news का पहुँचना' Past perfect tense में होगा।

Tense

### **FUTURE PERFECT**

➤ जो कार्य भविष्य में खत्म हो चका होगा वह **Future Perfect** के अन्तर्गत आता है।

जैसे: You will have finished your syllabus by this time next year.

नोट: नीचे दिया गया sentence formation देखें-

जैसे: By the time I reach the station, the train will have left.  
By the time, Simple Present Future Perfect

#### **By the time, Simple Present, Future Perfect**

**Formulae:** + Ve → Sub + will/shall + have + V<sub>3</sub> + obj

- Ve → Sub + will/shall + not + have + V<sub>3</sub> + obj

Sub + won't/shan't + have + V<sub>3</sub> + obj

**Ques** → Will/shall + Sub + have + V<sub>3</sub> + obj ?

Will/shall + Sub + not + have + V<sub>3</sub> + obj ?

Won't/shan't + Sub + have + V<sub>3</sub> + obj ?

अंतर देखें:-

1. **By the time** I reach the station, the train will have left.  
Simple Present Future Perfect

2. **By the time** I reached the station, the train had left.  
Simple Past Past Perfect

### **PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS**

➤ जो कार्य भूतकाल में शुरू हुआ हो और अभी भी चल रहा हो वह **Present Perfect Continuous tense** के अन्तर्गत आता है।

जैसे: I have been living in Delhi for five years.

**Formulae:**

+ Ve → Sub + has/ have + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

- Ve → Sub + has/ have + not + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

Sub + hasn't/ haven't + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

**Ques** → Has/ have + Sub + + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time?

Has/have + Sub + not + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time?

Hasn't/ haven't + Sub + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time?

जैसे: I am teaching you since an hour. (×)

I have been teaching you for an hour. (✓)

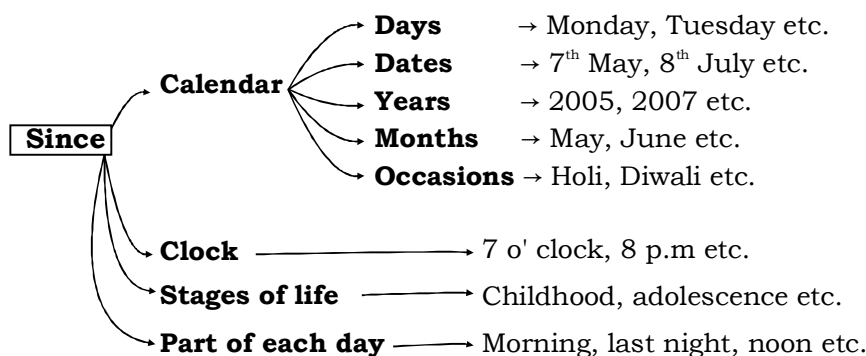
➤ **For-** जब समय की अवधि का उल्लेख हो तब 'For' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: For two hours, for last 2 years  
For five days, for last 2 months  
For 10 years, for last 3 weeks

➤ **Since-** जब शरूआती समय का उल्लेख हो तब **since** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: Since monday, since the beginning  
Since 2008, since time immemorial  
Since 7 P.M., since last year

**Since** का प्रयोग- केलेण्डर, घडी, दिन के पहर एवं जीवन की अवस्थाओं के साथ **'since'** का प्रयोग होता है-



### PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

➤ जो कार्य भूतकाल में शरू हुआ, चला और भतकाल में खत्म हो गया वे **Past Perfect Continuous Tense** के अर्तगत आते हैं।

जैसे: I had been waiting for you since morning.

**Formulae:** + Ve → Sub + had + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

-Ve → Sub + had + not (hadn't) + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

**Ques** → Had + sub + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?

Had + sub + not+ been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?

Hadn't + sub + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?

### FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

➤ जो कार्य भविष्य के किसी समय तक जारी रहेगा वह **Future Perfect Continuous tense** के अर्तगत आता है

जैसे: I shall have been living in Delhi for five years by the end of this year.

He will have been playing from 2 O' clock



**Tense**

- Formulae:** + Ve → Sub + shall/will + have + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ from + time  
- Ve → Sub + shall/will + not + have + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ from + time  
Sub + shan't/won't + have + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ from + time  
**Ques** → Will/shall + sub + have + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ from + time?  
Will/shall + sub + not + have + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ from + time?  
Won't/shan't + sub + have + been + V<sub>1</sub> + ing + obj + for/ from + time?

**नोट:** 1. जिन verbs का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'ing' में नहीं होता, उनका प्रयोग **continuous/perfect continuous** दोनों तरह के **tense** में नहीं हो सकता क्योंकि दोनों में **verb 'ing' form** में होते हैं। अगर ऐसे '**verbs' continuous tense** में हो तो उन्हें **indefinite tense** में परिवर्तित कर दें।

**जैसे:** I am knowing you. (×)  
I know you. (✓)

2. अगर ऐसे verbs '**perfect continuous**' में हो तो उन्हें '**Perfect Tense**' में परिवर्तित कर दें।

**जैसे:** I have been knowing him for five years. (×)  
I have known him for five years. (✓)

3. **For/Since** का प्रयोग **perfect** and **perfect continuous** दोनों प्रकार के tense में होते हैं।

**जैसे:** I have been living in Delhi for five years. (✓)  
I had known him for two years. (✓)

4. अगर वाक्य में **Since + time** का प्रयोग होता है तो वाक्य सिर्फ **perfect** या **perfect continuous tense** में ही होने चाहिए।

**जैसे:** I ate nothing since morning. (×)  
I have eaten nothing since morning. (✓)

---

**SPOTTING THE ERROR**

---

- (a) I have not seen him since twenty years/ (b) and so I cannot say with certainty/ (c) whether he is alive or dead./ (d) No error
- (a) When he did not find his cook in the kitchen/ (b) he asked his wife/ (c) where had he gone./ (d) No error
- (a) Although I am playing cricket/ (b) for more than three years/ (c) I have not been able to score a century/ (d) No error
- (a) I do not know where could he have gone/ (b) so early/ (c) in the morning./ (d) No error
- (a) By the time/ (b) we got our tickets and entered the cinema theatre,/ (c) the show was already begun./ (d) No error
- (a) By the time/ (b) we will get our tickets and enter the cinema theatre,/ (c) the show will have already begun./ (d) No error
- (a) Gowri told me/ (b) his name after/ (c) he left./ (d) No error

8. (a) we have been/ (b) celebrating many festivals/ (c) since centuries./ (d) No error
9. (a) Old age and infirmity/ (b) had began to/ (c) catch up with him./ (d) No error
10. (a) The passer-by told us/ (b) where was the marriage hall/ (c) and even led us to it./ (d) No error
11. (a) I have passed / (b) the examination/ (c) two years ago/ (d) No error
12. (a) Since he joined/ (b) this post, he did not take/ (c) any bribe./ (d) No error
13. (a) Perhaps you know/ (b) that I have passed/ (c) the examination in 1990./ (d) No error
14. (a) He has read four plays/ (b) written by Shakespeare/ (c) by the end of his vacation./ (d) No error
15. (a) When they stole / (b) the money/ (c) and where did they hide it?./ (d) No error
16. (a) The teacher/ (b) has took/ (c) the responsibility/ (d) No error.
17. (a) For time immemorial/ (b) sea shells have been used by man/ (c) in many ways./ (d) No error
18. (a) The river is in spate/ (b) and it has overflown/ (c) its banks./ (d) No error
19. (a) The little boy/ (b) had been waiting for his turn/ (c) since a long time./ (d) No error
20. (a) This T.V. serial/ (b) is going on/ (c) for 3 years./ (d) No error
21. (a) In the early years of the renaissance of Bharatanatyam, hereditary dancers have their own set of accompanists/ (b) who lived with the dancers and travelled with them from place to place/ (c) when they gave performances./ (d) No error
22. (a) This is turned out to be/ (b) one of our most successful projects/ (c) and we have made quite/ (d) a large profit from it./ (e) No error
23. (a) He is given me/ (b) a lot of documents/ (c) to read before/ (d) the presentation tomorrow./ (e) No error
24. (a) Since the trip home/ (b) was expensive I/ (c) did not went home/ (d) during the holidays./ (e) No error
25. (a) As she is late/ (b) for work yesterday she decided/ (c) to skip breakfast and/ (d) leave for office./ (e) No error
26. (a) As soon as the CEO entered the office, the/ (b) union leaders approached him/ (c) and report the matter to him./ (d) No error
27. (a) The college/ (b) is running a computer course/ (c) since 2007./ (d) No error
28. (a) Did he tell you/ (b) why he hasn't/ (c) come yesterday?/ (d) No error
29. (a) Last night I dream/ (b) I was a Sheikh on the 169<sup>th</sup> floor/ (c) of Burj Khalifa./ (d) No error
30. (a) She and her sister/ (b) were working here/ (c) since 1983./ (d) No error

**Tense**

31. (a) Nobody saw him/ (b) since the fire broke/ (c) in his locality./ (d) No error
32. (a) By this time next year/ (b) Ramesh will take/ (c) his degree./ (d) No error
33. (a) The families/ (b) are living in Gulmohar Park/ (c) for the last two decades./ (d) No error
34. (a) My uncle/ (b) has left/ (c) for Bombay last Saturday./ (d) No error
35. (a) Good heavens !/ (b) How has she/ (c) grown !/ (d) No error
36. (a) I ate/ (b) nothing/ (c) since morning/ (d) No error
37. (a) He/ (b) is having/ (c) many friends here/ (d) No error
38. (a) When I went there/ (b) Charles is playing/ (c) a game of chess/ (d) No error
39. (a) The vaccine/ (b) when hit the market/ (c) is dogged by controversy/ (d) No error
40. (a) The victim tried to tell us/ (b) what has happened but/ (c) his voice was not audible./ (d) No error
41. (a) Our history can be seen as a long evolutionary dialectical development/(b) in which there have been/ (c) a painstaking forging of rational and moral self./ (d) No error
42. (a) Last year two Italian prisoners of war/ (b) escapes from a prison camp/ (c) in Kenya during the war./ (d) No error
43. (a) Madhuri Dixit/ (b) is having/ (c) a large fan following./ (d) No error
44. (a) No one heard anything/ (b) about him since/ (c) he left India for good./ (d) No error
45. (a) Before the teacher/ (b) could finish the question/ (c) the students gave the correct answer./ (d) No error
46. (a) She did not prepare/ (b) her/ (c) breakfast yet./ (d) No error
47. (a) Perhaps you do not know/ (b) I am owning/ (c) a farm house besides two bungalows./ (d) No error
48. (a) When Anand reached his village/ (b) he found that / (c) the news about him preceded him./ (d) No error
49. (a) She will already return/ (b) home/ (c) when he arrives./ (d) No error
50. (a) Each one of them/ (b) has have his share/ (c) of joy and sorrow./ (d) No error
51. (a) This custom/ (b) has come down/ (c) since times immemorial./ (d) No error
52. (a) Since his arrival in India,/ (b) he is visiting as many villages as he can/ (c) to acquire a firsthand knowledge of the rural India./ (d) No error.
53. (a) Believe me, I/ (b) am believing/ (c) whatever you have said./ (d) No error.
54. (a) It is time/ (b) we should have done/ (c) something useful/ (d) No error.
55. (a) Mother said,/ (b) "Son,/ (c) you have finished your homework?"/ (d) No error.
56. (a) I am going to buy/ (b) a computer/ (c) when the prices comes down./ (d) No error.
57. (a) I wish/ (b) I have learnt swimming/ (c) when I was young./ (d) No error.

**Answers with explanation**

1. (a) 'twenty years' अवधि है अतः 'since' नहीं 'for' का प्रयोग करें।
2. (c) 'he' के बाद had का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि वाक्य प्रश्न नहीं है। प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में helping verb का प्रयोग subject के पहले होता है।
3. (a) 'am' को 'have been' में परिवर्तित करें। वाक्य present perfect continuous tense में है।
4. (a) He के बाद could का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि वाक्य प्रश्न नहीं है।
5. (c) was के स्थान पर 'had' का प्रयोग करें। अगर भूतकाल में दो कार्य एक के बाद एक हो तो पहले होने वाला कार्य 'Past perfect tense' में होता है और उसके बाद होने वाला कार्य 'simple past tense' में होता है।
6. (b) 'will' हटा दे। 'we get our tickets' सही formation है। अगर दो कार्य भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो तो बाद में होने वाला कार्य 'simple present tense' में होता है और उसके पहले जो कार्य हो चका होगा वह 'future perfect tense' में।
7. (c) 'he had left' सही formation है।  

Simple Past after Past Perfect  
2<sup>nd</sup> Action                      1<sup>st</sup> Action
8. (c) 'since' के स्थान पर 'for' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'centuries' अवधि है।
9. (b) had के साथ V<sub>3</sub> 'begun' का प्रयोग करें।
10. (b) marriage hall के बाद 'was' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 2 की व्याख्या देखें)
11. (a) I passed (Simple past) सही formation है।  
अगर भूतकाल के समय का उल्लेख हो तो present perfect नहीं Simple past tense का प्रयोग करें।
12. (b) 'He did not take' के स्थान पर 'he has not taken' का प्रयोग करें।  

Since S + V<sub>2</sub> S + has + V<sub>3</sub> (Present Perfect का आखिरी point देखें )  
S. Past                      Pres. Perf.
13. (b) 'I passed' सही formation है। (वाक्य II की व्याख्या देखें)।
14. (a) 'He will have read' का प्रयोग 'He has read' के स्थान पर होगा। जो कार्य भविष्य के किसी समय तक हो चका होगा वह future perfect tense के अंतर्गत आता है।
15. (a) 'When they stole' के स्थान पर 'When did they steal' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि वाक्या प्रश्न है।
16. (b) has के साथ V<sub>3</sub> 'taken' का प्रयोग करें।
17. (a) Time immemorial (अनंत काल) शुरुआती समय को दर्शाता है ना कि अवधि को। अतः 'for' के स्थान पर 'since' का प्रयोग करें।
18. (b) 'Overflow' का V<sub>3</sub> overflowed है।
19. (c) 'since' के स्थान पर 'for' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'a long time' अवधि है।
20. (b) Is going के स्थान पर 'has been going' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य present perfect Continuous tense का है।
21. (a) 'early years of renaissance' से ज्ञात होता होता है कि वाक्य भूतकाल का है। अतः hereditary dancers के बाद 'have' के स्थान पर 'had' का प्रयोग करें।
22. (a) 'This is turned out' के स्थान पर 'this has turned out' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य present perfect

**Tense**

tense में है।

23. (a) 'He is given me' के स्थान पर 'he has given me' का प्रयोग करें।
24. (c) did not के साथ  $V_1$  का प्रयोग होता है। 'went' के स्थान पर 'go' का प्रयोग करें।
25. (a) 'She is late' के स्थान पर 'she was late' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि yesterday भतकाल के समय को दर्शाता है।
26. (c) 'report' के स्थान पर 'reported' का प्रयोग करें verb 'report' को छोड़कर सभी verb ' $V_2$ ' form में है।
27. (b) is 'running' के स्थान पर 'has been running' का प्रयोग करें।
28. (b) 'he hasn't' के स्थान पर 'he hadn't' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 11 की व्याख्या देखें)।
29. (a) 'last night' के साथ  $V_2$  का प्रयोग करें। यानि dream के स्थान पर dreamed या dreamt का।
30. (b) 'were' के स्थान पर 'had been' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि वाक्य में since + time (since 1983) का प्रयोग हो रहा है। वाक्य Past Perfect Continuous tense में होना चाहिए।
31. (a) 'Nobody has seen him' का प्रयोग करें। Since के बाद 'simple past' है तो Since के पहले 'Present perfect' का प्रयोग होगा।
32. (b) 'Ramesh will take' के स्थान पर 'Ramesh will have taken' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 14 की व्याख्या देखें)।
33. (b) 'are' के स्थान पर 'have been' का प्रयोग करें।
34. (b) has left के स्थान पर 'left' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 11 की व्याख्या देखें)।
35. (b) 'has she' के स्थान पर 'she has' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य प्रश्न नहीं है।
36. (a) 'I ate' के स्थान पर 'I have eaten' का प्रयोग करें। 'Since/for + time' का प्रयोग perfect एवं perfect Continuous tense में ही होता है।
37. (b) 'is having' के स्थान पर 'has' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'have' का अर्थ होता है 'to possess' तो 'have' के साथ 'ing' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
38. (b) 'is' के स्थान पर 'was' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'When I went there' से स्पष्ट है कि वाक्य भतकाल का है।
39. (c) 'is' के स्थान पर was का प्रयोग करें। vaccine when hit' से स्पष्ट है वाक्य simple past tense में है।
40. (b) 'has' के स्थान पर 'had' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि victim (पीडित) ने जब बोलने की कोशिश की उस से पहले उसके साथ हादसा हो चका था। यानि घटना Past Perfect tense में होना चाहिए।
41. (b) 'have' के स्थान पर 'has' का प्रयोग करें।
42. (b) 'escapes' के स्थान पर 'escaped' का प्रयोग करें।
43. (b) 'is having' के स्थान पर 'has' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 37 को देखें)।
44. (a) 'No one heard' के स्थान पर 'no one has heard' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 12 की व्याख्या देखें)।
45. (c) 'the students gave' के स्थान पर 'the students had given' का प्रयोग करें।

Before Simple Past , Past Perfect (Past Perfect देखें)।  
 $2^{nd}$  Action                       $1^{st}$  Action

46. (a) 'She did not prepare' के स्थान पर 'she has not prepared' का प्रयोग करें। 'yet' का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'Present perfect negative sentences' में होता है।
47. (b) 'I am owning' को 'I own' में परिवर्तित करें।
48. (c) 'Preceded' के स्थान पर 'had preceded' का प्रयोग करें। (47 एवं 48 की व्याख्या के लिए Past Perfect देखें)।
49. (a) 'Will have already returned' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 6 की व्याख्या देखें)।
50. (b) 'has' के बाद  $V_3$  'had' का प्रयोग होगा।
51. (c) 'times' को 'time' में परिवर्तित करें।
52. (b) 'is' के स्थान पर 'has been' का प्रयोग करें।
53. (b) 'am believing' को 'believe' में परिवर्तित करें।
54. (b) 'we should have done' को 'we did' में परिवर्तित करें।
55. (c) 'you have' को 'have you' में परिवर्तित करें। वाक्य प्रश्नात्मक है।
56. (c) 'Prices comes' को 'price comes' में परिवर्तित करें।
57. (b) 'have' को 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। क्योंकि वाक्य Past का है।

# 3

## PASSIVE VOICE

### CHAPTER

- **Verb** का वह रूप **Voice** कहलाता है जिससे पता चलता है कि कर्ता कोई काम करता है या कर्ता पर कोई काम होता है।

### ACTIVE VOICE

- **Verb** का वह रूप **active voice** कहलाता है जिससे ये ज्ञात हो कि कर्ता (**Sub**) किसी क्रिया (**verb**) को किसी कर्म (**obj**) पर करता है।

**General Formula:-** **Sub + verb + obj**

### PASSIVE VOICE

- **Verb** का वह रूप **Passive Voice** कहलाता है जिससे ये ज्ञात होता है कि कर्म (**obj**) पर किसी क्रिया (**verb**) का प्रभाव पड़ता है।

**General Formula:-** **Obj + Helping Verb + V<sub>3</sub> + by + sub**  
Tense के अनुसार परिवर्तित

- **Passive Voice** का प्रयोग कहाँ होता है?

1. जब क्रिया स्वतः नहीं होता बल्कि उसे किया जाता है।

जैसे: Tea grows both in Assam and Ceylon. (×)

Tea is grown both in Assam and Ceylon. (✓)

2. जब क्रिया महत्वपूर्ण हो यानि 'घटना'।

जैसे: He was rushed to the hospital where he was declared brought dead.

- इस वाक्य में 'घटना' महत्वपूर्ण है यानि किसी 'दुर्घटना' के बाद घायल व्यक्ति को तुरंत अस्पताल ले जाना और उसे मृत घोषित किया जाना। यहाँ घायल को अस्पताल ले जाने वाले 'लोग' और ये घोषणा करने वाले 'डॉक्टर' कि घायल को मृत लाया गया अप्रासंगिक (irrelevant) है।

3. जब कर्ता का पता नहीं या ये महत्वपूर्ण नहीं कि कर्ता ज्ञात हो।

जैसे: People were relocated from the flood affected villages.

अब विभिन्न Tense के Active एवं Passive Voice देखें-

### INDEFINITE TENSE

Indefinite Tense	Active	Passive
Simple Present	Sub + V <sub>1</sub> + obj	Obj + is/am/are + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub.
Simple Past	Sub + V <sub>2</sub> + obj	Obj + was/were + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub.
Simple Future	Sub + shall/will + V <sub>1</sub> + obj	Obj + shall/will + be + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub.
Modal	Sub + modall + V <sub>1</sub> + obj	Obj + modal + be + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub.

### CHANGE THE VOICE

#### Active

- जैसे: 1. Police arrested him.  
 2. People speak english all over the world.  
 3. A teacher teaches English here.  
 4. No one desire riots.  
 5. I will not tolerate this nonsense.

#### Passive

1. He was arrested.  
 2. English is spoken all over the world.  
 3. English is taught here.  
 4. Riots are not desired.  
 5. This nonsense will not be tolerated by me.

### Explanation of sentences no. 1, 2 & 3.

- कुछ क्रियायें निश्चित sub के द्वारा किए जाते हैं। ऐसे वाक्यों में **active voice** में उसी **sub** का प्रयोग करे जो सामान्यतः वह कार्य करता हो अगर **passive voice** में sub का उल्लेख नहीं हो (वाक्य 1 से 3 देखें)।
- इसी प्रकार क्रियायें अगर किसी **indefinite pronoun** या **vague noun** के द्वारा किये जाएं तो **Passive voice** में 'by + sub' का प्रयोग न करें। (वाक्य 2 एवं 4 देखें)। ऐसा तब भी किया जाता है जब 'sub' इतना obvious हो कि उसका उल्लेख करना जरूरी नहीं हो। (वाक्य 2 देखें)।
- **Be (या उसके forms)** अगर **main verb** के स्थान पर हो तो वाक्य **passive voice** में नहीं हो सकता।

- जैसे: 1. I am happy. (A.V)  
m.v.
2. He should be polite. (A.V)  
m.v.
- इन दोनों वाक्यों का passive voice नहीं बन सकता।

### CONTINUOUS TENSE

Continuous Tense	Active	Passive
Present Continuous	Sub + is/ am/ are/ V <sub>1</sub> + ing + obj	obj + is/am/are + being + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub
Past Continuous	Sub + was / were + V <sub>1</sub> + ing + obj	obj + was/were + being + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub
Future Continuous	Sub + shall/will + be + V <sub>1</sub> + ing + obj	Future Continuous का Passive नहीं बनाया जा सकता है।
Modal Continuous	Sub + modal + be + V <sub>1</sub> + ing + obj	Modal Continuous का Passive नहीं बनाया जा सकता है।

नोट: अगर **Passive Voice 'Continuous Tense'** में हो तो 'being' का प्रयोग करना न भूलें।



Passive Voice

**CHANGE THE VOICE**

- जैसे: 1. The committee is looking into the matter. (Active)  
 The matter is being looked **into** by the committee. (Passive)
- नोट: **Verb** के बाद आने वाले **preposition** को **P.V.** में लगाना न भुले।
2. They are laughing at you. (Active)  
 You are being laughed **at** by them. (Passive)
3. The accused is being produced before the court. (Passive)  
 The police are producing the accused before the court. (Active)
4. Right to protest peacefully is being demanded by the revolutionaries. (Passive)  
 The revolutionaries are demanding right to protest peacefully. (Active)
5. You were not taking the exam seriously. (Active)  
 The exam was not being taken seriously by you. (Passive)

**PERFECT TENSE**

Perfect Tense	Active	Passive
Present Perfect	Sub + has/have + V <sub>3</sub> + obj	Obj + has / have + been + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub
Past Perfect	Sub + had + V <sub>3</sub> + obj	Obj + had + been + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub
Future Perfect	Sub + shall/ will + have + V <sub>3</sub> + obj	Obj + shall / will + have + been + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub
Modal Perfect	Sub + Modal + have + V <sub>3</sub> + obj	Obj + modal + have + been + V <sub>3</sub> + by + sub

नोट: अगर **Passive Voice 'Perfect Tense'** में हो तो **'been'** का प्रयोग करना न भूलें।

**CHANGE THE VOICE**

- जैसे: 1. **Who** has seen him? (Active)  
**By whom** has he been seen? (Passive)
2. The news has surprised us. (Active)  
 We have been surprised **at** the news. (Passive)
3. He will have understood your ulterior motive by that time. (Active)  
 Your ulterior motive will have been understood by him by that time. (Passive)
4. The committee had looked into the matter impartially before he was found guilty.  
 The matter had been looked into by the committee impartially before it found him guilty.

नोट: कुछ ऐसे **verbs** होते हैं जिनके बाद **fixed preposition** आते हैं।  
 known **to**, surprised **at**, amazed **at**, astonished **at**, startled **at**, vexed **at**, annoyed **with** somebody, annoyed **at** something, contained **in**, embodied **in**, crammed **with**, decorated **with**, filled **with**, ornamented **with**, thronged **with**, tired **of**, engulfed **in**.

- जैसे: 1. The fire engulfed the building.  
 The building was engulfed **in** the fire.
2. This box contains ten cigars.  
 Ten cigars are contained **in** this box.

### WH- QUESTIONS:

➤ **Yes/No Questions** का **Passive** बनाकर उसके पहले **Interrogative Words** जोड़ देने से **Wh-Questions** बन जाता है।

जैसे: Active: Have you broken the glass?  
Passive: Has the glass been broken by you?

➤ अब इन **Yes/No Questions** के पहले **Interrogative Word** जोड़कर देखें-

Active: Why have you broken the glass?  
Passive: Why has the glass been broken by you?  
↓ ↓  
Interrogative word Yes/ No Question

➤ यह Rule - **Why, How, When, Where, What** आदि के साथ लागू होते हैं। किन्तु, **Who** या **Whom** आदि से शुरू होने वाले Questions के Passive को देखें-

Active: **Who** wrote the Ramayana?  
Passive: **By whom** was the Ramayana written?

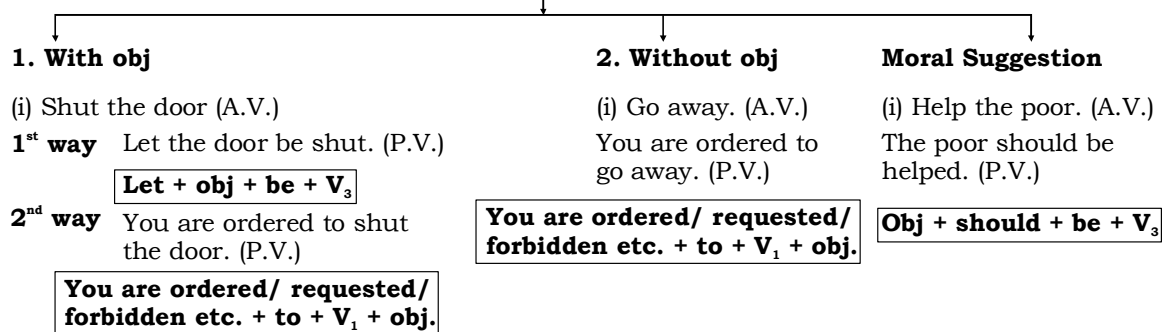
or

**Who** was the Ramayana written by?

[Whom was the Ramayana written by? कहना गलत है।]

Active: **Whom** have you invited?  
Passive: **Who** has been invited by you?

### IMPERATIVE SENTENCES



### INFINITIVE (TO + V<sub>1</sub>)

**Active:** To + V<sub>1</sub>

**Passive:** To + be + V<sub>3</sub>

1. Active : I am to do it.  
Passive : It is to be done by me.
2. Active: You are to write it in ink.  
Passive: It is to be written in ink.

**Passive Voice**

**नोट:** 'to + V<sub>1</sub>' को passive voice में 'to + be + V<sub>3</sub>' में परिवर्तित कर देते हैं पर ये हमेशा नहीं किया जा सकता। अगर 'to + V<sub>1</sub>' को करने वाले **subject** का उल्लेख 'to + V<sub>1</sub>' से पहले हो चुका हो तो 'to + V<sub>1</sub>' को 'to + be + V<sub>3</sub>' में परिवर्तित न करें।

**जैसे:** Active: The teacher gave me a book to read.

Passive: I was given a book to read by my teacher.

**'HAVE/HAS/HAD + TO + V<sub>1</sub>**

**Active:** S + have / has / had + to + V<sub>1</sub> + Obj

**Passive:** Obj + have / has / had + to + be + V<sub>3</sub> + by + sub.

**जैसे:** (i) Active: I have to finish this work.

↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
S	have	to	V <sub>1</sub>	Obj

Passive: This work has to be finished by me

↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
Obj	has	to	be	V <sub>3</sub>	by	sub

(ii) Active: You have to choose a dress.

Passive: A dress has to be chosen by you.

**VERB- LET, BID, HELP, MAKE**

➤ Verb- **Let, bid, help** और **make** का प्रयोग **active voice** में **direct infinitive** ( बिना 'to' के ) के साथ होता है।

- जैसे:**
1. She let me go.
  2. I bade him leave the room.
  3. They must help me finish the work.
  4. I made him wash all the clothes

➤ **Bid, help** और **make** का प्रयोग **passive voice** में 'to' के साथ होगा।

- जैसे:**
1. He was bidden to leave the room by me.
  2. I must be helped to finish the work.
  3. He was made to wash all the clothes by me.

**नोट:** 'Let' का प्रयोग वाक्य में **अलग-अलग अर्थ** में हो सकता है। Passive voice में भी उसी अनुसार परिवर्तन होंगे।

- जैसे:**
1. Let me play ( अनुमति )  
I may be allowed to play.
  2. Let him do this work.  
Let this work be done by him.
  3. Let us organize a party ( सलाह, वाक्य में object भी है )  
A party should be organized.
  4. Let us help the poor. ( नैतिक सलाह )  
The poor should be helped.

**VERBS FOLLOWED BY ADJECTIVES.**

Rose smells sweet. (Active)  
 Rose is sweet when it is smelt. (Passive)

Sub +	<u>verb</u>	+ adjective + when +	<u>pronoun</u>	+ <u>H.V</u>	+ <u>V<sub>3</sub></u>
	<small>according to tense and number</small>		<small>according to number</small>	<small>according to tense and number</small>	<small>M.V in V<sub>3</sub> form.</small>

- जैसे:
1. Quinine tastes bitter. (Active)  
 Quinine is bitter when it is tasted. (Passive)
  2. Those mangoes tasted sour. (Active)  
 Those mangoes were sour when they were tasted. (Passive)

**PRACTICE SET**

**Directions: A sentence has been given in Active/Passive Voice. Out of the four alternatives suggested below, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Passive/Active Voice.**

- 1. What amused you?**
  - (a) What you are made to amuse by?
  - (b) By what are you being amused?
  - (c) By what were you amused?
  - (d) By what have you been amused?
- 2. Smoke and flames engulfed the area and made rescue operations difficult.**
  - (a) The area was engulfed in smoke and flames and make rescue operations difficult.
  - (b) The area was engulfed in smoke and flames making rescue operations difficult.
  - (c) The area has been engulfed in smoke and flames and made rescue operations difficult.
  - (d) The area was engulfed in smoke and flames and rescue operations were made difficult.
- 3. He asked me to finish the work in time.**
  - (a) I was asked that I should finish the work in time.
  - (b) He asked me that I should finish the work in time.
  - (c) I was asked to finish the work in time.
  - (d) I was asked to finished the work in time by him.
- 4. Quinine tastes bitter.**
  - (a) Quinine is bitter when it is tasted.
  - (b) Quinine is bitter tested.
  - (c) The taste of quinine is bitter.
  - (d) Quinine is tasted bitter.
- 5. The vintage cars hold a special place in the hearts of their owners.**
  - (a) A special place in the hearts of the vintage car owners is held by them.
  - (b) A special place was held by the vintage cars in the hearts of their owners.
  - (c) A special place is held by the vintage cars in the hearts of their owners.
  - (d) A special place is being held by the vintage cars in the hearts of their owners.

*Passive Voice*

**6. The accountant took the cheque from the customer.**

- (a) The cheque is taken from the customer by the accountant.
- (b) The cheque was taken from the customer by the accountant.
- (c) The customer was taken the cheque by the accountant.
- (d) The cheque had been taken from the customer by the accountant.

**7. The gatekeeper refused him admittance.**

- (a) He was refused admittance by the gatekeeper.
- (b) Admittance is refused to him by the gatekeeper.
- (c) Admittance was refused by the gatekeeper .
- (d) Admittance is refused him by the gatekeeper.

**8. Sohan was interviewing the political leaders.**

- (a) The political leaders were being interviewed by Sohan.
- (b) The political leader was being interviewed by Sohan.
- (c) The political leaders are being interviewed by Sohan.
- (d) The political leaders is being interviewed by Sohan.

**9. The builders have built a perfect dam across the stream.**

- (a) A perfect dam has built by the builders across the stream.
- (b) A perfect dam has been built by the builders across the stream.
- (c) A perfect dam have been built by the builders across the stream.
- (d) A perfect dam was being built by the builders across the stream.

**10. They should follow all the instructions carefully.**

- (a) All the instructions are carefully followed by them.
- (b) All the instructions should be carefully followed by them.
- (c) All the instructions have to be followed by them.
- (d) All the instructions can be carefully followed by them.

**11. Shut the door and leave.**

- (a) Let the door be shut and you are ordered to leave.
- (b) Let the door be shutted and you are ordered to leave.
- (c) Let the door be shut and you be left.
- (d) Let be the door shut and you are ordered to leave.

**12. Who knows you?**

- (a) By whom are you known?
- (b) Whom are you known by?
- (c) To whom are you known?
- (d) Who are you known?

**13. Help others but do not expect anything in return.**

- (a) You are advised to help others and expect anything in return.
- (b) Let others be helped and expect nothing in return.
- (c) You were advised to help others and expect anything in return.
- (d) You are advised to help others but forbidden to expect anything in return.

- 14. We are taught English here.**
- (a) A teacher teaches us English here.
  - (b) English is taught here.
  - (c) A lady teaches us English here.
  - (d) You teach us English here.
- 15. The news surprised us.**
- (a) We were surprised at the news.
  - (b) We were surprised by the news.
  - (c) We were surprised with the news.
  - (d) We were surprised on the news.
- 16. Spain expected to win the world cup.**
- (a) The world cup was expected to be won by Spain.
  - (b) It was expected by Spain to win the World Cup.
  - (c) To win the World Cup has been expected by Spain.
  - (d) Spain expected that the World Cup be won by it.
- 17. After taking her to the hospital, I dropped her at her place.**
- (a) After being taken to the hospital, she was dropped at her place by me.
  - (b) After been taken to the hospital, she was dropped at her place by me.
  - (c) After being taken she was sent to hospital and dropped at her place by me.
  - (d) After being taken to the hospital, she was dropped on her place by me.
- 18. Have this lock broken.**
- (a) Break this lock.
  - (b) Get someone to break this lock.
  - (c) Let this lock be broken.
  - (d) Have broken this lock be.
- 19. Think before you speak.**
- (a) Let thinking be done before you speak.
  - (b) Let speaking be not done before you think.
  - (c) You are advised to think before you speak.
  - (d) You are requested to think before you speak.
- 20. The case is being investigated by the police alongwith the CBI.**
- (a) The police alongwith the CBI are investigating the case.
  - (b) The police alongwith the CBI is investigating the case.
  - (c) The police alongwith the CBI was investigating the case.
  - (d) The police alongwith the CBI were investigating the case.
- 21. He doesn't like people to call him cheat.**
- (a) He doesn't like to be called a cheat.
  - (b) He doesn't like to be call is a cheat.
  - (c) He doesn't like anyone to call him cheat.
  - (d) To call cheat is not liked by him.

*Passive Voice*

**22. At Paramount every question is answered as we believe that even Einstein asked questions.**

- (a) At Paramount every question is answered as we believe that even questions were asked by Einstein.
- (b) At Paramount every question is answered as that is believed by us that Einstein even asked question.
- (c) At Paramount we answer every question as it is believed by us that questions were asked by even Einstein.
- (d) Every question is answered by Paramount as we believe that Einstein asked even questions.

**23. You must hit the nail on the head.**

- (a) The nail must hit on the head.
- (b) The nail must be hit on the head.
- (c) The nail has to be hit on the head.
- (d) The nail on the head must be hit.

**24. Those mangoes smell sweet.**

- (a) Those mangoes are sweet when they are smell.
- (b) Those mangoes are sweet when they are smelt
- (c) Those mangoes were sweet when those are smelt.
- (d) Sweet are smelt by those mangoes.

**25. The little boy asked the man the way to Athens.**

- (a) The man has been asked the way to Athens by the little boy.
- (b) The man was asked the way to Athens by the little boy.
- (c) The man was being asked the way to Athens by the little boy.
- (d) The way to Athens was asked by the man from the little boy.

**26. Shut the door and go away.**

- (a) Let the door be shut and you are ordered to go away.
- (b) You are ordered to go away and shut the door.
- (c) Let the door be shut and let you be gone.
- (d) Shut the door and let you be gone.

**27. Your proposal was objected to and everyone laughed at you.**

- (a) Everyone objected your proposal and laughed at you.
- (b) Everyone objected to your proposal and you were laughed at.
- (c) Everyone objected to and laughed at you and your proposal.
- (d) Your proposal was objected and you were laughed.

**28. Let everyone be given a chance.**

- (a) Give everyone a chance.
- (b) Give a chance for everyone.
- (c) Let a chance be given to everyone.
- (d) I will give up a chance.

**29. Do not make a noise.**

- (a) Let a noise be made not.
- (b) You are requested to not make a noise.
- (c) You are ordered to not make a noise.
- (d) You are forbidden to make a noise.

**30. People are raising a hue and cry and are breaking the furniture.**

- (a) A hue and cry is being raised and the furniture is being broken by the people.
- (b) A hue and cry is being raised and the furniture are being broken by the people.
- (c) Hue and cry and the furniture is being broken.
- (d) A hue and cry has been raised and the furniture has been broke.

**31. The fur coats were imported from Sweden by us.**

- (a) Sweden imported the fur coats.
- (b) Sweden was imported the fur coats.
- (c) We imported the fur coats from Sweden.
- (d) We had imported the fur coats from Sweden.

**32. A bullet in the chest is adored by the brave.**

- (a) The brave adores a bullet in the chest.
- (b) The brave adore a bullet in the chest.
- (c) The brave adored a bullet in the chest.
- (d) The brave have adored a bullet in the chest.

**33. Decisions must be taken.**

- (a) Decisions should be taken.
- (b) We must take decisions.
- (c) It is good to take decisions.
- (d) We should take decisions.

**34. Are they not cheating us?**

- (a) Are we not being cheated?
- (b) Are not we being cheated?
- (c) Are we being not cheated?
- (d) Are we being cheated?

**35. The room was cleaned.**

- (a) The cleaner cleaned the room.
- (b) The room should be cleaned.
- (c) I cleaned the room.
- (d) Someone cleaned the room.

**36. I should have met him yesterday.**

- (a) He should have met by me yesterday.
- (b) He should be meeting me yesterday.
- (c) He should have been meeting by me yesterday.
- (d) He should have been met by me yesterday.



Passive Voice

**37. One could see her lying on the flowerbeds.**

- (a) Flowerbeds could be seen lying on her.
- (b) She could see on lying on flowerbeds.
- (c) She could be seen lying on flowerbeds.
- (d) She could be lying on flowerbeds seen.

**38. We expect good news.**

- (a) Good news is expected by us.
- (b) Let good news be expected.
- (c) Let us expect good news.
- (d) Expecting good news from them.

**39. My teacher gave me a journal to read.**

- (a) I was given a journal by my teacher to be read.
- (b) A journal to read was given to me by my teacher.
- (c) A journal was given me to read by my teacher.
- (d) I was given a journal by my teacher to read.

**40. It is impossible to do this.**

- (a) This is impossible to be done.
- (b) To do this by it is impossible.
- (c) It is impossible to have done this.
- (d) It can't be done.

**41. Physically challenged people should not be laughed at by the public.**

- (a) Physically challenged people should not laugh at the public.
- (b) The public will not be laughing at physically challenged people.
- (c) The public shall not be laughing at physically challenged people.
- (d) The public should not laugh at physically challenged people.

**42. They say that people live on distant planets .**

- (a) It was said that people live on distant planets .
- (b) It is being said that people live on distant planets .
- (c) It is said that people live on distant planets .
- (d) It is saying that people live on distant planets .

**43. Can we send the parcel tomorrow?**

- (a) Can be the parcel sent by us tomorrow?
- (b) Can we be sent by the parcel tomorrow?
- (c) Can the parcel be sent by us tomorrow?
- (d) Can the parcel sent by us tomorrow?

**44. A detective arrested him as soon as he got home.**

- (a) An arrest was made by a detective as soon as he got home.
- (b) He was arrested by a detective as soon as he got home.
- (c) A detective was arrested by him as soon as he got home.
- (d) An arrest was detected by him as soon as he got home.

**45. They cooked the food and sent it to the orphanage.**

- (a) They cooked food was sent to the orphanage by them.
- (b) The food was cooked and sent to the orphanage by them.
- (c) The food was sent to the orphanage by them.
- (d) The food was cooked and sent by them.

**46. Where were they playing the cricket match?**

- (a) Where was the cricket match played?
- (b) Where has the cricket match been played?
- (c) Where will the cricket match be played?
- (d) Where was the cricket match being played?

**47. They say he can teach almost anything in this world.**

- (a) It is said that almost anything in this world can be taught by him.
- (b) It was said that almost anything could be taught by him.
- (c) They say almost anything could be taught by him.
- (d) They say anything almost will be taught by him.

**48. Please enter by the left door.**

- (a) Let the left door be entered by you.
- (b) You are requested to enter by the left door.
- (c) Let it be entered by the left door.
- (d) The left door is requested to be entered.

**49. I would advise you not to get on the wrong side of your boss.**

- (a) It would be advised by me not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
- (b) It would be my advice not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
- (c) You would be advised by me not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
- (d) My advice to you would be not to get on the wrong side of your boss.

**50. They have done this to defuse the crisis.**

- (a) The crisis has been defused by them.
- (b) This has been done by them to defuse the crisis .
- (c) To defuse the crisis this was done by them.
- (d) To defuse the crisis this is done by them.

**51. Open the door.**

- (a) The door must be opened.
- (b) The door will be opened.
- (c) The door is opened.
- (d) Let the door be opened.

**52. I did not trust anybody.**

- (a) Nobody was trusted by me.
- (b) Anybody had been trusted by me.
- (c) Nobody would be trusted by me.
- (d) Nobody has been trusted by me.

*Passive Voice*

**53. Did he remember the date and time?**

- (a) Are the date and time remembered by him?
- (b) Was he remembering the date and time?
- (c) Were the date and time remembered by him?
- (d) Did the date and time be remembered by him?

**54. The boys were digging a hole in the ground.**

- (a) A hole was being dug in the ground by the boys.
- (b) In the ground, the boys dug a hole.
- (c) A hole in the ground has been dug by the boys.
- (d) A hole in the ground has been dug by the boys.

**55. We must now deal with these problems.**

- (a) These problems must now be dealt with by us.
- (b) These problems must now be dealing with by us.
- (c) These problems must now deal with by us.
- (d) These problems are to be dealt with by us.

**56. The audience loudly cheered the leader's speech.**

- (a) The leader's speech was loudly cheered by the audience.
- (b) The leader's speech in loudly cheered by the audience.
- (c) The audience loudly cheered the leader for his speech.
- (d) The speech of the leader was loudly cheered by the audience.

**57. Someone is following us.**

- (a) We are following by someone.
- (b) We are being followed by someone.
- (c) We were being followed by someone.
- (d) We had been followed by someone.

**58. He hasn't slept in his bed.**

- (a) His bed hasn't been slept in.
- (b) He had not been slept in his bed.
- (c) His bed had been slept in.
- (d) His bed had not been slept in.

**59. I was recommended another lawyer.**

- (a) Somebody recommended another lawyer.
- (b) Somebody recommended me to another lawyer.
- (c) Somebody recommended me another lawyer.
- (d) Somebody recommends me another lawyer.

**60. Many a person has been saved from the man-eaters by these hunters.**

- (a) These hunters will save many a person from the man-eaters.
- (b) These hunters say many a person from the man-eaters.
- (c) These hunters saved many a person from the man-eaters.
- (d) These hunters have saved many a person from the man-eaters.

**61. Must we cut this tree?**

- (a) Must this tree will cut?
- (b) Must this tree be cut?
- (c) Must his tree was cut?
- (d) Must his tree is cut?

**62. You will be looked after well.**

- (a) They will look after you well.
- (b) They can't look after you well.
- (c) They may look after well.
- (d) They shall look after you well.

**63. Didn't they tell you to be here by six o'clock?**

- (a) Weren't you told to be here by six o'clock?
- (b) Haven't they told you to be here by six o'clock?
- (c) You were expected to be here by six o'clock.
- (d) They expected you to be here by six O'clock.

**64. Don't touch this switch.**

- (a) This switch does not be touched.
- (b) This switch must not be touched.
- (c) This switch don't be touched.
- (d) This switch need not be touched.

**65. One cannot gather grapes from thistles.**

- (a) Thistles cannot be gathered from grapes.
- (b) Grapes cannot be gathered from thistles.
- (c) Grapes and thistles cannot be gathered by one.
- (d) Grapes cannot be gathered by them.

**66. They will have completed the work by the time we get there.**

- (a) The work will be completed by the time we get there.
- (b) The work will have been completed by the time we get there.
- (c) The work will have completed by the time we get there.
- (d) The work will have been completed by the time we have got there.

**67. You will have to pull down this sky-scraper as you have not complied with the town planning regulations.**

- (a) This sky-scraper will have to be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied with.
- (b) This sky-scraper will have to be pulled down by you as the town planning regulations have not been complied by you.
- (c) This sky-scraper will be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied with.
- (d) This sky-scraper will have to be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied.

Passive Voice

**68. He has written a poem which fascinates every one.**

- (a) A poem has been written by him which fascinates every one.
- (b) Everyone is fascinated by the poem which has been written by him.
- (c) Poem written by him fascinates everyone.
- (d) Every one fascinates the poem which is written by him.

**69. Will those happy days be ever forgotten by me?**

- (a) Will I ever forget those happy days?
- (b) Shall I ever forget those happy days?
- (c) Would I forget these happy days?
- (d) Ever shall I forget those happy days?

**70. You are requested to permit him.**

- (a) Please permit him.
- (b) I request you to permit me.
- (c) He requests to permit him.
- (d) I plead you to permit him.

**71. I am not going to tolerate this nonsense anymore.**

- (a) This nonsense is not going to be tolerated by me anymore.
- (b) This nonsense is not being gone to be tolerated by me anymore.
- (c) This nonsense is not being going to be tolerated by me anymore.
- (d) Tolerate is not being going to be done by me of this nonsense.

**72. The boys were being laughed at by the passers-by on the busy thoroughfare last evening.**

- (a) The passers-by laughed at the boys on the busy thoroughfare last evening.
- (b) The passers-by were laughing at the boys on the busy thoroughfare last evening.
- (c) The boys were laughing at the passers-by on the busy thoroughfare last evening.
- (d) None of the above.

**73. The police are questioning Mr. and Mrs. Sharma.**

- (a) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma are questioned by the police.
- (b) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma have been questioning the police.
- (c) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma have been questioned by the police.
- (d) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma are being questioned by the police.

**74. Before they invented printing, people had to write everything by hand.**

- (a) Before printing was invented everything had to be written by hand.
- (b) Before printing was invented by them, everything had to be written.
- (c) Before printing was invented people had to write everything by hand.
- (d) Before printing was invented everything was written by hand.

**75. Did any one ever make it clear how one operates the machine?**

- (a) Was it ever made clear how the machine is operated?
- (b) Did any one ever make it by clear how the machine is operated?

(c) Was ever it made clear how to operate the machine?

(d) Was how to operate the machine ever made clear?

**76. Why did your father refuse to give the money to you?**

(a) Why was your father refused money to you?

(b) Why was the money not given to you by your father?

(c) Why was the money refused to be given to you by your father?

(d) Why the money was refused to be given to you by your father?

**77. Do you expect your parents to come from Hyderabad today?**

(a) Did your parents come today from Hyderabad?

(b) Were your parents expected to come from Hyderabad today?

(c) Are your parents expected to come today from Hyderabad?

(d) Do your parents are expected to come today from Hyderabad?

**78. Why are you raising a hue and cry?**

(a) Why are a hue and cry being raised by you?

(b) Why is a hue and cry being raised by you?

(c) Why a hue and cry are being raised by you?

(d) Why a hue and cry is being raised by you?

**79. They say that there are living beings on Mars.**

(a) They say that Mars has living beings.

(b) It is said that there are people living on Mars.

(c) On Mars, there are living beings.

(d) It is said that there are living beings on Mars.

**80. A fortnight after he was convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate, the Delhi High Court sentenced him to death on Monday.**

(a) A fortnight after he had been convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he had been sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.

(b) A fortnight after he was convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he has been sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.

(c) A fortnight after he was convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he was sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.

(d) A fortnight after he was been convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he was sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.

**81. Their dog bit our neighbour yesterday.**

(a) Our neighbour bit their dog yesterday.

(b) Our neighbour bitten by their do yesterday.

(c) Our neighbour was bitten by their dog yesterday.

(d) Our neighbour were bit by their dog yesterday.

**82. The MD told us about the new project.**

(a) We were told about the new project by the MD.

(b) We are told about the new project by the MD.

*Passive Voice*

- (c) We told by MD about the new project.
- (d) We had been told by MD about project.

**83. The Minister had already informed his Cabinet about his decision.**

- (a) His Cabinet was already informed about the Minister's decision.
- (b) His Cabinet has already informed the Minister about his decision.
- (c) His Cabinet had already been informed about his decision by the Minister.
- (d) His Cabinet will have already been informed about the Minister's decision.

**84. Sayali gave the beggar an old sari.**

- (a) An old sari was given to Sayali by the beggar.
- (b) An old sari was given to the beggar by Sayali.
- (c) The beggar was being given on old sari by Sayali.
- (d) The beggar had to be given on old sari by Sayali.

**85. They are going to perform "Hamlet".**

- (a) "Hamlet" is going to be performed by them.
- (b) "Hamlet" is going to perform by them.
- (c) "Hamlet" is to perform.
- (d) "Hamlet" has to be performed.

**86. I was shocked by the letter.**

- (a) They shocked me with the letter.
- (b) I am shocked.
- (c) The letter shocked me.
- (d) I shocked with the letter.

**87. Somebody stole my car last week.**

- (a) Last week my car was steal by somebody.
- (b) My car was stolen last week by somebody.
- (c) My car was stolen that week by somebody.
- (d) Somebody last week has stolen my car.

**88. Do they sell construction material?**

- (a) Does construction material sold by them?
- (b) Is construction material selling by them?
- (c) Is construction material sold by them?
- (d) Does construction material sell by them?

**89. Sharma was cleaning the house.**

- (a) The house was cleaned by Sharma.
- (b) The house will be cleaned by Sharma.
- (c) The house was being cleaned by Sharma.
- (d) The house is being cleaned by Sharma.

**90. I bought a new shirt last week.**

- (a) Last week a new shirt was bought by I.
- (b) Last week a new shirt is bought by I.

- (c) Last week a new shirt was bought by me.
- (d) Last week a new shirt had been bought by me.

**91. The plants have been watered by the gardener.**

- (a) The gardener is watering the plants.
- (b) The gardener has been watering the plants.
- (c) The gardener has watered the plants.
- (d) The gardener have watered the plants.

**92. The children could use the place always.**

- (a) The place can be used by children always.
- (b) The place is used by children always.
- (c) The place could always be used by children.
- (d) The place has been used by children always.

**93. They say that the earth is round.**

- (a) It has been said that the earth is round.
- (b) That the earth is round is said by them.
- (c) It is said that the earth is round.
- (d) It was said that the earth was round.

**94. This machine must not be used after 5.30 p.m.**

- (a) You can't use the machine after 5.30 p.m.
- (b) You mayn't use the machine after 5.30 p.m.
- (c) You need not you the machine after 5.30 p.m.
- (d) You must not use the machine after 5.30 p.m.

**95. Tiny houses dot the landscape.**

- (a) The landscape was dotted by tiny houses.
- (b) The landscape is being dotted by tiny houses.
- (c) The landscape is dotted by tiny houses.
- (d) The landscape has been dotted by tiny houses.

**96. Dogs always chase cats.**

- (a) Cats are always chasing dogs.
- (b) Cats have been always chased by dogs.
- (c) Cats are always chased by dogs.
- (d) Cats are being always chased by dogs.

**97. The farmer prepared the field.**

- (a) The field was prepared by the farmer.
- (b) The field was being prepared by the farmer.
- (c) The field were prepared by the farmer.
- (d) The field were being prepared by the farmer.

**98. Teachers should be respected.**

- (a) Teachers deserve respect.
- (b) Teachers are to be respected.



**Passive Voice**

- (c) We shall respect teaches.
- (d) We should respect teachers.

**99. He will do the work tomorrow.**

- (a) The work will be done by him tomorrow.
- (b) The work would be done by him tomorrow.
- (c) The work could be done by him tomorrow.
- (d) The work will have been done by him tomorrow.

**100. She gave me a book.**

- (a) I was given a book by her.
- (b) She was given a book.
- (c) A book is given by her to me.
- (d) I was given her a book.

**101. I have bought a new car.**

- (a) A new car was bought by me.
- (b) A new car is brought by me.
- (c) A new car has been bought by me.
- (d) A new car had been bought by me.

**102. Teachers might have given their students some concessions.**

- (a) Their students might have given some concessions to their teachers.
- (b) Their students might be given some concessions by their teachers.
- (c) Their students might be giving some concessions to their teachers.
- (d) Students might have been given some concessions by their teachers.

**103. You should not offer meat to vegetarians.**

- (a) Vegetarians should not be offered meat.
- (b) Meat should be offered to non-vegetarians.
- (c) Vegetarians should not offer meat.
- (d) You should offer no meat to non-vegetarians.

**104. You must write off all those bad debts.**

- (a) You must be written off by all those bad debts.
- (b) All those bad debts must be written off by you.
- (c) Write off all those bad debts .
- (d) All those bad debts could be written off.

**105. Are they receiving the chief guest at the station ?**

- (a) Was the chief guest being received at the station ?
- (b) Is the chief guest being received at the station ?
- (c) Will they be received by the chief guest at the station ?
- (d) Will the chief guest be received at the station ?

**106. We make butter from milk.**

- (a) Butter is make from milk by us.
- (b) Butter is made from milk by us.

- (c) Butter is make with milk by us.
- (d) From milk butter is made by us.

**107. I don't like people telling me what to do.**

- (a) I don't like being told what to do.
- (b) People telling me what to do was not liked by me.
- (c) I do not like being told by the people.
- (d) People don't like telling me what to do.

**108. The meeting has been called off by the chairman.**

- (a) The chairman called off the meeting.
- (b) The chairman has called off the meeting.
- (c) The chairman is calling off the meeting.
- (d) The chairman had called off the meeting.

**109. The police arrested 200 students on the University campus.**

- (a) 200 students had been arrested on the University campus by the police.
- (b) 200 students has been arrested by the police on the University campus.
- (c) 200 students were arrested by the police on the University campus.
- (d) 200 students are arrested on the University campus by the police.

**110. Why do you like him so much ?**

- (a) Why has he been liked so much by you ?
- (b) Why was he liked by you so much?
- (c) Why is he liked by you so much ?
- (d) Why he is liked by you so much ?

**111. The invitation cards will be sent today.**

- (a) They will sent the invitation cards today.
- (b) They will have sent the invitation cards today.
- (c) They will send the invitation cards today.
- (d) They will be sending the invitation cards today.

**112. She has baked several cakes for her friends.**

- (a) She has several cakes to be baked for her friends.
- (b) Her friends had several cakes baked by her.
- (c) Several cakes have been baked by her for her friends.
- (d) Her friends baked several cakes for her.

**113. We believe that God gives us misery.**

- (a) It was believed that God gave us misery.
- (b) It has been believed that God gives us misery.
- (c) It is believed that God gives us misery.
- (d) It is a belief that God gives us misery.

**114. A lot of saplings have been planted by the chief guest.**

- (a) The chief guest is planting a lot of saplings.
- (b) The chief guest has planted a lot of saplings.

**Passive Voice**

- (c) The chief guest have planted a lot of sapling.
- (d) The chief guest has been planting a lot of saplings.

**115. The Prime Minister has discussed the matter with the other ministers.**

- (a) The matter was discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
- (b) The matter is discussed- by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
- (c) The matter had been discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
- (d) The matter has been discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.

**116. The Principal will meet the students this evening.**

- (a) The students will be met by the Principal this evening.
- (b) The students could be met by the Principal this evening. .
- (c) The students would be met by the Principal this evening.
- (d) The students will be meeting the Principal this evening. .

**117. The Chief Justice of India is appointed by the President.**

- (a) The President “of India appointed the Chief Justice.
- (b) The President appoints the Chief Justice of India.
- (c) The President appointed the Chief Justice of India.
- (d) The appointment order of the Chief Justice of India was given by the President.

**118. A meeting was convened by the Principal.**

- (a) The Principal convened a meeting.
- (b) The Principal was convening a meeting.
- (c) The Principal has convened a meeting
- (d) The Principal is convening a meeting.

**119. Someone has stolen my suitcase.**

- (a) My suitcase is stolen by someone.
- (b) Someone has been stolen my suitcase.
- (c) My suitcase has someone been stolen.
- (d) My suitcase has been stolen by someone.

**120. Anu is interviewing Radhika and Sarath Kumar.**

- (a) Radhika and Sarath Kumar are being interviewed by Anu.
- (b) Radhika and Sarath Kumar are interviewing Anu.
- (c) Radhika and Sarath Kumar were interviewed by Anu.
- (d) Radhika is being interviewed by Sarath Kumar and Ami.

**121. Our task had been completed before sunset.**

- (a) We completed our task before sunset.
- (b) We have completed our task before sunset.
- (c) We complete our task before sunset.
- (d) We had completed our task before sunset.

**122. The boy laughed at the beggar.**

- (a) The beggar was laughed by the boy.
- (b) The beggar was being laughed by the boy.

- (c) The beggar was being laughed at by the boy.
- (d) The beggar was laughed at by the boy.

**123. The government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme in Jharkhand.**

- (a) A massive tribal welfare programme is launched by the government in Jharkhand.
- (b) A massive tribal welfare programme has been launched by the government in Jharkhand.
- (c) Jharkhand government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme.
- (d) The government in Jharkhand has launched a massive tribal welfare programme.

**124. The boys were playing cricket.**

- (a) Cricket had been played by the boys.
- (b) Cricket has been played by the boys.
- (c) Cricket was played by the boys.
- (d) Cricket was being played by the boys.

**125. They drew a circle in the morning.**

- (a) A circle was being drawn by them in the morning.
- (b) A circle was drawn by them in the morning.
- (c) In the morning a circle have been drawn by them.
- (d) A circle has been drawing since morning.

**126. They will demolish the entire block.**

- (a) The entire block is being demolished.
- (b) The block may be demolished entirely.
- (c) The entire block will have to be demolished by them.
- (d) The entire block will be demolished by them.

**127. The burglar destroyed several items in the room. Even the carpet has been torn.**

- (a) Several items destroyed in the room by the burglar. Even the carpet he has torn.
- (b) Several items in the room were destroyed by the burglar. Even the carpet has been torn.
- (c) Including the carpet, several items in the room have been torn by the burglar.
- (d) The burglar, being destroyed several items in the room, also carpet has torn.

**128. We must respect the elders.**

- (a) The elders deserve respect from us.
- (b) The elders must be respected.
- (c) The elders must respected by us.
- (d) Respect the elders we must.

**129. We have warned you.**

- (a) You have been warned.
- (b) We have you warned.

**Passive Voice**

- (c) Warned you have been.
- (d) Have you been warned.

**130. Has anybody answered your question ?**

- (a) Your question has been answered ?
- (b) Anybody has answered your question ?
- (c) Has your question been answered ?
- (d) Have you answered your question ?

**131. The shopkeeper lowered the prices.**

- (a) The prices lowered the shopkeeper.
- (b) The prices were lowered by the shopkeeper.
- (c) Down went the prices.
- (d) The shopkeeper got down the prices.

**132. One must keep one's promises.**

- (a) One's promises are kept.
- (b) One's promises must kept.
- (c) One's promises were kept.
- (d) Promises must be kept.

**133. The government has not approved the new drug for sale.**

- (a) The government approval for the sale of the new drug has not been given.
- (b) The new drug has not been approved for sale by the government.
- (c) For the sale of the new drug we have not been given the approval.
- (d) The new drug was not approved by the government.

**134. They have published all the details of the invention.**

- (a) All the details of the invention have been published by them.
- (b) The publication of the details of invention was done by them.
- (c) All the details have been invented by the publishers.
- (d) All the inventions have been detailed by them.

**135. He teaches us grammar.**

- (a) Grammar was taught to us by him.
- (b) We are taught grammar by him.
- (c) Grammar will be taught to us by him.
- (d) We were teached grammar by him.

**136. The manager could not accept the union leader's proposals.**

- (a) The union leader's proposals could not be accepted by the manager.
- (b) The union leader's proposals were not accepted by the manager.
- (c) The union leader's proposals will not be accepted by the manager.
- (d) The union leader's proposals would not be accepted by the manager.

**137. Prepare yourself for the worst.**

- (a) You be prepared for the worst.
- (b) The worst should be prepared by yourself.

- (c) Be prepared for the worst.
- (d) For the worst, preparation should be made by you.

**138. Please shut the door and go to sleep.**

- (a) The door is to be shut and you are to go to sleep.
- (b) Let the door be shut and you be asleep.
- (c) You are requested to shut the door and go to sleep.
- (d) The door is to be shut and you are requested to sleep.

**139. Small strokes fell great oaks.**

- (a) Great oaks are fallen by small oaks.
- (b) Great oaks are felled by small oaks.
- (c) Great oaks are fell by small oaks.
- (d) Great oaks were fallen by small oaks.

**140. We must take care of all living species on Earth.**

- (a) All living species on Earth are taken care of by us.
- (b) All living species on Earth must be taken care of by us.
- (c) All living species on Earth had been taken care of by us.
- (d) All living species on Earth will be taken care of by us.

**141. People call him a fool.**

- (a) He has been called a fool.
- (b) He is called a fool by the people.
- (c) The people have been calling him a fool.
- (d) We all people have called him a fool.

**142. It is being read by us.**

- (a) We are reading it.
- (b) It will be read by us.
- (c) We can read it.
- (d) We have to read it.

**143. He had committed a mistake.**

- (a) A mistake had committed by him.
- (b) A mistake was committed by him.
- (c) A mistake had been committed by him.
- (d) A mistake has been committed by him.

**144. The most useful training of my career was given to me by my boss.**

- (a) My boss has been giving me the most useful training of my career.
- (b) My boss gives me the most useful training.
- (c) My boss is giving me the most useful training.
- (d) My boss gave me the most useful training of my career.

**145. We have decided to open a new branch.**

- (a) To open a new branch was decided by us.
- (b) To be opened a new branch has been decided.

**Passive Voice**

- (c) It has been decided to open a new branch.
- (d) It may be decided to open a new branch by us.

**146. The loan will be sanctioned by the bank.**

- (a) The bank sanctioned the loan.
- (b) The bank is going to sanction the loan.
- (c) The bank would sanction the loan.
- (d) The bank will sanction the loan.

**147. Paint the windows.**

- (a) Windows should be painted.
- (b) Let the windows be painted.
- (c) Let be the windows painted.
- (d) Windows are let to be painted.

**148. The traitors should be shot dead.**

- (a) They should have shot the traitors dead.
- (b) They shall shoot the traitors dead.
- (c) They should shoot the traitors dead.
- (d) They shot the traitors dead.

**149. Rahul is teaching the children in the slum areas.**

- (a) The children in the slum areas are taught by Rahul.
- (b) The children are taught by Rahul in the slum area.
- (c) In the slum areas the children are learning from Rahul.
- (d) The children in the slum areas are being taught by Rahul.

**150. One cannot expect children to understand these problems.**

- (a) Children cannot be expected to understand these problems.
- (b) Children to understand these problems cannot be expected.
- (c) Children cannot be expected to be understood these problems.
- (d) To understand these problems cannot be expected from children by one.

**151. Why did she break the garden wall ?**

- (a) Why the garden wall was broken by her?
- (b) Why had the garden wall been broken by her ?
- (c) Why was the garden wall broken by her?
- (d) Why will the garden wall be broken by her ?

**152. The students were laughing at the old man.**

- (a) The old man was being laughed at by the students.
- (b) The old man was laughed at by the students.
- (c) The old man was being laughed by the students.
- (d) The old man is laughing at the students.

**153. He admonished her for the error.**

- (a) She was admonished by him for the error.
- (b) She has been admonished by him for the error.

- (c) She would be admonished by him for the error.
- (d) She is admonished by him for the error.

**154. Can we send this big parcel by air ?**

- (a) Can this big parcel be sent by air?
- (b) Can this big parcel sent by air ?
- (c) Could this big parcel be sent by air?
- (d) Could this big parcel sent by us by air?

**155. The boys saved many elders from drowning.**

- (a) Many elders are saved from drowning by the boys.
- (b) Many elders are being saved from drowning by the boys,
- (c) Many elders were saved from drowning by the boys.
- (d) Many elders have .been saved from drowning by the boys.

**156. He was refused admittance.**

- (a) The guards refuse him admittance.
- (b) The guards refused him for admittance.
- (c) The guards have refused him admittance.
- (d) The guards refused him admittance.

**157. You will be taken care of by me.**

- (a) I will be taking care of you.
- (b) I would take care of you.
- (c) I will take care of you.
- (d) I will being take care of you.

**158. Promises should be kept.**

- (a) You must keep the promises.
- (b) We must keep their promises.
- (c) Kept the promises.
- (d) One should keep one's promises.

**159. Circumstances forced him to resign his post.**

- (a) Circumstances make him to resign his post.
- (b) He was forced to resign his post.
- (c) He is forced to resign his post.
- (d) He is forced and resigned his post.

**160. He would have written this essay in time.**

- (a) The essay was written on time.
- (b) This essay would have been written by him in time.
- (c) The essay was written by him in
- (d) He wrote the essay on time.

**161. I give alms to the poor on Saturdays.**

- (a) Alms are given to the poor by me on Saturdays.
- (b) Alms is given to the poor by me on Saturdays.



**Passive Voice**

- (c) Alms are given to the poors by me on Saturdays.
- (d) Alms were given to the poor by me on Saturdays.

**162. God helps the brave.**

- (a) The brave is helped by God
- (b) The brave are helped by God
- (c) The brave are help by God
- (d) The brave helped by God

**163. I haven't read Three Musketeers.**

- (a) Three Musketeers have not been read by me.
- (b) Three Musketeers has not been read by me.
- (c) Three Musketeers has been not read by me.
- (d) Three Musketeers has not been readed by me.

**164. I am going to buy new spectacles tomorrow.**

- (a) New spectacles are going to be bought by me tomorrow.
- (b) New spectacles is going to be bought by me tomorrow.
- (c) New spectacles are being bought by me tomorrow.
- (d) New spectacles are to be bought by me tomorrow.

**165. Our mothers use tongs while making chapaties.**

- (a) Tongs are used by our mothers while making chapaties.
- (b) Tongs is used by our mothers while making chapaties.
- (c) Tongs are used by our mothers while chapaties are being made.
- (d) Tongs are use by our mothers while making chapaties.

**166. I play Billiards during my free time.**

- (a) Billiards are played by me during my free time.
- (b) Billiards were played by me during my free time.
- (c) Billiards are being played by me during my free time.
- (d) Billiards is played by me during my free time.

**167. Have the car painted black.**

- (a) Paint the car black.
- (b) I have painted the car black.
- (c) Get someone to paint the car black .
- (d) Black has been painted by the car.

**168. Who has stolen my binoculars?**

- (a) By whom my binoculars have been stolen?
- (b) By whom have my binoculars been stolen?
- (c) By whom has my binoculars been stolen?
- (d) By whom my binoculars has been stolen?

**169. He has been arrested and sent to jail.**

- (a) The police arrested him and the court sent him to jail.
- (b) The police has arrested him and the court have sent him to jail.

- (c) The police have arrested him and the court has sent him to jail.
- (d) The police has arrested him and the court has sent him to jail.

**170. Anna and his team hope to fight corruption with Jan Lokpal Bill.**

- (a) It is hoped by Anna and his team that they would fight corruption by Jan Lokpal Bill .
- (b) To fight corruption is been hoped by Anna and his team by Jan Lokpal Bill.
- (c) To fight corruption was being hoped by Anna and his team by Jan Lokpal Bill.
- (d) To fight corruption is being hoping by Anna and his team by Jan Lokpal Bill.

**171. The Greeks expected to conquer Carthage.**

- (a) People expected the Greeks to conquer Carthage.
- (b) It was expected by the Greeks to conquer Carthage.
- (c) To conquer Carthage was expected by the Greeks.
- (d) Carthage was expected to be conquered by the Greeks.

**172. Rome was not built in a day.**

- (a) They did not build Rome in a day.
- (b) They could not build Rome in a day.
- (c) The Romans did not build Rome in a day.
- (d) They have not built Rome in a day.

**173. The ship is being taken to safe water by the Captain and not his crew.**

- (a) The Captain and not his crew is taking the ship to safe water.
- (b) The Captain and not his crew are taking the ship to safe water.
- (c) The Captain and not his crew have taken the ship to safe water.
- (d) The Captain and not his crew is being taking the ship to safe water.

**174. Strong Anti-Corruption law is liked by neither the Central Government nor the State Governments.**

- (a) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments likes strong Anti-Corruption law.
- (b) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments like strong Anti-Corruption law.
- (c) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments liked strong Anti-Corruption law.
- (d) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments are liking strong Anti-Corruption law.

**175. If you cannot change the master, you cannot change the destiny.**

- (a) The destiny cannot be changed if masters cannot change.
- (b) The destiny could not be changed if masters cannot be changed.
- (c) The destiny cannot change if masters cannot be changed.
- (d) The destiny cannot be changed if masters cannot be changed.

*Passive Voice*

**176. The curd smelt sour.**

- (a) The curd is sour when smelt.
- (b) The curd was sour when it was smelling.
- (c) The curd was sour when it was smelt.
- (d) The curd is sour when it was smelt.

**177. People are not going to tolerate Government's despotism.**

- (a) Government's despotism is not going to be tolerated by people.
- (b) Government's despotism was not going to be tolerated by people.
- (c) Government's despotism is not being tolerated by people.
- (d) Government's despotism is not to be tolerated by people.

**178. He is writing a letter.**

- (a) A letter is being written by him.
- (b) A letter is written by him.
- (c) A letter has been written by him.
- (d) Let a letter be written by him.

**179. The man cut the tree into thin strips.**

- (a) The tree was cut into thin strips by the man.
- (b) The tree cut itself into thin strips by the man.
- (c) The tree has cut into thin strips by the man.
- (d) The tree can be cut into thin strips by the man.

**180. My father gave me a hundred rupee note yesterday.**

- (a) A hundred rupee note was given to me by my father yesterday.
- (b) A hundred rupee note was being given to me by my father.
- (c) A hundred rupee note had been given to me by my father.
- (d) Yesterday, my father was given a hundred rupee note by me.

**181. The pilot landed the plane safely.**

- (a) The plane had been landed safely by the pilot.
- (b) The plane was landed safely by the pilot.
- (c) The plane has been landed safely by the pilot.
- (d) The plane was to be landed safely by the pilot.

**182. Abha sent me a card.**

- (a) A card will be send to me by Abha.
- (b) A card was sent to me by Abha.
- (c) A card will be sent to me by Abha.
- (d) A card is sent to me by Abha.

**183. He will never forget it.**

- (a) It will never be forgotten by him.
- (b) It can never be forgotten by him.
- (c) It should never be forgotten by him.
- (d) It may never be forgotten by him.

**184. Let not his insulting words be minded.**

- (a) Don't be insulted his words.
- (b) Don't mind his insulting words.
- (c) Don't insult him with his words.
- (d) Do mind his insulting words.

**185. The students have been punished by the teacher for negligence of duty.**

- (a) The teacher has punished the students for negligence of duty.
- (b) The teacher had punished the students for negligence of duty.
- (c) The teacher punished the students for negligence of duty.
- (d) The teacher have punished the students for negligence of duty.

**186. The storm has destroyed twelve houses.**

- (a) Twelve houses had been destroyed by the storm.
- (b) Twelve houses have been destroyed by the storm.
- (c) Twelve houses were destroyed by the storm.
- (d) Twelve houses have been stormed.

**187. She is reading a novel.**

- (a) A novel is being read by her.
- (b) A novel has been read by her.
- (c) A novel is read by her.
- (d) A novel was being read by her.

**188. The whole village was ravaged by the man-eater.**

- (a) The man-eater ravages the whole village.
- (b) The whole village is ravaged by the man-eater.
- (c) The man-eater ravaged the whole village.
- (d) The whole village is being ravaged by the man-eater.

**189. The purity of justice is maintained by the reports of proceedings in the law courts.**

- (a) The law courts maintain purity of justice in the reports of the proceedings.
- (b) The reports of the proceedings in the law courts maintain the purity of justice.
- (c) Pure justice is maintained in the proceedings of the law courts.
- (d) The maintenance of justice is pure in the proceedings of the law courts.

**190. Newton wrote this letter yesterday.**

- (a) Yesterday was written letter by Newton.
- (b) This letter is written by Newton Yesterday.
- (c) This letter was written by Newton yesterday.
- (d) This letter was wrote by Newton yesterday.

*Passive Voice*

**191. An awareness is being created among the people by the Government about the importance of trees.**

- (a) The Government is creating an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.
- (b) The Government are creating an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.
- (c) The Government creates an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.
- (d) The Government created an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.

**192. Ads on TV increase the sale of any commodity.**

- (a) The sale of any commodity is being increased by ads on TV.
- (b) The sale of any commodity are increased by ads on TV.
- (c) The sale of any commodity are being increased by ads on TV.
- (d) The sale of any commodity is increased by ads on TV.

**193. The Indian Government is encouraging the Europeans to visit India.**

- (a) The Europeans are encouraged by the Indian Government to visit India.
- (b) The Europeans are encouraging by the Indian Government to visit India.
- (c) The Europeans are being encouraged by the Indian Government to visit India.
- (d) The Europeans is being encouraged by the Indian Government to visit India.

**194. He handed her a chair.**

- (a) She was handed a chair by him.
- (b) He handed a chair to her.
- (c) He will hand a chair to her.
- (d) A chair will be handed to her by him.

**195. Call the police at once.**

- (a) Let the police be called at once.
- (b) The police was to be called at once.
- (c) The police is to be called at once.
- (d) Let the police called at once.

**196. Post the letter.**

- (a) The letter is posted.
- (b) The letter was posted.
- (c) Let the letter be posted.
- (d) The letter will be posted.

**197. Who painted it?**

- (a) It was painted?
- (b) Was it painted?
- (c) Had it been painted by?
- (d) By whom was it painted?

**Answer key**

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (c) 6. (b) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (b)  
10. (b) 11. (a) 12. (c) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (a) 16. (b) 17. (a) 18. (b)  
19. (c) 20. (a) 21. (a) 22. (c) 23. (b) 24. (b) 25. (b) 26. (a) 27. (b)  
28. (a) 29. (d) 30. (a) 31. (c) 32. (b) 33. (b) 34. (a) 35. (a) 36. (d)  
37. (c) 38. (a) 39. (d) 40. (a) 41. (d) 42. (c) 43. (c) 44. (b) 45. (b)  
46. (d) 47. (a) 48. (b) 49. (c) 50. (b) 51. (d) 52. (a) 53. (c) 54. (a)  
55. (a) 56. (a) 57. (b) 58. (a) 59. (c) 60. (d) 61. (b) 62. (a) 63. (a)  
64. (b) 65. (b) 66. (b) 67. (a) 68. (b) 69. (b) 70. (a) 71. (a) 72. (b)  
73. (d) 74. (a) 75. (a) 76. (c) 77. (c) 78. (b) 79. (d) 80. (c) 81. (c)  
82. (a) 83. (c) 84. (b) 85. (a) 86. (c) 87. (b) 88. (c) 89. (c) 90. (a)  
91. (c) 92. (c) 93. (c) 94. (d) 95. (c) 96. (c) 97. (a) 98. (d) 99. (a)  
100. (a) 101. (c) 102. (d) 103. (a) 104. (b) 105. (b) 106. (b) 107. (a) 108. (b)  
109. (c) 110. (c) 111. (c) 112. (c) 113. (c) 114. (b) 115. (d) 116. (a) 117. (b)  
118. (a) 119. (d) 120. (a) 121. (d) 122. (d) 123. (b) 124. (d) 125. (b) 126. (d)  
127. (b) 128. (b) 129. (a) 130. (c) 131. (b) 132. (d) 133. (b) 134. (a) 135. (b)  
136. (a) 137. (c) 138. (c) 139. (b) 140. (b) 141. (b) 142. (a) 143. (c) 144. (d)  
145. (c) 146. (d) 147. (b) 148. (c) 149. (d) 150. (a) 151. (c) 152. (a) 153. (a)  
154. (a) 155. (c) 156. (d) 157. (c) 158. (d) 159. (b) 160. (b) 161. (a) 162. (b)  
163. (b) 164. (a) 165. (a) 166. (d) 167. (c) 168. (b) 169. (c) 170. (a) 171. (b)  
172. (c) 173. (a) 174. (b) 175. (d) 176. (c) 177. (a) 178. (a) 179. (a) 180. (a)  
181. (b) 182. (b) 183. (a) 184. (b) 185. (a) 186. (b) 187. (a) 188. (c) 189. (b)  
190. (c) 191. (a) 192. (d) 193. (c) 194. (a) 195. (a) 196. (c) 197. (d)

**संज्ञक शब्दों का अर्थ**

16. (a) नहीं हो सकता क्योंकि इससे वाक्य का ये अर्थ निकलता है कि ये उम्मीद की जा रही थी कि Spain वर्ल्ड कप जीतेगी। Question 16. में ये स्पष्ट है कि Spain को वर्ल्ड कप जीतने की उम्मीद थी। अतः उत्तर (b) होगा जिसका अर्थ Question 16 के अर्थ से मेल खाता है।
18. (b) वाक्य में 'Have' Causative Verb है। यहाँ कार्य किया नहीं करवाया जा रहा है। अतः (b) उपयुक्त उत्तर होगा।
32. (b) 'The brave' plural common noun है। अगर brave, poor, rich इत्यादि जैसे adjectives के पहले article 'the' का प्रयोग किया जाए तो वह plural common noun बन जाता है एवं plural verb के साथ आता है।
35. (a) जब Passive Voice में 'by + sub' का उल्लेख नहीं हो तो इसका अर्थ है कि कर्ता सामान्यतः उस कार्य की करता है जिसका उल्लेख करना जरूरी नहीं। अतः उत्तर (a) होगा।
39. (d) अगर 'to read' के स्थान पर 'to be read' का प्रयोग किया जाए तो 'by + sub' का option खुल जाता है जबकि 'to read' का sub. 'I' का उल्लेख पहले हो चुका है। अतः 'to read' का ही प्रयोग करना उपयुक्त होगा।
161. (a) Alms (दान) Plural Noun है। अतः Plural verb 'are' का प्रयोग करें।
164. (a) Spectacles plural noun है। अतः spectacles के साथ 'are' का प्रयोग होगा।
165. (a) Tongs plural noun है। अतः tongs के साथ plural verb 'are' का प्रयोग होगा।
166. (d) Billiards form से plural है परन्तु एक खेल का नाम है। अतः अर्थ से singular है। अतः singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग होगा।
167. (c) वाक्य Passive voice में है और वाक्य में Causative verb 'have' का प्रयोग है। अतः Sub (कर्ता) के स्थान पर someone का उल्लेख है।

**Passive Voice**

168. (b) Binoculars plural noun है। अतः binoculars के साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होगा।  
169. (c) Police plural noun है। अतः plural के साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होगा।  
171. (b) वाक्य 16 की व्याख्या देखें।  
173. (a) जब दो subjects को 'and not' से जोड़ा जाता है तो verb 1<sup>st</sup> sub के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। अतः 'the captain' के अनुसार verb 'is' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।  
174. (b) जब दो sub को 'neither.....nor' से जोड़ा जाता है तो verb नजदीक वाले subject के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। अतः verb 'State Governments' (Plural noun) के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा।

**SPOTTING THE ERROR**

1. (a) The officers/ (b) who were on inspection in this factory / (c) were discovered many discrepancies. / (d) No error.  
2. (a) The teacher asked / (b) the students whether they could/ (c) tell the name of the man who had been invented steam engine. / (d) No error.  
3. (a) He held a bomb / (b) in his hand which was totally hiding / (c) in the long cloak that he was wearing. / (d) No error.  
4. (a) I was surprise / (b) at his brazenness/ (c) as he was considered an obedient student / (d) No error.  
5. (a) Had the police not/ (b) reached here / (c) on time, the traders would have robbed . / (d) No error.  
6. (a) He seriously wounded / (b) during the cross fire and / (c) was rushed to hospital / (d) No error.  
7. (a) Police Officers sent / (b) to the theatre and every nook and corner / (c) was thoroughly checked. / (d) No error.  
8. (a) When the minister was shot dead,/ (b) people were run here and there / (c) to save themselves. / (d) No error.  
9. (a) Mother's milk / (b) cannot substituted by / (c) any thing else./ (d) No error.  
10. (a) When the thief broke into their house / (b) they raised a hue and cry / (c) and the thief caught immediately by the people. / (d) No error  
11. (a) The city / (b) was tore / (c) by riots./ (d) No error.  
12. (a) It was suggested / (b) by him that the baby / (c) should be immediately taken care. / (d) No error.  
13. (a) The truck driver was accused / (b) the lady for walking / (c) in the middle of the road./ (d) No error.  
14. (a) Some passengers / (b) were flew/ (c) to Paris on the last trip./ (d) No error.  
15. (a) By the time he arrived, / (b) everybody had / (c) been gone./ (d) No error.  
16. (a) I am extremely annoyed / (b) by/ (c) the mismanagement./ (d) No error.  
17. (a) The mall was / (b) engulfed/ (c) by the fire/ (d) No error.  
18. (a) It believed earlier / (b) that the sun/ (c) revolved round the earth./ (d) No error.  
19. (a) As she was wearing / (b) skimpy clothes/ (c) she was stared./ (d) No error.

20. (a) You behave in such / (b) a weird manner that / (c) everybody disgusted with you. / (d) No error.
21. (a) Ten mangoes / (b) are contained / (c) by this box. / (d) No error.
22. (a) A gang of robbers were arrested / (b) by the police / (c) last night near the island. / (d) No error.
23. (a) The streets of Rome / (b) were thronged / (c) by the common people. / (d) No error.
24. (a) Everyone says that / (b) he born / (c) of poor parents. / (d) No error.
25. (a) The ship sank / (b) and everyone / (c) aboard drowned. / (d) No error.
26. (a) If motorists do not observe the traffic regulations, (b) they will be stopped, ticketed / (c) and have to pay a fine. / (d) No error
27. (a) There will be no more supplies / (b) unless all arrears of payment / (c) were cleared by next Monday. / (d) No error
28. (a) The news of his father's death / (b) was not declared / (c) so far. / (d) No error

### Answers with Explanation

1. (c) 'were' हटा दें। वाक्य 'Past Indefinite' के Active Voice में है। अतः  $V_2$  का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'were +  $V_3$ ' का।
2. (c) 'been' हटा है। वाक्य Active Voice में है। अतः 'had +  $V_3$ ' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'had + been +  $V_3$ ' जिसका प्रयोग Past Perfect Tense के Passive Voice में होता है।
3. (b) 'hiding' को 'hidden' में परिवर्तित करें। 'which was totally hiding' का अर्थ होगा जो सम्पूर्ण रूप से छिप रहा था। 'which was totally hidden' का अर्थ है जो 'सम्पूर्ण रूप से छिपा हुआ था'।
4. (a) 'Surprise' को 'surprised' में परिवर्तित करें Passive Voice में Main Verb हमेशा  $V_3$  form में होना चाहिए।
5. (c) 'would have' के बाद 'been' का प्रयोग करें। 'traders would have robbed' का अर्थ है 'traders' ने लूट किया होता। वाक्य को अर्थपूर्ण बनाने के लिए 'traders would have been robbed' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ होगा 'traders' लूट लिए गये होते।
6. (a) 'He was seriously wounded' का प्रयोग करें 'He wounded' का अर्थ होगा। 'उसने घायल कर दिया। 'He was wounded' का अर्थ होगा 'वह घायल हो गया'।
7. (a) 'sent' के पहले 'were' का प्रयोग करें।
8. (b) 'were run' को 'ran' में परिवर्तित करें।
9. (b) Cannot के बाद 'be' का प्रयोग करें। Passive Voice में 'Cannot + be +  $V_3$ ' का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (c) 'thief was caught' का प्रयोग करें। 'thief caught' का अर्थ निकलेगा 'चोर ने पकड़ लिया' जबकि होना चाहिए 'चोर पकड़ा गया'।
11. (b) 'was' के साथ  $V_3$  का प्रयोग होगा अगर वाक्य passive voice में है तो। अतः torn (tear का  $V_3$  form) का प्रयोग करें।
12. (c) 'Care' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग करें। Passive Voice में 'Preposition' का ध्यान रखें।
13. (a) यहाँ 'truck driver' subject है। अतः 'was' हटा दें। वाक्य passive voice में नहीं है।
14. (b) 'were' के बाद  $V_3$  का प्रयोग करें। 'fly' का  $V_3$  form 'flown' होता है।
15. (c) 'been' हटा दें।
16. (b) 'by' को 'at' में परिवर्तित करें। 'annoyed' के साथ 'at' का प्रयोग होता है अगर 'something' का उल्लेख हो। Eg- 'annoyed at the mismanagement.' अगर 'someone' का प्रयोग हो तो 'annoyed' के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होगा। Eg- 'annoyed with you'.



**Passive Voice**

17. (c) 'by' के स्थान पर 'in' का प्रयोग होगा। Indirect Speech में 'Simple Present', 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।
18. (a) 'It was believed' का प्रयोग करें 'Engulfed' के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होता है।
19. (c) 'Stared' के बाद preposition 'at' का प्रयोग करें।
20. (c) 'everybody is disgusted' का प्रयोग सही होगा।
21. (c) 'by' के स्थान पर 'in' का प्रयोग करें। Contained के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।
22. (a) 'Gang' Collective noun है। अतः 'were' के स्थान पर 'was' का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (c) 'Thronged' के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'by' का। 'By' के स्थान पर 'with' का प्रयोग करें।
24. (b) 'he was born' का प्रयोग करें।
25. (c) 'drowned' के पहले 'was' का प्रयोग करें।
26. (c) 'and will have to' सही formation है। 'and' के बाद sentence formation 'active voice' में परिवर्तित हो जा रहा है। अतः 'and' से पहले आने वाला helping verb 'will' का प्रयोग 'and' के बाद के भाग के लिए नहीं है।
27. (c) 'Were' के स्थान पर 'are' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य 'future conditional' का है। अगर दो कार्य भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो और दूसरे कार्य का होना पहले कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करें तो पहला कार्य simple present में होगा (arrears of payment are cleared) और दूसरा कार्य simple future tense (there will be no more supplies) में होगा।
28. (b) 'Was not declared' के स्थान पर 'has not been declared' का प्रयोग करें। 'So far' का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'Present Perfect' में होता है।

# 4

## NARRATION

### CHAPTER

Narration के अंतर्गत हम **Direct** एवं **Indirect Speech** पढ़ते हैं।

#### **DIRECT SPEECH**

➤ जब कोई व्यक्ति किसी वक्ता के कहे हुए कथन को बिना किसी परिवर्तन के अभिव्यक्त कर दें तो वह **Direct Speech** कहलाता है।

जैसे: Ram says , " I work hard ."  
Reporting Verb      Reported Speech

#### **INDIRECT SPEECH**

➤ जब कोई व्यक्ति किसी वक्ता के कथन को अपने शब्दों में कुछ जरूरी परिवर्तन कर प्रस्तुत करें तो वह **Indirect Speech** कहलाता है।

जैसे: Ram says that he works hard.

#### **ASSERTIVE SENTENCES ( कथनात्मक वाक्य )**

- (1) He says, "I work hard." (Direct Speech)
- He says that he works hard. (Indirect speech)

#### **ASSERTIVE SENTENCES के DIRECT 1s INDIRECT SPEECH**

- (1) **Comma** एवं **inverted commas** को हटाएँ और **Conjunction 'that'** का प्रयोग करें।
- (2) **Pronoun** नीचे दिए गए नियमानुसार परिवर्तित करें।

S	O	N	Sub	Obj	No
1	2	3	1 <sup>st</sup> Person I, we	2 <sup>nd</sup> Person you	3 <sup>rd</sup> Person he, she, it, they

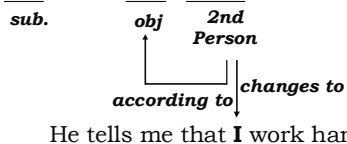
यानि

जैसे: 1. He says, " I work hard"  
*sub.      1<sup>st</sup> Person*

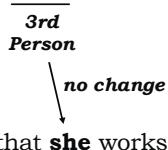
↑  
according to ↓ changes to  
He says that **he** works hard.

**Narration**

2. He says to me, "You work hard."



3. He says to me, "She works hard."



(3) **Say/said** को **indirect speech** में यथावत रहने दें। लेकिन **'say to'** को **'tell'** बना दे और **'said to'** को **'told'**

जैसे: He says to me, "you work hard".  
He tells me that I work hard.

**नोट:-** 1. **tell** और **told** के बाद **to** का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।  
2. **tell** और **told** के बाद **obj** का प्रयोग करना जरूरी होता है। इसी प्रकार **ordered, requested, forbade** इत्यादि के बाद भी एक **object** का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।

(4) अगर **Reporting verb present** अथवा **future tense** में हो, तो **reported speech** के **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।

जैसे: He says, "I come here".  
He says that he comes here.

(5) अगर **Reporting verb past** में हों लेकिन **reported speech universal truth / Idiom / Phrase/ habitual action** अथवा **historical fact** हो तो **reported speech** के **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं किया जाता है।

जैसे: He said, "The Sun is a star"  
He said that the Sun is a star

(6) अगर **Reporting verb past** में हो और **Reported speech idiom / phrase** इत्यादि नहीं हो तो **Reported Speech** में निम्नलिखित परिवर्तन किये जाते हैं।

जैसे: He said, "I came here yesterday".  
He said that he had come there the previous day.

**(1) CHANGE IN TENSE**

- $$\frac{\text{Simple present}}{V_1 / \text{do/ does}} \rightarrow \frac{\text{Simple past}}{V_2 / \text{did}} \rightarrow \frac{\text{Past perfect}}{\text{had} + V_3} \rightarrow \text{No change}$$
- $$\frac{\text{Present continuous}}{\text{is/ am/ are}} \rightarrow \frac{\text{Past continuous}}{\text{was/ were}} \rightarrow \frac{\text{Past perfect continuous}}{\text{had been}} \rightarrow \text{No change}$$
- $$\frac{\text{Present perfect / present perfect continuous}}{\text{has/ have}} \rightarrow \frac{\text{Past perfect / past perfect continuous}}{\text{had}} \rightarrow \text{No change}$$

**(2) CHANGE OF MODALS**

*shall/will* → *should / would*  
*may* → *might*  
*can* → *could*

**(3) CHANGE IN TIME AND PLACE**

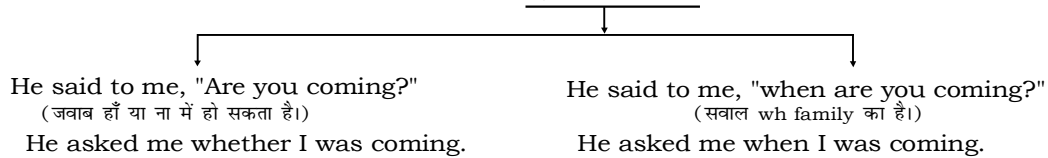
**today** → **that day**, **tomorrow** → **the next day**, **yesterday** → **the previous day/ the day before**, **tonight** → **that night**, **Last** → **the previous**, **here** → **there**, **this** → **that**, **these** → **those**, **ago** → **before**, **now** → **then**.

**Examples**

1. She said, "I cannot help you at this time."  
She said that she couldn't help me at that time.
2. He said to me, "I shall come to meet you tomorrow."  
He told me that he would come to meet me the next day.
3. Ram said, "I haven't taken any exam this year but I intend to take two exams the next year"  
Ram said that he hadn't taken any exam that year but he intended to take two exams the next year.
4. He said, "Virtue is its own reward"  
He said that virtue is its own reward (वाक्य phrase है)
5. Our teacher said, "We have to finish this work today as we know that tomorrow never comes."  
Our teacher said that we had to finish that work that day as we know that tomorrow never comes.

**INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES (iz 'ukRed okD;)**

**Questions**



**INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES IN DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH**

**five**

- (1) 'Said to' को **asked, questioned, enquired, interrogated** इत्यादि में परिवर्तित करें।
- (2) **Question mark (?)** को **full stop (.)** में परिवर्तित करें।
- (3) वाक्य का **formation interrogative** नहीं होगा। यानि **helping verb** का प्रयोग **subject** के बाद होगा।
- (4) **Tense, pronoun** इत्यादि में परिवर्तन नियमानुसार होंगे।
- (5) अगर सवाल का जवाब 'हाँ' या 'ना' में दिया जा सकता है तो **conjunction 'if'** या **'whether'** का प्रयोग करें। **'wh family'** के सवाल में कोई **conjunction** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

**Narration**

**Examples-**

1. He said to me, "Do you know me?"  
He asked me if I knew him.
2. She said to him, "What are you doing now?"  
She asked him what he was doing then.
3. He said to him, "Did you intend to come with me?"  
He asked him if he had intended to come with him.
4. He said to her, "Haven't you seen this movie?"  
He asked her if she hadn't seen that movie.
5. He said to her, "Madam, can I help you?"  
She said, "no"  
He asked her respectfully if he could help her.  
She answered in the negative.
6. He said to me, "When will the train arrive?"  
He enquired of me when the train would arrive

**Explanation to sentence 5:**

5. अगर **Direct Speech** में **Sir/Madam / Your Honour** जैसे सम्मानसूचक शब्दों का प्रयोग हो तो **Indirect Speech** में इन्हें हटा दें और '**respectfully**' शब्द का प्रयोग करें।  
➤ लेकिन अगर **Dear / Darling / My beloved** जैसे प्रेमसूचक शब्दों का प्रयोग हो तो उन्हें हटाकर '**lovingly**' या '**affectionately**' शब्द का प्रयोग करें।  
➤ अगर जवाब '**yes**' हो तो '**answered in the affirmative**' का प्रयोग करें और अगर जवाब '**No**' है तो '**answered in the Negative**' का प्रयोग करें।

**IMPERATIVE SENTENCES (vkKklwpd okD;)**

He said to me, "Go away."  
He ordered me to go away.

**IMPERATIVE SENTENCES** के **DIRECT** से **INDIRECT SPEECH** में

1. '**Said to**' को जरूरत के अनुसार **ordered / requested/ forbade / suggested** इत्यादि में परिवर्तित करें।
2. Conjunction '**to**' का प्रयोग करें।
3. '**To**' के बाद **V<sub>1</sub>** आता है।
4. **Tense, pronoun** इत्यादि में परिवर्तन नियमानुसार होंगे।

**Examples-**

1. She said to me, "Do not come here"  
She forbade me to come there.  
**or**  
She ordered me not to come there.
2. He said, "call the first witness now."  
He ordered them to call the first witness then.
3. She said, "Spread the clothes in the sunlight and do not wash anything else."  
She ordered him to spread the clothes in the sunlight and not to wash anything else.
4. The captain said to the soldiers, "Stand at ease."  
The captain commanded the soldiers to stand at ease.
5. My mother said to me, "Help others but do not expect anything in return."  
My mother advised me to help others but not to expect anything in return."

**EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES** (foLe;kfncks/d okD;)

She said, "Alas! I am undone."

She exclaimed with sorrow that she was undone.

**EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES** **DIRECT** **INDIRECT SPEECH**

- (a) **Said + Alas !**  $\xrightarrow{\text{changes to}}$  **exclaimed with sorrow.**  
**Said + Hurray !**  $\xrightarrow{\text{changes to}}$  **exclaimed with joy**  
**Said + Fi ! / Ugh !**  $\xrightarrow{\text{changes to}}$  **exclaimed with despise/disgust.**  
**Said + Wow !**  $\xrightarrow{\text{changes to}}$  **exclaimed with joy.**  
**Said + Oh !**  $\xrightarrow{\text{changes to}}$  **exclaimed with surprise / regret.**

- Conjunction **'that'** का प्रयोग करें
- Tense, pronoun** इत्यादि में परिवर्तन नियमानुसार होंगे।

**Examples:**

- She said, "Hurray ! we have won this match."  
She exclaimed with joy that they had won that match.
- She said, "How beautiful is the rain!"  
She exclaimed with joy that the rain was very beautiful.
- He said, "Bravo ! you have done well."  
He applauded him saying that he had done well
- She said, "What a pleasant surprise!"  
She exclaimed that it was a pleasant surprise.

**OPTATIVE SENTENCES** (bPNk1wpd okD;)

He said, "May God bless you."

He prayed that God might bless me.

**OPTATIVE SENTENCES** **DIRECT** **INDIRECT SPEECH**

- 'Said'** को **'wished'** अथवा **'prayed'** में परिवर्तित करें।
- Conjunction 'that'** का प्रयोग करें।
- Tense, pronoun** इत्यादि में नियमानुसार परिवर्तन करें।

**Examples:**

- She said, "May, God pardon him."  
She prayed that God might pardon him.
- They said, "long live the king."  
They prayed that the king might live long.

**Narration**

**कुछ अन्य महत्वपूर्ण बिन्दु:**

1. **Need not, used to, would rather, would better, had rather, had better** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है।

जैसे: He said, "I used to go to school by bus."  
He said that he used to go to school by bus.

2. अगर **past continuous** का प्रयोग **time clause** में हो तो **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।

जैसे: He said to me, "While I was studying, you were playing."  
He told me that while he was studying, I was playing.

3. अगर **past indefinite tense** का प्रयोग **time clause** में हो तो **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।

जैसे: He said, "When I met him, he was playing."  
He said that when he met him, he was playing.

4. जब **past indefinite** का प्रयोग दो **simultaneous actions** में हो तो **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।

जैसे: She said, "I prepared the tea and he fried the chips."  
She said that she prepared the tea and he fried the chips.

5. जब **past indefinite** का प्रयोग **historical** ( ऐतिहासिक ) घटना के लिए हो तो **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।

जैसे: He said, "Gandhiji started the Quit India Movement."  
He said that Gandhiji started the Quit India movement.

6. **Will/ shall** का परिवर्तन **would/ should** में होता है पर **will/ shall** का परिवर्तन '**should**' में होगा अगर वाक्य सलाह सम्बन्धित हो।

जैसे: 1. He said, "I shall come tomorrow."  
He said that he would come the next day.  
2. She said to me, "What shall I do after the exam?"  
She asked me what she should do after the exam.

7. वाक्य के अर्थ को देखते हुए कई बार **modals** में परिवर्तन किए जाते हैं।

जैसे: 1. She said, "If I get selected, I need not take any exam further."  
She said that if she got selected, she would not have to take any exam further.  
2. He said, "Need I send an e-mail?"  
He asked me if he had to send an e-mail.  
3. He said, "When I was a kid, I could not go out alone," ( यहाँ 'could' का प्रयोग अनुमति के लिए हुआ है।)  
He said that when he was a kid, he was not allowed to go out alone.  
4. She said, "Rohit, you must be prudent." ( यहाँ 'must' का प्रयोग आदेश के लिए हुआ है।)  
She ordered Rohit to be prudent.

### PRACTICE SET

**Directions: A sentence has been given in direct/Indirect form. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct form.**

1. **“Call the first witness”, said the Judge.**
  - (a) The judge commanded to call the first witness.
  - (b) The judge commanded them to call the first witness.
  - (c) The judge commanded that the first witness be called.
  - (d) The judge commanded the first witness to be called.
2. **The queen said to her son, “You must go to the forest and remain there till your father calls you back.”**
  - (a) The queen ordered her son to go to the forest and remain there till his father calls him back.
  - (b) The queen told her son that he must go to the forest and remain there till his father called him back.
  - (c) The queen told his son that you must go to the forest and remain there till your father called you back.
  - (d) The queen told her son to go to the forest and remained there till his father called him back.
3. **I said to her, “All your faults will be pardoned if you confess them.”**
  - (a) I told her that all her faults will be pardoned if you confess them.
  - (b) I told her that all her faults would be pardoned if she confessed them.
  - (c) I told her that all her faults will have to be pardoned if she confessed them.
  - (d) I told her that all her faults would have to be pardoned if she confessed them.
4. **He said to Sita, “When do you intend to pay back the money you borrowed from me?”**
  - (a) He enquired Sita when did she intend to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
  - (b) He enquired Sita when she intended to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
  - (c) He enquired Sita when she intended to pay back the money she had borrowed from him.
  - (d) He enquired when Sita intended to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
5. **“Let’s give a party”, said Jaya.**  
**“Let’s not”, said her husband.**
  - (a) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband answered in the negative.
  - (b) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband opposed the idea.
  - (c) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband contradicted her.
  - (d) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband refused.
6. **The old man of Latur said, “Alas! my only son is dead.”**
  - (a) The old man of Latur exclaimed with sorrow that his only son was dead.
  - (b) The old man of Latur told with pain that his only son was dead.



**Narration**

- (c) The old man of Lature expressed with anguish that his only son was dead.  
(d) The old man of Latur sorrowfully narrated that his only son was dead.
- 7. She said to the girl, “Did you do this ?”**  
(a) She asked the girl that she did that.  
(b) She asked the girl if she did that.  
(c) She asked the girl if she had done that.  
(d) She told the girl that she had done that.
- 8. “Many happy returns of your birthday”, we said.**  
(a) We greeted him on his birthday.  
(b) We said that many happy returns of your birthday.  
(c) We wished him many happy returns of his birthday.  
(d) We prayed for many happy returns of his birthday.
- 9. “Doctor”, the patient cried, “please tell me how much time I have.”**  
(a) The patient pleaded the doctor how much time he will have.  
(b) The patient exclaimed to the doctor that how much time he had.  
(c) The patient pleaded with the doctor to tell him how much time he had.  
(d) The patient cried to the doctor that how much time had he.
- 10. “So help me Heaven!” he cried, “I never steal again.”**  
(a) He wanted Heaven to help him so that he would never steal again.  
(b) She exclaimed to heaven that he would never steal again.  
(c) He exclaimed heaven to help him that he would never steal again.  
(d) He called upon heaven to witness his resolve never to steal again.
- 11. She said, “I’ll give you Rs. 100/- to keep your mouth shut.”**  
(a) She said that she would give him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.  
(b) She offered him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.  
(c) She suggested to him that she would give him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.  
(d) She proposed that she would give him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.
- 12. From one of the windows of my flat I can see the Qutub Minar’, said my friend.**  
(a) My friend told that from one of the windows of his flat he could see the Qutub Minar.  
(b) My friend said that from one of the windows of his flat he can see the Qutub Minar.  
(c) My friend said that from one of the windows of his flat he could see the Qutub Minar.  
(d) My friend told that from one of the windows of his flat he can see the Qutub Minar.
- 13. The teacher said to the student, “Why were you absent yesterday?”**  
(a) The teacher asked the student why had been he absent the previous day.  
(b) The teacher asked the student why had he been absent the previous day.  
(c) The teacher informed the student that why he had been absent the next day.  
(d) The teacher asked the student why he had been absent the previous day.

- 14. The teacher said to Ashok, "I shall report the matter to the Principal if you misbehave again."**
- (a) The teacher told Ashok that he would be reporting the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
  - (b) The teacher warned Ashok that he would report the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
  - (c) The teacher threatened Ashok to report the matter to the Principal if he misbehave again.
  - (d) The teacher cautioned Ashok about reporting the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
- 15. "Fi! A soldier and afraid of fighting!" said Babar.**
- (a) Babar exclaimed with surprise that a soldier should be afraid of fighting.
  - (b) Addressing a soldier, Babar cursed him that he should be afraid of fighting.
  - (c) Babar cursed the soldier who was afraid of fighting.
  - (d) Babar cursed and exclaimed that a soldier should not be afraid of fighting.
- 16. The teacher said to Ram, "Would you like to go on a trip to Kashmir?" Ram said, "Yes."**
- (a) The teacher asked if Ram would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied yes.
  - (b) The teacher asked Ram if he would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied yes.
  - (c) The teacher asked Ram if he would have like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied in the affirmative.
  - (d) The teacher asked Ram if he would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied in the affirmative.
- 17. Everybody said, "How well she sings!"**
- (a) Everybody told us that she sings very well.
  - (b) Everybody exclaimed that she sings very well.
  - (c) Everybody exclaimed that she sang very well.
  - (d) Everybody told us that how she sang very well.
- 18. "Suppose your children go out for a nice long walk", she said.**
- (a) She proposed that his children went out for a nice long walk.
  - (b) She advised that his children go out for a nice long walk .
  - (c) She suggested that his children go out for a nice long walk.
  - (d) She suggested that his children should go out for a nice long walk.
- 19. I said, "When it gets dark, light the lantern and hang it out."**
- (a) I said that when it got dark he light the lantern and hung it out.
  - (b) I requested that when it got dark he may light the lantern and hang it out.
  - (c) I said that when it got dark he should light the lantern and hung it out.
  - (d) I said that when it got dark he should light the lantern and hang it out.
- 20. "Do as you wish, but don't come and ask me for help if you get into difficulties.", He said to me**

**Narration**

- (a) He told me to do as he wished or he wouldn't come and help me if I got into difficulties.  
(b) He told me to do as I wished, but not to come and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.  
(c) He ordered me to do as I wished, but not to come and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.  
(d) He told me that unless I did as I wished he would not come and help me if I got into difficulties.
- 21. "May you live long and prosper", said the old lady to her son.**  
(a) The old lady blessed her son with long life and wished him prosperity.  
(b) The old lady prayed for her son's long life and prosperity.  
(c) The old lady prayed for her son and said that he might live long and prosper.  
(d) The old lady blessed her son and prayed for his long life and prosperity.
- 22. Socrates said, "Virtue is its own reward."**  
(a) Socrates said that virtue had its own rewards.  
(b) Socrates says that virtue is its own reward.  
(c) Socrates said that virtue is its own reward.  
(d) Socrates said that virtue was its own reward.
- 23. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question?"**  
(a) He requested the interviewer if he could please repeat the question.  
(b) He requested the interviewer to please repeat the question.  
(c) He requested the interviewer to repeat the question.  
(d) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.
- 24. He said, "It used to be a lovely, quiet street."**  
(a) He said that it used to be a lovely, quiet street.  
(b) He pointed out that it had used to be a lovely, quiet street.  
(c) He said that there used to be a lovely, quiet street.  
(d) He inquired whether there was a lovely, quiet street.
- 25. The Prime Minister said that no one would be allowed to disturb the peace.**  
(a) The Prime Minister said, "We shall not allow any one to disturb the peace."  
(b) The Prime Minister said, "We would not allow any one to disturb the peace."  
(c) The Prime Minister said, "No one will disturb the peace."  
(d) The Prime Minister said, "No one can disturb the peace."
- 26. The spectators said, "Bravo ! Well done, players."**  
(a) The spectators shouted that the players were doing very well.  
(b) The spectators exclaimed with joy that the players were doing very well.  
(c) The spectators applauded the players saying that they had done well.  
(d) The spectators applauded the players joyfully to do well.
- 27. I said to my friend, "Good Morning.Let us go for a picnic today."**  
(a) I told good morning to my friend and asked to go for a picnic that day.  
(b) I wished my friend good morning and proposed that we should go for a picnic that day.  
(c) I wished my friend good morning and proposed that they should go for a picnic

that day.

(d) I told good morning to my friend and suggested to go for a picnic today.

**28. The new student asked the old one, "Do you know my name?"**

(a) The new student asked the old one if he knew his name.

(b) The new student asked the old one that whether he knew his names.

(c) The new student asked the old one did he know his name.

(d) The new student asked the old one if he knows his name.

**29. I warned her that I could no longer tolerate her coming late.**

(a) I said to her, "You can no longer tolerate my coming late."

(b) I said to her, "I can no longer tolerate your coming late."

(c) I said to her, "He can no longer tolerate her coming late".

(d) I said to her, "I can no longer tolerate she coming late."

**30. I said to my mother, "I will certainly take you to Bangalore this week."**

(a) I told my mother he would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.

(b) I told my mother that I would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.

(c) I told my mother that she would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.

(d) I told to my mother that I would take you to Bangalore that week.

**31. "How clever of you to have solved the puzzle so quickly!" said the mother.**

(a) The mother exclaimed admiringly that it was very clever of him to have solved the puzzle so quickly.

(b) The mother expressed that he was so clever to have solved the puzzle quickly.

(c) The mother told that he was very clever in solving the puzzle so quickly.

(d) The mother exclaimed with joy that he was clever enough to solve the puzzle so quickly.

**32. He said that he went for a walk every morning.**

(a) He said, "I went for a walk every morning".

(b) He said, "I go for a walk every morning".

(c) He said, "I will go for a walk morning".

(d) He said, "he went for a walk every morning".

**33. I reiterated, "I don't care about the job".**

(a) I reiterated I didn't care about the job.

(b) I said again and again I didn't care about the job.

(c) I reiterated that I did not care about the job.

(d) I repeatedly said that I cared about the job.

**34. I said to my brother, "Let us go to some hill station for a change."**

(a) I suggested to my brother that they should go to some hill station for a change.

(b) I suggested to my brother that we should go to some hill station for a change.

(c) I suggested to my brother that let us go to some hill station for a change.

(d) I suggested to my brother that let them go to some hill station for a change.

**35. I wondered how many discoveries went unheeded.**

(a) I said, "How many discoveries have gone unheeded?"

**Narration**

- (b) I said, "How many discoveries went unheeded?"  
(c) I said, "Do discoveries go unheeded?"  
(d) I said, "How many discoveries go unheeded?"
- 36. Gopan said to me, "Can you do these sums for me?"**  
(a) Gopan asked me if I could do those sums for him.  
(b) Gopan asked me if I can do those sums for him.  
(c) Gopan asked me if I can do those sums for him.  
(d) Gopan asked if I could do these sums for him.
- 37. The boss said, "It's time we began planning our work".**  
(a) The boss said that it was time they had begun planning their work.  
(b) The boss said that it was time we had begun planning our work.  
(c) The boss said that it was time they began planning their work.  
(d) The boss said that it was time we began planning his work.
- 38. He said to the judge, "I did not commit this crime."**  
(a) He told the judge that he did not commit the crime.  
(b) The told the judge that he had not committed the crime.  
(c) He told the judge that he had not committed that crime.  
(d) He told the judge that he had not committed this crime.
- 39. Rahul said, "I will do it now or never".**  
(a) Rahul said that he will do it now or never.  
(b) Rahul said that he will now or never do it.  
(c) Rahul said that he would do it then or never.  
(d) Rahul said that he would now or never do it.
- 40. My father once said to me, "If I can't trust my people, then I don't want to be doing this."**  
(a) His father once told him that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing that.  
(b) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing that.  
(c) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust my people then he didn't want to be doing that.  
(d) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing this.
- 41. Doshi said to his wife, "Please select one of these necklaces."**  
(a) Doshi requested his wife to select one of these necklaces.  
(b) Doshi said to his wife to please select one of these necklaces.  
(c) Doshi told his wife to please select one of these necklaces.  
(d) Doshi requested his wife to select one of those necklaces.
- 42. He wrote in his report, "The rainfall has been scanty till now."**  
(a) He reported that the rainfall has been scanty till now.

- (b) He reported that the rainfall had been scanty till now.  
(c) He reported that the rainfall has been scanty till then.  
(d) He reported that the rainfall had been scanty till then.
43. **“Govind,” said the manager sternly, “I command you to tell me what the old man said.”**  
(a) The manager sternly commanded Govind to tell him what the old man had said.  
(b) The manager commanded sternly to Govind to tell him what the old man had to say.  
(c) The manager commanded Govind to tell him what the old man said.  
(d) The manager told Govind to tell him what the old man said.
44. **He says, “I am going to the market now.”**  
(a) He says that he is going to the market now.  
(b) He said that he was going to the market then.  
(c) He says that he was going to the market then.  
(d) He said that he was going to the market now.
45. **She said to Rita, “Please help me with my homework.”**  
(a) She requested Rita to help her in her homework.  
(b) Rita requested her to help her with her homework.  
(c) She requested Rita to help her with her homework.  
(d) She requested Rita to help her homework.
46. **He said to me, “Do not run after money and then you will see money running after you.”**  
(a) He told to me that I did not run after money and then I would see money running me.  
(b) He advised me not to run after money and then I would see money running after me.  
(c) He warned me not to run after money and then I will see money running after me.  
(d) He warned me not to run after money and then money would run after me.
47. **He said to me, “Do you know English?”**  
(a) He asked me if I did know English.  
(b) He asked me if I knew English.  
(c) he asked me that if I know English.  
(d) He asked me if I know English.
48. **My father said to me, “Bravo! You have done well.”**  
(a) My father applauded me saying that I had done well.  
(b) My father applauded me saying that I have done well.  
(c) My father applauded me saying that I did well.  
(d) My father applauded me saying that you had done well.
49. **Tom said that he had had a strange experience the day before.**  
(a) Tom said, “I have a strange experience yesterday.”

**Narration**

- (b) Tom said, "I have had a strange experience yesterday."
- (c) Tom said, "I had a strange experience yesterday."
- (d) Tom said, "I had had a strange experience yesterday."

**50. Our teacher said to us, "I am not going to tolerate your nonsense anymore."**

- (a) Our teacher warned us that she is not going to tolerate our nonsense anymore.
- (b) Our teacher warned us that she was not going to tolerate our nonsense anymore.
- (c) Our teacher told us that she was not going to be tolerate our nonsense anymore.
- (d) Our teacher said that she was not going to tolerate our nonsense anymore

**51. Sheela said, "I am going to finish this work now before I start a new work tomorrow."**

- (a) Sheela told me that she was going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
- (b) Sheela said that she was going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
- (c) Sheela said that she is going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
- (d) Sheela told that she was going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.

**52. "Do you suppose you know better than your own father?" shouted her angry mother.**

- (a) Her angry mother shouted and asked that she supposed whether she knew better than her own father.
- (b) Her angry mother shouted and asked that she supposed that she knew better than her own father.
- (c) Her angry mother shouted whether she supposed that she known better than her own father.
- (d) Her angry mother shouted and asked her whether she supposed that she knew better than her own father.

**53. "So help me, Heaven !" he cried "I will never drive recklessly".**

- (a) He called upon Heaven to see his resolve never to drive recklessly.
- (b) He called upon Heaven to witness his resolve never to drive recklessly.
- (c) He called upon Heaven to witness his resolved never to drive recklessly.
- (d) He ordered Heaven to witness his resolve never to drive recklessly.

**54. The dwarf said to her, "Promise me that when you are a queen you will give me your first-born child."**

- (a) The draft advised her to promised that when she was a queen she would give him her first born child.
- (b) The draft requested her to promise that when she had been a queen she would give him her first born child.
- (c) The draft requested her to promise that when she is a queen she would give

him her first born child.

- (d) The draft asked her to promise him that when she was a queen she would give him her first born child.

**55. "Dear bird", she said, stroking its feathers, "have you come to comfort me in my sorrow?"**

- (a) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately that she had come to comfort her in her sorrow.  
(b) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately whether it had come to comfort in her sorrow.  
(c) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately whether they had come to comfort her in her sorrow.  
(d) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately whether it had come to comfort her in her sorrow.

**56. He said, "My God ! I am ruined."**

- (a) He exclaimed sadly that he was ruined.  
(b) He exclaimed that he was ruined.  
(c) He exclaimed sadly that he had been ruined.  
(d) He exclaimed sadly that he ruined.

**57. "Ah me!" exclaimed the man, "What a rash and bloody deed you have done!"**

- (a) The man exclaimed that he had done a very rash and bloody deed.  
(b) The man exclaimed sadly that he had done a very rash and bloody deed.  
(c) The man exclaimed with sorry that you had done a very rash and bloody deed.  
(d) The man exclaimed with sorrow that they had done a very rash and bloody deed.

**58. Bhishma said, "Boys! Boys! Remember you are playing a game. If it be Arjuna's turn let him have it."**

- (a) Bhishma asked the boys to remembered that they were playing a game. If it was Arjuna's turn he must have it.  
(b) Bhishma asked the boys to remembered that they were playing a game. If it is Arjuna's turn he must have it.  
(c) Bhishma asked the boys to remember that they were playing a game. If it was Arjuna's turn he must have it.  
(d) Bhishma asked the boys to remember that we were playing a game. If it was Arjuna's turn he must have it.

**59. "What are you doing, grandma?" said the little boy. "I'm planting saplings, my little prince." "Ah, how interesting! Let me try , if I can also do so."**

- (a) The little boy said to his grandma what she was doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.  
(b) The little boy asked his grandma what she was doing. She replied affectionately



**Narration**

that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.

- (c) The little boy asked his grandma that she was doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.
- (d) The little boy asked his grandma what was she doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.

**60. "You say," said the judge, "that the bag you lost contained one hundred and ten pounds". "Yes, your honour," replied the cheat. "Then as this one contains one hundred pounds it cannot be yours."**

- (a) The judge asked the cheat if the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied respectfully in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded that as that one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
- (b) The judge ordered the cheat if the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied respectfully in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded that as that one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
- (c) The judge ordered the cheat that the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied respectfully in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded that as that one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
- (d) The judge asked the cheat that the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded as this one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.

**61. The child said, 'Mommy, can you bring the moon for me?' Mommy said, 'No.'**

- (a) The child asked his mommy if she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied in the negative.
- (b) The child told his mommy if she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied in the negative.
- (c) The child asked his mommy if she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied no.
- (d) The child said to his mommy that she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied in the negative.

**62. He said, "Fi!" and vomited**

- (a) He exclaimed with disgust and had vomited
- (b) He exclaimed with disgust and vomited
- (c) He exclaimed with sorrow and vomited
- (d) He exclaimed with disgust and then had vomited

- 63. The captain said to the soldiers, " Stand at ease."**
- (a) The captain commanded the soldiers to stand at ease.
  - (b) The captain said the soldiers to stand at ease.
  - (c) The captain told the soldiers to stand at ease.
  - (d) The captain commanded the soldiers that they stand at ease.
- 64. "I can show no mercy," said the king, "except permitting you to choose what kind of death you wish to die."**
- (a) The king asked that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
  - (b) The king advised that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
  - (c) The king ordered that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
  - (d) The king said that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
- 65. Kausalya said to Rama, " Do not desire, O my child, to possess the stars, because they are thousands of miles off."**
- (a) Kaushalya forbade her child Rama to desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
  - (b) Kaushalya requested her child Rama to desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
  - (c) Kaushalya ordered her child Rama to not desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
  - (d) Kaushalya said to her child Rama not to desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
- 66. "What a stupid fellow you are!" she remarked.**
- (a) She exclaimed that what a stupid fellow he was.
  - (b) She exclaimed that he was a very stupid fellow.
  - (c) She exclaimed in disgust how he could be so stupid.
  - (d) She asked him what a stupid fellow he was
- 67. The police said to the thief, "Don't move."**
- (a) The police ordered the thief not to move.
  - (b) The police ordered the thief that he should not move.
  - (c) The police told the thief that he did not move.
  - (d) The police ordered to the thief to not move.
- 68. He said, "I am going to college just now."**
- (a) He said that he was going to college just now.
  - (b) He asked that he was going to college just then.
  - (c) He said that he was going to college just then.
  - (d) He asked that he was going to college just now.

**Narration**

**69. The teacher said to the student “Can you explain this?”**

- (a) The teacher asked the student whether he can explain this.
- (b) The teacher asked the student whether he can explain that.
- (c) The teacher asked the student whether he could explain this.
- (d) The teacher asked the student whether he could explain that.

**70. Ramu said, “My master is planning to build a huge house in Khandala.”**

- (a) Ramu said that his master planned to build a huge house in Khandala.
- (b) Ramu said that his master is planning to build a huge house in Khandala.
- (c) Ramu said that his master’s plan is to build a huge house in Khandala.
- (d) Ramu said that his master was planning to build a huge house in Khandala.

**71. Nandita said to Nitin, “Can you solve this sum?”**

- (a) Nandita asked Nitin if could he solve this sum.
- (b) Nandita asked Nitin if could he solve that sum.
- (c) Nandita asked Nitin if he could solve this sum.
- (d) Nandita asked Nitin if he could solve that sum.

**72. He said, “How lovely the scene is!”**

- (a) He exclaimed that the scene is very lovely.
- (b) He exclaimed that how the scene was lovely.
- (c) He exclaimed that the scene was very lovely.
- (d) He exclaimed that the scene is indeed lovely.

**73. Bill said, “I am here to help you all.”**

- (a) Bill said that he is here to help you all.
- (b) Bill said that he was there to help us all.
- (c) Bill said that he was here to help us all.
- (d) Bill said that he is there to help us all.

**74. The kids yelled in a loud voice, “We love our family.”**

- (a) The kids yelled loudly that they love our family.
- (b) The kids yelled in a loud voice that they loved their family.
- (c) The kids yelled in a loud voice that they loved our family.
- (d) The kids were shouting loudly that they loved their family.

**75. He said to me, “Please visit my company tomorrow”.**

- (a) He said to me to visit his company tomorrow.
- (b) He requested me to visit his company tomorrow.
- (c) He requested me to visit his company the next day.
- (d) He said to me to visit his company the next day.

**76. He said, “My parents are arriving tomorrow”.**

- (a) He said that his parents are arriving the next day.
- (b) He said that his parents were arriving the next day.
- (c) He said that his parents are arriving tomorrow.
- (d) He said that his parents have arrived the next day.

- 77. He said, "How cruel of him!"**
- (a) He remarked that it was very cruel of him.
  - (b) He remarked on his great cruelty.
  - (c) He remark that it was very cruel of him.
  - (d) He remarked that it is very cruel of him.
- 78. "How did it get here?" She wanted to know.**
- (a) She wanted to know how did it get here.
  - (b) She wanted to know how it had got there.
  - (c) She wanted to know how did it got there.
  - (d) She wanted to know how it get there.
- 79. The author said, "It took me three years to finish the novel."**
- (a) The author said that it took him three years to finish the novel.
  - (b) The author said that it had taken me three years to finish the novel.
  - (c) The author said that it would take him three years to finish the novel.
  - (d) The author said that it had taken him three years to finish the novel.
- 80. "Go away!" she said to the man, "do not trouble your family anymore".**
- (a) She asked the man to go away and not trouble the family any more.
  - (b) She asked the man not to trouble the family that was away, any more.
  - (c) She asked the man not to trouble your family any more and go away.
  - (d) She asked the man to go away and not to trouble his family any more.
- 81. He asked me, "Have you finished reading the magazine?"**
- (a) He asked me whether I had finished reading the magazine.
  - (b) He asked me if had I finished reading the magazine.
  - (c) He asked me if I have finished reading the magazine.
  - (d) He asked me whether I finished reading the magazine.
- 82. He said, "We have done our work."**
- (a) He said that he had done his work.
  - (b) He said that they have done their work.
  - (c) He said that they had done their work.
  - (d) He said that they should do their work.
- 83. "I'm sorry I'm unable to repay the loan in time," said the customer.**
- (a) The customer regrets that he was unable to repay the loan in time.
  - (b) The customer regretted that he is unable to repay the loan in time.
  - (c) The customer regretted that he was unable to repay the loan in time.
  - (d) The customer said that he could be unable to repay the loan in time.
- 84. "Please, take me to the officer," said the visitor.**
- (a) The visitor requested them to take him to the officer.
  - (b) The visitor told them to take him to the officer.
  - (c) The visitor requested for the officer to be taken.
  - (d) The visitor wanted the officer to take him there.

**Narration**

- 85. Nitin said, "What a pleasant atmosphere this place has!"**
- (a) Nitin exclaimed with joy that that place was a pleasant atmosphere.
  - (b) Nitin exclaimed with joy that was a pleasant atmosphere in that place.
  - (c) Nitin exclaimed with joy that that place had a pleasant atmosphere.
  - (d) Nitin exclaimed with joy that what a pleasant atmosphere that place had.
- 86. Aarti said, "I am in a hurry today."**
- (a) Aarti said that she was in a hurry that day.
  - (b) Aarti said that I am in a hurry today.
  - (c) Aarti said that she is in a hurry today.
  - (d) Aarti said that she is in a hurry that day.
- 87. They said, "We are practising for the next match."**
- (a) They said that they are practising for the next match.
  - (b) They said that they practised for the next match.
  - (c) They said that they were practising for the next match.
  - (d) They said they were going to practise for the next match.
- 88. He said, " May you live long."**
- (a) He suggested that my life might be long.
  - (b) He prayed that my life might be long.
  - (c) He prayed that my life may be longer.
  - (d) He declared that my life is longer.
- 89. "When did you meet my brother?" She asked me.**
- (a) She wanted to know when did I meet her brother.
  - (b) She asked when did I meet my brother.
  - (c) She asked me when I had met her brother.
  - (d) She wants to know when I had met my brother.
- 90. Ruby requested me to lend her Rs. 1000 the next day.**
- (a) Ruby said to me, "Please lend me Rs. 1000 the next day."
  - (b) Ruby said to me, "Please lend her Rs. 1000 the next day."
  - (c) Ruby said to me, "Please lend her Rs. 1000 tomorrow."
  - (d) Ruby said to me, "Please lend me Rs. 1000 tomorrow."
- 91. "You'd better leave the dog along," the man said.**
- (a) The man said to me to leave the dog alone.
  - (b) The man told me to better leave the dog alone.
  - (c) the man warned me to leave the dog alone.
  - (d) The man said I should leave the dog alone.
- 92. "I'd have enjoyed the journey more if the man next to me hadn't snored all the time," said John.**
- (a) John said that he enjoyed the journey but the man next to me snored.
  - (b) John said that he would have enjoyed the journey more if the man next to him hadn't snored all the time.

- (c) John said that he would have enjoyed the journey if the next man hadn't snored all the time.
- (d) John said that he would have enjoyed the journey if the man next to him did not snore.
- 93. A poet said, "The night is dark and I am far from home."**
- (a) A poet said that the night was dark and he was far from home.
- (b) A poet told his friend that the night is dark and that he is far from home.
- (c) The friend was told by the poet that the night was dark and he was far from home.
- (d) A poet said that the night is dark and he is far from home.
- 94. The players reported that the spectators were cheering while they were playing.**
- (a) "The spectators have been cheering while we played.", said the players.
- (b) "The spectators cheered while we were playing.", said the players.
- (c) "The spectators were cheering while we were playing.", said the players.
- (d) "The spectators played while we cheered.", said the players.
- 95. She requested the boys to listen to what she was saying.**
- (a) She said to the boys, "Please listen to what I am saying."
- (b) I said to the boys, "Listen to what I am saying."
- (c) She said, "Boys, listen to what I was saying."
- (d) She said, "I requested you to listen to what I am saying."
- 96. "Do you want balloons?" he said to the child.**
- (a) He asked the child if it wanted balloons.
- (b) He asked the child whether it had wanted balloons.
- (c) He asked the child did it want balloons.
- (d) He asked the child if it would want balloons.
- 97. She said, "How ugly I look in this dress!"**
- (a) She said that how ugly she was looking in that dress.
- (b) She exclaimed how ugly she looked in that dress.
- (c) She expressed how ugly she looked in that dress.
- (d) She exclaimed that she looked very ugly in that dress.
- 98. She said "You can leave the books here."**
- (a) She said that they can leave the books there.
- (b) She said that they could leave the books there.
- (c) She said that they can leave the books here.
- (d) She said that they could leave the books here.
- 99. My friend said "I am leaving today."**
- (a) My friend said that he is leaving today.
- (b) My friend said that he was leaving today.
- (c) My friend said that he leaves today.
- (d) My friend said that he was leaving that day.

**Narration**

**100. Mukta said to Puneet, “My mother is a good cook.”**

- (a) Mukta told Puneet that her mother was a good cook.
- (b) Mukta told Puneet that my mother was a good cook.
- (c) Mukta told to Puneet that her mother is a good cook.
- (d) Mukta asked Puneet that her mother is a good cook.

**101. The commander said to the army, “March forward”.**

- (a) The commander asked the army march forward.
- (b) The commander ordered the army to march forward.
- (c) The commander requested the army to go forward.
- (d) The army requested the commander to march.

**102. He promised, “I will do it tomorrow.”**

- (a) He promised that he will do it tomorrow.
- (b) He promised that he will do it the next day.
- (c) He promised that he would do it tomorrow.
- (d) He promised that he would do it the next day.

**103. Geeta said, “I did not do this deliberately.”**

- (a) Geeta said that I had not done that deliberately.
- (b) Geeta said that she had not done that deliberately.
- (c) Geeta said that she has not done this deliberately.
- (d) Geeta said that I have not done this deliberately.

**104. She said, “I’m afraid we are rather late!”**

- (a) She exclaimed that they were frightened of being late.
- (b) She exclaimed that she was afraid that they were rather late.
- (c) She shouted that they were scared that they would be late.
- (d) She screamed that she was worried that they would all be late.

**105. She said to me, “What can I do for you ?”**

- (a) She asked me what she could do for me.
- (b) She asked me what can she do for me.
- (c) She asked me what she can do for me.
- (d) She asked me whether she can do anything for me.

**106. He said, ‘Alas! I am undone !’**

- (a) He said that it was his undoing.
- (b) He exclaimed pathetically that he was undone.
- (c) He stated that he was undone.
- (d) He cried that he was being undone.

**107. “I shall unlock the secrets of their success,” he said.**

- (a) He said that he shall unlock the secrets of their success.
- (b) He said that he should unlock the secrets of their success.
- (c) He said that he would unlock the secrets of their success.
- (d) He said that he will unlock the secrets of their success.

- 108. "I wonder what he wants of us," said Quint.**
- (a) Quint said that he was wondering what he wanted of them.
  - (b) Quint said that he wondered what he wanted of us.
  - (c) Quint said he wondered what he wants of them.
  - (d) Quint said that he wondered what he wanted of them.
- 109. Dinesh said, "I want to eat a good mango one of these days."**
- (a) Dinesh said he wants to eat a good mango one of these days.
  - (b) Dinesh said that he wanted to eat a good mango one of those days.
  - (c) Dinesh said that he wants to eat a good mango one of those days.
  - (d) Dinesh said that he wanted to eat a good mango one of these days.
- 110. He said, "I intend to leave for Delhi tonight."**
- (a) He said that he will intend to leave for Delhi tonight.
  - (b) lie said that he should intend to leave for Delhi that night.
  - (c) He said that he intended to leave for Delhi that night.
  - (d) He said that his intention is to leave for Delhi tonight.
- 111. He said, "The Sun rises in the east."**
- (a) He said that the Sun rised in the east.
  - (b) He said that the Sun rises in the east.
  - (c) He said that the Sun will rise in the east.
  - (d) He said that the Sun may rise in the east.
- 112. Ram asked Krishna, "Where are you going today?"**
- (a) Ram asked Krishna where he was going that day.
  - (b) Ram asked Krishna as to where he was going on the previous day.
  - (c) Ram asked Krishna where was he going the next day.
  - (d) Ram asked Krishna where was he going the day before.
- 113. He said, "What a fool Tom is!"**
- (a) He exclaimed that he was a big fool.
  - (b) He exclaimed that Tom was a big fool.
  - (c) He wondered what kind of a fool Tom was.
  - (d) He claimed that Tom was a big fool.
- 114. "What kind of scheme do you have ?" Amif said to the insurance agent.**
- (a) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she had.
  - (b) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she has.
  - (c) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she is having.
  - (d) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she was having.
- 115. The doctor said to the patient, "Take complete rest."**
- (a) The doctor told to the patient that take complete rest.
  - (b) The doctor advised the patient to take complete rest.
  - (c) The doctor suggested the patient to take complete rest.
  - (d) The doctor asked the patient take complete rest.



**Narration**

**116. Mini said to me, "I have bought this flat for my mother."**

- (a) Mini told that she had bought that flat for her mother.
- (b) Mini said that she bought that flat for her mother.
- (c) Mini said she has bought that flat for her mother.
- (d) Mini told me that she had bought that flat for her mother.

**117. He said, "I will come again."**

- (a) He said that he will come again.
- (b) He says he is coming again.
- (c) He says he'll come again.
- (d) He said that he would come again.

**118. "Don't do any more work until you have had a rest," her mother said to her.**

- (a) Her mother advised her not to do any more work until she has had a rest.
- (b) Her mother advised her not to do any more work until she had had a rest.
- (c) Her mother advised her that she not do any more work until she had had a rest.
- (d) Her mother advised her that she need not do any more work until she had had a rest.

**119. "Make me another suit like this," he said to the tailor.**

- (a) He asked the tailor to make him another suit like this.
- (b) He asks the tailor to make him another suit like this.
- (c) He told the tailor to make him another suit like that.
- (d) He told the tailor to make me another suit like this.

**120. My Principal told me, "Don't conduct any test tomorrow."**

- (a) My Principal told me not to conduct any test tomorrow.
- (b) My Principal told me not to conduct any test tomorrow.
- (c) My Principal ordered me don't conduct any test.
- (d) My Principal ordered me not to conduct any test the next day.

**121. Kiran said to me, "Did you see the cricket match on television last night?"**

- (a) Kiran asked me if I saw the cricket match on television the earlier night
- (b) Kiran asked me if I had seen the cricket match on television the previous night
- (c) Kiran asked me did I see the cricket match on television last night
- (d) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night

**122. David said to Anna, "Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow."**

- (a) David told Anna that Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow
- (b) David told Anna that Mona left for her native place the next day
- (c) David told to Anna that Mona would be leaving for her native place tomorrow
- (d) David told Anna that Mona would leave for her native place the next day

**123. I said to him, "Why are you working so hard?"**

- (a) I asked him why he was working so hard
- (b) I asked him why was he working so hard

- (c) I asked him why he had been working so hard  
(d) I asked him why had he been working so hard
- 124. Pooja said, "Ridhi, do you want another cake?"**  
(a) Pooja asked Ridhi do you want another cake.  
(b) Pooja asked Ridhi if she wanted another cake.  
(c) Pooja said to Ridhi you wanted another cake.  
(d) Pooja said if you wanted another cake.
- 125. The tailor said to him, "Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow evening?"**  
(a) The tailor asked him that he will have the suit ready by the next evening  
(b) The tailor asked him that he would had the suit ready by the next evening  
(c) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening  
(d) The tailor asked him if he will like to have the suit ready by the next evening
- 126. He ordered his servant to do as he was told.**  
(a) He ordered his servant, "Do as you are told."  
(b) He said to his servant, "Do as you are told."  
(c) He said to his servant, "Do as I told you."  
(d) He said to his servant, "Do as you were told."
- 127. He said, "Be quiet and listen to my words."**  
(a) He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words  
(b) He urged them and said be quiet and listen to words  
(c) He said they should be quiet and listen to his words  
(d) He said you should be quiet and listen to my words
- 128. He said to me, "I have often told you not to play with fire."**  
(a) He said that he has often been telling me not to play with fire  
(b) He told me that he had often told me not to play with fire  
(c) He reminded me that he often said to me not to play with fire  
(d) He said to me that he often told me not to play with fire
- 129. "I have seen the film before" Sunita says.**  
(a) Sunita said that she had seen the film before.  
(b) Sunita says that she has seen the film before.  
(c) Sunita said that the film was seen by her before.  
(d) Sunita said that she saw the film earlier.
- 130. Pawan said to me, "If I hear any news, I'll phone you."**  
(a) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he will phone me  
(b) Pawan told me that if he will hear any news, he will phone me  
(c) Pawan told me if he had heard any news, he would phone me  
(d) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me
- 131. The teacher said to Mahesh, "Congratulations ! Wish you success in life."**  
(a) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and said wish you success in life  
(b) The teacher wished congratulations and success in life to Mahesh

**Narration**

- (c) The teacher said congratulations to Mahesh and wished him success life  
(d) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and wished him success in life
- 132. The poor examinee said, "O God! take pity on me."**  
(a) The poor examinee prayed God to take pity on him  
(b) The poor examinee, invoking God, implored him to take pity on him  
(c) The poor examinee exclaimed that God take pity on him  
(d) The poor examinee asked God to take pity on him
- 133. "Where will you be tomorrow," I said, "in case I have to ring you?"**  
(a) I asked where you will be the next day in case I will ring him  
(b) I asked where he would be the next day in case I had to ring him  
(c) I said to him where he will be in case I have to ring him  
(d) I enquired about his whereabouts the next day in case I would have to ring up
- 134. Seeta said to me, "Can you give me your pen?"**  
(a) Seeta asked me can I give her my pen  
(b) Seeta asked me if I can give me your pen  
(c) Seeta asked me if I could give her my pen  
(d) Seeta asked me if I gave her my pen
- 135. The father warned his son that he should be beware of him.**  
(a) The father warned his son, "Beware of him!"  
(b) The father warned his son, "Watch that chap!"  
(c) The father warned his son, "Be careful about him."  
(d) The father warned his son, "Don't fall into the trap."
- 136. Manna said to Rohan, "Have you sat in a trolley bus before?"**  
(a) Manna asked Rohan whether he had sat in a trolley bus earlier.  
(b) Manna asked Rohan had he sat in a trolley bus before.  
(c) Manna asked Rohan-if he sat on a trolley bus before.  
(d) Manna asked Rohan if he has ever sat in a trolley bus
- 137. Farhan said to Geeta, "Could you lend me a hundred rupees until tomorrow?"**  
(a) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until tomorrow.  
(b) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until the next day.  
(c) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.  
(d) Farhan asked whether Geeta could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.
- 138. "What about going for a swim," he said, "It's quite fine now."**  
(a) He asked me what about going for a swim as it was quite fine then  
(b) He proposed going for a swim as it was quite fine.  
(c) He suggested going for a swim as it was quite fine.  
(d) He advised me to go for a swim as it was quite fine.
- 139. "You can't bathe in this sea," he said to me, "it's very rough."**  
(a) He said that I can't bathe in this sea because it's very rough.  
(b) He said that you couldn't bathe in that sea if it was very rough.

- (c) He said that I couldn't bathe in that sea as it was very rough.  
(d) He said that you can't bathe in this sea since it was very rough.
- 140. Jagdish said, "We passed by a beautiful lake when we went on a trip to Goa."**  
(a) Jagdish said that they passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.  
(b) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.  
(c) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.  
(d) Jagdish said they passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.
- 141. He said to me, "I expect you to attend the function."**  
(a) He told me that he had expected me to attend the function.  
(b) He told me that he expected me to attended the function.  
(c) He told me that he expected me to have attended the function.  
(d) He told me that he expected me to attend the function.
- 142. He said, "Why didn't you send your application to me ?"**  
(a) He enquired why I had not sent my application to him.  
(b) He enquired why I did not send my application to him.  
(c) He enquired why had I not sent my application to him.  
(d) He enquired why did I not send my application to him.
- 143. Dinesh asked, "Are you going to the party tomorrow, Eliza ?"**  
(a) Dinesh asked whether Eliza was going to the party the next day.  
(b) Dinesh asked Eliza whether you are going to the party the next day.  
(c) Dinesh asked Eliza whether she was going to the party the next day.  
(d) Dinesh asked Eliza are you going to the party tomorrow.
- 144. John said, "How long will it take to travel from Germany to South Africa?"**  
(a) John asked how long it will take to travel from Germany to South Africa.  
(b) John asked how long would it take to travel from Germany to South Africa.  
(c) John asked how long it would take to travel from Germany to South Africa.  
(d) John was asking how long must it take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
- 145. "What did you see at the South Pole ?" Ashok asked Anil.**  
(a) Ashok asked Anil if he saw anything at the South Pole.  
(b) Ashok asked Anil what he had. seen at the South Pole.  
(c) Ashok asked Anil what did he see at the South Pole.  
(d) Ashok asked Anil that he saw anything at the South Pole.
- 146. "Do you want some more sweets ?" asked my friend.**  
(a) My friend asked me if I want some more sweets.  
(b) My friend said to me if I wanted some more sweets.  
(c) My friend asked me whether I wanted some more sweets.  
(d) My friend asked me that I wanted some more sweets.

**Narration**

**147. I said to my sister, "I brought you a doll yesterday."**

- (a) I told my sister that I brought you a doll the previous day.
- (b) I told my sister that I had brought her a doll the previous day.
- (c) I told my sister that I had brought her a doll yesterday.
- (d) I told my sister that I brought her a doll yesterday.

**148. The captain said to the army, "March forward, now."**

- (a) The captain said to the army that march forward now.
- (b) The captain ordered the army to march forward then.
- (c) The captain ordered the army to march on that day.
- (d) The captain ordered the army to attack the enemy.

**149. They said, "We've lived here for a long time."**

- (a) They said that they have lived there for a long time.
- (b) They said that they lived here for a long time.
- (c) They said that they had lived there for a long time.
- (d) They said that they have lived for a long time.

**150. "Would you open the door please ?"**

- (a) She asked me to please open the door.
- (b) She requested me to open the door.
- (c) She requested me to please open the door.
- (d) She asked me open the door.

**151. The teacher said, "Gandhiji was born in India."**

- (a) The teacher said that Gandhiji had been born in India.
- (b) The teacher says that Gandhiji was born in India.
- (c) The teacher said that Gandhiji had born in India.
- (d) The teacher said that Gandhiji was bom in India.

**152. "Where do you live ?" asked the stranger.**

- (a) The stranger asked where I lived.
- (b) The stranger enquired where I was living.
- (c) The stranger questioned where did live.
- (d) The stranger wanted to know where I live.

**153. I said to him, "How do you know this ?"**

- (a) I asked him how I knew that.
- (b) I asked him that how he knew that.
- (c) I told him how I knew that.
- (d) I asked him how he knew that.

**154. He said, "We are all sinners."**

- (a) He said that we are all sinners.
- (b) He said they were all sinners.
- (c) He said that he was a sinner.
- (d) He said all were sinners.

- 155. "Would you mind taking off your shoes before entering the house?" He said to the foreigner.**
- (a) He requested the foreigner to take off his shoes before entering the house.
  - (b) He told the foreigner that he must take off his shoes before entered the house.
  - (c) He said the foreigner that to take off His shoes before entered the house.
  - (d) Before entering the house he said that shoes must be taken off.
- 156. "I lost my book yesterday", she said to her teacher.**
- (a) She admitted to her teacher that she had lost her book the previous day.
  - (b) To her teacher she was admitted that she has lost her book the previous day.
  - (c) She admitted losing her book to her teacher yesterday.
  - (d) She said to her teacher that I have lost my book the previous day.
- 157. They said, "The boy will soon be found and we will bring him."**
- (a) They said that boy would be found and brought.
  - (b) They said that the boy would soon be found, and that they would bring him.
  - (c) They informed him that the boy would soon be found, and they ought to bring him.
  - (d) They told that the boy will be found soon and they will bring him.
- 158. "Stop talking children," said the teacher.**
- (a) The teacher ordered the children to stop talking.
  - (b) The teacher asked the children to stop talking.
  - (c) The teacher told to the children to stop talking.
  - (d) The teacher said the children to stop talking.
- 159. The teacher said that the Earth moves round the Sun.**
- (a) The teacher stated: "The Earth has been moving round the Sun."
  - (b) The teacher said, "The Earth is moving round the Sun."
  - (c) The teacher said, "The Earth will move round the Sun."
  - (d) The teacher said, "The Earth moves round The Sun."
- 160. The lady said that they had been witnessing the programme.**
- (a) The lady said, "We were witnessing the programme."
  - (b) The lady says, "We are witnessing the programme."
  - (c) The lady said, "We witnessed the programme."
  - (d) The lady says, "We had witnessed the programme."
- 161. The Principal told us, "Wait here till I return."**
- (a) The Principal told us wait here till her return.
  - (b) The Principal told us to wait there till he returned.
  - (c) The Principal told us to wait there till I return.
  - (d) The Principal told us please wait here till he returned.

*Narration*

**162. My mother said to me, “Who is your best friend?”**

- (a) My mother questioned me as to who my best friend was.
- (b) My mother asked me who was my best friend.
- (c) My mother asked me who my best friend was.
- (d) My mother asked me who my best friend is.

**163. The teacher said to the boys, “If you do your best you will surely pass.”**

- (a) The teacher asked the boys to work hard so that they can pass.
- (b) The teacher told the boys that unless they work hard they will not pass.
- (c) The teacher requested the boys that if they work better, they will surely pass.
- (d) They teacher told the boys that if they did their best they would surely pass.

**164. The boy pleaded that he had not stolen the book.**

- (a) The boy said, “I don’t steal the book.”
- (b) The boy said, “I didn’t steal the book.”
- (c) They boy said, “I hadn’t stolen the book.”
- (d) The boy said, “I haven’t stolen the book.”

**165. Kavitha said, “I saw the photograph.”**

- (a) Kavitha told that she saw the photograph.
- (b) Kavitha said that she had seen the photograph.
- (c) Kavitha said that the photograph was seen by her.
- (d) Kavitha said that she has seen the photograph.

**166. The king said to his man, “Put the man in prison.”**

- (a) The king implored his men to put the man in prison.
- (b) The king commanded his men to put the man in prison.
- (c) The king requested his men to put the man in prison.
- (d) The king informed his men to put the man in prison.

**167. He said, “I have made a kite.”**

- (a) He says that he made a kite.
- (b) He will say that he had made a kite.
- (c) He said that I had made a kite.
- (d) He said that he had made a kite.

**168. Dravid’s neighbour said, “Do you like to play golf?”**

- (a) Dravid’s neighbour questioned him and said if he liked to play golf.
- (b) Dravid’s neighbour asked him to like golf.
- (c) Dravid’s neighbour asked him if he would like to play golf.
- (d) Dravid’s neighbour asked him if he liked to play golf.

**169. She announced that they had selected Pradeep as their leader.**

- (a) She said, "Pradeep is our leader."
- (b) She announced, "We have selected Pradeep as our leader."
- (c) She announced, "Let us select Pradeep as our leader."
- (d) She declared, "Pradeep had been selected as our leader."

**170. He told the boy not to sit there.**

- (a) "Didn't sit here," he said to the boy.
- (b) "Don't sit there," he said to the boy.
- (c) "Didn't sit there," he said to the boy.
- (d) "Don't sit here," he said to the boy.

**ANSWER KEY**

- |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. (b)   | 2. (b)   | 3. (b)   | 4. (c)   | 5. (b)   | 6. (a)   | 7. (c)   | 8. (c)   | 9. (c)   |
| 10. (d)  | 11. (a)  | 12. (c)  | 13. (d)  | 14. (b)  | 15. (d)  | 16. (d)  | 17. (c)  | 18. (a)  |
| 19. (d)  | 20. (b)  | 21. (c)  | 22. (c)  | 23. (c)  | 24. (a)  | 25. (a)  | 26. (c)  | 27. (b)  |
| 28. (a)  | 29. (b)  | 30. (b)  | 31. (a)  | 32. (a)  | 33. (c)  | 34. (b)  | 35. (d)  | 36. (a)  |
| 37. (a)  | 38. (c)  | 39. (c)  | 40. (b)  | 41. (d)  | 42. (d)  | 43. (a)  | 44. (a)  | 45. (c)  |
| 46. (b)  | 47. (b)  | 48. (a)  | 49. (c)  | 50. (b)  | 51. (b)  | 52. (d)  | 53. (b)  | 54. (d)  |
| 55. (d)  | 56. (a)  | 57. (b)  | 58. (c)  | 59. (b)  | 60. (a)  | 61. (a)  | 62. (b)  | 63. (a)  |
| 64. (d)  | 65. (a)  | 66. (b)  | 67. (a)  | 68. (c)  | 69. (d)  | 70. (d)  | 71. (d)  | 72. (c)  |
| 73. (b)  | 74. (b)  | 75. (c)  | 76. (b)  | 77. (a)  | 78. (b)  | 79. (d)  | 80. (d)  | 81. (a)  |
| 82. (c)  | 83. (c)  | 84. (a)  | 85. (c)  | 86. (a)  | 87. (c)  | 88. (b)  | 89. (c)  | 90. (d)  |
| 91. (c)  | 92. (b)  | 93. (a)  | 94. (c)  | 95. (a)  | 96. (a)  | 97. (d)  | 98. (b)  | 99. (d)  |
| 100. (a) | 101. (b) | 102. (d) | 103. (b) | 104. (b) | 105. (a) | 106. (b) | 107. (c) | 108. (d) |
| 109. (b) | 110. (c) | 111. (b) | 112. (a) | 113. (b) | 114. (a) | 115. (b) | 116. (d) | 117. (d) |
| 118. (b) | 119. (c) | 120. (d) | 121. (b) | 122. (d) | 123. (a) | 124. (b) | 125. (c) | 126. (b) |
| 127. (a) | 128. (b) | 129. (b) | 130. (d) | 131. (d) | 132. (b) | 133. (b) | 134. (c) | 135. (a) |
| 136. (a) | 137. (b) | 138. (a) | 139. (c) | 140. (c) | 141. (d) | 142. (a) | 143. (c) | 144. (c) |
| 145. (b) | 146. (c) | 147. (b) | 148. (b) | 149. (c) | 150. (b) | 151. (d) | 152. (a) | 153. (d) |
| 154. (a) | 155. (a) | 156. (a) | 157. (b) | 158. (a) | 159. (d) | 160. (a) | 161. (b) | 162. (c) |
| 163. (d) | 164. (d) | 165. (b) | 166. (b) | 167. (d) | 168. (d) | 169. (b) | 170. (d) |          |



**SPOTTING THE ERROR**

1. (a) He said/ (b) that / (c) he will come. / (d) No error
2. (a) He said/ (b) that / (c) I shall work hard if I want to pass. / (d) No error
3. (a) He asked me/ (b) that if / (c) I was fine./ (d) No error
4. (a) He asked me/ (b) that what / (c) had happened./ (d) No error
5. (a) He asked me/ (b) what / (c) did I say about him./ (d) No error
6. (a) He told to me / (b) that / (c) the Sun is a star./ (d) No error
7. (a) The king commanded to / (b) call the/ (c) first witness./ (d) No error
8. (a) The judge asked me / (b) if I knew the / (c) accused or not./ (d) No error
9. (a) Ram was telling / (b) that everyone / (c) was happy with the bonus./ (d) No error
10. (a) My teacher said that / (b) a bad carpenter / (c) fights with his tools./ (d) No error
11. (a) She ordered the servant shut / (b) the door / (c) and leave the room./ (d) No error
12. (a) She exclaimed with surprise / (b) that / (c) how tall has she grown./ (d) No error
13. (a)The teacher asked the little boy/(b) if he knows the / (c) correct answer to the question./ (d) No error
14. (a) Mother allowed me to / (b) go wherever/ (c) I want./ (d) No error
15. (a) The father forbade his son / (b) not to make the / (c) same mistake again./ (d) No error
16. (a) He exclaimed with sorrow / (b) that his father died just two / (c) months before. / (d) No Error.
17. (a) She requested him/ (b) to take her to the doctor / (c) as she has very high fever. / (d) No Error
18. (a) When my boss said / (b) that he was coming to see / (c) me the next day, I wondered what problems he will have with me. / (d) No Error
19. (a) I suggested that she should / (b) stay at home if it / (c) rained but she does not give any answer. / (d) No Error
20. (a) He asked me / (b) why had I gone to office / (c) when I knew there would be fewer buses on road that day. / (d) No Error
21. (a) My friend asked me / (b) what could she do/ (c) for me in that critical situation. / (d) No Error
22. (a) The Government warned the multiplexes that if / (b) they continue charging prices higher than MRP , their / (c) licences would be cancelled. / (d) No Error
23. (a) My father told me / (b) that if I work for the / (c) betterment of mankind, God would certainly do good to me . / (d) No Error
24. (a) My teacher wanted to know / (b) if I had done / (c) the homework or not. / (d) No Error
25. (a) She says, "I studied / (b) hard so that I / (c) may get good marks/ (d) No Error
26. (a) She said that she was going to / (b) theatre and wanted to know that I could / (c) accompany him. / (d) No Error
27. (a) She requested me / (b) to wait for her / (c) until she returns from school. / (d) No Error

**Narration**

28. (a) The players exclaimed / (b) with joy that / (c) they have won the match / (d) No Error
29. (a) The Principal said / (b) that the gates should / (c) be locked as the classes have started. / (d) No Error
30. (a) He told us / (b) that / (c) he has not read the book. / (d) No Error

**Answers with explanation**

- (c) will के स्थान पर would का प्रयोग करें। Said (Reporting Verb) Past में है। अतः reported speech (he will come) भी past में होना चाहिए।
- (c) Shall के स्थान पर should का प्रयोग करें और want के स्थान पर wanted का। (वाक्य 1 की व्याख्या देखें)
- (b) 'that' एवं 'if' का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता। यहाँ 'that' हटा दें। अगर कोई सवाल पुछा जाता है और सवाल 'wh family' का नहीं होता है तो Conjunction 'if' अथवा 'whether' का प्रयोग होता है।
- (b) 'that' एवं 'what' का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होगा। यहाँ 'that' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। अगर सवाल 'wh family' का हो तो किसी भी Conjunction का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
- (c) Reported speech में Question form का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। अतः 'did I say' के स्थान पर 'I said' का प्रयोग करें।
- (a) 'Tell' एवं 'told' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
- (a) Commanded के बाद एक object (them/ him इत्यादि) का प्रयोग जरूरी होता है। Commanded के अलावा reporting verbs tell, told, advise, forbid इत्यादि के बाद भी एक object का उल्लेख होना जरूरी होता है।
- (b) 'if' के स्थान पर 'whether' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य के अंत में 'or not' का प्रयोग हो रहा है। 'whether.....or' Co-relative है। 'If' का जोड़ा 'or' नहीं होता है।
- (a) Telling के बाद एक object का उल्लेख होना चाहिए। (वाक्य 7 की व्याख्या देखें)
- (d) वाक्य सही है। Reported speech एक कहावत (idiom) है। अतः यह Present tense में हो सकता है।
- (a) shut के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग करें। Imperative sentences (आदेश व निवेदन वाले वाक्य) में Conjunction 'to' का प्रयोग होगा।
- (c) 'How tall has she grown' interrogative form में है। सही formation होगा 'She has grown very tall'.
- (b) Knows के स्थान पर knew का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 1 की व्याख्या देखें)
- (c) 'I want' को 'I wanted' में परिवर्तित करें। to के बाद तो V<sub>1</sub> का प्रयोग (go) सही है लेकिन उसके बाद नियमानुसार V<sub>2</sub> का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।
- (b) 'forbade' का अर्थ है 'मना करना' / अगर शब्द अर्थ में नकारात्मक हो तो उसके साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। अन्य शब्द जिनके साथ not का प्रयोग नहीं होता- Until, Unless, deny, decline एवं lest।  
नोट:- Both के साथ ही 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।  
जैसे:- Both of them did not go. (×)  
Neither of them went. (✓)
- (b) 'died' के पहले 'had' का प्रयोग करें। 'Simple Past' 'past perfect' में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।
- (c) 'has' के स्थान पर 'had' का प्रयोग होगा। Indirect Speech में 'Simple Present', 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।

**Narration**

18. (c) 'Will' का 'would' में परिवर्तित करें। Indirect Speech में will/shall को would/should में परिवर्तित कर दिया जाता है।
19. (c) 'does not' को 'did not' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Simple Present', 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित कर दिया जाता है।
20. (b) 'had' का प्रयोग 'I' के बाद करें। Indirect Speech में 'Question Form' नहीं बल्कि 'sentence form' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
21. (b) 'She' के बाद 'Could' का प्रयोग करें। Indirect Speech में 'Question Form' का।
22. (b) 'Continue' का Past 'Continued' होगा। Indirect Speech में 'Simple Present' 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।
23. (b) 'Work' को 'worked' में परिवर्तित करें (वाक्य 22 की व्याख्या देखें)
24. (b) 'if' को 'whether' में परिवर्तित करें। 'if' का जोड़ा 'or' नहीं बल्कि 'whether....or' सही pair है।
25. (c) 'May' को 'Might' में परिवर्तित करें।
26. (b) 'that' को 'if' में परिवर्तित करें।
27. (c) 'returns' को 'returned' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Simple Present' का 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित करें।
28. (c) 'have' को 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Indirect Speech' में 'Present Perfect' को 'Past Perfect' में परिवर्तित करें।
29. (c) 'have' को 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। (वाक्य 28 की व्याख्या देखें।)
30. (c) 'has' को 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। (वाक्य 28 की व्याख्या देखें।)

# 5

## QUESTION TAG

### CHAPTER

Ram works hard, **doesn't he?**

He is not coming, **is he?**

➤ किसी भी वाक्य के बाद आने वाला एक छोटा सवाल, '**Question tag**' कहलाता है।

#### **QUESTION TAG** *किसी के बाद आने वाला*

1. वाक्य एवं **Question tag** एक ही **tense** में होने चाहिए।
2. अगर 'वाक्य' **positive** हो तो '**Question tag**' **negative** होना चाहिए और अगर 'वाक्य' **negative** हो तो '**Question tag**' **positive** होना चाहिए।
3. **Question tag** में हमेशा **Pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।
4. **Negative question tag** में **helping verb** एवं **not** के **contracted form** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: **didn't, hadn't, won't** इत्यादि।

नोट:

1. सामान्यतः '**am not**' का **contracted form** नहीं होता है। लेकिन **Question tag** में '**aren't**' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: I am fine, aren't I?

2. **Everyone, everybody, no one, none, each, every** इत्यादि **form** से **singular** है। इनके साथ **singular verb, singular pronoun** इत्यादि का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन **Question tag** में ये बहुवचन के रूप में प्रयोग किये जाते हैं।

जैसे: Everyone has come, **hasn't he?** (×)

Everyone has come, **haven't they?** (✓)

None of your friends likes her, **do they?** (✓)

Everybody can speak English, **can't they?** (✓)

3. **Collective noun** का प्रयोग **singular form** में होता है। इनके **Question Tag** में **singular verb** एवं **singular pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: The jury has taken its decision, **hasn't it?**  
S.V. S.P.

**Question Tag**

4. लेकिन अगर **collective noun** में मतभेद हो या हम प्रत्येक व्यक्ति की बात करें, तब **plural verb** एवं **plural pronoun** प्रयुक्त होंगे।

जैसे: The committee are divided in their opinion, **aren't they?**  
P.V. P.P.

The audience have taken their seats, **haven't they?**  
P.V. P.P.

5. कुछ शब्द जैसे **hardly, seldom, scarcely** इत्यादि अर्थ से नकारात्मक होते हैं हालांकि इनमें '**not**' स्पष्ट रूप से नहीं दिखता। इनके **Question tag positive** होंगे।

जैसे: 1. He **hardly** does any work, **does he?**

2. He has **barely** anything to eat, **has he?**

3. He is **seldom** absent, **is he?**

6. अगर sentence की शुरूआत '**Let us!/Let's**' से किया जाए तो **Question tag 'shall we'** होगा।

जैसे: Let us go to party tonight, **shall we ?**

7. (a) आदेश/निवेदन वाले वाक्यों (**Imperative sentences**) में आग्रह के लिए **Question Tag** में '**won't you?**' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Come in, **won't you?**

(b) किसी व्यक्ति से कोई कार्य करने को कहने के लिए या कुछ **offer** करते समय भी '**will you/would you?**' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: 1. Open the door, **would you?**

2. Have some more tea, **would you?**

(c) '**Can't you?**' बेसब्र अवस्था (**impatience**) को दर्शाता है।

जैसे: Shut your mouth, **can't you?**

(d) **Negative imperative** वाक्यों में '**will you?**' का प्रयोग '**Question tag**' के रूप में होता है।

जैसे: Don't worry, **will you?**

8. अगर वाक्य में '**there**' subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हो तो '**there**' के बाद आने वाला **verb** एवं '**there**' **question tag** के रूप में प्रयुक्त होंगे।

जैसे: There is no water, **is there?**

There weren't good schools, **were there?**

9. **Question Tag** हमेशा वाक्य के मुख्य भाग के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होना चाहिए।

जैसे: I think, he is right, **isn't he?**

**PROVIDE SUITABLE QUESTION TAG FOR THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES**

***Find the meaning of the difficult words and learn them by heart***

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. I am happy,  | 20. We hadn't got any remuneration,             |
| 2. I don't write letter,                                | 21. Polygamy has been banned in many countries, |
| 3. I didn't go to college yesterday,                    | 22. Charles Shobraj was an imposter,            |
| 4. It is very cold,                                     | 23. Hindus practise idolatry,                   |
| 5. You haven't eaten anything,                          | 24. My nephew is an ambidextrous,               |
| 6. She doesn't drive carelessly,                        | 25. He is a pessimist,                          |
| 7. I have called him up,                                | 26. Everyone has come late today,               |
| 8. The boys are quite boisterous,                       | 27. The mob has lynched the thief,              |
| 9. My friend Ram is an egoist,                          | 28. The audience have taken their seats,        |
| 10. God is Omnipotent, omnipresent and Omniscient,      | 29. Have some more tea,                         |
| 11. The mob killed the District Magistrate,             | 30. Wait for me,                                |
| 12. Bhim was a glutton,                                 | 31. Let's go out for a walk,                    |
| 13. We see somnambulists in movies very often,          | 32. He has barely anything to wear,             |
| 14. Bhagat Singh was a martyr,                          | 33. Somebody entered the room,                  |
| 15. We see conjurors in circus,                         | 34. I think, you are right,                     |
| 16. Asthma is not a contagious disease,                 | 35. I feel, he is hungry,                       |
| 17. We used to see epidemic in villages earlier,        | 36. There are many boys in this school,         |
| 18. Sanjivini was considered to be a panacea,           | 37. Nobody bothers,                             |
| 19. We find too many monologues in Shakespeare's plays, | 38. It hardly rains here,                       |
|   | 39. The jury was unanimous in its decision.     |
|   | 40. I am tired,                                 |

**Answers**

- |                 |                |                        |                   |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. aren't I?    | 11. didn't it  | 21. hasn't it?         | 31. Shall we?     |
| 2. do I?        | 12. wasn't he? | 22. wasn't he?         | 32. Has he?       |
| 3. did I?       | 13. don't we?  | 23. don't they?        | 33. didn't they?  |
| 4. isn't it?    | 14. wasn't he. | 24. isn't he?          | 34. aren't you?   |
| 5. have you?    | 15. don't we?  | 25. Isn't he?          | 35. Isn't he?     |
| 6. does she ?   | 16. is it?     | 26. haven't they?      | 36. aren't there? |
| 7. haven't I?   | 17. didn't we? | 27. hasn't it?         | 37. do they?      |
| 8. aren't they? | 18. wasn't it? | 28. haven't they?      | 38. does it?      |
| 9. isn't he?    | 19. don't we?  | 29. will /would you?   | 39. wasn't it?    |
| 10. isn't he?   | 20. had we?    | 30. will you?/can you? | 40. aren't I?     |

# 6

## SUBJECT VERB AGREEMENT

### CHAPTER

➤ किसी भी **Sentence** में **Subject** के **Number** तथा **Person** के अनुसार **Verb** का प्रयोग **Subject-Verb Agreement** कहलाता है।

1. He comes. (यदि **Subject 'Singular'** हो तो **Verb 'Singular'** प्रयुक्त होता है। )  
S.S      S.V

2. They come. ( यदि **Subject 'Plural'** हो तो **Verb 'Plural'** प्रयुक्त होता है।)  
P.S      P.V

➤ Verb का सही रूप में प्रयोग करने के लिए यह आवश्यक है कि आप **Singular** व **Plural Verb** को पहचानें।

Singular Verb	Plural Verb	Singular Verb	Plural Verb
is	are	was	were
has	have	V <sub>1</sub> +s/es (plays, goes etc.)	V <sub>1</sub> (play, go etc.)

**Verb एवं Noun के बीच का अंतर**

**Noun + s/ es** → **Plural Noun** (Noun में **s/es** लगाने पर वह **Plural** बन जाता है)

**Verb + s/ es** → **Singular Verb** (Verb में **s/es** लगाने पर वह **Singular** बन जाता है)

### RULE 1

➤ अगर दो **Sub.** को **'and'** से जोड़ा जाये तो **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: (1) Ram **and** Shyam are coming.  
P.V

### RULE 2

➤ यदि दो या दो से अधिक **Nouns** या **Adjectives** को **'and'** से जोड़ा जाये लेकिन वे एक ही व्यक्ति , वस्तु या **idea** को प्रदर्शित करें तो **Singular verb** का प्रयोग होगा।

My friend, philosopher and guide have come. (change 'have' to **'has'**)

Slow and steady win the race. (change 'win' to **'wins'**)

Fish and chips **is** my favorite dish. (✓)

**नोट:** (i) यदि दो **uncountable nouns 'and'** से जुड़कर **sentence** के **subject** के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों तथा इससे अलग-अलग **sub.** का बोध हो तो इसके साथ **plural verb** का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे-

(1) Poverty **and** misery come together. (✓)  
U.N      U.N      P.V

**RULE 3**

➤ यदि दो Sub को 'as well as', 'with', 'alongwith', 'together with', 'and not', 'In addition to', 'but', 'besides', 'except', 'rather than', 'accompanied by', 'like', 'unlike', 'no less than', 'nothing but' से जोड़ा जाये तो 'verb' पहले sub के अनुसार प्रयोग होना चाहिये।

जैसे: (1) Ram as well as his parents is coming.  
s. s. s. v.



(2) The Captain along with the sailors was drowned.  
s. s. s. v.



(3) My father unlike my uncles is very strict.  
s. s. s. v.



**RULE 4**

➤ अगर Article का प्रयोग सिर्फ 1<sup>st</sup> sub के पहले हो तो इसका अर्थ होगा एक ही व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु। अतः singular verb का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: (1) **A** white and black gown was bought by her.  
s. v.

(2) Churchill was a great orator and a great politician of his time.(×)  
Churchil was a great orator and politician of his time.(✓)

लेकिन अगर Article का प्रयोग सभी Sub. के पहले हो तो इसका अर्थ होगा अलग-अलग व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु। अतः plural verb का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: **The** director and **the** producer have come.(✓)  
P. V.

**RULE 5**

➤ यदि दो subject को 'neither.....nor', 'either.....or', 'not only'.....'but also', 'nor', 'or' या 'none-but' से जोड़ा जाये तो verb नजदीक वाले sub के अनुसार प्रयोग होना चाहिये।

जैसे: (1) **Neither** Ram **nor** Shyam has come.  
s. s. s. v.



(2) **Either** Ram **or** his friends have come.  
P. S. P. V.



(3) Has Ram **or** Shyam come?  
s. s. s. s.



**RULE 6**

➤ 'Neither of ....' का अर्थ 'दो में से एक भी नहीं'। 'दो से अधिक' में से 'एक भी नहीं' के लिए 'none of



**Subject Verb Agreement**

का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: Neither of his four sons looked after him. (×)

None of his four sons looked after him. (✓)

➤ **'Either of .....**' का अर्थ है 'दो में से एक' 'दो से अधिक' में से 'एक' के लिए 'One of' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: Either of the five members is at fault. (×)

One of the five members is at fault. (✓)

**नोट:** 'Both' के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता क्योंकि 'दो में से एक भी नहीं' के लिए '**neither of**' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Both of them did not take the exam. (×)

Neither of them took the exam. (✓)

**RULE 7**

➤ कुछ '**Noun**' form से **Plural** होते हैं लेकिन अर्थ में **Singular**. इनके साथ **singular Verb** का प्रयोग करते हैं।

जैसे: (a) बीमारियों का नाम: **Measles, Mumps, Rickets, Shingles etc.**

(b) खेल के नाम: **Billiards, Darts, Draughts, etc.**

(c) देश के नाम: **The United States, The West Indies, etc.**

(d) पुस्तकों के नाम: **The Arabian Nights, Three Muskeeters, etc.**

(e) विषयों के नाम: **Physics, Economics, Civics, Statistics, Politics, Linguistics.**

जैसे: (1) Mathematics is an interesting subject.

s.v.

(2) Politics is not my cup of tea.

s.v.

**नोट:** यदि '**Statistics**' से हमारा तात्पर्य '**data**' हो, '**Mathematics**' से हमारा तात्पर्य '**Calculation**' हो और '**Politics**' से हमारा तात्पर्य '**राजनीतिक विचारों**' से हों, तो इनका प्रयोग बहुवचन के रूप में होगा।

जैसे: Statistics have revealed multiple scams in the organisation of Commonwealth Games.

P.V.

**RULE 8**

➤ एक वाक्य में **verb** उस **subject** के अनुसार होना चाहिए जो वाक्य का **main subject** हो। हम अक्सर verb को नजदीक वाले subject से match करते हैं पर ऐसा करना गलत होता है।

जैसे: (1) The quality of apples is good.

(2) He and not his parents is guilty.

(3) The appeal of the victims for the transfer of the cases related to riots to some other States has been accepted.

**RULE 9**

➤ **Collective Noun** के साथ हमेशा **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: (1) The herd of cows is grazing in the field.

s.s.

s.v.



**Subject Verb Agreement**

**RULE 12**

➤ **Each, Every, Everyone, Someone, Somebody, Nobody, None, One, Any, Many a, More than one** अर्थ से **Singular** हैं। इनके साथ **Singular verb, Singular noun** व **Singular pronoun** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: (1) **Each** student **has** come.  
(2) **Each** boy and **each** girl **has** come.  
(3) **One** must tolerate **one's** friend as well as **his** enemy.  
one's  
(4) **Many a** student **have** not done **their** home work.  
has his  
(5) **More than one** **man** **was** present there.  
S.N S.V

नोट: 'Many' का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में देखें:-

- जैसे: (1) **Many a** **man** **has** come.  
S.N. S.V.  
(2) **Many** **men** **have** come.  
P.N. P.V.  
(3) **A great/ A good many** **men** **have** come.  
P.N. P.V.

**RULE 13**

➤ अगर **each, every, one** इत्यादि के बाद '**of**' का प्रयोग होता है, तो '**of**' के बाद आने वाला **Noun** अथवा **Pronoun** तो **plural** होता है लेकिन उसके बाद आने वाला **Verb, Pronoun** इत्यादि **Singular** होगा।

- जैसे: One of **the boys/them** **has** done **his** work.  
Noun/Pronoun (Plural) S.V. S.P.

**RULE 14**

**Plural Noun** या **Plural Pronoun** के बाद **each** का प्रयोग हो, तो इसे **Plural** माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: **We** each **have** a duty towards our nation. (✓)  
P.S. P.V.

**RULE 15**

**Indefinite Pronoun - 'One'** का प्रयोग **Sentence** के **Subject** के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसके लिए **Singular Pronouns - one, one's, oneself** का प्रयोग होता है न कि he, him, his, himself का।

- जैसे: **One** should keep his promise. (×)  
**One** should keep **one's** promise. (✓)

**RULE 16**

➤ काल्पनिक वाक्य प्रायः **if, as if, as though, suppose, I wish, in case** अथवा **would that** से शुरू

**Subject Verb Agreement**

होते हैं। इन शब्दों के बाद चाहे किसी भी Number तथा Person के Subject का प्रयोग हो, **Plural Verb 'were'** का ही प्रयोग होता है न कि 'was' का।

- जैसे: (1) I wish, I **were** a bird.  
(2) If he **were** rich, he would help others.

**RULE 17**

➤ **Optative Sentence** में **Singular Subject** के साथ भी **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: (1) God save the king!  
          S.S.   P.V.  
(2) Long live the Queen !  
          P.V.           S.S.

**RULE 18**

➤ **A number of/A large number of/A great number of** का प्रयोग **Plural Countable Noun** के साथ होता है तथा इसके साथ **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: A number of students were present. (✓)  
                          P.S.   P.V.

**नोट:** लेकिन, **The number of** का प्रयोग एक निश्चित संख्या, के अर्थ में होता है इसके बाद **Plural Sub.** का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसका प्रयोग **Sentence के Subject** के रूप में होने पर, इसके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: The number of boys are fifty. (×)  
                          P.S.   P.V.

**The number of boys is** fifty. (✓)  
                          P.S.   S.V.

**RULE 19**

➤ अगर **'Amount of/quantity of Uncountable Noun** के साथ प्रयोग होते हैं तब इनका प्रयोग **Sentence के Subject** के रूप में होने पर इनके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: **The amount of money are** not sufficient.(×)  
                          U.N.   P.V.

The amount of money is not sufficient. (✓)  
                          U.N.   S.V.

**RULE 20**

➤ **All** का प्रयोग **uncountable** के अर्थ में हो तो, इसे **Singular** माना जाता है, तथा इसके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: **All is** well that **ends** well.  
          S.V.                   S.V.

➤ लेकिन, **'All'** का प्रयोग **'व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की संख्या'** का बोध कराने के लिए हो, तो इसे **Plural** माना जाता है, तथा इसके साथ **Plural verb** के प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: All are well at home. (✓)  
          P.V.

**RULE 21**

➤ Furniture, advice, work, evidence, equipment, news, information, luggage, baggage, percentage, poetry, knowledge, dirt, dust, traffic, electricity, music, breakage, stationary, scenery, confectionery, pottery, bakery, crockery, behaviour का प्रयोग **Uncountable Nouns** के रूप में होता है। इसलिए इसके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: (1) The scenery of Kashmir has enchanted us.  
                        S.N.    S.V.

(2) I passed but the percentage of marks was not good.  
  S.N.    S.V.

**RULE 22**

➤ कुछ **Nouns** का प्रयोग हमेशा **Plural form** में ही होता है। इन Nouns के अन्त में लगे **s** को हटाकर, इन्हें **Singular** नहीं बनाया जा सकता है। ये दिखने में भी **Plural** लगते हैं, एवं इनका प्रयोग भी **Plural** की तरह होता है। ऐसे Nouns निम्न हैं:

Scissors, tongs ( चिमटा ), pliers, pincers, bellows ( फूँकनी ),

trousers, pants, pajamas, shorts,

gallows ( फाँसी का फंदा ), fangs ( डंक ),

spectacles, goggles, binoculars ( दूरबीन ), sunglasses,

Alms ( दान ), amends ( संशोधन ), archives ( ऐतहासिक दस्तावेज ), arrears, auspices, congratulations, embers ( राख ), fireworks, lodgings, outskirts, particulars, proceeds, regards, riches, remains, savings, shambles, surroundings, tidings, troops, tactics, thanks, valuables, wages, belongings, braces, etc.

जैसे: (a) Where are my **pants**?  
(b) Where are the **tongs**?  
(c) The **proceeds** were deposited in the bank.  
(d) All his **assets** were seized.  
(e) **Alms** were given to the beggars.  
(f) The **embers** of the fire were still burnings.

**RULE 23**

➤ कुछ **Nouns** दिखने में **Plural** लगते हैं लेकिन अर्थ में **Singular** होते हैं। इनका प्रयोग हमेशा **Singular** में ही होता है। जैसे: **News, Innings, Politics, Summons, Physics, Economics, Ethics, Mathematics, Mumps, Measles, Rickets, Shingles, Billiards, Athletics** etc.

जैसे: (a) No **news** is good news.  
(b) **Politics** is a dirty game.  
(c) **Economics** is an interesting subject.  
(d) **Ethics** demands honesty.

### **RULE 24**

➤ कुछ **Nouns** दिखने में **Singular** लगते हैं, लेकिन इनका प्रयोग हमेशा **Plural** में होता है। जैसे: **cattle, cavalry, infantry, poultry, peasantry, children, gentry, police, people**, etc. इनके साथ कभी भी 's' नहीं लगाया जाता, जैसे: *cattles, childrens* लिखना गलत है।

- जैसे:
- (a) **Cattle** are grazing in the field.
  - (b) Our **infantry** have marched forward.
  - (c) **Police** have arrested the thieves.

नोट: '**People**' का अर्थ है 'लोग'। '**Peoples**' का अर्थ है 'विभिन्न मूलवंश के लोग'।

### **RULE 25**

➤ कुछ **Nouns** का प्रयोग, केवल **Singular form** में ही किया जाता है। ये **Uncountable Nouns** हैं। इनके साथ Article A/An का प्रयोग भी नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे:

**Scenery, Poetry, Furniture, Advice, Information, Hair, Business, Mischief, Bread, Stationery, Crockery, Luggage, Baggage, Postage, Knowledge, Wastage, Money, Jewellery, Breakage, Equipment, Work, Evidence, Word** (जब '**word**' का अर्थ वाद, संदेश या परिचर्चा हो), **Fuel** एवं **Paper**.

- जैसे:
- (a) The **scenery** of Kashmir is very charming.
  - (b) I have no **information** about her residence.
  - (c) The **mischief** committed by him is unpardonable.
  - (d) His **hair** is black.
  - (e) I have bought some **equipment** that I needed for the project.

(i) इन **Nouns** का बहुवचन नहीं बनाया जा सकता। जैसे: *Sceneries, informations, furnitures, hairs* इत्यादि लिखना गलत है।

(ii) यदि उक्त **Noun** का **Singular** या **Plural** दोनों **forms** में आवश्यकता हो तो, इनके साथ कुछ शब्द जोड़े जाते हैं।

नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण देखें:

- (a) He gave me **a piece of** information.
- (b) **All pieces of** information given by her were reliable.
- (c) **Many kinds of** furniture are available in that shop.
- (d) I want **a few articles of** jewellery.
- (e) He ate **two slices of** bread.
- (f) Please show me **some items of** office stationery.
- (g) The Police have found **a strand of** hair in the car.

### **RULE 26**

➤ कुछ **Nouns**, **Plural** एवं **Singular** दोनों में एक ही रूप में रहते हैं। जैसे: **deer, sheep, series, species, fish, crew, team, jury, aircraft, counsel** etc.

- जैसे:
- (a) Our team **is** the best.
  - (b) Our team **are** trying their new uniform.
  - (c) There are two fish in the pond.
  - (d) There are many fishes in the aquarium. ('Fishes' का अर्थ है विभिन्न प्रजातियों के fish)

**Subject Verb Agreement**

**RULE 27**

➤ नीचे दिये गए Table को ध्यान से पढ़ें-

S.N	WORDS	+NOUN/PRONOUN	VERB
1.	No	+ U. N	Singular Verb
2.	No	+ S. C. N	Singular Verb
3.	One-third of / three-fourths of / The rest of / A quarter of / Part of / Ten percent of / Twenty Percent of	+ U. N.	Singular Verb
4.	One-third of / three-fourths of / Part of / Ten percent of / Twenty percent of	+ P. C. N.	Plural Verb
5.	Most of / Some / Some of / Half of/ Enough / Enough of / Not enough of/ Plenty of / A lot of/ Lots of	+ U. N.	Singular Verb
6.	Most of / Some / Some of /Half of/ Enough / Enough of / Not enough of/ Plenty of / A lot of/ Lots of	+ P. C. N.	Plural Verb
7.	The percentage of	+ U.N./P.C.N.	Singular Verb
8.	More than one	+ S. C. N.	Singular Verb
9.	More than two/three. etc.	+ P. C. N.	Plural Verb
10.	More	+ P. C. N. + than one	Plural Verb

नीचे दिए गए उदाहरण देखें:-

1. No air is present on the Mars.
2. No student was interested in taking the exam.
3. One-third of the work has been finished.
4. One- third of the students have passed.
5. Ninety percent of the work is done.
6. Most of the knowledge is gained by experience.
7. Most of the girls are absent today.
8. Ninety percent of the students have passed with good marks.
9. Half of the candidates have passed with flying colours.
10. Some of the students have not taken the exam.
11. The percentage of unsuccessful candidates is ten.
12. More than one city was in ruins.
13. More cities than one were in ruins.
14. More than two theives have been caught red handed.
15. More plans than one were made.

नोट: वाक्य 12 एवं 13 के बीच का अंतर देखें।

**SPOTTING THE ERROR**

1. (a) Neither of them/ (b) are going to attend/ (c) the party on 10<sup>th</sup> October./ (d) No error
2. (a) He walked five miles which are really a great distance/ (b) for a man like him who is not only old but also ill./ (d) No error

**Subject Verb Agreement**

3. (a) Either my colleague/ (b) or a peon are coming home/ (c) with the material today./ (d) No error
4. (a) The rise and fall/ (b) of the tide are due/ (c) to lunar influence./ (d) No error
5. (a) Many a man/ (b) have succumbed/ (c) to this temptation./ (d) No error
6. (a) The introduction of tea, coffee/ (b) and such other beverages/ (c) have not been without some effect./ (d) No error
7. (a) The newer type of automatic machines/ (b) wash/ (c) clothes faster./ (d) No error
8. (a) Each of the students in the computer class/ (b) has to type/ (c) their own research paper this semester./ (d) No error
9. (a) Everyone of the films/ (b) you suggested/ (c) are not worth seeing./ (d) No error
10. (a) The Secretary and Principal of the college/ (b) are attending/ (c) the District Development Council Meeting at the Collectorate./ (d) No error
11. (a) There is/ (b) only one of his novels/ (c) that are interesting./ (d) No error
12. (a) Knowledge of/ (b) at least two languages/ (c) are required to pass the examination./ (d) No error
13. (a) It is I/ (b) who is to blame/ (c) for this bad situation./ (d) No error
14. (a) Romansticism of melancholy/ (b) in art and literature are the reason/ (c) for insensitivity to those suffering from depression./ (d) No error
15. (a) Patience as well as perseverance (b) are necessary/ (c) for success./ (d) No error
16. (a) In Singapore/ (b) my brother-in-law with his wife/ (c) were present at the function./ (d) No error
17. (a) A hot and/ (b) a cold spring/ (c) was found near each other./ (d) No error
18. (a) Either of the roads/ (b) lead/ (c) to the park/ (d) No error
19. (a) One of my desires/ (b) are to become/ (c) a doctor./ (d) No error
20. (a) The whole block of flats/ (b) including two shops were/ (c) destroyed in fire./ (d) No error
21. (a) The sum and substance/ (b) of his poem/ (c) are as follows./ (d) No error
22. (a) Neither of the/ (b) five accused/ (c) could be convicted./ (d) No error
23. (a) The strain of all/ (b) the difficulties, vexations and anxieties/ (c) were more than he could beat./ (d) No error
24. (a) Everybody/ (b) it must be admitted/ (c) has their ups and downs./ (d) No error
25. (a) Every woman in the world/ (b) fervently hopes that their child/ (c) will be a normal and healthy baby/ (d) No error
26. (a) Neither of them/ (b) sent their papers/ (c) in time for the last seminar/ (d) No error
27. (a) This is a strange world/ (b) where each one pursues their own golden bubble/ (c) and laughs at others for doing the same./ (d) No error
28. (a) If it were possible to get near when/ (b) one of the volcanic eruptions take place/ (c) we would see a grand sight./ (d) No error



**Subject Verb Agreement**

29. (a) A rise in rents and wages/ (b) have been found/ (c) to go together./ (d) No error
30. (a) He is one of those few post-colonial writer who believes/ (b) that this talk about colonialism has gone too far/ (c) and has turned into a cliché./ (d) No error
31. (a) One of the peculiarities/ (b) which distinguishes the present age/ (c) is the multiplication of books/ (d) No error
32. (a) Neither of them/ (b) are going to attend/ (c) the party on 10<sup>th</sup> October/ (d) No error
33. (a) Ten miles are/ (b) a long distance / (c) to cover on foot./ (d) No error
34. (a) If Mahatma Gandhi/ (b) was alive, he would feel sorry for the poor and downtrodden who/ (c) still struggle everyday to make both ends meet. / (d) No Error
35. (a) Having acquired some experience/ (b) she is no longer one of those who believes/ (c) every explanation they are given./ (d) No error
36. (a) With regard to implementation of the/ (b) details of the proposal, the committee was divided/ (c) in their opinion./ (d) No error
37. (a) Most of the funds/ (b) we get from/ (c) America is used to build roads and bridges./ (d) No error
38. (a) The tiger was not/ (b) the only dangerous animal/ (c) in the forest there was hyenas too./ (d) No error
39. (a) She immediately quit/ (b) the job in which/ (c) neither skill nor knowledge were required./ (d) No error
40. (a) The type of qualities you acquire/ (b) depend upon your company/ (c) and so you associate yourselves with simple and good natured people./ (d) No error
41. (a) Our success or our failure/ (b) largely depend/ (c) upon our actions./ (d) No error
42. (a) He is/ (b) one of the tallest boy/ (c) in the class./ (d) No error
43. (a) That day when they brought her back for the last time/ (b) there was many old-timers/ (c) who were shocked and fearful./ (d) No error
44. (a) A computer virus works exactly/ (b) like the biological variety/ (c) which invade the human body./ (d) No error
45. (a) Many a boy/ (b) have not done their/ (c) homework properly./ (d) No error
46. (a) Two miles beyond/ (b) that building was seen dozens/ (c) of antisocial elements/ (d) No error
47. (a) Along the northern frontier/ (b) of India is seen/ (c) the beautiful and mighty Himalayas./ (d) No error
48. (a) A body of volunteers/ (b) have helped in/ (c) making this celebration a great success/ (d) No error
49. (a) There appears/ (b) a number of problems/ (c) and I really do not know how to solve them. (d) No error
50. (a) Shingles are a disease/ (b) in which a person develops/ (c) lots of inflamed spots round the waist./ (d) No error
51. (a) Whether she should get married/ (b) or whether she should remain/ (c) single are her personal problem./ (d) No error

52. (a) Two and two/ (b) makes/ (c) four./ (d) No error.  
53. (a) Many a men/ (b) attended the meeting/ (c) last night./ (d) No error.  
54. (a) The perquisites/ (b) to this job makes it/ (c) even more attractive than the salary indicated/ (d) No error.  
55. (a) Either you/ (b) or he/ (c) are happy./ (d) No error.

**Note:** 21-26 से संबंधित प्रश्नों के लिए Noun देखें।

### Answers with explanation

- (b) के स्थान पर 'is' का प्रयोग करें। 'Neither of' के बाद आने वाले 'noun/pronoun' तो plural होता है। (अतः 'them (Pl. Pronoun)' तक का वाक्य तो सही है) लेकिन उसके बाद आने वाले verb इत्यादि singular होना चाहिए।
- (a) इस वाक्य में 'five miles' plural होने के बावजूद singular unit के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है। अतः five miles के साथ singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'are' का।
- (b) 'are' को 'is' में परिवर्तित करें। जब दो subjects को either . . . or, neither . . . nor, 'or' अथवा 'nor' से जोड़ा जाए तो verb निकटतम 'sub' के अनुसार प्रयोग होगा। Peon (S.S.) के साथ S.V. 'is' का प्रयोग करें।
- (b) 'The rise and fall' एक singular subject है जिसके साथ singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग करें।
- (b) 'Many a' singular pronoun है। इसके साथ noun, verb व pronoun के singular form प्रयुक्त होंगे। have (P.V.) के (S.V.) में परिवर्तित करें।
- (c) एक वाक्य में 'verb' उस वाक्य के मुख्य 'sub' के अनुसार प्रयोग किया जाना चाहिए। मुख्य sub 'introduction' singular है। अतः verb भी singular होगा यहाँ 'has' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'have' का।
- (b) Verb मुख्य sub 'newer type' के अनुसार प्रयोग होगा। verb singular होगा यानि 'washes' का प्रयोग होगा।
- (c) 'Each of ....' के बाद आने वाले verb एवं pronoun singular होगा। अतः 'their' के बदले 'his' का प्रयोग करें।
- (c) Verb मुख्य sub 'everyone' के अनुसार प्रयोग होगा। 'Everyone' singular है अतः singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग करें।
- (b) यहाँ 'the' का प्रयोग सिर्फ 'Secretary' के पहले हुआ है। इसका अर्थ है कि एक ही व्यक्ति को Secretary एवं Principal दोनों का पद प्राप्त है। चूँकि 'sub' singular है अतः verb भी singular 'is' होगा।
- (c) 'Are' के स्थान पर 'is' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'Novels' में से 'one' का बात की जा रही है। 'One' singular sub है अतः Verb भी singular होगा।
- (c) यहाँ languages मुख्य sub नहीं है बल्कि 'knowledge' मुख्य sub है। अगर knowledge के अनुसार verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो verb 'are' नहीं 'is' होगा।
- (b) 'is' के स्थान पर 'am' का प्रयोग करें। यदि who, which तथा that का प्रयोग Relative Pronouns के रूप में हो तो इनके बाद प्रयुक्त verb इनके antecedents के number व person पर निर्भर करता है।
- (b) Verb 'is' का प्रयोग 'are' के स्थान पर होगा क्योंकि मुख्य sub 'Romansticism' है जो singular sub है।
- (b) जब दो subjects को 'as well as' से जोड़ा जाता है तब verb 1<sup>st</sup> subject के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। 'Patience' singular subject है। अतः verb 'are' नहीं 'is' (s.v.) का प्रयोग करें।

**Subject Verb Agreement**

16. (c) Were के स्थान पर 'was' का प्रयोग करें। जब दो subjects को 'with' के द्वारा जोड़ा जाता है, तो verb पहले sub के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। 'Brother-in-law' singular subject है। अतः verb भी singular प्रयुक्त होगा।
17. (c) 'was' के स्थान पर 'were' का प्रयोग करें। अगर दो subjects को and से जोड़ा जाए और दोनों sub के पहले 'article' का प्रयोग हो, तो इसका अर्थ होगा अलग-अलग sub। अतः Plural verb का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (b) 'Either of .....' के बाद आने वाला noun/pronoun तो plural होता है, लेकिन उसके पष्ठचात आने वाला verb/pronoun singular होता है।  
Either of the roads/ them leads to the park.
- |        |         |          |
|--------|---------|----------|
| ↓      | ↓       | ↓        |
| Plural | Plural  | Singular |
| Noun   | Pronoun | Verb     |
19. (b) 'One of .....' के बाद भी उसी नियम का पालन करें जो 'Either of .....' पर लागू होता है। (प्रश्न 20 की व्याख्या देखें)  
यहाँ नियम neither of ....., none of ....., any of ....., everyone of ....., each of ....., इत्यादि पर भी लागू होता है।
20. (b) 'were' को 'was' में परिवर्तित करें। यहाँ मुख्य sub 'shops' नहीं है बल्कि block है। हम अक्सर verb को नजदीकी sub से match कर देते हैं जो गलत है। verb के उस sub से match करना चाहिए जो वाक्य का मुख्य sub हो।  
Block was  
Singular Sub Singular Verb.
21. (c) 'The sum and substance' का अर्थ है 'सारांश'। अतः verb 'are' नहीं 'is' का प्रयोग करें। अगर दो या दो से अधिक subjects को 'and' से जोड़ा जाए लेकिन उनका तात्पर्य एक ही व्यक्ति, वस्तु अथवा भाव से हो तो verb भी singular form में होगा।
22. (a) 'Neither of' के स्थान पर 'none of' का प्रयोग करें। 'Neither of' का प्रयोग 'दो में से एक भी नहीं' के संदर्भ में होता है।
23. (c) 'Were' के स्थान पर 'was' का प्रयोग करें। 'Strain' singular है, अतः verb भी singular होगा।
24. (c) Everybody singular sub है। अतः singular pronoun 'his' का प्रयोग करें।
25. (b) 'Their' के स्थान पर 'her' का प्रयोग करें। 'Every woman' singular subject है। अतः pronoun भी singular होगा।
26. (b) 'Neither of P.N./P.P .....' के बाद verb/pronoun इत्यादि singular होगा। 'Their' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें।
27. (b) 'Each one' के साथ 'his' का प्रयोग करें।
28. (b) 'One of ....' के साथ singular verb का प्रयोग करें। 'Take' के बदले 'takes' का प्रयोग होता। परन्तु वाक्य Past Tense में है। अतः 'took' का प्रयोग करें।
29. (b) Verb 'have' (Plural verb) के स्थान पर 'has' (singular verb) का प्रयोग करें।
30. (a) 'One of .....' के साथ Plural noun 'writers' का प्रयोग करें। 'believes' के स्थान पर 'believe' का प्रयोग करें।
31. (b) 'Which' का antecedent 'percularities' है जो Plural noun है। अतः Which के बाद आने वाला verb plural होगा। 'Distinguishes' को 'distinguish' में परिवर्तित करें।
32. (b) 'Neither of .....' के साथ singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग करें न कि 'are' का।
33. (a) 'Ten miles' एक Plural संख्या है जिसका प्रयोग Singular unit के रूप में हो रहा है। अतः singular

- verb 'is' का प्रयोग होगा।
34. (b) If के साथ 'was' का प्रयोग कभी नहीं होता। 'were' का प्रयोग करें।
  35. (b) 'Those' relative pronoun 'who' का antecedent है। who के बाद आने वाला verb those (Pl. Sub) के अनुकूल होगा। Believes (S.V.) के स्थान पर believe (P.V.) का प्रयोग करें।
  36. (b) Was the स्थान पर Plural verb 'were' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि committee में मतभेद है।
  37. (c) 'is' के स्थान पर 'are' का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि मुख्य sub 'funds' plural noun है।
  38. (c) 'Hyenas' plural noun है। अतः Plural verb 'were' का प्रयोग 'Hyenas' के पहले करें।
  39. (c) जब दो subjects को 'Neither ..... Nor' से जोड़ा जाता है तो verb नजदीकी sub के अनुसार प्रयोग होता है। अतः 'were' नहीं 'was' का प्रयोग करें।
  40. (b) The type, (singular sub) के अनुसार verb 'depends' (singular verb) का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।
  41. (b) अगर दो sub को 'or' से जोड़ा जाए तो verb nearest sub के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होना चाहिए। 'failure' के अनुसार verb 'depends' होना चाहिए।
  42. (b) 'One of .....' के साथ 'noun' plural होता है। 'Boys' का प्रयोग करें।
  43. (b) Many old timers के साथ plural verb 'were' का प्रयोग होगा। There के बाद 'was' नहीं 'were' का प्रयोग करें।
  44. (c) Which का antecedent 'variety' (Singular noun) है। इसके साथ singular verb 'invades' का प्रयोग करें।
  45. (b) 'Many a' के साथ noun, pronoun एवं verb singular form में प्रयोग किये जाते हैं। 'have' के स्थान पर 'has' एवं 'their' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें।
  46. (b) 'Was' के स्थान पर 'were' का प्रयोग करें। क्योंकि 'dozens' (Plural sub) के साथ were (plural verb) का प्रयोग होगा।
  47. (b) 'is' के स्थान पर 'are' का प्रयोग करें। इस वाक्य में 'verb' का प्रयोग sub (Himalayas) के पहले हो रहा है। ऐसे वाक्य में Confusion हो सकता है। लेकिन वाक्य के अर्थ से स्पष्ट है कि India के लिए 'is seen' का प्रयोग नहीं हो रहा बल्कि Himalayas के लिए हो रहा है। 'Himalayas' के साथ 'is seen' नहीं 'are seen' का प्रयोग होगा।
  48. (b) Body, group, class इत्यादि के साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होगा। अतः 'have' के स्थान पर 'has' का प्रयोग करें।
  49. (a) यहाँ verb 'appears' (s.v.) के स्थान पर 'appear' (p.v.) का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि sub (a number of problems) plural form में है।
  50. (a) 'Shingles' form में plural है लेकिन अर्थ में singular। अतः singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग करें।
  51. (c) 'are' के स्थान पर 'is' का प्रयोग करें। क्योंकि निर्णय का विषय (विवाह) एक ही मुद्दा है।
  52. (b) 'makes' को 'make' में परिवर्तित करें।
  53. (a) 'Many a' के साथ 'man' का प्रयोग होगा।
  54. (b) 'makes' को 'make' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Perquisites' plural noun है।
  55. (c) 'are' को 'is' में परिवर्तित करें।

# 7

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

### CHAPTER

➤ जब एक कार्य का होना दूसरे कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करे तब वाक्य **conditional sentence** कहलाता है।

जैसे: आप सफल होंगे **बशर्ते** आप मेहनत करे तो।

You will succeed **provided** you work hard.

➤ ऊपर दिये गये वाक्य में सफल होना कड़ी मेहनत पर निर्भर कर रहा है।

➤ Conditional Sentences में नीचे दिए गये कुछ **शर्तसूचक शब्द** अवश्य दिखते हैं।

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 1. अगर ..... तो<br><b>If.....,</b><br>..... | 2. वशर्ते<br><b>provided</b>                                    | 3. जैसे ही.....वैसे ही<br><b>as soon as.....,</b><br><b>no sooner.....than</b> |
| 4. जब ..... तब<br><b>when .....</b> ,       | 5. जबतक .....तब तक<br><b>Unless.....,</b><br><b>Until.....,</b> |  |

**Conditional Sentence** के दो भाग होते हैं-

1. **If Clause**
2. **Main Clause**

**Conditional Sentences** मुख्यतः तीन प्रकार के होते हैं-

- A. 'If clause' in present tense.
- B. 'If clause' in past tense.
- C. 'If clause' in past perfect tense.
- D. **Other types of conditional sentences.**

#### A. 'IF CLAUSE' IN PRESENT TENSE

**General Formula—** **If + Simple Present, Simple Future**

➤ ऐसे Conditional Sentences में '**If Clause**' **Simple Present** में होता है और '**Main Clause**' **simple future** में होता है।

अगर मैं दिल्ली आऊँगा तो आपसे मिलूँगा।

जैसे:  $\underbrace{\text{If I will come to Delhi}}_{\text{I}^{\text{st}} \text{ action}}, \underbrace{\text{I will meet you}}_{\text{II}^{\text{nd}} \text{ action}}. (\times)$

If I come to Delhi, I will meet you. (✓)

**Conditional Sentences**

- अगर दो कार्य भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो और दूसरे कार्य का होना पहले कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करे तो पहला कार्य **Simple Present Tense** में होगा और दूसरा **Simple Future Tense** में।

नीचे दिए गये कुछ उदाहरण देखें:-

1. She will come to meet you as soon as you will reach Delhi. (×)  
She will come to meet you **as soon as** you reach Delhi. (✓)
2. If the government will become strict, corruption will surely finish. (×)  
**If** the government becomes strict, corruption will surely finish. (✓)
3. I will help him provided he will mend his ways. (×)  
I will help him **provided** he mends his ways. (✓)
4. Unless he will not take care of his health, he will not recover. (×)  
**Unless** he takes care of his health, he will not recover. (✓)
5. There will be rush at the platform when the train will arrive. (×)  
There will be rush at the platform **when** the train arrives. (✓)

- उपरोक्त वाक्यों में **If** वाले भाग में **will/shall/would** का प्रयोग न करें -

**नोट:** नीचे दिये गये शब्द देखे, इनके तुरंत बाद sub + will / shall का प्रयोग नहीं होना चाहिए।

**If, as soon as, provided, before, after, until, unless, in case, when, lest.**

1. **Unless or until** के साथ **not** का भी प्रयोग नहीं होता। (वाक्य 4 देखें )
2. Conditional Sentences में **when** के बाद **will/shall** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। (वाक्य 5 देखें )

- लेकिन अगर वाक्य पूर्णतः वर्तमान का हो तो '**Main Clause**' **Simple Present** में भी हो सकता है।

जैसे: 1. If it rains, the schools remain closed.

- अगर वाक्य संभावना का हो तो '**will**' के स्थान पर **may/might** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: 1. If it rains, the students **may** not come for class.

2. If the fog remains, the plane **may** get late.

- अगर वाक्य अनुमति देता हो तो '**will**' के स्थान पर '**May**' का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: 1. If you finish your work, you **may** go home.

- अगर वाक्य में सलाह/उपदेश हो तो '**will**' के स्थान पर **should/must** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: 1. If you want to remain healthy, you **should** exercise daily.

2. If you do not know him, you **must** not open the door.

- अगर वाक्य शिष्टाचार संबंधित निवेदन का हो तो **could, may** इत्यादि का जरूरतानुसार प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: 1. If you meet him, **could** you tell him to call me up?

2. If you come to Delhi, **would** you come to meet me?

- '**If clause** में **simple present tense** के स्थान पर **present continuous tense** भी आ सकता है।

जैसे: 1. If you are waiting for the bus, you **should** better take a taxi.

2. If you are not reading the newspaper, you **should** let others read it.

**Conditional Sentences**

➤ 'If Clause' में **Present perfect tense** का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है।

- जैसे: 1. If you have finished the work, you **may** leave.  
2. If they have bought tickets, they **will** surely go to see the movie.

**PAST CONDITIONAL**

**B. 'IF' CLAUSE IN PAST TENSE**

**General Formula—** **If + Simple Past, Subject + would+ V<sub>1</sub>**

जैसे: If I had money, I would lend it to you.

- ऐसे वाक्य '**improbability**' व्यक्त करते हैं यानि '**If clause**' में जिस कार्य का उल्लेख है वह नहीं हुआ।  
➤ उपरोक्त वाक्य में **If I had money** से ये स्पष्ट है कि पैसे नहीं थे।

**C. 'IF' CLAUSE IN PAST PERFECT TENSE**

**General Formula—** **If + Past Perfect, Sub + would + have + V<sub>3</sub>**

जैसे: If I had seen you, I would have stopped my car.

- ऐसे वाक्य में '**If clause**' में जिस कार्य का उल्लेख होता है उस कार्य का न होना दर्शाया जाता है। यानि '**If I had seen you**' से तात्पर्य है कि '**I had not seen you.**'  
➤ ऐसे वाक्यों में '**If**' को '**had**' से **replace** किया जा सकता है। तब Formula होगा-

**Had + Subject + V<sub>3</sub> + obj, Subject + would + have + V<sub>3</sub>**

जैसे: Had I seen you, I would have stopped my car.

**THREE IMPORTANT FORMULAE**

- **If + Present Indefinite** , **Simple Future**
- **If + S + had + V<sub>3</sub>** , **S + would + have + V<sub>3</sub>**
- **If + S + V<sub>2</sub>** , **S + would + V<sub>1</sub>**

**D. OTHER TYPES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES**

(i) काल्पिक पद

**General Formula—** **If + subject + were, subject + would + V<sub>1</sub>**

जैसे: If I were a bird, I would fly in the sky.

➤ काल्पनिक पद (Post) के लिए सभी subjects के साथ 'were' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

नीचे दिए गये शब्दों के साथ 'was' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**If, as though, in case, as if, would that एवं I wish.**

Ex. He scolded me as if he was my father. (×)

He scolded me **as if** he **were** my father.(✓)

(ii) 'If Clause' में हम 'Unless' **so long, as soon as, when, provided, suppose, in case, but, for** इत्यादि का भी प्रयोग कर सकते हैं।

जैसे: (1) **Unless** you work hard, you will not pass.

नोट: **Unless** के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। Unless you work hard से हमारा तात्पर्य है 'If you do not work hard.' यानि '**Unless + affirmative = If + negative.**

2. I shall support him **so long as** I am alive.

3. **As soon as** the train comes, there will be rush for seats.

4. **When** he comes to Delhi, I will go to meet him.

---

### SPOTTING THE ERROR

---

1. (a) If he came to me / (b) I would have given/ (c) him my car. / (d) No error
2. (a) Had he invited me / (b) I would have attended / (c) the function. / (d) No error
3. (a) If he had called me up (b) I would inform/ (c) him . / (d) No error
4. (a) If he will work hard / (b)/ he will surely / (c) get the job of his choice. / (d) No error
5. (a) Unless I do not / (b) see his ticket, / (c) I will not let him sit here. / (d) No error
6. (a) Before the police will come / (b) You should better / (c) get the anticipatory bail. / (d) No error
7. (a) We will come to know the truth / (b) after / (c) the investigation finished. / (d) No error
8. (a) Until the train will not get the signal , (b) it will not / (c) leave the platform. / (d) No error
9. (a) If I had money/ (b) I will have lent / (c) it to her. / (d) No error
10. (a) If I was you/ (b) I would not tolerate him / (c) for a moment. / (d) No error
11. (a) Suppose she does not agree/ (b)what could/ (c) we do ? / (d) No error
12. (a) Supposing if you do not reach / (b) the station in time,/ (c) what will you do? / (d) No error
13. (a) If you saw a tiger / (b) what will your / (c) reaction be?/ (d) No error
14. (a) If I had two houses, / (b) I would have given / (c) one to you./ (d) No error
15. (a) If we will heat dry ice / (b) it turns / (c) to vapour. / (d) No error
16. (a) "Suppose if you are / (b) late, you will be / (c) in trouble." / (d) No error.



**Conditional Sentences**

17. (a) Unless / (b) he will not understand the concept/ (c) he will not be able to solve the questions. / (d) No error
18. (a) If he tried again,/ (b) he can pass the exam/ (c) with flying colours. / (d) No error
19. (a) I will wait for you / (b) unless / (c) you come. / (d) No error
20. (a) If I was you / (b) I would teach/ (c) him a lesson. / (d) No error
21. (a) If I were the Prime Minister of India / (b) I will work for the / (c) welfare of the poor. / (d) No error
22. (a) If she would have come to me / (b) I would have given her the / (c) money she needed / (d) No error
23. (a) If he drove fast/ (b) he can reach the station / (c) in time / (d) No error
24. (a) If I was a millionaire/ (b) I would support / (c) the millinium project / (d) No error
25. (a) If both of you stood / (b) on the table/ (c) it would have broken/ (d) No error
26. (a) If she would have worked hard , / (b) she would / (c) have passed. / (d) No error
27. (a) If you had seen me, / (b) you should have stopped your car / (c) and come to help me. / (d) No error
28. (a) If the Government will make strict law/ (b) the law and order situation / (c) will improve. / (d) No error
29. (a) But for his help / (b) the patient would / (c) have died. / (d) No error
30. (a) But for his prompt action / (b) many people would/ (c) have lost their savings. / (d) No error
31. (a) I will not come / (b) in case / (c) it will rain. / (d) No error
32. (a) Had the river overflown its bank,/ (b) flood would / (c) have come. / (d) No error
33. (a) Had I known him, / (b) I would allow him / (c) to enter my house. / (d) No error
34. (a) You will not get well / (b) unless you will not / (c) follow the doctor's instructions. / (d) No error
35. (a) Supposing if he refuses / (b) to meet you, / (c) what will you do? / (d) No error
36. (a) I shall take you for a long drive / (b) after you / (c) will return from the meeting. / (d) No error
37. (a) When you complete your service / (b) you will be / (c) retired on pension / (d) No error
38. (a) Were she I, / (b) she will not allow/ (c) you to go anywhere at this time of crisis./ (d) No error
39. (a) I told her when / (b) she came to Delhi,/ (c) I would show her all historical monuments. / (d) No error
40. (a) You can scale this high peak, / (b) provided you/ (c) will wear the right kind of shoes. / (d) No error
41. (a) Had you / (b) worked hard/ (c) you will have passed./ (d) No error
42. (a) When I shall see him/ (b) I shall/ (c) tell him/ (d) No error.
43. (a) He will tell you/ (b) about it when/ (c) he will come back/ (d) No error.
44. (a) When I will get back/ (b) I shall pay back/ (c) the money that I borrowed/ (d) from you last month

45. (a) I will/ (b) meet him/ (c) when he will come./ (d) No error.  
46. (a) Had I realized/ (b) your house was such a long way off, / (c) I would take a taxi./ (d) No error.

### Answers with Explanation

1. (a); 'If he had come' का प्रयोग करें।
2. (d);
3. (b); 'I would have informed' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'if clause' sub + had + v<sub>3</sub> हो तो main clause 'sub + would + have + v<sub>3</sub>' में होना चाहिए।
4. (a); 'If he works hard' का प्रयोग करें। 'If clause' में will नहीं आता है।
5. (a); 'do not' हटा दें। 'Unless' के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
6. (a); 'Before the police come' का प्रयोग करें। 'Before' के बाद 'will/ shall' का प्रयोग गलत है।
7. (c); 'the investigation has finished' का प्रयोग करें।
8. (a); 'Until the train gets' का प्रयोग करें। 'Until' के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
9. (b); 'will have lent' को 'would lend' में परिवर्तित करें। 'If clause' past tense में है। अतः 'main clause' भी past tense में होगा।
10. (a); 'If I were you' का प्रयोग करें। 'If clause' में 'was' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। काल्पनिक वाक्यों में सभी 'subjects' के साथ 'were' का प्रयोग होता है।
11. (b); 'could' को 'can' में परिवर्तित करें। 'If clause' present tense में है। अतः main clause भी present tense में होगा।
12. (a); 'Supposing' एवं 'if' का प्रयोग एक साथ न करें। दोनों का अर्थ एक है।
13. (b); 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें। (प्रश्न 9 की व्याख्या देखें)
14. (b); 'I would give' का प्रयोग करें। (प्रश्न 1 की व्याख्या देखें)
15. (a); 'will' हटा दें। (प्रश्न 4 की व्याख्या देखें)
16. (a); 'Supposing' एवं 'if' का प्रयोग एक साथ न करें। दोनों का अर्थ एक है।
17. (b); 'he understands' का प्रयोग करें। (प्रश्न 5 की व्याख्या देखें)
18. (b); 'Can' को 'Could' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि 'If clause' past tense में है।
19. (b); 'Unless' को 'Until' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Until' 'समय सूचक' होता है और 'Unless' 'शर्त सूचक'।
20. (a); 'Was' के स्थान पर 'were' का प्रयोग करें। (प्रश्न 10 की व्याख्या देखें)
21. (b); 'Will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें। (प्रश्न 9 की व्याख्या देखें)
22. (a); 'If she had come to me' सही प्रयोग होगा।

**Formula** → **If + Sub + had + V<sub>3</sub>, Sub. + would + have + V<sub>3</sub>**

23. (b); 'Can' को 'Could' में परिवर्तित करें।
24. (a); 'Was' को 'were' में परिवर्तित करें। (प्रश्न 10 की व्याख्या देखें)
25. (c); 'it would break' का प्रयोग करें।

**Formula** → **If + Sub + V<sub>2</sub>, Sub. + would + V<sub>1</sub>**

**Conditional Sentences**

26. (a); 'If she had worked hard' का प्रयोग करें (प्रश्न 22 देखें)
27. (d);
28. (a); 'If the government makes' का प्रयोग होगा। (प्रश्न 4 की व्याख्या देखें)
29. (d); यहाँ 'but' का अर्थ है 'without'.
30. (d);
31. (c); 'it rains' का प्रयोग करें।
32. (a); 'overflow' का V<sub>3</sub> 'overflowed' होता है।
33. (b); 'I would have allowed him' का प्रयोग करें। (प्रश्न 3 की व्याख्या देखें)
34. (b); 'Unless' के साथ 'will' एवं 'not' का प्रयोग न करें। 'Unless you follow' सही प्रयोग होगा।
35. (a); 'Supposing' एवं 'If' में से एक को हटा दें।
36. (c); 'will return' को 'have returned' में परिवर्तित करें।
37. (a); 'when you have completed your service' सही प्रयोग होगा।
38. (b); 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें।
39. (a); 'I told her' के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग करें।
40. (c); 'will' हटा दें।
41. (c); 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें।
42. (a); 'when I see him' सही 'formation' होगा।
43. (c); 'he will come' को 'he comes' में परिवर्तित करें।
44. (a); 'when I will get back' के स्थान पर 'when I get back' का प्रयोग करें।
45. (c); 'when he will come' के स्थान पर 'when he comes' का प्रयोग करें।
46. (c); 'I would take' को 'I would have taken' में परिवर्तित करें।

# 8

## VERB (ADVANCE)

### CHAPTER

#### KINDS OF VERB

##### 1. FINITE VERBS

##### 2. Non-Finite Verbs

##### 3. Transitive Verbs

##### 4. INTRANSITIVE VERBS

1. **FINITE VERBS:** Finite Verbs का एक Sub होता है और ये **Subject** की संख्या एवं **Person** के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

जैसे: He is **playing**.

They are **playing**.

2. **NON-FINITE VERBS:** Non-Finite Verbs किसी **Person** या संख्या से **limited** नहीं होते हैं।

जैसे: I like **watching** television.

She wants **to go** abroad.

**NON-FINITE VERBS:-** तीन प्रकार के होते हैं-

##### (A) INFINITIVE

##### (B) GERUND

##### (C) PARTICIPLE

- (A) **INFINITIVE:** 'to + V<sub>1</sub>' Infinitive एक प्रकार का **noun** है जिसमें **verb** के भी गुण होते हैं। अतः हम infinitive को **verb-noun** भी कह सकते हैं।

जैसे: 1. **To err** is human

2. I want **to study**

3. I want **to study** English.

ऊपर दिए गये वाक्य देखें-

वाक्य (1) में 'to err' (to + V<sub>1</sub>) **subject** के रूप में प्रयुक्त हैं।

वाक्य (2) में 'to study' (to + V<sub>1</sub>) **object** के रूप में प्रयुक्त हैं।

वाक्य (3) में 'to study' want (verb) का object है लेकिन अगर 'English' को object के रूप में लिया जाए तो 'to study' **verb** का कार्य कर रहा है।

➤ अतः 'to + V<sub>1</sub>' को हम **noun** एवं **verb** दोनों के रूप में प्रयुक्त कर सकते हैं।

- (B) **GERUND:** 'V<sub>1</sub> + ing' Gerund एक प्रकार का verb है जो 'ing' में खत्म होता है और जिसमें **noun** के भी गुण होते हैं।

**Verb (Advance)**

- जैसे: 1. **Swimming** is a good exercise.  
 2. I learnt **driving**.  
 3. I love **watching** television.

ऊपर दिए गये वाक्य देखें-

वाक्य (1) में '**Swimming**' ( $V_1 + ing$ ) **subject** के रूप में प्रयुक्त है।

वाक्य (2) में '**driving**' ( $V_1 + ing$ ) **object** के रूप में प्रयुक्त है।

वाक्य (3) में '**watching**' love (verb) का object है लेकिन अगर television को object के रूप में लिया जाए तो '**watching**' **verb** का कार्य कर रहा है। अतः ' $V_1 + ing$ ' को हम '**noun**' एवं '**verb**' दोनों के रूप में प्रयुक्त कर सकते हैं।

**नोट:** कई **Verbs/adjective/phrase** के बाद '**to**' का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ '**to**' के बाद ' $V_1$ ' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा बल्कि ' $V_1 + ing$ ' का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: **Verb + used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, prone to.**

- जैसे: 1. He is **addicted to** smoking.  
 2. I am **looking forward to** meeting you.  
 3. He was **used to** driving on the right when he was in London.

➤ दूसरे शब्दों में कहा जाए तो अगर कोई **Phrasal verb 'to'** में खत्म हो तो उसके बाद ' $V_1$ ' नहीं, ' $V_1 + ing$ ' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: (a) I am looking forward to meeting you.  
 $V_1 + ing$

(b) He is given to drinking.  
 $V_1 + ing$

(c) He is prone to making the same mistake again and again.  
 $V_1 + ing$

(d) He got used to driving on the right when he was in London.  
 $V_1 + ing$

लेकिन **modals** में '**used to**' के बाद  $V_1$  का प्रयोग होता है।

(e) I used to drive on the right.  
 $V_1$

वाक्य d एवं e के बीच का अंतर:

Sentence (d)		Sentence (e)	
(1)	अगर used to के पहले verb हो तो used to के बाद $V_1 + ing$ लगायें	(1)	अगर used to के पहले verb नहीं हो तो used to के बाद $V_1$ लगायें।
(2)	ये आदतन् क्रिया को दर्शाता है।	(2)	ये past के routine action को दर्शाता है।
(3)	ये किसी भी tense में हो सकते हैं और Used to के पहले आने वाला verb वाक्य के tense का निर्धारण करता है।	(3)	ये सिर्फ Past tense में होंगे

(C) **PARTICIPLE:** जो शब्द 'verb' एवं 'adjective' दोनों का कार्य करें वह **Participle** है।

(i) **PRESENT PARTICIPLE (V<sub>1</sub> + ING)**

जैसे: 1. **Hearing** the noise, we rushed out of the restaurant.

2. **Thinking** all is well, he went to bed.

➤ ऊपर दिए गए दोनों वाक्यों में 'V<sub>1</sub> + ing' का प्रयोग किसी घटना को **incomplete** या होता हुआ दर्शाने के लिए हो रहा है। यह

'V<sub>1</sub> + ing' **Present Participle** है।

(ii) **PAST PARTICIPLE (V<sub>3</sub>)**

जैसे: 1. **Driven** by poverty, he committed suicide.

2. **Deceived** by his best friend, he was left in the lurch.

➤ ऊपर दिए गए दोनों वाक्यों में 'V<sub>3</sub>' का प्रयोग किसी घटना को **Complete** दर्शाने के लिए किया गया है। इस 'V<sub>3</sub>' **form** को **Past Participle** कहते हैं।

(iii) **PERFECT PARTICIPLE (HAVING V<sub>3</sub>)**

जैसे: 1. **Having done** with it, they got down to work.

2. **Having rested**, they started their journey again.

➤ ऊपर दिए गये दोनों वाक्यों में किसी कार्य को **भूतकाल में ही Complete** होता दर्शाया गया है। ऐसा करने के लिए 'having + V<sub>3</sub>' यानि **Perfect Participle** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

3. **TRANSITIVE VERB-** जब वाक्य में क्रिया के बाद एक कर्म (obj.) की आवश्यकता पड़े तो क्रिया **transitive verb** कहलाता है।

जैसे: 1. I write essay.  
          V          obj.

2. Children fly kites.  
                  V          obj.

4. **INTRANSITIVE VERB-** जब वाक्य में क्रिया के बाद कर्म (obj.) की आवश्यकता न पड़े तो क्रिया **intransitive verb** कहलाता है।

जैसे: Birds fly.  
                  v

She slept.  
                  v

**नोट:** अगर verb transitive (t.v.) होता है तो verb के उल्लेख मात्र से 'क्या' जैसे सवाल उठते हैं।

जैसे: 1. He killed (क्या?)

He killed a rabbit.  
          t.v.          obj.

2. I helped (किसे ?)

I helped him.  
          t.v.          obj.

Verb (Advance)

### CAUSATIVE VERB

➤ **Have, Get** एवं **Make** का प्रयोग 'Causative verb' के रूप में किया जाता है। सामान्यतः कर्ता (sub) किसी क्रिया (verb) को क्रम (obj.) पर करता है।

जैसे: He helps the poor.  
Sub. Verb obj.

➤ लेकिन जब 'sub' ही verb को experience करे यानि क्रिया का फल क्रम पर न पड़ कर कर्ता पर पड़े तो Causative verb का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: 1. He got caught.  
2. The environment gets polluted due to our ignorance.

➤ कई बार वाक्य से ये तात्पर्य निकलता है कि कर्ता किसी कार्य को करता नहीं बल्कि कराता है यानि यहाँ S<sub>1</sub> (कार्य करने वाला) एवं S<sub>2</sub> (कार्य कराने वाला का) प्रत्यक्ष अथवा अप्रत्यक्ष रूप से मौजूद होते हैं।

जैसे: 1. I made him do the whole work.  
S<sub>2</sub> 'Make' according to tense S<sub>1</sub> V<sub>1</sub> obj.

2. We got him arrested by the police.  
S<sub>2</sub> 'Get' according to tense obj. V<sub>3</sub> S<sub>1</sub>

3. Have the box opened.  
'Have' according to tense obj. V<sub>3</sub>

4. We have to make the system work.  
S<sub>2</sub> 'make' according to tense S<sub>1</sub> V<sub>1</sub>

5. I cannot get your work done by him.  
S<sub>2</sub> 'get' according to tense obj. V<sub>3</sub> S<sub>1</sub>

नोट: **Make/Have** एवं **Get** के प्रयोग के बीच का अंतर:

1. **Get/Have** के प्रयोग के बाद S<sub>1</sub> का उल्लेख **by + S<sub>1</sub> के form** में होता है। लेकिन **Passive voice** के तरह ही S<sub>1</sub> का प्रयोग किया भी जा सकता है और नहीं भी।

**Make** के बाद S<sub>1</sub> का प्रयोग करना आवश्यक होता है।

2. **Get/Have** के बाद V<sub>3</sub> का प्रयोग होता है।

**Make** के बाद V<sub>1</sub> का प्रयोग होता है।

➤ वाक्य में 'Get'/'Have' एवं 'Make' tense के अनुसार परिवर्तित होते हैं।

**Verb** का प्रयोग विभिन्न **Pattern** में हो सकता है। नीचे दिए गये कुछ **patterns** में **verb** का प्रयोग देखें-

#### PATTERN - 1

##### Subject + Verb

➤ ये 'Verb' के प्रयोग का सब से साधारण Pattern है। ऐसे sentence formation में **sub** के बाद अकर्मक क्रिया (**intransitive verb**) का प्रयोग होता है। वाक्य का अर्थ किसी कर्म (**object**) के बिना भी स्पष्ट होता है। इस sentence pattern to **passive voice** में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता है।



S.N	Subject	Verb
1.	Birds	fly.
2.	The moon	is shining
3.	The baby	is sleeping.
4.	I	was going

## PATTERN - 2

### Subject + verb + subject complement

- ऐसे 'sentence form' में complement या तो Noun होता है, या pronoun या फिर adjective. इस sentence pattern को भी **passive voice** में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता है।



S.N.	Subject	Verb	Subject Complement
1.	This	is	a pen.
2.	It	is	I
3.	He	looks	happy.
4.	My father	got	angry.

## PATTERN - 3

### Subject + verb + direct object

- कई 'verbs' सकर्मक क्रिया (**transitive verb**) होते हैं। **Transitive verbs** के बाद **object** का उल्लेख होना जरूरी होता है वरना वाक्य का अर्थ स्पष्ट नहीं होता।



S.N.	Subject	Verb	Direct Object
1.	I	know	him.
2.	She	opened	the door.
3.	You	should help	yourself.

## PATTERN - 4

### Subject+verb + indirect object + direct object

- जब वाक्य में दो 'objects' हो, तो **Indirect object** (जो सामान्यतः सजीव होता है) का उल्लेख पहले होता है और फिर **direct object** का।



S.N.	Subject	Verb	Indirect Object	Direct Object
1.	I	gave	her	my book.
2.	I	bought	her	a purse
3.	He	showed	me	his notes.



Verb (Advance)

### PATTERN - 5

**Subject + verb + direct object + preposition + prepositional object**

- अगर pattern 4 को हम इस तरह परिवर्तित करना चाहे कि **direct object** का उल्लेख पहले हो तो **direct object** के बाद एक **preposition** का प्रयोग होगा और फिर **indirect object** का।

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Preposition	Prepositional object
1.	I	gave	my book	to	her.
2.	I	bought	a purse	for	her.
3.	He	showed	his notes	to	me and my friends.

- कोई verbs का प्रयोग pattern 4 एवं 5 दोनों में किया जा सकता है। **Pattern 5** का प्रयोग ज्यादा उचित होता है अगर **direct object** कम महत्वपूर्ण हो या फिर **indirect object** ज्यादा लम्बा हो।

### PATTERN - 6

**Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + adjective**

- ऐसे sentence form में **adjective** उस अवस्था को दर्शाता है जो क्रिया के वजह से हुआ या फिर **noun** एवं **adjective** को मिला के **object** बनाया जाता है।

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Adjective
1.	He	pushed	the door	open.
2.	She	washed	the plates	clean.
3.	I	like	my tea	strong.

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले verbs हैं- **get, keep, beat, drive, make, paint, leave, turn, find, like, wish.**

### PATTERN - 7

**Subject + verb + preposition + prepositional object.**

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Preposition	Prepositional object
1.	This car	belongs	to	me.
2.	She	met	with	an accident.
3.	He	succeeded	in	his attempt.

### PATTERN - 8

**Subject + verb + to-infinitive (as object of the verb)**

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Infinitive
1.	She	wants	to sleep.
2.	He	forgot	to take his medicine.
3.	I	hoped	to pass the exam.

—Verb (Advance)

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले verbs हैं- **like, love, prefer, begin, start, agree, try, attempt, choose, continue, intend, propose, desire, wish, want, hate, dislike, hope, expect, promise, fear, remember, forget, offer, learn.**

### PATTERN - 9

**Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + infinitive.**

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Infinitive + etc.
1.	I	want	you	to help him.
2.	The doctor	advised	him	to rest.
3.	I	allowed	Rohit	to go.

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले मुख्य verb है- **ask, tell, order, command, persuade, encourage, urge, want, wish, request, intend, expect, force, tempt, teach, invite, help, warn, like, love, hate, allow, permit, remind, cause, mean, dare.**

### PATTERN - 10

**Subject + verb + gerund.**

- इस pattern में **Gerund** वाक्य के **object** का कार्य करता है।

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Gerund, etc.
1.	She	started	singing.
2.	He	has finished	talking.
3.	I	love	teaching.

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले मुख्य शब्द है- **begin, start, love, like, hate, stop, finish, enjoy, prefer, fear, remember, forget, mind, miss, suggest, practice, try, understand, keep, help, advise, admit, avoid, consider, intend, delay, deny, detest, can't help, rest, defer, worth, risk, it is noun/good, propose, regret, anticipate.**

### PATTERN - 11

**Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + present participle.**

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Present Participle
1.	I	saw	him	crossing the bridge.
2.	I	heard	him	shouting
3.	You	kept	me	waiting

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले verbs हैं- **see, hear, smell, feel, watch, notice, find, observe, listen, get, catch, keep, leave, set, start.**

Verb (Advance)

**PATTERN - 12**

**Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + plain infinitive.**

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Plain Infinitive
1.	I	will not let	you	go
2.	We	made	him	finish the work.
3.	I	bade	the boy	leave the room.

➤ इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले मुख्य verbs हैं- **see, watch, notice, observe, hear, listen, feel, make, let, help, bid.**

**VERB के 4 IMPORTANT RULES**

- Being ill, I could not come. (✓)
  - Being a rainy day, I could not come (×)
  - Walking along the road, my pen fell down. (×)

(i) अगर पहले वाक्य में 'being' के पहले किसी subject का उल्लेख नहीं हो तो 2<sup>nd</sup> भाग का sub 'I' पहले भाग का भी sub बन जाता है। और वाक्य (i) का अर्थ सही निकलता है।

(ii) अगर दूसरे वाक्य में 'being' के पहले sub 'it' का प्रयोग न किया जाए तो 'I', rainy day का भी sub बन जाता है और इससे वाक्य का अर्थ गलत हो जाता है। अतः **'It being a rainy day'** का प्रयोग करें।

(iii) इसी प्रकार तीसरे वाक्य में भी **walking** के लिये उपयुक्त **sub.** का प्रयोग करें अन्यथा 'my pen' पहले भाग का sub बन जायेगा।

अतः **'While I was walking along the road'** का प्रयोग करें।

- The girls watched intently as the model applied her make-up with a practiced hand.(×)

किसी क्रिया ( **Verb** ) का प्रयोग विशेषण ( **adjective** ) के रूप में किसी **Noun** की विशेषता बताने के लिये किया जाता है तो क्रिया **3<sup>rd</sup> form** में ही होना चाहिये। अतः **Practised (v) form** का प्रयोग करें। **'Practice' noun** है।

अन्य उदाहरण: **Spoken English**  
**Revised** edition  
**Written** document

- उपरोक्त उदाहरण में **English, edition व document** संज्ञा (**Noun**) है जिनकी विशेषता बताने के लिए 'verb' का प्रयोग हो रहा है। अतः Verb **3<sup>rd</sup> form** में है।
- लेकिन अगर क्रिया (**Verb**) को जारी (**continuous**) अवस्था में दर्शाया जाये तो verb **'ing'** form में होना चाहिये।
- जैसे: (i) **Rising** price.  
(ii) **Developing** country.  
(iii) **Steaming** cup of tea.
- अगर क्रिया का प्रयोग noun form में किया जाये तो उसे **'ing form' (Gerund)/'to+V<sub>1</sub> form' (Infinitive)/** में होना चाहिये।

- जैसे: (i) Smoking is prohibited here.

obj

- (ii) Swimming is a good exercise.  
sub
- (iii) To err is human.  
Sub.
4. क्रिया कैसे हुआ, ये adverb of manner बताता है और **adverb of manner** सामान्यतः 'ly' में खत्म होता है।  
जैसे: (i) He works honestly.  
Verb Adv
- (ii) He talks politely.  
Verb Adv
- अगर **verb** हमारी पांचों इंद्रियों से सम्बंधित हो तो उसके बाद **adverb** नहीं, **adjective** का प्रयोग करें।  
जैसे: (i) He looks honest.  
Verb Adj
- (ii) He sounds polite.  
Verb Adj

नीचे दिए गये सात क्रियाएँ **verbs of sensation** हैं-

- Look, seem, sound, appear, smell, taste, feel**
- **Verbs of sensation** के अलावा **be, become, turn, get, grow, keep** ( रहना ), **make** एवं **prove** को भी **adverbs** नहीं बल्कि **adjective modify** करते हैं।

जैसे: When he heard the news, he **became** sad.  
adj

5. We adapt to the environment. (×)  
We **adapt ourselves** to the environment. (✓)
- Adapt के जैसे कुछ ऐसे **verbs** होते हैं जिनके बाद एक **Reflexive Pronoun** का आना जरूरी होता है।

ऐसे **verbs** की सूची-

**Acquit (to do better than expected), absent, avail, reconcile (to accept a situation reluctantly), amuse, resign, avenge, enjoy, exert, apply (to work hard on something), adapt, adjust, pride**

1. The officers **acquitted themselves** well during the crisis.
2. She has **reconciled herself** to the demands of her in laws.
3. The students **exert themselves** a lot at the time of examination.
4. You will have to **apply yourself** to this task whole heartedly.
5. I **pride myself** on being able to work smoothly under pressure too.
6. You should **avail yourself** of this opportunity.
7. He **resigned himself** to yet another day without food.

नोट: (1) They **enjoyed** the party. (reflexive pronoun की जरूरत नहीं है )

They **enjoyed** during vacation. ('themselves' का प्रयोग enjoyed' के बाद करें)

- अगर **enjoy** के बाद **object** का उल्लेख हो तो **reflexive pronoun** न लगायें परन्तु अगर **object** का उल्लेख नहीं हो तो **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

**Verb (Advance)**

(2) He was **absent**. (✓)

He **absented** himself. (✓)

अगर **absent** का प्रयोग **verb** के रूप में हो तभी **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

**नोट:** (i) अगर '**acquit**' का अर्थ है 'बरी करना' तो '**acquit**' के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग न करें।

**जैसे:** The court acquitted him.

➤ अगर '**acquit**' का अर्थ है 'व्यवहार करना' तो '**acquit**' के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग होगा।

**जैसे:** He **acquitted himself** well during the riot.

➤ अगर '**reconcile**' का अर्थ है 'सुलह करना' तो **reconcile** के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

**जैसे:** I reconciled with him after the bitter argument.

➤ अगर '**reconcile**' का अर्थ है 'बेमन से ही सही पर स्वीकार कर लेना' तो **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग होगा।

**जैसे:** He **reconciled himself** to the arrogant attitude of his boss.

➤ संक्षेप में कहा जाए तो अगर **sub** ही क्रिया का **receiver** हो तो ऊपर दिए गये **verbs** के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग होगा।

(b) (1) Keep yourself away from bad company. (×)

Keep away from bad company. (✓)

(2) He hid himself in the room. (Drop 'himself').

➤ keep के जैसे कुछ ऐसे **verbs** होते हैं जिनके बाद **Reflexive Pronoun** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

ऐसे **verbs** की सूची

**Keep, stop, turn, qualify, bathe, move, rest, hide.**

6. (i) I prefer tea than coffee. (×)

I **prefer** tea **to** coffee. (✓)

(ii) He invited me on/for tea. (×)

He **invited** me **to** tea. (✓)

➤ **Verb** के बाद आने वाला **preposition** या तो **fixed** होता है या फिर किसी **preposition** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। verb के बाद आने वाला Preposition Hindi Translation के अनुसार नहीं होना चाहिये। (Preposition देखें)

7. (i) The poor had no bed to sleep **in**.

(ii) He had no pen to write **with**.

(iii) Do you have a chair to sit **on**?

➤ जब किसी **noun** (**bed, pen** इत्यादि) को कोई **infinitive** (**to sleep, to write** इत्यादि) **qualify** करें, तो '**infinitive**' के बाद **preposition** (**in, with** इत्यादि) का प्रयोग होता है।

8. (i) I have never and will never cheat you. (×)

I have never cheated and will never cheat you. (✓)

(ii) Nothing has or will be more tragic than his demise. (×)

Nothing has been or will be more tragic than his demise. (✓)  
V<sub>3</sub> V<sub>1</sub>

➤ अगर एक वाक्य में एक **verb** के दो **forms** की जरूरत हो तो दोनों **forms** का प्रयोग करें। हम एक form से काम नहीं चला सकते।

9. (i) If he was a millionaire, he would help the millennium project. (×)  
It he were a millionaire, he would help the millennium project. (✓)

➤ **काल्पनिक** पद के लिये सभी sub के साथ **were** का प्रयोग करें।

10. (i) Long live the king ! (✓)  
P.V. S.S.

➤ **optative** वाक्यों में **singular subject** के साथ भी **plural verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

11. ऐसे कई **verbs** हैं जिनके पहले **article** का प्रयोग करके उसे **Noun** का रूप दिया जाता है।

जैसे: (i) He is walking.  
verb

(ii) He is going for a walk.  
noun

(iii) He rides a horse.  
verb

(iv) He went for a ride.  
noun

12. अगर अलग-अलग **verb** के साथ अलग-अलग **preposition** की जरूरत पड़े तो सभी **preposition** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: (i) Amphibians can live **on** land and **in** water.

(ii) He was acquitted **of** and absolved **from** all the charges of corruption.

13. (i) I am having a car. (×)  
I have a car. (✓)

➤ कुछ ऐसे verbs होते हैं जिनका प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'ing' form में नहीं किया जा सकता।

#### ऐसे **verbs** की सूची

(1) **Verbs of Perception**- See, taste, smell, hear, prefer, please, notice, recognize.

(2) **Verbs of Thinking Process**- Think, know, mean, mind, remember, suppose.

(3) **Verbs Showing Possession**- Own, have, belong, comprise, possess, contain, consist.

(4) **Verbs expressing Feeling or State of Mind**- Believe, like, dislike, love, adore, want, wish, desire, hate, agree, trust, imagine.

(5) **Verbs in General**- Look, seem, appear, affect, resemble, cost, require, become, hope, refuse.

(विस्तार से जानकारी के लिए Tense में Continuous भाग देखें)

14. (A) Adverb '**as**' का प्रयोग नीचे दिए गये verbs के साथ किया जा सकता है।  
'**regard, describe, define, treat, view, know**'.

(B) Adverb '**as**' का प्रयोग नीचे दिए गये verbs के साथ न करें।

'**name, elect, think, consider, call, appoint, make, choose**.'

जैसे: 1. I **regard** him my brother. (Add 'as' after 'him')

**Verb (Advance)**

- 2. Biology has been **defined** the study of organism. (Add 'as' after 'defined')
  - 3. She is **considered** as the best student of my class. (Drop 'as' after 'considered')
  - 4. The teacher **called** him as stupid. (Drop 'as')
  - 5. The principal **appointed** him as a lecturer. (Remove 'as')
  - 6. He **thinks** her as a fool. (Remove 'as')
15. अगर वाक्य में 'It is high time' या फिर 'it's time' का प्रयोग हो और उसके बाद 'sub' का उल्लेख हो तो **sub** के बाद '**V<sub>2</sub>**' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: It's high time you **did** something.

16. कई noun का प्रयोग एक निश्चित verb के साथ किया जाता है-

जैसे: **Have** — lunch etc.    **take** —an exam    **make** —a demand    अन्य उदाहरण

a good time	advantage	a gesture	<b>Launch</b> scheme
a shower	an action	a noise	<b>Render</b> help
a dream	risk	a promise	<b>Impart</b> education
a conversation	your time	a request	
		a mistake	

17. '**To**' के बाद '**V<sub>1</sub>**' का प्रयोग होता है। परन्तु अन्य सभी **Prepositions** के बाद अगर '**verb**' का प्रयोग होता है तो **verb 'v<sub>1</sub>+ing' form** में होना चाहिए।

जैसे: 1. He is afraid **to do** anything against his boss.  
            
V<sub>1</sub>

2. He is afraid **of going** out after sunset.  
            
V<sub>1</sub>+ing

**SPOTTING THE ERROR**

- 1. (a) Walking along the road/ (b) a car knocked/ (c) him down./ (d) No error.
- 2. (a) Having done my homework/ (b) my mother allowed me/ (c) to go out and play./ (d) No error.
- 3. (a) Being a rainy day,/ (b) I had to cancel/ (c) all my appointments./ (d) No error.
- 4. (a) A few selfish leaders/ (b) are bent to harm/ (c) the very foundation of Democracy./ (d) No error.
- 5. (a) As I have worked hard,/ (b) I am confident to pass/ (c) with flying colours ./ (d) No error.
- 6. (a) We went to that place/ (b) with a view to help/ (c) the earthquake victims./ (d) No error.
- 7. (a) You should avoid/ (b) to go to school/ (c) as you have severe eye infection./ (d) No error.
- 8. (a) I have/ (b) no achievement/ (c) to boast./ (d) No error.
- 9. (a) One must avail of/ (b) every opportunity/ (c) that comes in life./ (d) No error.
- 10. (a) Have the letter/ (b) send/ (c) by someone who is trustworthy./ (d) No error.
- 11. (a) Would you please order/ (b) for tea and biscuits/ (c) for all of us./ (d) No error.
- 12. (a) Everyone considered him as/ (b) a brave man/(c) but he fled from the battlefield./ (d) No error.

13. (a) My father does not mind/ (b) to be disturbed/ (c) while he is reading the newspaper./ (d) No error.
14. (a) Perhaps you do not know/ (b) I am having a car and a jeep/ (c) besides a big house in a good locality./ (d) No error.
15. (a) The lawyer asked me/ (b) if it were worth to take/ (c) the matter to court./ (d) No error.
16. (a) I bade him/ (b) to submit all the important documents/ (c) before he left the job./ (d) No error.
17. (a) He thinks/ (b) himself/ (c) as a great scholar ./ (d) No error.
18. (a) All the candidates/ (b) will give/ (c) a test on Friday./ (d) No error.
19. (a) Mrs Dorai would rather/ (b) spend a quiet evening/ (c) than attending a party./ (d) No error.
20. (a) The audience/ (b) watched the clowns/ (c) performed their act ./ (d) No error.
21. (a) The life-guard would not/ (b) let the children/ (c) to swim at the deep end of the pool ./ (d) No error.
22. (a) He denied/ (b) to help/ (c) me./ (d) No error.
23. (a) Walking along the/ (b) bank of the river/ (c) the road began to rise./ (d) No error.
24. (a) It is time you/ (b) decide on your next/ (c) course of action ./ (d) No error.
25. (a) As I was feeling sleepy/ (b) I asked for/ (c) a steamed cup of tea./ (d) No error.
26. (a) I remember/ (b) meet him/ (c) five years ago./ (d) No error.
27. (a) I have always/ (b) and will always/ (c) be faithful to you./ (d) No error.
28. (a) I am afraid/ (b) I did a mistake/ (c) in the calculation./ (d) No error.
29. (a) The lights went out/ (b) while we/ (c) took the examination./ (d) No error.
30. (a) His assistants have and/ (b) are still doing/ (c) excellent work for the organization./ (d) No error.
31. (a) After the teacher had told the boys/ (b) how to pronounce the word/ (c) all of them in one voice repeated the word again ./ (d) No error.
32. (a) The company is not doing well./ (b) Isn't it time you/ (c) sell off your shares in it?./ (d) No error.
33. (a) He caught the boy/ (b) steal/ (c) the parcel./ (d) No error.
34. (a) I declined the invitation/ (b) not because I did not want to go,/ (c) but because I have no time./ (d) No error.
35. (a) It is a known fact/ (b) that time does not return back/ (c) once it is lost./ (d) No error.
36. (a) Even after sixty years of independence/ (b) lakhs of people/ (c) do not have bed to sleep./ (d) No error.
37. (a) The dinosaurs could not/ (b) adapt to the/ (c) changing environment./ (d) No error.



**Verb (Advance)**

38. (a) The students were/ (b) looking forward to/ (c) meet the eminent scientist./ (d) No error.  
39. (a) The lady made the/ (b) little boy to wash/ (c) all the clothes./ (d) No error.  
40. (a) We must get this letter/ (b) send/ (c) as soon as possible./ (d) No error.

**Answers with explanation**

1. (a) 'walking' के पहले 'while he was' जोड़े। ऐसा न करने पर 'a car' पहले verb का भी subject बन जाएगा यानि 'walking' का और फिर वाक्य का अर्थ गलत हो जाएगा।  
2. (a) After I had done my homework' का प्रयोग करें। ऐसा न करने पर my mother पहले भाग (having done my homework) का भी subject बन जाएगा और वाक्य का अर्थ गलत हो जाएगा।  
3. (a) 'Being' के पहले 'it' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 1 एवं 2 की व्याख्या देखें)  
4. (b) 'Bent on harming' का प्रयोग 'bent to harm' के स्थान पर करें। 'Bent on' का अर्थ है 'determined to do' 'Bent on' के बाद 'harming' ( $V_1 + ing$ ) का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि 'bend on' जैसे कुछ verbs/ phrases के बाद 'Gerund' ( $V_1 + ing$ ) का प्रयोग होता है।  
5. (b) 'Confident to pass' के स्थान पर 'Confident of passing' का प्रयोग करें। Confident के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग होता है और 'of' के बाद ' $V_1 + ing$ ' (Gerund) का।  
6. (b) 'with a view to' के बाद ' $V_1 + ing$ ' का प्रयोग होता है। अतः 'help' के स्थान पर 'helping' का प्रयोग करें।  
7. (b) 'to go' के स्थान पर 'going' का प्रयोग करें। 'Avoid' के बाद 'gerund ( $V_1 + ing$ )' का प्रयोग होता है।  
8. (c) 'boast' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'noun' को कोई 'infinitive qualify' करता है तो 'infinitive' के बाद उपयुक्त preposition का प्रयोग होता है।  
9. (a) 'Avail' के बाद एक 'reflexive pronoun' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'one' subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है। अतः 'avail' के बाद 'oneself' का प्रयोग करें।  
10. (b) 'Send' के स्थान पर  $V_3$  'sent' का प्रयोग करें। 'Get' एवं 'Have' का प्रयोग अगर 'Causative Verb' के रूप में हो तो Main Verb ' $V_3$ ' form में होगा।

Eg: Have it Painted.  
 $V_3$

Get it done.  
 $V_3$

11. (b) 'Order' के साथ 'for' का प्रयोग न करें।  
12. (a) 'Considered' के साथ 'as' का प्रयोग करना गलत है। 'as' हटा दें। (Chapter adverb देखें)  
13. (b) 'Mind' के बाद 'Gerund' का प्रयोग होगा। 'to be' के स्थान पर 'being' का प्रयोग करें।  
14. (b) 'Have' का अर्थ अगर 'to possess' हो तो 'have' के साथ 'ing' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। 'I am having' के स्थान पर 'I have' का प्रयोग करें।  
15. (b) 'worth' के बाद ' $V_1 + ing$ ' का प्रयोग करना सही होगा। 'worth taking' का प्रयोग करना सही होगा।  
16. (b) 'bade' (bid का  $V_2$ ) के बाद plain infinitive ( $V_1$ ) का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'infinitive' (to +  $V_1$ ) का। 'to' हटा दें।  
17. (c) 'as' हटा दें। 'think' के साथ 'as' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।  
18. (b) हिन्दी में हम कहते हैं प्रत्याशी परीक्षा देंगे। इसका 'transtation' कर के English में कहते हैं 'Candidates

- will give test'। ये गलत वाक्य है। 'Give' के स्थान पर 'take' का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (c) 'than' के बाद 'attend' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'would rather' के बाद भी verb 'V<sub>1</sub>' form में है।
  20. (c) 'watch' के बाद या तो 'gerund' (V<sub>1</sub> + ing) का प्रयोग होता है या फिर plain infinitive (V<sub>1</sub>) का। 'Performed' के स्थान पर या तो 'performing' का प्रयोग करें या फिर 'perform' का।
  21. (c) 'Let' के बाद V<sub>1</sub> का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'to + V<sub>1</sub>' का। 'to' हटा दें।
  22. (b) 'to help' के स्थान पर 'helping' का प्रयोग करें। 'Deny' के बाद 'gerund' का प्रयोग होता है।
  23. (a) 'while I was' का प्रयोग 'walking along' के पहले करें (वाक्य 1 एवं 2 की व्याख्या देखें)
  24. (b) 'decide' को 'decided' में परिवर्तित करें। 'It is time + sub' के बाद 'V<sub>2</sub>' का प्रयोग होता है।
  25. (c) 'steamed' से 'action complete' का आभास होता है। Action still going on दर्शाने के लिए 'V<sub>1</sub> + ing' का प्रयोग adjective के रूप में करें। 'Steaming' के प्रयोग से (भाप निकलता हुआ यानि गर्म चाय) 'action in continuation' का आभास होता है।
  26. (b) 'remember' के बाद 'Gerund' का प्रयोग होगा। 'Meet' के स्थान पर 'meeting' का प्रयोग करें।
  27. (a) have के साथ 'V<sub>3</sub>' का प्रयोग होता है और will के साथ 'V<sub>1</sub>' का। 'will always' के बाद 'be' का प्रयोग है। अतः have always के बाद 'V<sub>3</sub>' 'been' का प्रयोग करें।
  28. (b) 'Mistake' के साथ 'do' का प्रयोग नहीं होता बल्कि 'make' का होता है। अतः 'did' के स्थान पर 'made' का प्रयोग करें।
  29. (c) 'took' के स्थान पर 'were taking' का प्रयोग करें। 'while' का अर्थ है 'के दौरान'। ये कार्य को Continuous Tense में दर्शाता है।
  30. (a) 'have' के बाद 'done' का प्रयोग करें। अगर एक वाक्य में एक 'verb' (यहाँ-do) के अलग-अलग forms की जरूरत पड़े (यहाँ 'done' एवं 'doing') तो दोनों 'forms' का प्रयोग करें। हम एक form से काम नहीं चला सकते।
  31. (c) 'repeat' के साथ 'again' का प्रयोग न करें। (वाक्य 1 एवं 2 की व्याख्या देखें)
  32. (c) 'sell' को 'sold' में परिवर्तित करें। 'It's time + sub' के बाद 'V<sub>2</sub>' का प्रयोग करें।
  33. (b) 'steal' को 'stealing' में परिवर्तित करें। 'catch' के बाद 'Verb ing' form में होगा।
  34. (c) 'have' to 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। वाक्य past में है।
  35. (b) 'Return back' superfluous English है। 'back' हटा दें।
  36. (c) 'Sleep' के बाद 'in' लगायें। Noun के बाद अगर infinitive का प्रयोग हो तो infinitive के बाद उपयुक्त preposition लगाता है।
  37. (b) 'adapt' के बाद 'themselves' लगायें।
  38. (c) 'Meeting' (V<sub>1</sub> + ing) का प्रयोग 'looking forward to' के साथ होगा।
  39. (b) 'to' हटा दे। 'make' के बाद plain infinitive 'V<sub>1</sub>' का प्रयोग होगा।
  40. (b) 'Send' का 'sent' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Get' के बाद verb V<sub>3</sub> form में होता है।

# 9

# NOUN

## CHAPTER

‘किसी व्यक्ति, वस्तु, स्थान, गुण, कार्य या अवस्था के नाम को **Noun** (संज्ञा) कहा जाता है।’

A **noun** is a **word** used as a **name of a person, place or thing**.

**Noun** पाँच प्रकार के होते हैं:

1. **Proper Noun** (व्यक्तिवाचक)
2. **Common Noun** (जातिवाचक)
3. **Collective Noun** (समूहवाचक)
4. **Material Noun** (द्रव्यवाचक)
5. **Abstract Noun** (भाववाचक)

### (1) PROPER NOUN

➤ **Proper noun** से हमारा तात्पर्य किसी व्यक्ति, वस्तु तथा स्थान के नाम से होता है।

जैसे: Ram, Delhi, Gita etc.

- (a) **Ram** is my friend.
- (b) I live in **Delhi**.

### (2) COMMON NOUN

➤ जिस Noun (संज्ञा) से एक वर्ग अथवा जाति के व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध हो, उसे **Common Noun** (जातिवाचक संज्ञा) कहते हैं। जैसे- King, boy, girl, city etc.

- (a) According to the **boy**, the nearest **town** is very far.
- (b) The **boys** are going to the nearest **village**.

### (3) COLLECTIVE NOUN

➤ जिस Noun (संज्ञा) से समूह का बोध हो, उसे **Collective Noun** (समूहवाचक संज्ञा) कहते हैं। जैसे: Team, Committee, Army etc.

सामान्यतः **Collective Noun** का प्रयोग **Singular** में होता है। इनका प्रयोग **Plural** में तभी किया जाता है जब मतभेद दर्शाया जाए या फिर प्रत्येक सदस्य के बारे में कुछ कहा जाए।

- (a) The **flock** of geese spends most of its time in the pasture.  
s.v.
- (b) The **jury** is deciding the matter.  
s.v.
- (c) The **committee** meets every week.  
s.v.

(d) The **team** are divided over the issue of captainship. (मतभेद)  
P.V.

(e) The **audience** have taken their seats. (प्रत्येक व्यक्ति)  
P.V. P.P.

#### (4) MATERIAL NOUN

➤ जिस Noun (संज्ञा) से ऐसे पदार्थ का बोध हो जिससे दूसरी वस्तुएं बन सकें, उसे **Material Noun** (पदार्थवाचक संज्ञा) कहते हैं।

जैसे: Silver, iron, wood etc.

- (a) The necklace is made of **gold**.  
(b) She has purchased a tea set of **silver**.  
(c) He got his furniture made of teak **wood**.

➤ **Material Nouns, Countable** नहीं होते हैं अर्थात् इनकी गिनती नहीं की जा सकती है। इन्हें मापा या तौला जा सकता है। इनके साथ सामान्यतः **Singular verb** का प्रयोग किया जाता है एवं इनके पहले **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

#### (5) ABSTRACT NOUN

➤ **Abstract Noun**, ऐसे गुण, भाव, क्रिया एवं अवस्था को व्यक्त करता है जिन्हें छूआ नहीं जा सकता है, देखा नहीं जा सकता है, बल्कि केवल महसूस किया जा सकता है।

जैसे: Honesty, bravery (quality), hatred, laughter (action), poverty, youth (state).

➤ **Abstract Noun** का प्रयोग सामान्यतः **Singular** में किया जाता है।

जैसे: (a) People respect his **sincerity**.  
(b) **Honesty** is the best policy.

➤ **Noun** को (A) **Countable** एवं (B) **Uncountable** में भी बाँटा जा सकता है।

##### (A) Countable Nouns

➤ **Countable Noun** वह **Noun** होता है, जिसकी गणना की जा सके।

जैसे: (a) We bought **six** tables.  
(b) I have a **few** friends.  
(c) She saw **many** movies last month.

##### (B) NON-COUNTABLE NOUNS

➤ **Uncountable Noun** वह **Noun** होता है, जिसकी गणना न की जा सके।

जैसे: (a) J. Priestly discovered **oxygen**.  
(b) They decided to sell the **furniture**.  
(c) Much **money** was wasted on the show.

	Countable Noun	Uncountable Noun
Eg:-	Stars, Seconds, Rupees etc.	Money, time, knowledge etc.
Verb-	Singular with Singular Noun      Plural with Plural Noun	Singular Verb
Adjective-	Many, few, a number of, the number of.	Much, little, quantity of
Article -	A/An/ the can be used.	only 'the' can be used

## IMPORTANT POINTS

### RULE 1

- कुछ **Nouns** का प्रयोग हमेशा **Plural form** में ही होता है। इन Nouns के अन्त में लगे **s** को हटाकर, इन्हें **Singular** नहीं बनाया जा सकता है। ये दिखने में भी Plural लगते हैं, एवं इनका प्रयोग भी **Plural** की तरह होता है। ऐसे Nouns निम्न हैं:

**Scissors, tongs** ( चिमटा ), **pliers, pincers, bellows** ( फूँकनी ), **trousers, pants, pajamas, shorts, gallows** ( फाँसी का फंदा ), **fangs** ( डंक ), **spectacles, goggles, binoculars** ( दूरबीन ), **eyeglasses, Alms** ( दान ), **amends** ( संशोधन ), **archives** ( ऐतहासिक दस्तावेज ), **arrears, auspices, congratulations, embers** ( राख ), **fireworks, lodgings, outskirts, particulars, proceeds, regards, riches, remains, savings, shambles, surroundings, tidings, troops, tactics, thanks, valuables, wages, belongings** etc.

- जैसे: (a) Where are my **pants**?  
(b) Where are the **tongs**?  
(c) The **proceeds** were deposited in the bank.  
(d) All his **assets** were seized.  
(e) **Alms** are given to the beggars.  
(f) The **embers** of the fire were still burning.

नोट: 'Wages' का प्रयोग **singular** एवं **plural** दोनों **forms** में किया जा सकता है। निम्नलिखित वाक्यों को देखें-

	अर्थ	Form	Example
Wages	मजदूरी	Plural	Wages <b>are</b> paid in cash. P.v
	परिणाम	Singular	Wages of hard work <b>is</b> sweet. S.v

### RULE 2

- कुछ **Nouns** दिखने में **Plural** लगते हैं लेकिन अर्थ में **Singular** होते हैं। इनका प्रयोग हमेशा **Singular** में ही होता है। जैसे: **News, Innings, Politics, Summons, Physics, Economics, Ethics, Mathematics, Mumps, Measles, Rickets, Shingles, Billiards, Athletics** etc.

- जैसे: (a) No **news** is good news.  
(b) **Politics** is a dirty game.  
(c) **Economics** is an interesting subject.  
(d) **Ethics** demands honesty.

### RULE 3

- कुछ **Nouns** दिखने में **Singular** लगते हैं, लेकिन इनका प्रयोग हमेशा **Plural** में होता है। जैसे: **cattle, cavalry, infantry, poultry, peasantry, children, gentry, police, people**, etc. इनके साथ कभी भी 's' नहीं लगाया जाता, जैसे: **cattles, childrens** लिखना गलत है।

- जैसे: (a) **Cattle** are grazing in the field.

(b) Our **infantry** have marched forward.

(c) **Police** have arrested the thieves.

नोट: 'People' का अर्थ है 'लोग'। 'Peoples' का अर्थ है 'विभिन्न मूलवंश ( different races ) के लोग'।

#### **RULE 4**

➤ कुछ **Nouns** का प्रयोग, केवल **Singular form** में ही किया जाता है। ये Uncountable Nouns हैं। इनके साथ Article A/An का प्रयोग भी नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे:

**Scenery, Poetry, Furniture, Advice, Information, Hair, Business, Mischief, Bread, Stationery, Crockery, Luggage, Baggage, Postage, Knowledge, Wastage, Jewellery, Breakage, Equipment, Work (Works का अर्थ है साहित्य लेख ), Evidence, Word** (जब 'word' का अर्थ वाद, संदेश या परिचर्चा हो), **Fuel**, एवं **Cost**.

जैसे: (a) The **scenery** of Kashmir is very charming.

(b) I have no **information** about her residence.

(c) The **mischief** committed by him is unpardonable.

(d) His **hair** is black.

(e) I have bought some **equipment** that I needed for the project.

(i) इन **Nouns** का बहुवचन नहीं बनाया जा सकता। जैसे: *Sceneries, informations, furnitures, hairs* इत्यादि लिखना गलत है।

(ii) यदि उक्त **Noun** का **Singular** या **Plural** दोनों **forms** में आवश्यकता हो तो, इनके साथ कुछ शब्द जोड़े जाते हैं।

नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण देखें:

(a) He gave me **a piece of** information.

(b) **All pieces of** information given by her were reliable.

(c) **Many kinds of** furniture are available in that shop.

(d) I want **a few articles of** jewellery.

(e) He ate **two slices of** bread.

(f) Please show me **some items of** office stationery.

(g) The Police have found **a strand of** hair in the car.

नोट: **Money** का plural form '**Monies**' हो सकता है जिसका अर्थ निकलता है '**sums of money**'.

जैसे: **Monies** have been collected and handed to the women's welfare society.

#### **RULE 5**

➤ कुछ **Nouns**, **Plural** एवं **Singular** दोनों में एक ही रूप में रहते हैं। जैसे: **deer, sheep, series, species, fish, crew, team, jury, aircraft, counsel** etc.

जैसे: (a) Our team **is** the best.

(b) Our team **are** trying their new uniform.

(c) There **are** two fish in the pond.

(d) There **are** many fishes in the aquarium. ('Fishes' का अर्थ है विभिन्न प्रजातियों के fish)

**Noun**

**RULE 6**

➤ **Hyphenated noun** का प्रयोग कभी भी **plural form** में नहीं होता।

जैसे: (a) He gave me two hundred-rupees notes. (rupees को rupee में परिवर्तित करें)

(b) He stays in five- stars hotels. (stars को star में परिवर्तित करें)

**RULE 7**

➤ कुछ nouns का प्रयोग लोग बोल-चाल की भाषा में करते हैं लेकिन वास्तव में उनका प्रयोग करना बिलकुल गलत होता है।

उदाहरण: गलत प्रयोग सही प्रयोग

1. **Cousin brother**

**Cousin**

or

**Cousin sister**

2. **Pickpocket**

**Pickpocket**

3. **Good name**

**Name**

4. **Big/small blunder**

**Blunder** (Blunder का अर्थ होता है बड़ी भूल। अतः big का प्रयोग गलत है।)

5. **Strong breeze**

**Strong wind** (Breeze हमेशा light एवं gentle होता है)

6. **Bad dream**

**Nightmare**

➤ निम्नलिखित nouns में भी हमें confusion रहता है -

1. **Floor**

फर्श

**Ground**

जमीन

2. **Skill**

सीख कर प्राप्त करते हैं

**Talent**

Inborn (जन्म से होता है)

3. **Envy**

ईर्ष्या जो दूसरो के चीजों का देख कर हो

**Jealously**

ईर्ष्या जो अपनी चीजों के खोने के डर से हो

**RULE 8**

➤ कुछ Nouns जो अर्थ में तो Plural होते हैं लेकिन यदि इनके पूर्व किसी निश्चित संख्यात्मक विशेषण (Definite numeral adjective) का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो इन Noun को Pluralise नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे : Pair, score, gross, stone, hundred, dozen, thousand, million, billion, etc.

जैसे: (a) I have two pairs of shoes.

(b) I have two hundred rupees only.

(c) She purchased three dozen pencils.

(d) He has already donated five thousand rupees.

➤ लेकिन यदि इनके साथ Indefinite countable का प्रयोग हो तो इन्हें Pluralise किया जाता है।

जैसे: dozens of women, hundreds of people, millions of dollars, scores of shops, many pairs of shoes etc.

जैसे: (a) Hundreds of people came to see the fair.

(b) He donated millions of rupees.

**RULE 9**

➤ यदि किसी Noun के बाद Preposition का प्रयोग हो और फिर वहीं 'Noun' repeat हो तो वह 'Noun' Singular form में होना चाहिए। जैसे:

जैसे: (a) Town after town was devastated.

(b) Row upon row of marble looks beautiful.

(c) He enquired from door to door.

(d) Ship after ship is arriving.

**Noun**

➤ इस तरह के वाक्यों में Towns after towns, Rows upon rows, doors to doors या ships after ships लिखना गलत है।

**RULE 10**

➤ Common Gender Nouns जैसे: **Teacher, student, child, clerk, advocate, worker, writer, leader, musician** etc. ऐसे nouns हैं जिनका प्रयोग **male एवं female** दोनों के लिए किया जाता है। इन्हें **Dual Gender** भी कहा जाता है। जब इस तरह के Noun का प्रयोग Singular में किया जाता है तो सामान्यतः **he/his/him** का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (1) Every **leader** should perform **his** duty.
- (2) A **teacher** should perform **his** duty sincerely.

यहाँ विवाद का विषय यह है कि हम **Masculine Gender (He/His etc.)** का ही प्रयोग क्यों करें?

➤ इस सम्बन्ध में यदि **matter** **legal** हो तो **his** या **he**, जो भी आवश्यक हो उसे स्पष्ट कर देना चाहिये।

**WORDS DENOTING GROUPS**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. A band of musicians.</li> <li>2. A <b>board</b> of directors, etc.</li> <li>3. A <b>bevy</b> of girls, women, officers etc.</li> <li>4. A <b>bunch</b> of grapes, keys, etc.</li> <li>5. A <b>bundle</b> of sticks and hay.</li> <li>6. A <b>caravan</b> of Merchants, pilgrims, travellers.</li> <li>7. A <b>chain/range</b> of mountains or hills.</li> <li>8. A <b>choir</b> of singers.</li> <li>9. A <b>class</b> of students.</li> <li>10. A <b>retinue</b> of servants/ attendants.</li> <li>11. A <b>clump/grove</b> of trees.</li> <li>12. A <b>code</b> of laws.</li> <li>13. A <b>cluster / constellation/ galaxy</b> of stars.</li> <li>14. A <b>company/regiment/army</b> of soldiers.</li> <li>15. A <b>convoy</b> of ships, cars etc.moving under an escort.</li> <li>16. A <b>course</b> or <b>series</b> of lectures.</li> <li>17. A <b>crew</b> of sailors.</li> <li>18. A <b>crowd/mob</b> of people.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>19. A <b>curriculum</b> of studies.</li> <li>20. A <b>flight</b> of steps, stairs.</li> <li>21. A <b>fleet</b> of ships or motorcars.</li> <li>22. A <b>flock</b> of geese, sheep and birds.</li> <li>23. A <b>gang</b> of robbers, labourers.</li> <li>24. A <b>garland/bunch/bouquet</b> of flowers.</li> <li>25. A <b>heap</b> of ruins, sand, stones.</li> <li>26. A <b>herd</b> of cattle.</li> <li>27. A <b>litter</b> of puppies.</li> <li>28. A <b>pack</b> of hounds, cards.</li> <li>29. A <b>pair</b> of shoes, scissors, compasses, trousers.</li> <li>30. A <b>series</b> of events.</li> <li>31. A <b>sheaf</b> of corn, arrows.</li> <li>32. A <b>swarm</b> of ants, bees or flies.</li> <li>33. A <b>train</b> of carriages, followers etc.</li> <li>34. A <b>troop</b> of horses (cavalry) scouts; etc.</li> <li>35. A <b>volley</b> of shots, bullets</li> <li>36. A <b>forum</b> of people (discussing issues)</li> <li>37. A <b>congregation</b> of people (discussing religious issues)</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

**NOUN-GENDER**

**Gender** को चार भागों में विभाजित किया गया है:

- (1) **Masculine Gender ( पुल्लिंग )**: ऐसे Noun जो **male sex** को व्यक्त करते हैं, **Masculine Gender** कहलाते हैं। जैसे: **Tiger, Power, Violence, Father, Sun, Summer, Time, Thunder** etc.
- (2) **Feminine Gender ( स्त्रीलिंग )**: ऐसे Noun जो **Female sex** को व्यक्त करते हैं, **Feminine Gender** कहलाते हैं। जैसे: **Tigress, Woman, Lioness, Mother, Sister, Peace, Nature, Earth, Goddess** etc.
- (3) **Common Gender ( उभय लिंग )** ऐसे Noun जो स्त्री एवं पुरुष दोनों के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं, **Common Gender** कहलाते हैं। जैसे: **Child, Baby, Teacher, Servant, Student, Cousin, Infant, Thief, Neighbour** etc.
- (4) **Neuter Gender ( नपुंसक लिंग )**: ऐसे Noun जो उन निर्जीव वस्तुओं को व्यक्त करते हैं जो न male हैं और न ही female हैं, **Neuter Gender** कहलाते हैं। जैसे: **Copy, Book, Room, Paper, T.V., Box**, etc.



Noun

## RULES FOR CHANGING MASCULINE NOUN TO FEMININE NOUN

### RULE 1

- कुछ cases में Masculine Noun के बाद 'ess' लगाने से Feminine Noun बनाया जा सकता है। जैसे:

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>
Author (लेखक)	Authoress
Host (मेजबान)	Hostess
Jew	Jewess
Mayor	Mayoress
Poet (कवि)	Poetess
Tutor	Tutoress
Shepherd(गड़ड़िया)	Shepherdess
Giant (दानव)	Giantess
Heir (उत्तराधिकारी)	Heiress
Lion	Lioness
Priest(पुजारी)	Priestess
Tailor (दर्जी)	Tailoress

### RULE 2

- कुछ cases में Masculine Noun के अन्तिम **vowel** एवं उसके पहले आने वाले **consonant** को हटाकर 'ess' जोड़ने से भी Feminine Noun बन जाता है। जैसे:

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>
Actor	Actress
Benefactor(उपकार करने वाला)	Benefactress
Hunter (शिकारी)	Huntress
Prince (राजकुमार)	Princess
Waiter	Waitress
Ambassador	Ambassadress
Director	Directress
Negro	Negress
Tiger	Tigress

### RULE 3

- कुछ cases में Masculine Noun के शब्दों में कुछ **change** किया जाता है एवं अन्त में 'ess' लगाने पर भी Feminine Noun बन जाता है। जैसे:

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>
Emperor(राजा)	Empress
Governor	Governess
Duke	Duchess
God	Goddess
Master	Mistress
Sorcerer (जादूगर)	Sorceress

### RULE 4

- कुछ cases में Compound Masculine Noun के **first** अथवा **second** शब्द में कुछ परिवर्तन किये जाते हैं। जैसे:

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>
Man-servant	Maid - servant
Washerman	Washerwoman
Buck-rabbit	Doe-Rabbit
Brother-in law	Sister-in-law
He-bear	She-bear
Bull-calf	Cow-calf
Jack-ass	Jenny-ass
Headmaster	Headmistress
Milkman	Milkmaid
Postmaster	Postmistress
Peacock	Peahen
Landlord	Landlady
Father-in-law	Mother-in-law
Step-Father	Step-Mother
He-goat	She-goat
Cock-sparrow	Hen-sparrow
Dog-wolf	Bitch-wolf
Stepbrother	Stepsister
Grandson	Granddaughter

### RULE 5

- Foreign words एवं अन्य विविध शब्दों के Masculine एवं Feminine gender नीचे दिये गये हैं। इनको किसी विशेष नियम के तहत परिवर्तित नहीं करते हैं As:

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>
Administrator	Administratrix
Executor (कार्यान्वित करने वाला)	Executrix
Lad(लड़का)	Lass

English – from Plinth to Paramount

155

Prosecutor	Proscutrix	Czar	Czarina
Sultan	Sultana	Hero	Heroine
Boar (बनैला सूअर)	Sow	Testator(वसीयतकर्ता)	Testatrix
Brother	Sister	Bachelor	Maid
Colt(बछड़ा)	Filly	Boy	Girl
Dog	Bitch	Cock	Hen
Buck (मृग)	Doe	Drake (बत्क)	Duck
Earl	Countess	Drone (नर मक्खी)	Bee
Monk	Nun	Bull	Cow
Gander(हंस)	Goose	Father	Mother
Hart (हिरण)	Roe	Bridegroom	Bride
Horse	Mare	Gentleman	Lady
King	Queen	He	She
Man	Woman	Husband	Wife
Mr.	Miss	Lord	Lady
Sheep	Ewe	Male	Female
Son	Daughter	Nephew (भतीजा)	Niece
Uncle	Aunt	Sir	Madam/ Dame
Fox	Vixen	Widower (विद्युर)	Widow
Ox	Cow	Wizard (जादूगर)	Witch

### NOUN-NUMBER (SINGULAR-PLURAL)

**Singular Noun:** इससे एक व्यक्ति, एक स्थान या एक वस्तु का बोध होता है। जैसे: Boy, Girl, Table.

**Plural Noun:** इससे एक से अधिक व्यक्ति, स्थान या वस्तुओं का बोध होता है जैसे: Cities, Boys, Girls.

#### **Changing Singular to Plural: Some Rules**

##### **RULE 1**

➤ कुछ Noun के अन्त में 's' लगाने से वह Plural बन जाता है। जैसे: Boy, Girl, Kite, Telephone etc.

##### **RULE 2**

➤ जिन Noun के अन्त में **s, ss, ch, sh, z या x** आता है उनका Plural बनाने के लिए अन्त में **es** जोड़ दिया जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Bus	Buses	Fox	Foxes
Watch	Watches	Switch	Switches
Ass	Asses	Canvas	Canvases
Fix	Fixes	Class	Classes
Church	Churches	Quiz	Quizes

Tax	Taxes	Dish	Dishes
Box	Boxes	Coach	Coaches

➤ इसके कुछ Exceptions भी हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Stomach	Stomachs	Radius	Radii
Locus	Loci	Ox	Oxen

##### **RULE 3**

➤ कुछ Noun के अन्त में 'o' आता है एवं उससे पूर्व कोई व्यंजन (**consonant**) हो तो, उसका Plural बनाने के लिए **Noun** के अन्त में 'es' लगाते हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Hero	Heroes	Potato	Potatoes
Mosquito	Mosquitoes	Mango	Mangoes
Cargo	Cargoes	Echo	Echoes

➤ इससे कुछ Exceptions भी हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Dynamo	Dynamos	Memento	Mementos
Ratio	Ratios	Piano	Pianos
Solo	Solos	Photo	Photos

**Noun**

**RULE 4**

- यदि किसी Noun के अन्त में **double vowel** लगे हुए हों तो उसका Plural बनाने के लिए उसके अन्त में **s** लगा दिया जाता है जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Bee	Bees	Tree	Trees
Zoo	Zoos	Radio	Radios
Woe	Woes	Portfolio	Portfolios

**RULE 5**

- यदि Noun के अन्त में 'y' आये एवं 'y' से पूर्व कोई व्यंजन (**consonant**) आता है तो 'y' की जगह 'ies' लगाने से उसका plural बन जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Cry	cries	Country	countries
Family	families	Pony	ponies
City	cities	Dictionary	dictionaries
Lorry	lorries	Reply	replies

**RULE 6**

- यदि Noun के अन्त में 'y' आये एवं 'y' से पूर्व कोई **Vowel** आता हो तो 's' लगाने से उसका **Plural** बन जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Key	Keys	Donkey	Donkeys
Ray	Rays	Monkey	Monkeys
Way	Ways	Valley	Valleys
Toy	Toys	Storey	Storeys

**RULE 7**

- यदि Noun के अन्त में 'f' या 'fe' आये तो **Plural** बनाने के लिए 'f' या 'fe' को हटाकर 'ves' लगाते हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Calf	Calves	Half	Halves
Wife	Wives	Thief	Thieves
Wolf	Wolves	Life	Lives
Leaf	Leaves	Knife	Knives
Shelf	Shelves	Loaf	Loaves

- इसके कुछ Exceptions भी हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Belief	Beliefs	Chief	Chiefs
Cliff	Cliffs	Dwarf	Dwarfs
Grief	Griefs	Gulf	Gulfs
Proof	Proofs	Roof	Roofs
Safe	Safes	Scarf	Scarfs
Turf	Turfs	Brief	Briefs

**RULE 8**

- Compound noun में मुख्य शब्द के साथ 's' लगाने पर उसका **Plural** बन जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural
Brother-in-law	Brothers-in-law
Bed-room	Bed-rooms
Commander-in-chief	Commanders-in-chief
Step-daughter	Step-daughters
Maid-servant	Maid-servants
Pea-hen	Pea-hens
Peacock	Peacocks
Mother-in-law	Mothers-in-law
Sister-in-law	Sisters-in-law
Member of Parliament	Members of Parliament
Man hater	Man haters
Woman lover	Woman lovers
Man lover	Man lovers

**RULE 9**

- निम्न Nouns ऐसे हैं जिनका **Plural** बनाने के लिए **Inside Vowels** में परिवर्तन करते हैं।

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Man	Men	Woman	Women
Foot	Feet	Tooth	Teeth
Mouse	Mice	Louse (जू)	Lice
Goose	Geese	Oasis	Oases

**RULE 10**

➤ निम्नलिखित Nouns ऐसे हैं जिनका Plural बनाने के लिए 'en' जोड़ते हैं। जैसे:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
Child	Children	Ox	Oxen

**RULE 11**

➤ कुछ Nouns के दो तरह के Plural बनते हैं जिनका अर्थ भी अलग होता है। जैसे:

- (1) **Brother**  
**Brothers** - Sons of the same parents.  
**Brethren** - Members of a society, community or a religious group.
- (2) **Cloth**  
**Cloths** - Unstitched cloth.  
**Clothes** - Stitched clothes (Garments)
- (3) **Die**  
**Dies** - Stamps used for printing and coining.  
**Dice** - Small cubes used in games.
- (4) **Index**  
**Indexes** - tables of contents in a book.  
**Indices** - Signs used in algebra.

**SOME TYPICAL PLURAL NOUNS (NUMBER)**

(A) **Latin words:** Latin के कुछ शब्द, जिनके अन्त में 'um' आता है, एकवचन होते हैं। इनको Plural बनाने के लिए 'um' हटाकर 'a' लगाया जाता है। जैसे:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
Datum	Data
Ovum	Ova
Agendum	Agenda
Dictum	Dicta
Memorandum	Memoranda
Stratum	Strata

**IMPORTANT**

➤ **Latin** के निम्न शब्दों पर ध्यान दें: इन शब्दों के पीछे 'um' आता है, लेकिन इनके **Plural** बनाने हेतु पीछे 's' लगाया जाता है।

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
Asylum	Asylums
Museum	Museums
Premium	Premiums
Forum	Forums
Pendulum	Pendulums

(B) कुछ **Latin words** के अन्त में 'us' आता है। इनका Plural 'us' को 'i' के बदलकर बनाया जाता है। जैसे:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
Radius	radii	Syllabus	syllabi

(C) कुछ **Greek** शब्दों के अन्त में 'is' आता है इनका Plural 'is' को 'es' में बदलकर बनाया जाता है।

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
Analysis	Analyses
Crisis	Crises
Hypothesis	Hypotheses
Basis	Bases
Thesis	Theses

(D) कुछ **Greek** शब्दों के अन्त में 'on' आता है इनका Plural 'on' को 'a' में बदलने से बनता है। जैसे:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
Phenomenon	Phenomena
Criterion	criteria

(E) अन्य कई **Nouns** के **Plural** निम्न प्रकार बनते हैं:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
If	Ifs	I	I's
5	5s	P	P's
BA	BAs	ATM	ATMs
But	Buts	T	T's
10	10s	MP	MPs
MA	MAs	UPC	UPCs

**Noun**

(F) कुछ Nouns के **Singular** एवं, **Plural forms** के अर्थ पूर्णतया अलग होते हैं, अतः इनका प्रयोग सावधानीपूर्वक करना चाहिए।

जैसे:	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
	Air	(हवा)	Airs	(दिखावटी व्यवहार)
	Return	(वापसी)	Returns	(आय का हिसाब)
	Iron	(लोहा)	Irons	(जंजीरें)
	Sand	(रेत)	Sands	(रेगिस्तान)
	Wood	(लकड़ी)	Woods	(जंगल)
	Abuse	(दुरुपयोग)	Abuses	(कुरीतियाँ)
	Good(adj)	(अच्छा)	Goods	(सामान)
	Water	(पानी)	Waters	(समुद्र)
	Work	(काम)	Works	(साहित्य लेख)
	Fruit	(फल जैसे सेब इत्यादि)	Fruits	(नतीजा (मेहनत इत्यादि का))
	Wit	(वाक्पटुता)	Wits	(बुद्धिमता)

(G) कुछ Nouns का **Singular form** में एक अर्थ होता है परन्तु **Plural Form** में एक से अधिक।

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
Custom	रिवाज़	Customs	रिवाज़, सीमा शुल्क
Manner	तरीका	Manners	तरीके, शिष्टाचार
Pain	दर्द	Pains	दर्द, अथक प्रयास
Quarter	एक-चौथाई	Quarters	एक-चौथाई, आवास
Letter	अक्षर, चिट्ठी	Letters	अक्षर, चिट्ठी, साहित्य

**NOUNs like OF/ APOSTROPHE are ;ksx**

(A) **Apostrophe** का प्रयोग **Possessive case** के लिए निम्न स्थिति में करना ही उचित है। जैसे:

(1) जीवित वस्तु

जैसे: (a) Mohan's book (b) a cow's horn (c) a woman's purse

(2) जब किसी निर्जीव का मानवीयकरण (**Personification**) किया जाए।

जैसे: (a) Sun's fury (b) Nature's love

(3) समय, भार एवं जगह संबंधित **Nouns** के साथ।

जैसे: (a) a day's leave. (b) arm's length. (c) a pound's weight.

(4) कुछ सम्मानजनक **Nouns** के साथ।

जैसे: (a) court's orders (b) at duty's call

(5) कुछ **Phrases** के साथ।

जैसे: (a) at one's wit's end. (b) at a stone's throw

(6) भौगोलिक पिण्ड के साथ

जैसे: (a) Earth's atmosphere.

**Noun**

**(B)** यदि **Plural** शब्द का अन्तिम अक्षर 's' है तो **apostrophe** का प्रयोग करते समय 's' नहीं लगाते हैं, केवल **apostrophe ( ' )** का ही प्रयोग करते हैं।

जैसे: (a) Boys' college (b) Girls' school (c) Working women's hostel

**(C)** जब Noun **सिस्कार ध्वनि (hissing sound)** से खत्म हो में भी 's' नहीं लगता है।  
for peace' sake, for conscience' sake, for goodness' sake, for Jesus' sake, Ganesh' book.

**नोट:** God's sake.

**(D)** **Possessive Pronoun ( his, hers, yours, ours, theirs)** के साथ **apostrophe** नहीं लगाते हैं।

जैसे: Yours faithfully, Yours truly.

**(E)** निम्न **titles** के साथ **apostrophe** अन्तिम शब्द के साथ ही लगाते हैं।

जैसे: (a) **Commander-in-chief's** orders.  
(b) My **son-in-law's** sister.

**(F)** निर्जीव वस्तु के साथ 's का प्रयोग नहीं करते हैं 'Of' का प्रयोग करते हैं।

जैसे: **Table's leg** के स्थान पर **Leg of table** का प्रयोग करें।

**(G)** 'Double apostrophe' का प्रयोग न करें

जैसे: (a) My wife's secretary's mother has expired. (×)  
इसकी जगह हमें लिखना चाहिये।

The mother of my **wife's secretary** has expired.

(b) Mrs. Sharma the society's chairman's proposal was rejected by the members of the society. (×)

The proposal of Mrs. Sharma, the chairperson of society, was rejected by the members of the society. (✓)

**(H)** **anybody/ Nobody/ Everybody/ Somebody/ Anyone/Someone/No one/Everyone** के साथ 's का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

जैसे: (a) **Everyone's** concern is no one's concern.  
(b) **Everybody's** business is nobody's business.

➤ यदि इनके बाद *else* का प्रयोग हो तो **apostrophe** को *else* के साथ लगाते हैं

जैसे: (a) I can rely on your words, not **somebody else's**.

(b) I obey your orders and **nobody else's**.

(यहाँ Somebody's else या Nobody's else लिखना गलत होगा।)

---

### SPOTTING THE ERROR

---

- (a) My sister / (b) has read / (c) pages after pages of the Bible./ (d) No error
- (a) I went to the temple / (b) with my parents, aunts / (c) and cousin sisters. / (d) No error
- (a) He / (b) takes pain / (c) over his work./ (d) No error
- (a) The Manager put forward / (b) a number of criterions / (c) for the post./ (d) No error
- (a) I like / (b) the poetries / (c) of Byron and Shelley./ (d) No error

**Noun**

6. (a) The beautiful / (b) surrounding of the place / (c) enchanted me./ (d) No error
7. (a) No Porter being available/ (b) he carried / (c) all his luggages himself./ (d) No error
8. (a) The table's legs / (b) have been / (c) elaborately carved./ (d) No error
9. (a) The sceneries / (b) of Kashmir / (c) is very charming./ (d) No error
10. (a) The driver showed / (b) great talent in keeping / (c) the damaged car under control./ (d) No error
11. (a) When I entered the bedroom / (b) I saw a snake crawling / (c) on the ground./ (d) No error
12. (a) Alms / (b) are given/ (c) to the poors./ (d) No error
13. (a) Lasers are / (b) indispensable tools / (c) for the delicate eyes surgery./ (d) No error
14. (a) If you have a way with words / (b) a good sense of design and administration ability / (c) you may enjoy working in high pressure world of advertising./ (d) No error
15. (a) Last week's sharp hike in the wholesale price of beef / (b) is a strong indication for / (c) higher meat costs to come./ (d) No error
16. (a) Whenever he goes to Mumbai / (b) he stays in/ (c) five-stars hotels./ (d) No error
17. (a) The company has ordered / (b) some / (c) new equipments./ (d) No error
18. (a) A strong breeze / (b) blew his / (c) cap off./ (d) No error.
19. (a) One of her firmest belief among the Hindus is that/ (b) Karma affects their / (c) life and also the life after death./ (d) No error
20. (a) He was advised to take/ (b) two spoonsful of / (c) medicine times a day./ (d) No error
21. (a) It is a big blunder/(b) but we had / (c) to ignore it/(d)No error
22. (A) The police have received / (b) two important informations / (c) that can help them solve the triple murder case (E) No error
23. (a) The sheafs / (b) of the wheat plants were too heavy / (c) for the weak farmer to carry them on his head./ (d) No error
24. (a) The population of India / (b) is divided into two classes- / (c) Haves and Haves not./ (d) No error
25. (a) All his sister-in laws / (b) are extremely co- operative / (c) and she doesn't miss her real sisters at all./ (d) No error
26. (a) Envy strikes a woman / (b) when she sees her husband / (c) talking to another woman./ (d) No error
27. (a) Two summons have been issued by the court / (b) but he has not / (c) yet appeared before the court./ (d) No error
28. (a) The Vaidya's / (b) have been living here / (c) for about a decade./ (d) No error.
29. (a) You are among those/ (b) man who earned name and fame not by / (c) chance but by hard work . / (d) No error
30. (a) Children are playing / (b) and making mischiefs/ (c) as their holidays have started./ (d) No error.

31. (a) Sheeps are economically useful/ (b) and so they are reared/ (c) for wool and meat./ (d) No error.
32. (a) I read the letter/ (b) and made him aware/ (c) of its content./ (d) No error.
33. (a) I shall not go to party tonight/ (b) since I have many works to complete/ (c) before I give presentation tomorrow./ (d) No error.
34. (a) One must be always/ (b) true to one's words/ (c) if one wants to get respect from everyone./ (d) No error.
35. (a) Even after the enactment of several Acts and Provisions / (b) we can see five years old boys/ (c) working in hazardous factories./ (d) No error.
36. (a) The fan's blade / (b) has broken/ (c) and we must buy a new fan before disposing it of./ (d) No error.
37. (a) She wears spectacle/ (b) and so she was unable to see the gangster/ (c) that attacked her last night./ (d) No error.
38. (a) All the furnitures have been/ (b) sold for a song/ (c) as we were in a hurry to leave the town./ (d) No error.
39. (a) The angry mob/ (b) attacked the police officers/ (c) when they came to raze the illegal construction./ (d) No error.
40. (a) They left/ (b) their luggages/ (c) at home by mistake and went to the railway station./ (d) No error.
41. (a) The car could not/ (b) ascend the steep hill/ (c) because it was in the wrong gears./ (d) No error.
42. (a) The ticket window/ (b) remained closed / (c) throughout the day./ (d) No error.
43. (a) Satyajit Ray, who conceived, co-authored / (b) and directed a number of good films, was/ (c) one of India's most talented film maker./ (d) No error.
44. (a) I think this/ (b) is not your book. / (c) It is some body's else./ (d) No error.
45. (a) You should not put/ (b) your sign on any paper / (c) that you haven't read./ (d) No error.
46. (a) Towns after towns were/ (b) conquered / (c) by him but he found no peace./ (d) No error.
47. (a) When we reached the fair/ (b) we found that there / (c) was no place to stand./ (d) No error.
48. (a) All the evidences were/ (b) against him and he was / (c) held guilty./ (d) No error.
49. (a) My cousin brother is a cheater/ (b) and he / (c) cheats his family members and friends too./ (d) No error.
50. (a) The committee/ (b) could not come to/ (c) a final conclusion./ (d) No error.
51. (a) The cattle in the meadow/ (b) was terrified to hear/ (c) the roar of a lion which appeared to be wild with anger./ (d) No error.
52. (a) There should be/ (b) no furnitures/ (c) in my room./ (d) No error.
53. (a) That house/ (b) is built of/ (c) stones./ (d) No error.
54. (a) Santosh lives/ (b) by the principals/ (c) he professes./ (d) No error.
55. (a) The astronomer/ (b) who predicts the future/ (c) has arrived./ (d) No error.
56. (a) He told me that/ (b) it was/ (c) his friend's Sankar's house./ (d) No error.



**Answers with explanation**

1. (c) 'Page after page' का प्रयोग सही होगा। अगर किसी preposition के पहले और के बाद same noun का प्रयोग होता है तो noun का प्रयोग 'singular form' में करें।
2. (c) 'Cousin sisters' कहना गलत होता है। Cousins का प्रयोग करें।
3. (b) takes pains का प्रयोग करें। इस phrase का अर्थ है 'काफी प्रयास करना'।
4. (b) 'Criterion' का plural form 'Criteria' है।
5. (b) 'Poetry' uncountable noun है। इसका बहुवचन नहीं बनाया जा सकता।
6. (b) 'Surroundings' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ है आस-पास की जगह। 'Surrounding' surround (verb) का 'ing' form है।
7. (c) 'Luggage' का प्रयोग करें। 'Luggage' uncountable noun है और इसका कोई plural form नहीं है।
8. (a) table's legs के स्थान पर 'Legs of table' का प्रयोग करें। सामान्यतः निर्जीव वस्तु के साथ s का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
9. (a) 'Scenery' का प्रयोग करें। 'Scenery' uncountable noun है।
10. (b) 'talent' के स्थान पर 'skill' का प्रयोग करें। Talent का अर्थ है natural ability to do something. 'Skill' का अर्थ है 'type of activity that requires special training and knowledge'. Driving skill का प्रयोग सही होता है।
11. (c) Ground का अर्थ है 'मकान के बाहर की धरती का उपरी सतह'। Ground के स्थान पर 'floor' का प्रयोग करें। floor का अर्थ 'मकान के अंदर का फर्श' होता है।
12. (c) 'the poors' के स्थान पर 'the poor' का प्रयोग करें। 'The poor' का अर्थ है गरीब वर्ग। 'Poor' adjective है। इस में 's' का प्रयोग न करें। 'The poor' plural common noun है।
13. (c) 'eyes surgery' के स्थान पर 'eye surgery' का प्रयोग करें। 'Eyes' noun है परन्तु यहाँ 'eyes' surgery की विशेषता बता रहा है एवं adjective का कार्य कर रहा है। अगर noun adjective का कार्य करें तो वह singular form में होता है। अतः 'eyes' नहीं 'eye' का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (b) 'administration' noun है। यहाँ हमें 'ability' की विशेषता बताने वाले 'adjective' का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। administration का adjective form 'administrative' का प्रयोग करें।
15. (c) 'Costs' के स्थान पर 'Cost' का प्रयोग करें। Noun के रूप में 'Cost' uncountable noun है और इसका बहुवचन नहीं हो सकता।
16. (c) 'five-stars' hyphenated noun है जो कभी भी plural form में नहीं होता। 'five star' का प्रयोग करें।
17. (c) 'Equipment' uncountable noun है जिसका plural form नहीं होता।
18. (a) 'breeze' हमेशा gentle होता है। तेज़ हवा के लिए 'Strong wind' शब्द का प्रयोग करें।
19. (a) 'One of the' के बाद आने वाला 'noun plural form' में होता है। अतः 'One of the firmest beliefs' का प्रयोग करें।
20. (b) 'Spoonsful' नहीं 'Spoonfuls' का प्रयोग करें।

**Noun**

21. (a) 'blunder' का अर्थ होता है 'big mistake.' अतः blunder के साथ 'big' का प्रयोग गलत होगा।
22. (b) 'Information' uncountable noun है। इसका plural बनाने के लिए 'pieces of information' का प्रयोग करें।
23. (a) 'Sheaf' का plural form 'Sheaves' होता है न कि 'Sheafs'।
24. (c) 'Have nots' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ होता है रहित वर्ग।
25. (a) 'Sisters-in-law' का प्रयोग करें। 'Sister-in-law' का बहुवचन 'Sisters-in-law' होता है।
26. (a) जो हमारा है और उसे खाने के डर से हमें ईर्ष्या होती है तो Jealousy का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जब उस वस्तु के लिए ईर्ष्या हो जो हमारा नहीं तो envy का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
27. (a) 'Summons' एक Countable noun है और Singular है। इसका plural summonses होता है। अतः 'two summonses' का प्रयोग करें।
28. (a) Vaidyas का प्रयोग करें। apostrophe (') हटा दें।
29. (b) 'men' का प्रयोग होगा। 'Those' के साथ plural countable noun का प्रयोग होगा।
30. (b) 'Mischief' uncountable noun है। इसका plural form नहीं हो सकता है।
31. (a) 'Sheep' का singular तथा plural form 'sheep' ही होता है। 'Sheeps' के स्थान पर Sheep का प्रयोग करें।
32. (c) Content के स्थान पर 'Contents' का प्रयोग करें। 'Contents' का अर्थ है 'things contained in something'.
33. (b) 'work' uncountable noun है। 'Many pieces of work' का प्रयोग करें।
34. (b) 'true to one's word' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ होता है 'जुबान का पक्का'।
35. (b) 'five year old boys' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ five year adjective का कार्य कर रहा है। अतः यह plural form में नहीं होगा।
36. (a) fan निर्जीव है। अतः 's' का प्रयोग 'fan' के साथ न करें। 'The blade of fan' का प्रयोग करना सही होगा।
37. (a) 'Spectacles' का प्रयोग करें।
38. (a) 'furniture' का प्रयोग करें। साथ ही ध्यान रखें कि 'furniture' singular noun है अतः singular verb 'has' का प्रयोग होगा।
39. (a) 'angry mob का प्रयोग गलत है। 'Mob' का प्रयोग करें। क्योंकि Mob का अर्थ होता है- उग्र भीड़। Angry के साथ mob का प्रयोग superfluous होगा।
40. (b) 'luggage' का प्रयोग luggages के स्थान पर करें।
41. (c) 'wrong gear' का प्रयोग करें। Car एक समय में एक ही gear में हो सकती है।
42. (a) 'ticket window' के स्थान पर 'ticket counter' का प्रयोग करें।
43. (c) 'One of' के बाद आने वाला noun plural form में होना चाहिए। अतः 'One of' के साथ 'film makers' होगा न कि 'film maker'।
44. (c) 'Somebody else's' सही प्रयोग है।
45. (b) 'Sign' verb है। your के बाद noun का प्रयोग होगा यानि signature का
46. (a) 'Town after town' का प्रयोग करें। अगर किसी preposition के पहले और बाद में same noun का प्रयोग हो तो noun singular form में होना चाहिए।

**Noun**

47. (c) 'no place' के स्थान पर 'no room' का प्रयोग करें। 'Room' का noun के अर्थ 'enough empty space for people or things to be fitted in' भी होता है।
48. (a) 'evidence' uncountable noun है अतः इसका कोई plural form (evidences) नहीं हो सकता। साथ ही singular verb 'was' का प्रयोग करें।
49. (a) 'Cousin brother' एवं 'Cheater' दोनों ही ऐसे nouns हैं जो लोग बोल-चाल की भाषा में अक्सर प्रयोग करते हैं परन्तु ऐसा करना गलत होता है। Cousin एवं Cheat का प्रयोग करें।
50. (c) 'final' शब्द हटा दें। Conclusion सदा final होता है।
51. (b) 'Cattle' plural noun है। अतः 'was' नहीं 'were' का प्रयोग करें।
52. (b) 'furniture' के साथ 's' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता है।
53. (c) 'stones' को 'stone' में परिवर्तित करें। यहाँ 'Stone' से हमारा तात्पर्य उस material से है जिससे house का निर्माण हुआ है।
54. (b) 'principals' (प्रधानाचार्य) को 'principles' (सिद्धान्त) में परिवर्तित करें।
55. (a) 'Astronomer' को 'astrologer' में परिवर्तित करें। 'future predict' करने वाले को 'astrologer' कहते हैं।
56. (c) 'friend's' को 'friend' में परिवर्तित करें। एक साथ 'double apostrophe' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

# 10

## PRONOUN

### CHAPTER

- **Pronoun ( सर्वनाम ):** A word used in place of a Noun.
- **Noun** के बदले प्रयुक्त होने वाले शब्द को **Pronoun** कहते हैं।
- **Noun** के **repetition** से बचने के लिए ही **Pronoun** का प्रयोग किया जाता है। किसी भी वाक्य में एक ही Noun का प्रयोग बार-बार करने से वाक्य की सुन्दरता खत्म हो जाती है। यही मुख्य कारण है, कि Noun के बदले Pronoun का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे: Mrs. Shukla, being a good teacher, she is liked by all the students. (**She** हटा दें। Noun के स्थान पर pronoun का प्रयोग होता है न कि Noun के साथ)

### PRONOUNS ds izdkj%

1. **PERSONAL PRONOUNS** ( पुरुषवाचक सर्वनाम ): I, me, we, us, you, he, him, she, her, it, they, them.
2. **POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS** ( अधिकारवाचक सर्वनाम ): Mine, ours, yours, his, hers, theirs.
3. **DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS** ( संकेतवाचक सर्वनाम ): This, that, these, those.
4. **DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS** ( व्यष्टिवाचक सर्वनाम ): each, either, neither, every, none etc.
5. **RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS** ( पारस्परिक-सम्बन्ध वाचक सर्वनाम ): each other, one another.
6. **REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS** ( निजवाचक सर्वनाम ): Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself.
7. **EMPHATIC OR EMPHASIZING PRONOUNS** ( दबावसूचक सर्वनाम ): Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself का प्रयोग जब subject (कर्ता) पर दबाव डालने के लिए किया जाता है, तब ये **Emphatic** या **Emphasizing Pronouns** कहलाते हैं।  
जैसे: You, **yourself** are responsible for your problems.  
He hurt **himself**.
8. **INDEFINITE PRONOUNS** ( अनिश्चयवाचक सर्वनाम ): everybody, somebody, nobody, anybody, everybody, someone, no one, anyone, everything, something, nothing, anything, all, some, any, both, another, much, few, little.
9. **RELATIVE PRONOUNS** ( संबंधवाचक सर्वनाम ): Who, whom, whose, which, that इत्यादि। ये जोड़ने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं।
10. **INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS** ( प्रश्नवाचक सर्वनाम ): Who, whom, whose, which इत्यादि। ये प्रश्न पूछने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

**Pronoun**

The Case of Personal Pronouns		Subject	Object	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns
First Person	Singular	I	me	my	mine
	Plural	We	us	our	ours
Second Person	Singular/ Plural	You	you	your	yours
Third Person	Singular	She, He, It	her, him, it	her, his, its	hers, his, ---
	Plural	They	them	their	theirs

अब सभी प्रकार के **Pronoun** को विस्तार से देखे-

**1. USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUN**

वे Pronouns जो तीनों Pronouns जैसे **First person, Second person** तथा **Third person** में प्रयुक्त होते हैं **Personal pronouns** कहलाते हैं।

**PERSONAL PRONOUN**

Nominative Case	Objective Case	Nominative Case	Objective Case
I	me	He	him
She	her	It	it
They	them	You	you
We	us		

**RULE 1**

किसी sentence के **verb** के पहले Pronoun का प्रयोग हो तो वह **Nominative case** में होता है। अगर Pronoun का प्रयोग **verb** के बाद हो तो **Objective Case** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: (1) I teach him. (Active Voice)      (2) He is taught by me (Passive)

Sub.      Verb      Obj.
के पहले      के बाद

**RULE 2**

जब विभिन्न Pronouns एक ही sentence में प्रयुक्त हों और किसी बुरी बात का आभास न हो, तो उन्हें 231 के क्रम में लगाते हैं, पहले 2<sup>nd</sup> Person, फिर 3<sup>rd</sup> Person और अंत में 1<sup>st</sup> Person.

1. **You, he** and **I** shall study for the exam. (231)
2. **He** and **I** have finished our work. (31)
3. **You** and **he** have done a great job. (23)

**RULE 3**

एक ही वाक्य में विभिन्न **Pronouns** का प्रयोग करते समय यदि उसमें अपना **दोष** स्वीकार किया गया हो अथवा कोई बुरी बात कही गई हो, तो Pronouns को **123** के क्रम में रखते हैं,

- जैसे: 1. **I, you and he** have made a blunder. (123)  
2. **You and he** have done this mischief. (23)

#### **RULE 4**

जब Pronoun बहुवचन में हो तो Pronoun **123** के क्रम में होना चाहिए यानि पहले 1<sup>st</sup> **Person**, फिर 2<sup>nd</sup> **Person** और फिर 3<sup>rd</sup> **Person**.

1. **We, You and they** should now get down to work.

#### **RULE 5**

**Let, like, between, but, except** एवं **prepositions** के बाद **Objective Case** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

- जैसे: 1. Let me do this work.  
2. There is no problem between she and I. (×)  
There is no problem between **her** and **me**. (✓)  
3. Everybody but **him** was present for the meeting. (✓)  
4. He laughed at I. (×)  
He laughed at me. (✓)  
5. Everyone attended the party except he. (×)  
Everyone attended the party except **him**. (✓)

#### **RULE 6**

यदि दो **nominatives** के बीच तुलना हो तो **As/than** के बाद **Nominative Case** के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: 1. He is **as fast as** me. (×)  
Objective Case  
2. He is **as fast as** I. (✓)  
Nominative Case  
3. I run faster **than** him. (×)  
Objective Case  
4. I run faster **than** he. (✓)  
Nominative Case

➤ ऊपर दिये गए उदाहरण में दो **subjects** के बीच तुलना किया गया है। अतः दोनों Pronoun '**nominative case**' में होना चाहिए।

**नोट:** लेकिन दो **objects** के बीच तुलना होने पर, '**as/than**' के बाद **Objective Case** के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: I know you as much as **him**. (✓)  
अर्थ: I know you as much as I know him.

#### **RULE 7**

अगर '**It**' का प्रयोग **subject** के रूप में हो और उसके बाद '**be**' के किसी '**form**' का प्रयोग हो तो उसके बाद pronoun के **nominative case** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: It is I who am to blame.  
Nominative case

**Pronoun**

**USE OF 'IT'**

**RULE 1**

It का प्रयोग जानवर, निर्जीव पदार्थ, देश व शिशु के लिए होता है। 'It' का बहुवचन 'they' होता है।

जैसे: **America** is a developed country. **It** is a super power.

Sri Lanka and Pakistan are developing countries. **They** are facing internal terrorism.

**RULE 2**

It का प्रयोग **time, weather ( मौसम ), temperature ( तापमान ) तथा distance ( दूरी )** या अन्य प्राकृतिक घटना को express ( अभिव्यक्त ) करने के लिए **Introductory subject** के रूप में होता है। इस case में 'it' को 'empty it' कहा जाता है क्योंकि इसका कोई अर्थ नहीं होता है।

जैसे: It is raining.

It is morning.

It is winter.

It is 6 o'clock.

It is March.

It is Monday.

**RULE 3**

It का प्रयोग **Infinitive, Gerund तथा Clause** के बदले में भी होता है।

जैसे: **It** is easy to solve it.

**It** is said that virtue is its own reward.

**Rule 4:** It का प्रयोग **sentence** के **subject** के रूप में **noun** या **pronoun** पर जोर डालने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: **It** was he who made this mistake.  
Pron.

**RULE 5**

It का प्रयोग **Phrase** या **clause** को **introduce** करने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: **That the record will break today** is probable.

Clause

= It is probable that the record will break today.

**Differences Between 'This' and 'It'**

➤ **This** का प्रयोग किसी व्यक्ति/वस्तु के नाम/पहचान/परिचय/समीपता आदि का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, न कि It का।

जैसे: **This** is a book.

**This** is a pen.

➤ **It** का प्रयोग समय, दूरी, मौसम, आदि का बोध कराने के लिए होता है न कि This का।

जैसे: **It** is 10 a.m.

**It** is winter.

**It** is night

नोट: (1) **This** के बाद **noun** का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: **This** book is mine.  
Noun

- **It** के बाद '**noun**' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता क्योंकि noun के स्थान पर pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।  
It book is mine (×)  
**It** is my book (✓)
- **This** का प्रयोग किसी **singular noun** के तरह इंगित करने के लिए किया जाता है जब वह **noun** समीप हो।  
जैसे: **This boy** is very intelligent.
- **It** का प्रयोग किसी **singular** निर्जीव वस्तु/शिशु के लिए **pronoun** के रूप में होता है।  
जैसे: **It** is a splendid monument.
- (1) **This** के बाद **noun** का प्रयोग हो सकता है।  
जैसे: **This** book is mine.

### USE OF THE PRONOUNS OF POSSESSIVE CASE

Nominative Case	Possessive Adjective	Possessive Pronoun
I	my	mine
We	our	ours
You	your	yours
He	his	his
She	her	hers
It	its	×
They	their	theirs

#### RULE 1

'Possessive pronouns' का प्रयोग **noun** के पहले नहीं होता है।

जैसे: Ours school was closed for four days. (×)  
Noun

Our school was closed for four days. (✓)

नोट: (i) : Possessive adjectives का प्रयोग **Noun** के पहले होता है।

जैसे: **This** is my book.

(ii) अगर **Noun** का उल्लेख हो चुका हो या वह पहले से ज्ञात हो तो उसका उल्लेख फिर से नहीं करना चाहिए तथा **Possessive Pronoun** का प्रयोग किया जाना चाहिए।

जैसे: This book is mine.

Possessive pronouns	Meaning (Possessive Adjective + Noun)
Mine	My + noun
Ours	Our + noun
Yours	Your + noun
His	His + noun
Hers	Her + noun
Theirs	Their + noun



**Pronoun**

(iii) **His** का प्रयोग **Possessive Adjective** एवं **Possessive Pronoun** दोनों ही रूप में होता है।

(iv) **Its** का प्रयोग **Possessive Adjective** के रूप में होता है। इसका प्रयोग **Possessive Pronoun** के रूप में नहीं होता है।

**RULE 2**

**Possessive Pronouns** का प्रयोग किसी **sentence** के **verb** के **subject** के रूप में होता है।

जैसे: **Yours** is a new car.  
                            S.V.

अर्थ: **Your car** is a new car.

**Hers** is a beautiful house.  
                            S.V.

अर्थ: **Her house** is a beautiful house.

**RULE 3**

**Possessive Pronouns** का प्रयोग किसी **sentence** के **verb** के **object** के रूप में होता है।

जैसे: He has lost **my books** as well as yours.  
                            Verb

अर्थ: He has lost my books as well as your books.

Save **your time** and mine too.  
  Obj.

अर्थ: Save your time and my time too.

**RULE 4**

**Possessive Pronouns** का प्रयोग किसी **sentence** में **preposition** के **object** के रूप में होता है।

जैसे: (1) I prefer your help to her. (×)  
  Prep. Obj.

I prefer your help to hers. (✓)  
  Prep. Obj.

(2) Your house is better than my. (×)  
  Prep. Obj.

Your house is better than mine. (✓)  
  Prep. Obj.

**RULE 5**

‘Separation, leave, excuse, mention, report, pardon, sight, favour’ के साथ **Possessive case** का प्रयोग गलत है।

उदाहरण देखे-

1. Your separation is very painful to me. (‘separation from you’ का प्रयोग करें।)
2. At his sight the robbers fled. (‘At the sight of him’ का प्रयोग करें।)

3. I need your favour, please. ('favour of/from you' का प्रयोग करें।)
4. She did make **mention of you**. (✓)

### **RULE 6**

**Possessive Pronoun** में 's' के पहले 'apostrophe' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **your's, her's, it's** इत्यादि का प्रयोग करना गलत होता है।

- जैसे:
1. The bear had a ring around it's nose. (×)
  2. The bear had a ring around its nose. (✓)

### **RULE 7**

**Gerund** के पहले '**possessive adjective**' का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे:
1. I was confident of **my** winning the match.
  2. She was not confident of **her** doing well in the examination.

## **USE OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**

जब वाक्य में 'स्वयं', 'खुद ही', 'खुद को', 'अपने आप' जैसे शब्दों का प्रयोग हो तो Reflexive Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: The poor man poisoned himself and his children.

### **RULE 1**

'**Acquit** (प्रशंसाजनक व्यवहार करना), **avail** (लाभ उठाना), **reconcile** (बेमन से ही पर स्वीकार कर लेना), **amuse** (मनोरंजन करना), **resign** (हथियार डाल देना/बेमन से ही पर स्वीकार कर लेना), **avenge** (बदला लेना), **exert** (काफी मेहनत करना), **apply** (ध्यान लगाना), **adapt** (ढालना), **adjust**, **pride**, **absent** एवं **enjoy** के बाद **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

- जैसे:
1. The officers **acquitted themselves** well during the crisis.
  2. She has **reconciled herself** to the demands of her in-laws.
  3. The students **exert themselves** a lot at the time of examination.
  4. You will have to **apply yourself** to this task whole-heartedly.
  5. I **pride myself** on being able to work smoothly under pressure too.
  6. You should **avail yourself** of this opportunity.

नोट: नीचे दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें-

1. They enjoyed the party. (reflexive pronoun की जरूरत नहीं है)
2. They enjoyed during vacation. ('themselves' का प्रयोग **enjoyed** के बाद करें)

➤ अगर **enjoy** के बाद **object** का उल्लेख हो तो **reflexive pronoun** न लगायें परन्तु अगर **object** का उल्लेख नहीं हो तो **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

नोट: नीचे दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें-

- He was absent. (✓)  
He absented himself. (✓)

➤ अगर **absent** का प्रयोग **verb** के रूप में हो तभी **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

### **RULE 2**

**Keep, stop, turn, qualify, bathe, move, rest** एवं **hide** के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग नहीं होता।

- जैसे: You should keep yourself away from bad boys. ('yourself' हटा दें).  
He hid himself in the room. ('himself' हटा दें).

**Pronoun**

**RULE 3**

**Subject** अथवा **object** के रूप में एक **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग तब तक नहीं हो सकता जब तक उसके पहले सम्बन्धित **noun/pronoun** का उल्लेख ना हो।

- जैसे:
1. Myself Ramesh from Delhi. ('myself' के स्थान पर '**I am**' का प्रयोग करें)
  2. Yourself and he reached there in time. ('yourself' के स्थान पर '**you**' का प्रयोग करें)
  3. **I myself** did this work(✓)
  4. Rohit will do this work for myself ('myself' के स्थान पर '**me**' का प्रयोग करें)

**USE OF DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUN**

**RULE 1**

**Either** का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में होता है।

जैसे: Either of these three friends is naughty. (×)

**Either of** these **two** pens is red. (✓)

नोट: लेकिन 'दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में '**any**' या '**one**' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: One of these three friends is naughty.(✓)

**RULE 2**

**'Neither'** का प्रयोग 'दो से से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में होता है।

**Neither of** these **two** girls is active. (✓)

नोट: लेकिन 'दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में '**none**' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Neither of his four sons looked after him. (×)

**None of** his **four** sons looked after him. (✓)

**USE OF RECIPROCAL PRONOUN**

- '**Each other**' तथा '**one another**' को '**Reciprocal pronoun**' कहते हैं। ये पारस्परिक संबंध को व्यक्त करते हैं।

**RULE 1**

**'Each other'** का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है, जबकि '**one another**' का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

- जैसे:
1. He was so afraid that his knees knocked one another ('one another' को '**each other**' में परिवर्तित करें)
  2. After the farewell, the students of class XII bade each other goodbye. (each other को **one another** में परिवर्तित करें)

**USE OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN**

- वे **Pronouns** जो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं को **point out** या **demonstrate** ( संकेतित/प्रदर्शित ) करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं, **Demonstrative Pronouns** कहलाते हैं। जैसे- **This, that, these, those, such, the same.**
- इनका प्रयोग जब **nouns** के पहले होता है तो ये **Demonstrative Adjectives** कहलाते हैं।

**RULE 1**

**'This'** का प्रयोग समीप की एक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है, जबकि '**These**' का प्रयोग समीप की एक से अधिक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है।

जैसे: **This** is a cat.  
S. N.

**These** are cats.  
P. N.

## RULE 2

'**That**' का प्रयोग दूर की एक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है, जबकि '**those**' का प्रयोग दूर की एक से अधिक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है।

जैसे: **That** is a book.  
S. N.

**Those** are books.  
P. N.

➤ **Singular noun** के **repetition** को रोकने के लिए '**that of**' तथा **plural noun** के **repetition** को रोकने के लिए '**those of**' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: The climate of Pune is better than **that** (अर्थ: climate) **of** Mumbai.

The streets of Delhi are wider than **those** (अर्थ: streets) **of** Mumbai.

## RULE 5

किसी **sentence** में **Singular Countable Noun** को दोबारा लिखने से बचने के लिए '**one**' का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि **Plural Countable Noun** को दुबारा लिखने से बचने के लिए '**ones**' का प्रयोग होता है न कि **one's** का।

जैसे: 1. **This** is the new version, but that is an old **one**.

2. **These** are new books, but those are old **ones**.

## USE OF RELATIVE PRONOUN

➤ वे **Pronouns** जो जोड़ने का कार्य करते हैं **Relative pronouns** कहलाते हैं जैसे- **who, which, that, what, why** इत्यादि।

I met Veena, **who** was returning from school.

## RULE 1

**Relative Pronouns (who/which/that)** का प्रयोग **subordinate clause** के **subject** के रूप में होता है।

जैसे: The boy who came here is a player.  
Subj.

**Pronoun**

**RULE 2**

**Relative Pronouns (whom/which/that)** का प्रयोग **subordinate clause** में **verb** के **object** के रूप में होता है।

जैसे: I have a son whom I love very much.  
Obj. Verb

**RULE 3**

अगर **'and'** से जुड़कर दो **antecedents** का प्रयोग हो, जिनमें से एक मनुष्य तथा दूसरा जानवर या वस्तु हो, तो इसके बाद **Relative Pronoun 'that'** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: The man and his dog **that** I saw yesterday have been kidnapped.

**RULE 4**

**Superlative degree** के बाद **'that'** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Mr. Mishra is the **most** laborious man **that** I have ever seen.

**RULE 5**

**All** का प्रयोग व्यक्ति के लिए हो, तो इसके बाद **'who/that'** का प्रयोग होता है, न कि whom/which का।

जैसे: All **who/that** are interested to do this work can start now.

**RULE 6**

**All** का प्रयोग वस्तु के लिए हो, तो इसके बाद **'that'** का प्रयोग होता है, who, whom, which का नहीं।

जैसे: All **that** glitters is not gold.

**नोट:** **All + Uncountable Noun** के बाद **that** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: All the money **that** I gave her has been spent.

**RULE 7**

**Everything, nothing, the only, any, all, everyone, none, no, nobody, much, little, the same, the few, the little** के बाद **that** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: My father has given me **everything that** I needed.

This is **the only** pen **that** I bought yesterday.

My wife has spent **the little** money **that** I gave her.

**RULE 8**

**Verb** के स्पष्ट रहने पर **'the same + Noun'** के बाद **'that'** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: This is the same man **that** deceived me.  
Verb (स्पष्ट)

## USE OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

➤ वे **Pronouns** जो प्रश्न पूछने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं, **Interrogative pronouns** कहलाते हैं।  
जैसे: **Who, whom, whose, which** इत्यादि **Interrogative pronouns** हैं।

### RULE 1

**A, B तथा C को ध्यान से देखें-**

(A) **Who** का प्रयोग **subject** का पता करने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: **Who** is playing ?

(B) **Whom** का प्रयोग **object** का पता करने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: **Whom** has he invited?

(C) **Whose** का प्रयोग **मालिक का पता करने के लिए** होता है।

जैसे: **Whose** book is this?

### RULE 2

**Preposition + whom** का प्रयोग होता है, लेकिन **Preposition + who** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

जैसे: (A) **By whom** was the Ramayana written?

नोट: लेकिन **Preposition** का प्रयोग वाक्य के अंत में करने/होने पर **who** का प्रयोग वाक्य के शुरुआत में होता है- यह प्रचलित है।

जैसे: **Who** was the Ramayana written **by**?

अन्तर देखें:

1. Who are you? (✓)  
                        V                sub.

2. I don't know who are you. (×)

I don't know who you are. (✓)  
  sub.                V

### RULE 3

जब दो या दो से अधिक में से एक का चुनाव करना हो तो '**which**' का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: 1. Who is your brother in the crowd? (×)

**Which** is your brother in the crowd?(✓)

2. Who of the servants do you want? (×)

**Which** of the servants do you want? (✓)

➤ '**Questions**' में '**wh**' family के बाद **tense** का **interrogative form** लगाये यानि **sub** के बाद **verb/helping verb**. (वाक्य 1 देखें) लेकिन अगर '**wh**' family दो वाक्यों को जोड़ रहा हो यानि **relative pronoun** हो तो **relative pronoun** के बाद **tense** का **assertive form** का प्रयोग करें। यानि

**Pronoun**

**subject के पहले helping verb/ verb.**

**RULE 4**

'Whose' का प्रयोग निर्जीव वस्तु के लिए नहीं होता है।

- जैसे:
1. Whose book is this? (✓)
  2. This is the flyover whose inauguration was done by the transport minister. (×)  
This is the flyover **the inauguration of which** was done by the transport minister? (✓)

**PRONOUN IN RELATION TO SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT**

➤ 'Pronoun' के संबंधित प्रश्न 'subject-verb agreement' अध्याय से भी पूछे जाते हैं।

**POSSESSIVE PRONOUN**

**RULE 1**

जब दो **subjects** को 'as well as', 'with', 'alongwith', 'together with', 'and not', 'In addition to', 'but', 'besides', 'except', 'rather than', 'accompanied by', 'like', 'unlike', 'no less than', 'nothing but' से जोड़ा जाये तो **Possessive Pronoun 1<sup>st</sup> subject** के अनुसार होगा।

- जैसे:
- (1) Rita **as well as her friends** has done her work.  
↑ ↑ \_\_\_\_\_ ↑ ↑
  - (2) My friend Reena **along with** her sister is doing her job at Delhi.  
↑ ↑ \_\_\_\_\_ ↑ ↑

**RULE 2**

जब दो **Subjects** को **either-or, neither-nor, not only-but also, none-but** से जोड़ा जाए तो **possessive pronoun nearest subject** के अनुसार होगा।

- जैसे: **Neither** the staff members **nor** the manager was taking his task seriously.  
↑ \_\_\_\_\_ ↑ \_\_\_\_\_ ↑

**RULE 3**

जब 'each, every, neither, either, anyone' का प्रयोग **subject** के रूप में हो तो **possessive case third person singular** के अनुसार होना चाहिए।

- जैसे: **Neither of** the two brothers has brought their luggage. (our के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें)  
**Each one of** us is doing our duty properly. ('Our' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें)

**RULE 4**

यदि **collective noun** जैसे- **Jury, army, fleet, crew**, का प्रयोग **sentence** के **subject** के रूप में हो

तथा इससे 'समूह' का बोध हो तो इसके लिए **singular pronoun** तथा **adjective** जैसे **it, its, itself** का प्रयोग जरूरत के अनुसार होता है।

जैसे: The jury has given their verdict. (×)

The jury **has** given **its** verdict. (✓)

### RULE 5

यदि **collective noun** का प्रयोग **sentence** के **subject** के रूप में हो तथा इससे **separate individuals** (अलग-अलग व्यक्तियों या सदस्यों) का बोध हो तो इसे **plural** माना जाता है तथा इसके लिए **plural pronoun** तथा **plural adjective – they, them, their, theirs, themselves** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: The team are divided in its opinion. (×)

The team are divided in their opinion. (✓)

### RULE 6

यदि दो या दो से अधिक **singular nouns 'and'** से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त हों तो इसके लिए **plural pronoun** तथा **adjective (they, them, their, theirs, themselves)** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Ram **and** Shyam do **their** work. (✓)

### RULE 7

यदि दो **singular nouns 'and'** से जुड़े हों तथा सिर्फ पहले **singular noun** के पूर्व **Article** या **Possessive Adjectives** का प्रयोग हुआ हो तो इससे एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध होता है तथा इसके लिए **singular pronoun** तथा **adjective – he, him, his, himself** का प्रयोग व्यक्ति के लिए तथा **it, its, itself** का प्रयोग वस्तु के लिए होता है, न कि they, them, their, theirs, themselves का।

जैसे: **The** secretary and treasurer is negligent of their duty. (×)

**The** secretary and treasurer is negligent of **his** duty. (✓)

### RULE 8

यदि दो **singular nouns 'and'** से जुड़े हों तथा प्रत्येक **singular noun** के पहले **article** या **possessive adjective** का प्रयोग हो तो इससे दो विभिन्न व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं का बोध होता है तथा इसके लिए **Plural pronouns** और **Adjective – They, them their, theirs, themselves** का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है।

जैसे: **The** secretary and **the** treasurer did not do his work. (×)

**The** secretary and **the** treasurer did not do **their** work. (✓)

### RULE 9

यदि दो या दो से अधिक **singular nouns 'and'** से जुड़े हों तथा प्रत्येक **singular noun** के पहले **each** या **every** का प्रयोग हुआ हो तो वाक्य में **singular pronoun, singular adjective** एवं **singular verb** का प्रयोग होता है न कि plural pronoun एवं plural adjective का।



Pronoun

जैसे: **Every** soldier and **every** sailor was in their place. (×)  
**Every** soldier and **every** sailor was in **his** place. (✓)

RULE 10

**Many a/an + Singular noun** का प्रयोग sentence के **subject** के रूप में हो तो इसके लिए **singular pronoun** व **adjective** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: **Many a** soldier has met his death in the battlefield. (✓)  
S. N. S.V. S.P.

DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS

RULE 1

**Each of / Either of / Neither of** के बाद **plural noun** या **plural pronoun** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Each of the boy has a note book. (×)

**Each of** the boys has a note book. (✓)  
P. N.

RULE 2

**Each of / either of / neither of** के बाद प्रयुक्त **plural noun** के पहले **'the'** का प्रयोग होता है।

➤ **Each, either, neither, any** के लिए **singular pronoun** एवं **singular verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Each of the boys has their own book. (×)

**Each of** the boys has his own book. (✓)  
P. N. S.V. S.P.

RULE 3

यदि **each** का प्रयोग **subject** के लिए हो तो **each** का प्रयोग **subject** के बाद अर्थात् **auxiliary verb** के पहले होता है।

जैसे: We have each advised him to give up smoking. (×)

We **each** have advised him to give up smoking. (✓)  
Sub. Aux. Verb

नोट: ऐसे वाक्यों में '**verb** **sub** के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होना चाहिए।

RULE 4

**Both** का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

जैसे: All of the two students are guilty. (×)

Both of the two students are guilty. (✓)

➤ **Both** का प्रयोग नाकारात्मक वाक्य में नहीं होता है।

Both of them are not going. (×)

Neither of them is going. (✓)

## USE OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

### RULE 1

यदि 'One' का प्रयोग **sentence** के **subject** के रूप में हो, तो इसके लिए **Nominative case – one** तथा **Objective pronoun - oneself** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: 1. **One** should do **one's** duty **oneself**.  
2. **One** should keep **one's** promise.

नोट: 'Pronoun' से संबंधित सवाल 'Question Tag' अध्याय से भी आते हैं। 'Question Tag' अध्याय देखें।

### SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) Unless two or more members object/ (b) to him joining the club, we shall have to/ (c) accept his application for membership./ (d) No error.
2. (a) I was surprised and pleased (b)/ when I was informed of me (c) winning the contest./ (d) No error.
3. (a) Our dog may look/ (b) fierce but/ (c) that wouldn't hurt a fly./ (d) No error.
4. (a) No one can/ (b) challenge destiny./ (c) isn't it?/ (d) No error.
5. (a) All the doubts are cleared/ (b) between/ (c) you and I./ (d) No error.
6. (a) The front page story was about a school girl/ (b) that had hurt herself/ (c) while saving a child in an accident./ (d) No error.
7. (a) The last thing that the fond mother/ (b) gave her only son/ (c) was his blessing./ (d) No error.
8. (a) It is not/ (b) I who is/ (c) to blame./ (d) No error.
9. (a) I shall avail of/ (b) this opportunity/ (c) to meet you there./ (d) No error.
10. (a) Put you in my position/ (b) and you will realise/ (c) the problems faced in my profession./ (d) No error.
11. (a) Each of them/ (b) has to understand/ (c) their responsibility/ (d) No error.
12. (a) We are proud to announce/ (b) that every one of us have earned/ (c) a good name./ (d) No error.
13. (a) Here is/ (b) the man whom I think/ (c) committed the crime./ (d) No error.
14. (a) He took/ (b) his younger sister/ (c) with himself./ (d) No error.
15. (a) The company is in debt/ (b) and has been unable/ (c) to pay their employees' salaries/ (d) for the past six months./ (e) No error.
16. (a) The company has appointed/ (b) consultants to help them/ (c) increase its revenue and/ (d) improve its financial position./ (e) No error.
17. (a) You cannot change/ (b) people, but you/ (c) can definitely/ (d) change own./ (e) No error.
18. (a) Governments and business houses must reduce/ (b) its own energy use/ (c) and promote conservation/ (d) to their citizens and employees./ (e) No error.
19. (a) Even those which/ (b) have no previous/ (c) work experience have/ (d) applied for this job./ (e) No error.
20. (a) He talked on the phone/ (b) for hours together/ (c) who really irritated/ (d) his

**Pronoun**

- parents a lot./ (e) No error.
21. (a) Instead of laying off/ (b) the workers, the company/ (c) decided to ask them/ (d) to avail voluntary retirement./ (e) No error.
  22. (a) The two sisters shouted/ (b) at one another/ (c) in public./ (d) No error.
  23. (a) We must supplement/ (b) our diet with vitamins and minerals/ (c) in order to keep/ (d) oneself fit.
  24. (a) Mrs. Pratap, being a good teacher/ (b) she is selected/ (c) for the National Award./ (d) No error
  25. (a) The poor man/ (b) poisoned him/ (c) and his own children./ (d) No error.
  26. (a) It was in 2006/ (b) that we first flew/ (c) to the United States./ (d) No error.
  27. (a) I was driving under the bridge/ (b) as a football/ (c) hit my window./ (d) No error.
  28. (a) Many a student/ (b) have passed/ (c) the I.I.T. examination./ (d) No error.
  29. (a) It was me who was/ (b) responsible for/ (c) making all the arrangements for the successful completion of his studies./ (d) No error.
  30. (a) I wonder/ (b) why are you tinkering with the wire./ (c) You might get a shock./ (d) No error.
  31. (a) John, I and Hari/ (b) have finished/ (c) our studies./ (d) No error.
  32. (a) He doesn't/ (b) know/ (c) to swim./ (d) No error.
  33. (a) All the dresses/ (b) looked good and so I/ (c) bought all of it./ (d) No error.
  34. (a) Those people who/ (b)do not work hard/ (c) they do not succeed in life./ (d) No error.
  35. (a) He bathed himself/ (b) in/ (c) a river./ (d) No error.
  36. (a) She could not/ (b) bear/ (c) his separation./ (d) No error.
  37. (a) If you want this job/ (b) you will need/ (c) his favour./ (d) No error.
  38. (a) Both of them will not/ (b) refute/ (c) the charges./ (d) No error.
  39. (a) She is the kind / (b) of woman whom every body knows/ (c) is benign and magnanimous./ (d) No error.
  40. (a) The master did not know/ (b) who of the servants/ (c) broke the expensive dinner set/ (d) No error.
  41. (a) The Congress Party stood/ (b) for implementation of the Nuclear Liability Bill/ (c) and was ready to stake their political existence/ (d) No error.
  42. (a) He is not one of those/ (b) who will help every Tom, Dick and Harry/ (c) whom he meets/ (d) No error.
  43. (a) It is not easy for anyone to command/ (b) respect from both one's friends and critics/ (c) as Mahatma Gandhi did/ (d) No error.
  44. (a) He, You and I/ (b) shall arrange everything/ (c) and shall not ask them for help/ (d) No error.
  45. (a) Was it me/ (B) who had to face/ (c) the music?/ (d) No error.
  46. (a) The audience/ (b) are requested/ (c) to be in its seats and stay away from the track/ (d) No error.
  47. (a) The number of vehicles/ (B) plying on the roads of Delhi/ (c) is more than on the roads of Bangalore/ (D) No error.
  48. (A) Being a destitute/ (b) I admitted him/ (c) to an ophanage/ (d) No error.

**Pronoun**

49. (a) One should keep/ (b) his promise/ (c) if one wants respect from both friends and enemies/(d) No error.
50. (a) Last summer I went to Shimla/ (b) and enjoyed very/ (c) much/ (d) No error.
51. (a) If I were him/ (b) I would teach/ (c) him a lesson/ (d) No error.
52. (a) Being a/ (b) rainy day I/ (c) could not go to school/ (d) No error.
53. (a) One of them/(b) forgot to take their passport/ (c) and found himself in a difficult situation/(d) No error.
54. (a) Mr. Sharma, our representative,/ (b) he will attend the meeting/ (c) on our behalf./ (d) No error.
55. (a) Each girl was/ (b) given a packet of sweets/ (c) and she was happy/ (d) No error.
56. (a) Myself and he/ (b) will manage/ (c) everything/ (d) No error.
57. (a) The Ganga is a river/ (b) whose origin/ (c) has always been a matter of speculation/ (d) No error.
58. (a) My friend/ (b) is laborious and intelligent, (c) isn't it?/ (d) No error.
59. (a) It is difficult to say/ (b) who is the better/ (c) of the two players/ (d) No error.
60. (a) It is the best/ (b) which the government can do/ (c) for the downtrodden/ (d) No error.
61. (a) Neither of the two friends/ (b) has got their money back/ (c) from the company/ (d) No error.
62. (a) This is the road/ (b) whose inauguration/ (c) was done by the President/ (d) No error.
63. (a) Many women/ (b) reconcile to the/ (c) demands of their in-laws./ (d) No error.
64. (a) May I know/ (b) to who/ (c) I am speaking?/ (d) No error.
65. (a) The person who/ (b) I met yesterday/ (c) was my classmate./ (d) No error.
66. (a) Owing to me being a new comer/ (b) I was unable/ (c) to get a good house./ (d) No error.
67. (a) A good friend of/ (b) me has been/ (c) in London for twenty years/ (d) No error.
68. (a) It was him/ (b) who came running/ (c) into the classroom./ (d) No error.
69. (a) I and Raju/ (b) left for Delhi/ (c) last summer./ (d) No error.
70. (a) I will certainly/ (b) avail of your offer/ (c) when the occasion arises./ (d) No error.
71. (a) The book/ (b) is well illustrated/ (c) and attractively bound/ (d) making altogether an attractive volume
72. (a) Besides me/ (b) many other/ (c) were present./ (d) No error.
73. (a) My house/ (b) is farther/ (c) than her's./ (d) No error.
74. (a) He is the person,/ (b) whom, everyone thought,/ (c) has stolen the ring./ (d) No error.

---

**Answers with explanation**

---

1. (b) 'his joining' का प्रयोग करें। 'Joining' के पहले possessive adjective 'his' का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (b) Winning के पहले possessive adjective 'my' का प्रयोग करें।

**Pronoun**

3. (c) 'Dog' के लिए Pronoun 'it' का प्रयोग करें।
4. (c) 'Isn't it?' के स्थान पर 'Can they' का प्रयोग करें।
5. (c) 'Between ..... and' के साथ pronoun के objective form का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (b) 'that' के स्थान पर 'who' का प्रयोग करें। 'School girl' का प्रयोग subject के रूप में हो रहा है। इसके साथ relative pronoun 'who' का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (c) 'Mother' के लिए possessive pronoun 'her' का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (b) 'is' के स्थान पर 'am' का प्रयोग करें। Relative pronoun के बाद आने वाला verb relative pronoun के antecedent से match करना चाहिए। 'I' (जो relative pronoun 'who' का antecedent है) के अनुसार verb 'am' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'is' का।
9. (a) 'Avail' के साथ एक 'reflexive pronoun' का प्रयोग करना जरूरी होता है। यहाँ 'I' के कारण 'myself' का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (a) 'You' के स्थान पर 'yourself' का प्रयोग करें।
11. (c) 'their' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 61 की व्याख्या देखें)
12. (b) 'everyone' के साथ singular verb 'has' का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (b) 'the man' subject है। अतः इसके लिए relative pronoun 'who' का प्रयोग होगा। ध्यान रहे ऐसे वाक्यों में ये अवश्य देखें कि क्रिया किसके द्वारा की जा रही है। यहाँ 'I think' से Confusion पैदा होती है और हम 'whom' का प्रयोग करने की गलती कर बैठते हैं।
14. (c) 'himself' के स्थान पर 'him' का प्रयोग करें।
15. (c) 'Company' singular noun है। इसके लिए singular possessive pronoun 'its' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'their' का।
16. (b) 'them' के स्थान पर 'it' का प्रयोग करें। Company singular noun है। इसके लिए singular pronoun 'it' का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (d) 'Own' के स्थान पर 'yourself' का प्रयोग करें।
18. (b) 'its' के स्थान पर 'their' का प्रयोग करें। 'Governments and business houses' मिल कर plural noun होते हैं। अतः plural pronoun 'their' का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (a) Which के स्थान पर 'who' का प्रयोग करें।
20. (c) 'यहाँ बात करने की क्रिया' के लिए relative pronoun 'who' का प्रयोग हो रहा है 'who' के स्थान पर 'which' का प्रयोग करें।
21. (d) Avail के साथ एक reflexive pronoun और preposition 'of' का प्रयोग करना जरूरी होता है। 'Avail' के बाद 'themselves of' का प्रयोग करें।
22. (b) 'One another' के स्थान पर 'each other' का प्रयोग करें।
23. (d) 'Oneself' के स्थान पर 'ourselves' का प्रयोग करें। Reflexive pronoun 'sub' के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। 'we' के अनुसार 'ourselves' प्रयुक्त होगा। लेकिन Keep के साथ reflexive pronoun का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। (देखें- Page 172 में Rule 2) अतः 'Ourselves' हटा दें।
24. (b) 'She' हटा दें। एक ही वाक्य में noun (Mrs. Pratap) एवं pronoun (she) का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
25. (b) 'Him' के स्थान पर 'himself' का प्रयोग करें।
26. (b) 'That' के स्थान पर 'when' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि '2006' समय है।
27. (b) 'as' के स्थान पर 'when' का प्रयोग करें।

28. (b) 'Many a' singular है। इसके साथ singular verb 'has' का प्रयोग होगा।
29. (a) 'It was I' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'I' sub है।
30. (b) 'You' के बाद 'are' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य प्रश्नात्मक नहीं है।
31. (a) 231 के नियम के अनुसार 1<sup>st</sup> person सभी के बाद आना चाहिए। अतः John, Hari and I सही क्रम होगा।
32. (c) 'know' और 'wonder' के बाद 'wh' family का प्रयोग करना जरूरी होता है। 'to swim' के स्थान पर 'How to swim' का प्रयोग करें।
33. (c) 'All of it' के स्थान पर 'all of them' का प्रयोग करें।
34. (c) 'They' हटा दे। 'Those people' और 'they' का प्रयोग एक ही वाक्य में एक ही subject के लिए करना गलत होगा।
35. (a) 'Bathe' के बाद reflexive pronoun का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। 'Himself' हटा दे।
36. (c) 'His separation' का प्रयोग गलत है। 'Separation from him' का प्रयोग करें।
37. (c) 'his favour' के स्थान पर favour from/of him' का प्रयोग करें।
38. (a) 'Both' के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग न करें। 'Both of them will not' के स्थान पर 'Neither of them will' का प्रयोग करें।
39. (b) 'Whom' के स्थान पर 'who' का प्रयोग करें।
40. (b) 'who' के स्थान पर 'which' का प्रयोग करें। 'of' के पहले सिर्फ 'which' का प्रयोग हो सकता है 'who' और 'whom' का नहीं।
41. (c) 'their' के स्थान पर 'its' का प्रयोग करें। Congress Party (Singular noun) के लिए singular possessive pronoun 'its' का प्रयोग होगा।
42. (c) 'he meets' के स्थान पर 'they meet' का प्रयोग होगा।
43. (b) Critics के पहले one's का प्रयोग करें।
44. (a) नियम 231 के अनुसार 'you, he and I' का प्रयोग करना सही होगा।
45. (a) 'Was it I' का प्रयोग करें।
46. (c) 'its' के स्थान पर 'their' का प्रयोग करें। जब Collective noun का प्रयोग प्रत्येक व्यक्ति के संदर्भ में हो तो Plural Pronoun एवं Plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।
47. (c) 'than' के बाद 'that of' का प्रयोग करें। 'the number of vehicles' (Delhi में) की तुलना 'number of vehicles' (Bangalore में) से होनी चाहिए। लेकिन 'number of vehicles' repeat करने के बदले 'that of' का प्रयोग होगा।
48. (a) 'Being' के पहले 'he' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'destitute' का sub 'he' न लगाया जाए तो 'I' destitute के 'sub' का भी कार्य करने लगता है जिससे वाक्य का अर्थ गलत हो जाता है।
49. (b) 'his' के स्थान पर one's का प्रयोग करें। 'One' का possessive pronoun one's होता है।
50. (b) Enjoyed के बाद 'myself' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'enjoy' के बाद 'object' नहीं हो तो एक 'reflexive pronoun' का प्रयोग होगा।
51. (a) 'Him' के स्थान पर 'he' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'him' कोई object नहीं है जिसपर 'I' (sub) कोई क्रिया 'were' कर रहा हो।
52. (a) Being के पहले 'it' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 48 की व्याख्या देखें)

**Pronoun**

53. (b) 'their' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें। 'One' singular pronoun है। अतः 'One of them' के लिए singular possessive pronoun 'his' का प्रयोग होगा।
54. (b) 'He' हटा दे। एक ही वाक्य में जब noun 'Mr Sharma' का प्रयोग हो चुका हो तो उसके लिए pronoun 'he' का प्रयोग न करें।
55. (c) 'She was' के स्थान पर 'they were' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'and' के बाद वाक्य परिवर्तित हो जा रहा है और अब सभी लड़कियों की बात की जा रही है।
56. (a) 'Myself' के स्थान पर 'I' का प्रयोग करें। 'Myself' का प्रयोग subject के रूप में नहीं हो सकता। 231 नियम के अनुसार he and I का प्रयोग होगा।
57. (b) 'Whose origin' के स्थान पर 'the origin of which' का प्रयोग करें। 'Whose' का प्रयोग 'non-living' के लिए नहीं हो सकता।
58. (c) 'Isn't it?' के स्थान पर 'Isn't he?' का प्रयोग करें। 'My friend is .....' का Question tag 'isn't he?' होगा।
59. (b) 'Who' के स्थान पर 'which' का प्रयोग करें। 'of' के पहले 'which' का प्रयोग होगा। 'of' के पहले who अथवा whom का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता।
60. (b) best के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग होगा। Superlative Degree के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।
61. (b) 'Their' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें। Neither of/Either of/Each of इत्यादि के बाद आने वाला noun अथवा pronoun तो plural होगा लेकिन उसके बाद आने वाला verb/pronoun इत्यादि singular होगा।

Neither of the two friends has got his money back.  
Plural Noun      Singular Verb      Singular Pronoun

62. (b) 'Whose inauguration' के स्थान पर 'the inauguration of which' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 57 की व्याख्या देखें)
63. (b) Reconcile के बाद एक reflexive pronoun का होना जरूरी होता है। Reconcile के बाद themselves का प्रयोग करें।
64. (b) 'who' के स्थान पर 'whom' का प्रयोग होगा।
65. (a) 'who' के स्थान पर 'whom' का प्रयोग होगा।
66. (a) 'being' यानि 'V<sub>1</sub> + ing' के पहले possessive case 'my' का प्रयोग होगा।
67. (b) 'me' के स्थान पर 'mine' का प्रयोग करें।
68. (a) 'him' के स्थान पर 'he' का प्रयोग होगा।
69. (a) '231' के नियम के अनुसार 'Raju and I' का प्रयोग होगा।
70. (b) 'avail' के साथ एक 'reflexive pronoun' का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ 'myself' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि subject 'I' है।
71. (c) 'making' के बाद 'it' का प्रयोग होगा।
72. (b) 'many' के साथ plural pronoun 'others' का प्रयोग होगा।
73. (c) 'her's' को 'hers' में परिवर्तित करें।
74. (b) 'whom' को 'who' में परिवर्तित करें।

# 11

## ADJECTIVE

### CHAPTER

**Adjective ( विशेषण ):** An adjective is a **word used to qualify a Noun or a Pronoun.**

- **Adjective** किसी **Noun** या **Pronoun** की विशेषता बताता है।  
Ram is a **good** boy.  
He is **intelligent**.
- ऊपर दिए गये वाक्यों में '**good**' एवं '**intelligent**' 'Ram' एवं 'he' की विशेषता बता रहे हैं। अतः वे **Adjective** हैं। **Adjective** का प्रयोग **noun** के पहले या **verb** के बाद होता है।

### THE ADJECTIVE: KINDS

**Adjective** आठ प्रकार के है:

1. **Adjective of Quality** ( गुणवाचक )
  2. **Proper Adjective** ( व्यक्तिवाचक )
  3. **Adjective of Quantity** ( परिमाणवाचक )
  4. **Adjective of Number** ( संख्यावाचक )
  5. **Demonstrative Adjective** ( संकेतवाचक )
  6. **Distributive Adjective** ( विभागसूचक )
  7. **Interrogative Adjective** ( प्रश्नवाचक )
  8. **Possessive Adjective** ( संबंधवाचक )
1. **Adjective of Quality** ( गुणवाचक ): वह **Adjective** जो **Noun** का गुण, या दोष या रंग-रूप प्रकट करता है, उसे **Adjective of Quality** ( गुणवाचक विशेषण ) कहते हैं। जैसे: an **honest** man. यहाँ '**honest**' गुणवाचक विशेषण है।
- **Adjective of Quality** ( गुणवाचक विशेषण ) : निम्नलिखित दो प्रकार से वाक्य में प्रयुक्त हो सकते हैं:
- (i) **Attributive use:** जब किसी **Adjective** का प्रयोग **Noun** के पहले होता है, तो **Adjective** के ऐसे प्रयोग को **Attributive use** कहते हैं।
- जैसे: Solomon was a **wise** king.  
Noun
- ऊपर दिए गए वाक्य में **king** के पहले **wise** का प्रयोग हुआ है, जो **Attributive** है।
- (ii) **Predicative use:** जब किसी **Adjective** का प्रयोग **Verb** के बाद होता है, तो **Adjective** के ऐसे प्रयोग को **Predicative use** कहते हैं।
- जैसे: The weather is **pleasant**  
Verb



## Adjective

- ऊपर दिए गए वाक्य में **pleasant** का प्रयोग **Predicative part** में हुआ है।
2. **Proper Adjective** ( व्यक्तिवाचक ): **Proper Noun** से बने वाले **Adjective** को **Proper Adjective** ( व्यक्तिवाचक विशेषण ) कहते हैं; जैसे: **Buddhist** Monastery, **British** rule.  
यहाँ '**Buddhist**' एवं '**British**' **Proper adjective** है।
3. **Adjective of Quantity** ( परिमाणवाचक ): जिस **Adjective** से वस्तु की मात्रा ज्ञात हो, उसे **Adjective of Quantity** ( परिमाणवाचक विशेषण ) कहते हैं; जैसे: **Some** milk; **enough** oil; **sufficient** sugar; **no** manners. यहाँ '**some**', '**enough**', '**sufficient**' एवं '**no**' **adjective of quantity** है।
4. **Adjective of Number** ( संख्यावाचक ): जिस शब्द से वस्तु की संख्या ज्ञात हो, उसे **Adjective of Number** ( संख्यावाचक विशेषण ) कहते हैं।  
ये दो प्रकार के होते हैं: (i) **Definite** (ii) **Indefinite**
- जब वे निश्चित संख्या/व्यक्ति को संबोधित करें तो वे **definite adjective of number** कहलाते हैं।  
जैसे: **Five** boys, **fifth** class.  
(i) **Indefinite**: जब वे निश्चित संख्या व्यक्त न करें तो वे **Indefinite adjective of number** कहलाते हैं।  
जैसे: **Few** girls, **several** boys.
- (a) **Cardinal Adjectives** ( निश्चित संख्यावाचक विशेषण ): निश्चित संख्या जैसे one, two three, four का बोध कराने वाले **Adjectives** को **Cardinal Adjective** कहते हैं।  
जैसे: He has **four** pens.  
She has **two** books.
- (b) **Ordinal Adjectives** ( निश्चित क्रमवाचक विशेषण ): निश्चित क्रम (**order**) का बोध कराने वाले **Adjectives** को **Ordinal Adjectives** कहते हैं।  
जैसे: **First, second, third, fourth...** etc.  
The **first** chapter of this book is on verb.  
➤ Article '**the**' का प्रयोग **ordinal** के पहले होता है, **cardinal** के पहले नहीं।  
जैसे: Lesson **one** is on verb.  
The **first** lesson is on verb.
5. **Demonstrative Adjective** ( संकेतवाचक ): जो **Adjective** अपने तुरंत बाद प्रयुक्त **Noun** की ओर संकेत करें, उसे **Demonstrative Adjective** ( संकेतवाचक विशेषण ) कहते हैं।  
जैसे: **This** boy, **that** group, **these** people, **those** countries.
- नोट: यदि **this, that, these, those** के तुरंत बाद **Noun** है, तो ये शब्द **Demonstrative Adjectives** होंगे और यदि इनके तुरंत बाद **Verb** है तो ये शब्द **Demonstrative Pronouns** होंगे;

जैसे: **Demonstrative Adjective**

**This** girl is good.

**That** pen is new.

**These** shirts are white.

**Demonstrative Pronoun**

**This** is a good girl.

**That** is a new pen.

**These** are white shirts.

6. **Distributive Adjective** ( विभागसूचक ): जो **Adjective** किसी वर्ग की प्रत्येक वस्तु या व्यक्ति को सम्बोधित करे, उसे **Distributive Adjective** ( विभागसूचक विशेषण ) कहते हैं।

जैसे: **Each** candidate is honest.

**Every** boy is present today.

नोट: **Each, every, either, neither** के तुरन्त बाद यदि **Noun** है, तो ये शब्द **Distributive Adjectives** होंगे; और यदि **each, every, either, neither** के तुरन्त बाद कोई अन्य शब्द है, तो ये शब्द **Distributive Pronouns** होंगे:

जैसे, **Distributive Adjective**

**Each** boy took the test.

**Distributive Pronoun**

**Each** of the boys took the test.

7. **Interrogative Adjective** ( प्रश्नवाचक ): जो **Adjective** प्रश्न पूछने का कार्य करे, उसे **Interrogative Adjective** ( प्रश्नवाचक विशेषण ) कहते हैं,

जैसे: **Which** room is hers?

**Whose** book is this?

नोट: **What, which, whose** के तुरन्त बाद यदि **Noun** है, तो ये शब्द **Interrogative Adjectives** होंगे और यदि उनके तुरन्त बाद **Verb** है, तो ये शब्द **Interrogative Pronouns** होंगे;

जैसे: **Interrogative Adjective**

**What** colour is your bag?

**Interrogative Pronoun**

**What** did you do?

8. **Possessive Adjectives** ( संबंधवाचक विशेषण ) : जो **Adjectives** किसी व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु से संबंध बताते हैं, उसे **Possessive Adjectives** ( संबंधवाचक विशेषण ) कहते हैं,

जैसे: **My** book, **our** class.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

➤ **Adjective** का प्रयोग तीन **degrees** में किया जाता है- **Positive, Comparative** एवं **Superlative degree**.

➤ जब एक ( व्यक्ति, वस्तु, समूह इत्यादि ) की विशेषता का वर्णन करना हो तो **Positive degree** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He is a **good** boy.

➤ जब एक की तुलना दूसरे से की जाए तो **Comparative degree** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He is **better** than you.

➤ जब सभी में से एक का चुनाव किया जाए तो **superlative degree** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: He is the **best** student of my class.

**Adjective**

**RULE 1**

सामान्यतः किसी **adjective** का **comparative degree** बनाने के लिए **positive degree** में 'er' लगाया जाता है और **superlative degree** बनाने के लिए **positive degree** में 'est' लगाया जाता है।

<b>I. Positive</b>	<b>Comparative</b>	<b>Superlative</b>
Bold	Bolder	Boldest
Deep	Deeper	Deepest
High	Higher	Highest
Strong	Stronger	Strongest
Thick	Thicker	Thickest
Weak	Weaker	Weakest

**RULE 2**

यदि **positive degree** के अंत में 'e' हो तो **comparative** में केवल 'r' और **superlative** में 'st' लगाते हैं।

<b>II. Positive</b>	<b>Comparative</b>	<b>Superlative</b>
Able	Abler	Ablest
Brave	Braver	Bravest
Fine	Finer	Finest
Noble	Nobler	Noblest
True	Truer	Truest
Wise	Wiser	Wisest

**RULE 3**

जब **positive degree consonant** में खत्म हो और उसके पहले कोई **short vowel** आये तो **consonant** को **double** करने के बाद क्रमशः 'er' एवं 'est' लगाकर **comparative** एवं **superlative degree** बनाया जाता है।

<b>III. Positive</b>	<b>Comparative</b>	<b>Superlative</b>
Big	Bigger	Biggest
Fit	Fitter	Fittest
Hot	Hotter	Hottest
Sad	Sadder	Saddest
Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
Wet	Wetter	Wettest

**RULE 4**

जब **positive degree** का अंत 'y' में हो और उसके पहले एक **consonant** हो तो 'y' को 'i' में परिवर्तित करें और **Comparative** एवं **superlative** बनाने के लिए क्रमशः 'er' एवं 'est' लगायें।

<b>IV. Positive</b>	<b>Comparative</b>	<b>Superlative</b>
Dry	Drier	Driest
Happy	Happier	Happiest
Heavy	Heavier	Heaviest

Pretty	Prettier	Prettiest
Merry	Merrier	Merriest

नोट: अगर 'y' के पहले vowel हो तो सिर्फ 'er' एवं 'est' लगायें।

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Grey	Greyer	Greyest

### RULE 5

दो शब्द खण्ड (syllables) के कई adjectives एवं दो से अधिक शब्द खण्ड के सभी adjectives के comparative एवं superlative क्रमशः 'more' एवं 'most' लगा कर बनाये जाते हैं।

V. Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
Courageous	more courageous	most courageous
Intelligent	more intelligent	most intelligent
Pleasant	more pleasant	most pleasant

नोट: कुछ adjectives किसी भी नियम का पालन नहीं करते। वे पूरी तरह से परिवर्तित हो जाते हैं।

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Good/well	better	best
Bad/ill	worse	worst
Little	less/lesser	least
Fore	former	foremost/first
Late	later/latter	last/latest
Far	farther	farthest
Near	nearer	nearest/next
Old	older/elder	oldest/eldest
Much/many	more	most

### CORRECT USE OF SOME ADJECTIVES

#### 1. Use of 'some' and 'any'

➤ **Some/ any** का अर्थ कोई, कुछ और थोड़ा होता है, पर दोनों के प्रयोग में फर्क है।

(a) **Some** का प्रयोग **Affirmative Sentence** में **Uncountable Noun (U.N.)** के पहले मात्रा (**quantity**) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, तथा **Plural Countable Noun (P.C.N.)** के पहले संख्या (**number**) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: I have **some** water .  
U.N.

I have **some** friends .  
P.C.N.

➤ **Some** का प्रयोग सामान्यतः **+ve** वाक्यों में होता है।

➤ **Any** का प्रयोग सामान्यतः **-ve** वाक्यों और **Questions** में होता है।

जैसे: 1. I have **some** problems.  
2. I do not have **any** problem.

**Adjective**

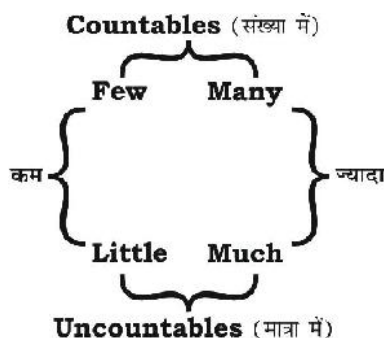
3. Do you have **any** problem?

➤ जब हम जवाब की उम्मीद 'हाँ' में करते हैं तो भी **Questions** में 'some' का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं।

जैसे: Do you have **some** food?

नोट: 'no any' का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं हो सकता।

**2. USE OF FEW, LITTLE, MUCH AND MANY.**



- Few**
  - a few (संख्या में कम है लेकिन है)
  - few (संख्या में इतना कम की ना के बराबर है)
  - the few (संख्या में कम लेकिन निर्धारित व जिसके तरफ हम इंगित कर सकते हैं।)
- Little**
  - a little (मात्रा में कम है लेकिन है)
  - little (मात्रा में इतना कम की ना के बराबर है)
  - the little (मात्रा में कम लेकिन निर्धारित व जिसके तरफ हम इंगित कर सकते हैं।)

**FILL IN THE BLANKS USING FEW/LITTLE, A FEW/A LITTLE OR THE FEW/ THE LITTLE.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Knowledge is a dangerous thing.
2. The doctor advised him to rest for \_\_\_\_\_ days.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ water I kept for you has been finished by him.
4. The show was cancelled as \_\_\_\_\_ people turned up to see it.
5. I cannot prepare tea for you. There is \_\_\_\_\_ milk in the refrigerator.

**Answer:-**

1. A little (यहाँ वाक्य का अर्थ ये है कि अगर जानकारी अधूरी हो तो खतरा बढ़ जाता है यानि Knowledge है लेकिन थोड़ा है)
2. a few. (days countable noun है अतः few का इस्तेमाल होगा न कि little का। Doctor ने कुछ एक दिन आराम करने की सलाह दी है अतः a few का प्रयोग होगा)
3. The little. ('water' uncountable है लेकिन जो थोड़ा सा पानी मैंने आप के लिए रखा था वह definite है अतः 'the little' का प्रयोग होगा)
4. Few (जब न के बराबर लोग आयेंगे तभी show cancel होगा अतः few का प्रयोग होगा)
5. Little. (जब milk न के बराबर हो तभी चाय नहीं बन सकती)

- 'Quantity' एवं 'Number' शब्द के साथ 'Little' एवं 'Few' शब्द का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता है। इनके साथ 'small' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Little quantity of food was wasted. (×)  
Small quantity of food was wasted. (✓)

### ADJECTIVE ds dN lgh iz;ksx

#### RULE 1

'as ..... as' and 'so ..... as' के बीच **adjective/adverb** के **positive degree** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: He is as good as his brother  
Adj.

He ran as fast as he could.  
Adv.

#### RULE 2

**Comparative degree** में '**adjective + er... than**' का प्रयोग होता है। **Than** के पहले हमेशा **comparative degree** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: He is better **than** his brother.  
Comparative degree के बाद '**than**' का प्रयोग हो भी सकता है और नहीं भी।  
Today I am feeling **better**.

#### RULE 3

**Superlative degree** के पहले article '**the**' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He is **the best** player of the team.

#### RULE 4

अगर सिर्फ दो व्यक्ति/वस्तु इत्यादि के बीच में से एक का चुनाव किया जाये हो तो **superlative degree** का प्रयोग नहीं **comparative degree** का प्रयोग करें जिसके पहले article '**the**' और जिसके बाद **preposition 'of'** लगाये।

जैसे: She is the best of the two sisters. (×)  
She is the **better** of the two sisters. (✓)

- अगर सभी में से एक का चुनाव किया जाये तो '**superlative degree**' का प्रयोग होगा जिसके पहले भी **article 'the'** का प्रयोग होगा और जिसके बाद **preposition 'of'** का।

जैसे: He is **the best of** all the players.

#### RULE 5

जब एक **Noun या Pronoun** की दो विशेषताओं के बीच तुलना हो तो **Comparative degree** नहीं **more+ positive degree** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: He is wiser than intelligent (×)  
He is **more wise** than intelligent. (✓)

**Adjective**

**RULE 6**

तुलना करते समय दूसरा पहले को या अन्य सभी को **exclude** करने के लिए **'any other'** का प्रयोग करता है।  
जैसे: Gold is more precious than any metal. (×)  
Gold is more precious than **any other** metal. (✓)  
नीचे दिये गये वाक्य देखें-  
Diamond is more precious than any metal. (✓)  
ऊपर दिये गये वाक्य बिलकुल सही है क्योंकि Diamond metal नहीं है।

**RULE 7**

**'ior'** में खत्म होने वाले **adjectives** के बाद **'than'** नहीं **'to'** का प्रयोग होता है।  
जैसे: **superior, inferior, senior, junior, prior, anterior, posterior.**  
He is senior **to** me. (replace 'than' by 'to')

**RULE 8**

**adjectives - interior, exterior, ulterior, major, minor, empty, excellent, circular, extreme, chief, entire, complete, perfect, final, last, unique, universal, round, square, triangular, eternal, everlasting ideal, absolute, impossible एवं supreme** का प्रयोग **comparative** या **superlative degree** में नहीं होता।  
जैसे: 1. This is more inferior to that. (×)  
2. This is inferior **to** that. (✓)  
3. Good deeds are more everlasting (more हटा दे)

**RULE 9**

कुछ **adjectives** का प्रयोग सिर्फ **positive** एवं **superlative degree** में होता **Comparative** में नहीं।

<b>Positive</b>	<b>Superlative</b>
top	topmost
northern	northernmost
southern	southernmost
eastern	easternmost
western	westernmost

**RULE 10**

**Adjective "preferable"** का प्रयोग सिर्फ **Comparative degree** में होता है।  
➤ इसके साथ **'to'** प्रयुक्त होता है न कि **'than'** और **'more'** का प्रयोग इसके साथ नहीं हो सकता। **Prefer(v)** के साथ भी **'to'** का प्रयोग होता है।  
जैसे: This is more preferable than that. (×)  
This is preferable **to** that. (✓)  
➤ 'prefer' के साथ **'to'** के स्थान पर **'rather than'** का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है।  
जैसे: I prefer tea to coffee.  
or  
I prefer tea rather than coffee. (नोट: 'prefer' के साथ **'to'** के स्थान पर **'rather than'** भी स्वीकार्य है।)

**RULE 11**

अगर एक ही **noun** या **pronoun** के लिए दो **adjectives** का प्रयोग हो और दोनों को एक **Conjunction** से जोड़ा जाए तो दोनों **adjectives** एक ही **degree** में होने चाहिए।

जैसे: Gandhiji was the noblest and wiser of all the leaders. (×)  
 Gandhiji was the **noblest** and **wisest** of all the leaders. (✓)

**RULE 12**

कुछ **adjectives** के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करने पर **adjective plural common noun** बन जाता है। इनके बाद **Plural verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: **rich, poor, needy, aged, blind, dead, meek, wicked, etc.**  
**The rich** (rich people) usually exploit **the poor** (poor people).

**RULE 13**

सामान्यतः **verbs** को **adverbs modify** करते हैं।

जैसे: He works honestly.  
           v                  adv.

➤ **Adjective** में 'ly' लगा कर **Adverb** बनाया जाता है। (कुछ अपवादों को छोड़ कर)

जैसे: **Adjective**                    **Adverb**  
 Polity                            Politely  
 Bad                                Badly  
 Sincere                         Sincerely

➤ लेकिन **Verbs of sensation (seem, look, appear, feel, taste, sound और smell)** के बाद **adverb** नहीं **adjective** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He feels badly. (×)  
 He feels **bad**. (✓)  
 The soup smells deliciously. (×)  
 The soup smells **delicious**. (✓)

➤ **Verbs of sensation** के अलावा **be, become, turn, get, grow, keep, make** एवं **prove** को भी **adverbs** नहीं बल्कि **adjective modify** करते हैं।

जैसे: When he heard the news, he became sad.  
   adj

**RULE 14**

कई **noun hyphenated** या **Compound adjectives** के भाग होते हैं। ये कभी भी **plural** में नहीं हो सकते।

जैसे: I delivered a two-hours lecture. (×)  
 I delivered a **two-hour** lecture. (✓)  
 He gave me two hundred-rupees notes. (×)  
 He gave me two **hundred-rupee** notes. (✓)

**RULE 15**

अगर कोई **Noun Adjective** का कार्य करें तो वह **Plural form** में नहीं हो सकता।



**Adjective**

जैसे: Lasers are indispensable tools for delicate eyes surgery. (eyes को 'eye' में परिवर्तित करें)

**RULE 16**

कुछ **adjectives** अर्थ में **confusing** होते हैं। अतः इनका प्रयोग सावधानीपूर्वक करना चाहिए।

**(1) Farther एवं Further**

**Farther** का अर्थ है 'दूरी में और अधिक'।

जैसे: She lives at the **farther** end of the lane.

**Further** का अर्थ है 'और'।

जैसे: I did not receive any **further** order.

**(2) Last एवं Latest**

**Last** का अर्थ है 'आखिरी'।

जैसे: The **last** ruler of Mughal Empire was Bahadur Shah Jafar.

**Latest** का अर्थ है 'नवीनतम'।

जैसे: What is the **latest** score?

**(3) Elder एवं Older**

**Elder/Eldert** का अर्थ है 'खुन के रिश्ते में बड़ा'।

जैसे: He is my **elder** brother

**Older/Oldert** का अर्थ है 'उम्र में बड़ा'।

जैसे: He is **older** than his friend.

**(4) Nearest एवं Next**

**Nearest** का अर्थ है 'सबसे नजदीक'।

जैसे: **Which** is the **nearest** hospital?

**Next** का अर्थ है 'अगला'।

जैसे: The bank is in the **next** building.

**(5) Later एवं Latter**

**Later** का अर्थ है 'बाद में'।

जैसे: I will call you **later**.

**Latter** का अर्थ है 'बाद वाला'।

जैसे: The **latter** part of the movie was boring.

**Latter** का **opposite** '**former**' होता है।

**RULE 17**

'**All**' एवं '**Both**' के बाद ही possessive case का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: My all friends have got selected. (×)

**All my** friends have got selected. (✓)

**RULE 18**

अगर एक वाक्य में **adjective** के **positive** एवं **Comparative degree** दोनों का प्रयोग हो तो 'as... as' एवं 'than' दोनों का प्रयोग होगा। 'As ..... as' एवं 'so ..... as' के साथ **positive degree** का प्रयोग होता है एवं 'than' के साथ '**Comparative degree**' का।

जैसे: He is **as** intelligent **as** if not more **than** his brother.

**RULE 19**

अगर हम '**times**' शब्द को प्रयोग कर ले तो फिर Comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं कर सकते हैं।

जैसे: My house is four times bigger than yours. (×)

My house is four times as big as yours. (✓)

**RULE 20**

अगर **adjective of size, colour, age** इत्यादि का प्रयोग एक साथ हो तो वे निम्नलिखित क्रम में होंगे।

**Size** → **shape** → **age** → **colour** → **emotion** → **nationality** → **material** → noun  
1 2 3 4 5 6 7

जैसे: 1. The police arrested a **twenty two year - old** **black** **American** Negro.  
age colour nationality

2. The thief flashed a **big** **sharp** knife and asked the cashier to fill the  
size shape

**black** **leather** bag with money.  
colour material

**RULE 21**

दो **Comparative** एवं दो **Superlative degree** का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है।

जैसे: 1. He is the most cleverest of all the officers. (×)

He is the cleverest of all the officers. (✓)

2. This is more better than that. (×)

This is better than that. (✓)

**RULE 22**

जब दो **Adjectives** के साथ अलग-अलग **prepositions** की आवश्यकता हो, तो उपयुक्त prepositions का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: He is senior and more experienced than you. (×)

He is senior **to** and more experienced **than** you. (✓)

---

**SPOTTING THE ERROR**

---

1. (a) Anurag is eclipsed by his wife, / (b) who is cleverer and / (c) amusing than he is. / (d) No error
2. (a) The two first to arrive / (b) were the lucky recipients / (c) of a surprise gift. / (d) No error

**Adjective**

3. (a) Of the billions of stars in the galaxy, (b) how much are / (c) suitable for life? / (d) No error
4. (a) A few word of / (b) gratitude are enough / (c) to express your / (d) feelings sincerely. / (e) No error.
5. (a) He feels his troubles / (b) as much or / (c) even more than they. / (d) No error
6. (a) I like reading / (b) more than / (c) to play games. / (d) No error
7. (a) There is not many traffic / (b) along the street / (c) where I live. / (d) No error
8. (a) The police arrived and discovered / (b) a large number of hoarded sugar/ (c) in his shop. / (d) No error
9. (a) As a dramatist / (b) Shaw is superior than / (c) any other twentieth century writer. / (d) No error
10. (a) Of the two great cities/ (b) the former is / (c) biggest. / (d) No error
11. (a) A non banking financial company is a / (b) financial institution similarly to a bank / (c) but it cannot issue cheque books to customers. / (d) No error
12. (a) Everyone agrees that / (b) the Ganga is the holiest / (c) of all other rivers of India. / (d) No error.
13. (a) Krishna ran to the / (b) nearing grocery store to / (c) buy biscuits as his parents were expecting guests. / (d) No error
14. (a) While giving a loan/ (b) you must check / (c) if the borrower has sufficiently collateral to repay it. / (d) No error
15. (a) Although his speech / (b) was not very clearly everyone understood / (c) the underlying meaning. / (d) No error
16. (a) He is the most / (b) intelligent and also / (c) the very talented student of the college. / (d) No error
17. (a) Having been found / (b) guilty of the theft / (c) Sunny was sentenced to five year's imprisonment. / (d) No error
18. (a) The Railways have made / (b) crossing the tracks / (c) a punished offence. / (d) No error
19. (a) Alms / (b) are given / (c) to the poors. / (d) No error
20. (a) Lasers are / (b) indispensable tools / (c) for the delicate eyes surgery. / (d) No error
21. (a) The number of applications has risen / (b) this year by / (c) as many as 50%. / (d) No error
22. (a) Two lakh of people / (b) attended the meeting / (c) held in parade ground. / (d) No error
23. (a) These sort of men / (b) attain success by hook or by crook / (c) so they do not deserve any applause. (d) No error
24. (a) Can you tell me how / (b) many eggs and / (c) milk he has brought / (d) No error
25. (a) Whole the chapter / (b) is full of printing errors which are the outcome / (c) of the proof reader's carelessness. (d) No error

26. (a) Her black long / (b) hair adds / (c) glamour to her looks. (d) No error
27. (a) I trembled when I saw / (b) a sharp long knife / (c) in his hand. / (d) No error
28. (a) I saw / (b) an anxious pale girl / (c) who was fidgetting near the ICU / (d) No error
29. (a) Mumbai is / (b) further from / (c) Delhi than / (d) Patna. (e) No error
30. (a) This book is / (b) undoubtedly preferable than / (c) that and its printing / (d) is also comparatively good. (e) No error
31. (a) You can trust / (b) this channel/ (c) for the last news of this hour. (d) No error
32. (a) Everybody knows / (b) that Radha is the most unique / (c) singer of this college / (d) No error
33. (a) The faster he completes / (b) the work given to / (c) him, the largest will be his profit. / (d) No error.
34. (a) He does not have / (b) some money to buy a new machine so he is / (c) anxious / (d) No error
35. (a) This young lady is / (b) more beautiful but not so cultured / (c) as her sister. (d) No error
36. (a) Now-a-days, / (b) the weather / (c) is getting cold and colder. / (d) No error
37. (a) This photograph / (b) was comparatively better / (c) than that which he had kept in his purse. / (d) No error
38. (a) Ram is as good, / (b) if not better than / (c) they./ (d) No error
39. (a) Gopal felt happily / (b) to learn that I / (c) had got a job in the Bank./ (d) No error
40. (a) He is comparatively / (b) weaker / (c) in maths / (d) no error.
41. (a) Many a / (b) boys are / (c) absent today / (d) no error.
42. (a) Honest are / (b) rewarded / (c) sooner or later / (d) no error.
43. (a) My all / (b) friends will come / (c) tomorrow to meet me / (d) no error.
44. (a) He is wiser / (b) enough to / (c) understand your trick / (d) no error.
45. (a) Ramayana is more / (b) sacred than / (c) all the mythologies of Hindus / (d) no error.
46. (a) He offered / (b) me a / (c) steamed cup of tea / (d) no error.
47. (a) I will buy / (b) the book when / (c) the revise edition will come / (d) no error.
48. (a) He ran so fastly / (b) that he reached / (c) the destination in just two minutes. / (d) No error.
49. (a) I am sure that / (b) all my monthly expenses / (c) would exceed the income if I do not economise. / (d) No error.
50. (a) I am more lonelier/ (b) here than/ (c) I was in the USA./ (d) No error.
51. (a) To me it appears that/ (b) Anthropology is the more interesting/ (c) of all the subjects./ (d) No error.
52. (a) The circulation of The Statesman/ (b) is greater than/ (c) that of any newspaper / (d) No error.

**Adjective**

53. (a) In the garden/ (b) were the more beautiful flowers/ (c) and silver bells./ (d) No error.  
54. (a) In his old age,/ (b) a person is likely to get/ (c) more weak day by day./ (d) No error.

---

**Answers with Explanation**

---

1. (c) amusing के पहले more लगायें। Cleverer के साथ more amusing प्रयुक्त होगा क्योंकि Conjunction से जुड़ने वाले दोनों adjectives एक ही degree में होने चाहिए।
2. (a) two first को first two में परिवर्तित करें।
3. (b) much को many में परिवर्तित करें। Stars countable noun है।
4. (a) Word की जगह words का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि a few का प्रयोग plural countable noun के साथ होगा।
5. (b) correct use 'as much as' है
6. (c) Reading के तरह playing भी 'Gerund' form में होगा।
7. (a) Traffic uncountable है। अतः many नहीं much का प्रयोग करें।
8. (a) Sugar uncountable है। अतः 'large number' के बदले 'large quantity' प्रयुक्त करें।
9. (b) Superior के साथ 'to' प्रयुक्त होता है न कि 'than'.
10. (c) biggest को 'the bigger' में परिवर्तित करें। जब दो के बीच तुलना हो तो Comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।
11. (b) similarly adverb है जो verb की विशेषता बताता है। यहाँ similar प्रयुक्त होगा।
12. (c) all other rivers की जगह all the rivers का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि superlative degree के sentence में other का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
13. (b) 'Nearing' verb near का 'ing' form है। 'Nearby' adjective है। 'Nearing' के बदले 'nearby' शब्द प्रयुक्त करें।
14. (c) Collateral की विशेषता sufficient (adjective) बताता है न कि sufficiently (adverb).
15. (b) Clearly adverb है जो किसी verb की विशेषता बताता है। Speech (noun) की विशेषता clear (adjective) बताता है। अतः Clear प्रयुक्त होगा।
16. (c) Very को most में परिवर्तित करें। अगर Conjunction से दो adj को जोड़ा जाए तो दोनों adjectives एक ही degree में होने चाहिए। अतः 'the most intelligent के साथ the most talented प्रयुक्त होगा।
17. (c) five-year imprisonment प्रयुक्त होगा। Hyphenated adjective हमेशा singular form में होता है।
18. (c) Punish का adjective form punishable है।
19. (c) the poor का अर्थ है गरीब लोग। poors गलत शब्द है।
20. (c) eyes surgery में eyes noun है जो surgery से पहले प्रयुक्त हो कर adjective का कार्य कर रहा है। जब noun adjective का कार्य करें तो उसे singular form में होना चाहिए। अतः eyes नहीं eye प्रयुक्त होगा।

21. (c) 50% के साथ much प्रयुक्त होगा।
22. (a) Definite numeral adjective के साथ 'of' प्रयुक्त नहीं होता है। जैसे:- Two lakh people.  
Indefinite numeral adjective के साथ 'of' प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे:- Lakhs of people.
23. (a) These के साथ plural noun का प्रयोग होता है। अतः sort को sorts में परिवर्तित करें।
24. (c) 'Eggs' countable है अतः many का इस्तेमाल सही है पर 'milk' uncountable है। अतः 'milk' के साथ 'how much' प्रयुक्त होगा।
25. (a) the का प्रयोग whole के पहले होता है न कि whole के बाद। 'The whole chapter' का प्रयोग करें।
26. (a) 'black long' को 'long black' में परिवर्तित करें। जब भी किसी noun के लिए adj of size और adjective of colour का प्रयोग होता है तो पहले adjective of size आता है और उसके बाद adjective of colour.

Long      black hair.  
Adj. of size    Adj. of colour

27. (b) 'Sharp long knife' को 'long sharp knife' में परिवर्तित करें।
28. (b) 'An anxious pale girl' के बदले 'a pale anxious girl' का प्रयोग करें। Adjective of human emotion/personality का प्रयोग adjective of colour के बाद होता है।

a pale      anxious girl.  
Adj. of colour    Adj. of emotion

29. (b) यहाँ दूरी की बात की जा रही है। अतः 'further' नहीं 'farther' का प्रयोग करें।
30. (b) Preferable के साथ 'than' नहीं 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
31. (c) Last के बदले Latest का प्रयोग करें। हम नवीनतम (Latest) news सुनना चाहते हैं।
32. (b) Unique का प्रयोग superlative अथवा comparative degree में नहीं होता। Rule 8 देखें। unique के पहले a का प्रयोग करें।
33. (c) largest की जगह larger का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि समानान्तर वृद्धि (increase) या हास (decrease) को express करने के लिए double comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।
34. (b) Some के जगह पर any का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि negative वाक्य में सामान्यतः 'any' का प्रयोग होता है।
35. (b) more beautiful के बाद than का प्रयोग करें।
36. (c) Cold को colder में परिवर्तित करें। जब किसी gradual development को दर्शाया जाता है तो comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।
37. (b) Comparatively के साथ comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं होता। better के बदले good का प्रयोग करें।
38. (a) 'as good' के बाद as का प्रयोग करें।
39. (a) happily (adv) के बदले happy (adj) का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि verbs of sensation (look, sum, appear, feel, smell, taste और sound) के बाद adj का प्रयोग होता है न कि adverb का।
40. (b) Comparatively के साथ comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। weaker के बदले weak का प्रयोग करें।
41. (b) Many a के साथ singular noun एवं singular verb का प्रयोग करें। 'Boys are' को 'boy is' में

**Adjective**

परिवर्तित करें।

42. (a) Honest adjective है। इसका प्रयोग noun की तरह तभी हो सकता है जब ये article 'the' के साथ प्रयुक्त हो। यानि 'the honest' जिसका अर्थ होता है इमानदार लोग।
43. (a) 'All my' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए न कि 'My all' का।
44. (a) Wiser को wise में परिवर्तित करें। enough के पहले positive degree का प्रयोग होता है।
45. (c) All other mythologies का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि Ramayana को exclude करना है।
46. (c) Steamed cup of tea का अर्थ होगा भांप लगा हुआ cup of tea. 'Steamed momos' का प्रयोग सही है परन्तु यहाँ गर्म (भांप निकलता हुआ) cup of tea का उल्लेख है। अतः steaming cup of tea का प्रयोग करें।
47. (c) revise को revised में परिवर्तित करें। यहाँ edition already revise हो चुका है अतः revised edition का प्रयोग सही होगा।
48. (a) fastly की जगह fast का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि अंग्रेजी भाषा में fastly का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। fast का प्रयोग Adjective or Adverb के रूप में होता है।
49. (b) all का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि Monthly expenses में सभी प्रकार के खर्च शामिल हैं।
50. (a) 'more' हटा दे। दो comparative degrees का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है।
51. (b) Superlative degree 'most' का प्रयोग होगा।
52. (c) 'any newspaper' के स्थान पर 'any other newspaper' लगायें। 'Any newspaper' में 'The Statesman' भी आ जाता है।
53. (b) 'more' को 'most' में परिवर्तित करें।
54. (c) 'more weak' के स्थान पर 'weaker' का प्रयोग करें।





# 12

## CONJUNCTION

### CHAPTER

- **Conjunction** वह शब्द या शब्द समूह है जो दो या दो से अधिक शब्दों (**Words**), शब्द समूहों (**Phrases**), वाक्यांशों (**Clauses**) तथा वाक्यों (**Sentences**) को जोड़ता है;

जैसे: 1. **Ram** and **Shyam** will come.

↑ Words ↑

2. **People's ignorance** and **population explosion** are two inter-related problems.

↑ Phrases ↑

3. **She said** that **she would come**.

↑ Clauses ↑

- यहाँ वाक्य (1) में 'and' दो शब्दों 'Ram' तथा 'Shyam' को जोड़ता है, वाक्य (2) में 'and' दो शब्द समूहों 'people's ignorance' तथा 'population explosion' को जोड़ता है, तथा वाक्य (3) में 'that' दो वाक्यों 'she said' तथा 'she would come' को जोड़ता है। अतः 'and' तथा 'that' Conjunctions हैं।

#### Some Common Conjunctions

**And**

**Otherwise, or else**

**Therefore,**

**Consequently**

**Neither... nor**

**So...that**

**So.....as**

**Whether.....or**

**As soon as**

**Or.....**

**Not only.....but also**

**Wherever**

**Whenever**

**While**

**As.... ,**

#### Meaning in Hindi

और

नहीं तो

अतः इसलिए

न तो ..... न

इतना ..... कि

इतना ..... जितना

या ..... या

जैसे ही ..... वैसे ही

या, अथवा, नहीं तो

न ही सिर्फ ..... बल्कि

जहाँ कहीं भी

जब कभी भी

के दौरान

क्योंकि ..... इसलिए

#### Some Common Conjunctions

**As well as**

**So, hence**

**Either....or**

**Both.... and**

**Too....to**

**As.....as**

**As.....so**

**But**

**No sooner.....than**

**Scarcely.....when**

**Hardly.....when**

**Where**

**When**

**Until/Unless....,**

**Because**

**Lest.....should**

#### Meaning in Hindi

साथ ही साथ

इसीलिए

या तो ..... या

दोनों ..... और

इतना ..... कि

इतना ..... जितना

जैसा ..... वैसा

पर, परन्तु , लेकिन,

जैसे ही ..... वैसे ही

मुश्किल से..... कि

मुश्किल से ..... कि

जहाँ

जब

तब तक ..... जब तक

क्योंकि

ऐसा न हो कि, वना,

**Conjunction**

<b>Such.....that</b>	इतना ..... कि	<b>If</b>	यदि
<b>Provided</b>	बशर्ते	<b>As if</b>	मानो ..... कि
<b>Though</b>	यद्यपि ..... फिर भी/तथापि	<b>Although</b>	यद्यपि ..... फिर भी/तथापि
<b>Whereas</b>	जबकि	<b>Nevertheless</b>	के बावजूद ( <b>in spite of</b> )
<b>As though</b>	मानो	<b>As far as</b>	जहाँ तक

**TYPES OF CONJUNCTION**

**Conjunctions** निम्नलिखित दो प्रकार के होते हैं:

1. **Co-ordinating Conjunction.**
2. **Subordinating Conjunction.**

1. **CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTION:-** नीचे दिए गये वाक्यों को पढ़ें:

1. He read the notes **and** returned it to me.
2. He came to meet me, **but** I was not at home.
3. She worked hard **yet** she failed.

- इन वाक्यों में ‘**and**’, ‘**but**’, ‘**yet**’ नामक Conjunctions द्वारा दो ऐसे वाक्यों को जोड़ा गया है, जो स्वयं अपना अलग-अलग अर्थ प्रकट कर सकते हैं। अब यदि इन वाक्यों को अलग-अलग clauses में बांटा जाए तो एक **Principal Clause** बनेगी और दूसरी **Co-ordinate Clause** बनेगी।
- जिस **Conjunction** से कोई **Co-ordinate Clause** बनी हो, उस Conjunction को **Co-ordinating Conjunction** कहते हैं।

**Co-ordinating Conjunctions** निम्नलिखित चार प्रकार के होते हैं:

(i) **Cumulative conjunctions** (संयोजक)

‘**And**’, ‘**also**’, ‘**both ..... and**’, ‘**as well as**’, ‘**now**’, ‘**too**’, ‘**no less than**’.

- इन Conjunctions के द्वारा एक sentence को दूसरे sentence से या दो noun, दो pronoun को या दो adjectives इत्यादि को जोड़ा जाता है।

जैसे: 1. He is rich **and** happy.  
                    adj.                      adj.

2. Ram **as well as** Shyam is coming.  
          Noun                      Noun

(ii) **Alternative Conjunctions** (विकल्पक)

‘**Either . . . . . or**’, ‘**neither . . . . . nor**’, ‘**else**’, **or**, ‘**otherwise**’.

- इन Conjunctions के द्वारा दो ऐसे sentences, nouns, pronouns इत्यादि को जोड़ा जाता है, जिनसे दो विकल्पों में से एक को चुनने का बोध होता है।

जैसे: 1. **Either** sit quietly **or** go away.  
2. You must run fast **else** you will miss the train.

(iii) **Adversative Conjunctions** (विरोध दर्शक)

- ‘**But**’, ‘**yet**’, ‘**still**’, ‘**only**’, ‘**however**’, ‘**nevertheless**’, ‘**while**’, ‘**whereas**’. जैसे Conjunctions के द्वारा दो ऐसे वाक्यों को अथवा Nouns, Pronouns इत्यादि को जोड़ा जाता है जो एक-दूसरे के विपरीत हों।

जैसे: 1. He is rich **but** he is not happy.

2. He is industrious **still** he does not get good marks.

**(iv) Illative Conjunctions ( परिणामसूचक )**

➤ इन conjunctions के द्वारा दो ऐसे वाक्यों को जोड़ा जाता है, जिनमें से एक वाक्य दूसरे वाक्य का परिणाम हो।  
जैसे: I was ill **so** I could not come.

**2. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTION:-** नीचे दिए गये वाक्यों को पढ़े:

1. **If** you work hard, you will succeed.

2. **Since** I was busy, I could not call you up.

➤ इन sentences में '**if**', '**since**' के जैसे Conjunctions के द्वारा एक Clause को दूसरी ऐसी Clause से जोड़ा गया है, जिसके बिना वह अपना अर्थ व्यक्त नहीं कर पाती अर्थात् वह उस पर पूरी तरह से आश्रित है। यदि इन sentences को Clause में बांटा जाए, तो एक **Principal Clause** बनेगी और दूसरी **Subordinate ( आश्रित ) Clause**.

➤ जिस **Conjunction** के द्वारा **Subordinate Clause** बनी हो, उसे **Subordinating Conjunction** कहते हैं।  
**Subordinating conjunctions** अपने अर्थ के अनुसार निम्नलिखित बात प्रकट करते हैं:

**(i) Time:- When, whenever, till, until, before, since, while, as soon as, as long as, just as.**

1. **When** I saw him, I stopped my car.

2. **As soon as** it rains, the farmers will sow the seeds.

**(ii) Place ( स्थान ): Where, wherever,**

1. You can go **wherever** you want.

**(iii) Cause ( कारण ): Since, because, as,**

1. She came **because** I called him up.

2. **As** he is a miser, no one likes him.

**(iv) Purpose ( उद्देश्य ): That, so that, in order that, lest**

1. We eat **so** that we may live.

2. Run fast **lest** you should miss the train.

**(v) Result ( परिणाम ): So . . . . ., that, such . . . that**

1. He is **so** weak **that** he cannot even stand.

2. He is **such** a fool **that** he doesn't understand anything.

**(vi) Condition ( शर्त ): If, supposing, unless, provided.**

1. He cannot succeed **unless** he works hard.

2. I will help him **provided** he mends his ways.

**(vii) Manner ( ढंग ): As, as if, as though, as far as.**

1. He scolded me **as if** he were my father.

**नोट:** अगर '**as**' the अर्थ 'चुकि' हो तो उसके बाद '**so**' का प्रयोग न करें।

**As** I was ill, so I could not come (Remove 'so')

➤ '**Since**' के साथ भी '**so**' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।

**Since** he is a liar, so I do not trust him (Remove 'so')

**(viii) Comparison ( तुलना ): As, as . . . . as, so . . . . as, than**

1. A wise enemy is better **than** a foolish friend.

2. He is **as good as** she at English.

### Conjunction

**नोट:** (1) **So . . . as/As . . . as** का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की तुलना के लिए किया जाता है। ध्यान रखें-

(A) **So . . . as** का प्रयोग **Negative वाक्य** में होता है; जैसे:

(i) He is **not so** good **as** you. (Negative)

➤ किन्तु **As . . . as** का प्रयोग **Affirmative** तथा **Negative** दोनों ही प्रकार के वाक्यों में किया जाता है; जैसे:

(i) He is **as** good **as** you. (Affirmative)

(ii) He is **not as** good **as** you. (Negative)

(ix) **Contrast ( अंतर ): Though, although, however**

1. **Though** he worked hard, he failed.

2. I tried very hard **however** I could not win the race.

3. **CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTION:-** जो Conjunctions जोड़े (pair) में प्रयुक्त होते हैं, उन्हें Correlatives (संकेतबोधक) कहते हैं। जैसे: '**Either ..... or**', '**neither ..... nor**', '**both ..... and**', '**not only ..... but also**', '**though .... yet**', '**whether...or**'

जैसे: **Neither** his friends **nor** his parents knew about his evil intention.

I do not know **whether** he will come **or** not.

4. **COMPOUND CONJUNCTION:-** Conjunctions जब शब्दों का समूह हो तो **Compound Conjunction** कहलाते हैं।

**In order that.** The announcement was made **in order that** all might know the new date of exam.

**On condition that** I will give you money **on condition that** you will not misuse it.

**Even if** She will succeed in life **even if** she faces some initial failures.

**So that** We eat **so that** we may live.

**Provided that** You can take any dress **provided that** you return it after the party.

**As though** He shows off **as though** he is very rich.

**As well as** Ram **as well as** his friends has come to the party.

**As soon as** The farmers will sow the seeds **as soon as** it rains.

**As if** He scolded me **as if** he were my father.

### CONJUNCTION के दस IMPORTANT RULES

#### RULE 1

1. **And**

2. **as well as**

2. **Both ——— and**

3. **Not only ——— but also**

➤ इन चारों conjunctions का प्रयोग **Noun , Pronoun** इत्यादि को जोड़ने के लिये किया जाता है लेकिन जहाँ तक adjective का प्रश्न है ये सिर्फ दो **desirable adjectives** को या फिर दो **undesirable adjectives** को जोड़ते हैं।

जैसे: He is **both** intelligent **and** hard working.

He is **not only** dishonest **but also** lazy.

#### RULE 2

➤ यदि दो Sub को '**as well as**'/'**with**'/'**alongwith**'/ '**and not**'/ '**In addition to**'/ '**but**'/ '**besides**'/'**except**'/ '**rather than**'/'**accompanied by**' से जोड़ा जाये तो **verb** का प्रयोग पहले **sub** के अनुसार होना चाहिये। (Subject - Verb Agreement देखें )

Ram as well as his friends is coming.

He and not his parents is guilty.

**RULE 3**

➤ कई बार Conjunction गलत स्थान पर प्रयोग कर लिए जाते हैं।

जैसे: Not only he cheated his friends but also his parents. (×)

He cheated **not only** his friends **but also** his parents. (✓)  
1<sup>st</sup>Noun 2<sup>nd</sup>Noun

➤ इस वाक्य में 'his friends' एवं 'his parents' दो विकल्प हैं। 'not only' 'his friends' के पहले प्रयोग करें और 'but also' 'his parents' के पहले।

अन्य उदाहरण:

(1) Sit either quietly or go away. (×)

(2) Neither the poor villagers grow nor eat vegetables. (×)

➤ दोनो वाक्य गलत हैं क्योंकि **Conjunctions** जब जोड़े में हो (**Co-Relatives**) तो उनका प्रयोग वाक्य में मौजूद विकल्प के ठीक पहले होना चाहिए।

जैसे: (1) **Either** sit quietly **or** go away. (✓)  
1<sup>st</sup>Verb 2<sup>nd</sup>Verb

(2) The poor villagers **neither** grow **nor** eat vegetables. (✓)  
1<sup>st</sup>Verb 2<sup>nd</sup>Verb

**RULE 4**

➤ Conjunctions जब जोड़े में हो तो जोड़ा सही होना चाहिये।

जैसे: <b>Though</b>	<b>Yet/</b>
<b>Although</b>	<b>Yet/</b>
<b>No sooner</b>	<b>than</b>
<b>Hardly/Scarcely</b>	<b>when</b>
<b>As</b>	<b>as</b>
<b>So</b>	<b>as</b>
<b>Lest</b>	<b>should</b>
<b>Too</b>	<b>to</b>
<b>So</b>	<b>that</b>
<b>Between</b>	<b>and</b>
<b>From</b>	<b>to</b>
<b>Else</b>	<b>but</b>
<b>Other/Rather</b>	<b>than</b>
<b>Such</b>	<b>that</b>
<b>Whether</b>	<b>or</b>
<b>The same</b>	<b>that</b>
<b>Both</b>	<b>and</b>
<b>Not only</b>	<b>but also</b>

**Conjunction**

- जैसे: (1) Though he worked hard but he failed. (×)  
          **Though** he worked hard **yet** he failed. (✓)  
(2) He is both intelligent as well as industrious. (×)  
      He is **both** intelligent **and** industrious. (✓)  
(3) The party is **between** 7 p.m **and** 9 p.m. (✓)  
(4) The party is **from** 7 p.m **to** 9 p.m. (✓)  
(5) I have **no other** aim but to succeed in life. (×)  
(6) I have **no other** aim **than** to succeed in life (✓)  
(7) Nothing **else but** arrogance ruined him. (✓)  
(8) He asked me if I was coming or not. (×)  
(9) He asked me **whether** I was coming or not. (✓)

**RULE 5**

**So ..... that**

**too.. .....to**

इतना ..... कि

- जैसे: (1) I am so happy. (×)  
          I am **very** happy. (✓)
- (2) 1. He is **so** tired **that** he can't walk. ('so—that के स्थान पर 'too ..... to' का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है अगर वाक्य देखें)  
      He is **too** tired **to** walk.  
      2. It is **too** hot **to** go out.  
          It is **so** hot **that** we cannot go out.  
      3. She is **so** weak **that** she cannot walk.  
          She is **too** weak **to** walk.  
      4. This problem is **so** complicated **that** no one can solve it.  
          This problem is **too** complicated for anyone **to** solve it.
- अगर 'to solve' के पहले for 'any one' का उल्लेख नहीं किया जाये तो **solve** का sub 'problem' हो जायेगा और वाक्य का अर्थ गलत निकलेगा। ध्यान रहे अगर 'that' के बाद 'sub' परिवर्तित हो जाएँ तो 'to + v<sub>1</sub>' के पहले 2<sup>nd</sup> Sub का उल्लेख होना आवश्यक है।
5. It is **so** expensive **that** I cannot buy it.  
   It is **too** expensive **for** me to buy it.
- दूसरा तरीका: वाक्य 3 एवं 4 में अगर हम वाक्य के दूसरे भाग को **Passive voice** में लिखें तो कर्ता का उल्लेख **by + Sub** के रूप में हो सकता है। तब 2<sup>nd</sup> sub जो 1<sup>st</sup> sub से भिन्न है 'by+sub' के form में आ जाएगा और वाक्य का अर्थ सही निकलेगा।
- to + V<sub>1</sub>** (infinitive) active voice है।  
**to + be + V<sub>3</sub>** - Passive voice है।
4. This problem is too complicated **to be solved** by anyone.  
5. It is too expensive **to be bought** by me.

**RULE 6**

**neither.....nor** ( दो में से एक भी नहीं )

**either.....or** (दो में से एक )

**Neither** Ram **nor** Shyam has come.  
s.s.                                      s.v.



**Neither** Ram **nor** his friends have come.  
P.S.    P.V.



Has Ram **or** his friends come?  
s.v.    s.s.



- यदि दो sub को '**Neither.....nor**', '**either.....or**', '**nor**' अथवा '**or**' से जोड़ा जाये तो **verb** अपने से नजदीक वाले **subject** के अनुसार होगा। (Sub-Verb Agreement देखें )

**RULE 7**

- **Neither of ...** का अर्थ है दो में से एक भी नहीं। अगर दो से अधिक मौजूद हो तो '**None of**' का प्रयोग करें।
  - **Either of ...** का अर्थ है दो में से एक - अगर दो से अधिक मौजूद हो तो '**one of**' का प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: **Neither of** his four sons looked after him. (×)  
**None of** his four sons looked after him. (✓)  
**Either of** the students of your class has done this mischief. (×)  
**One of** the students of your class has done this mischief. (✓)

**RULE 8**

**as soon as .....**,

जैसे ही                                      वैसे ही

As soon as he will come, I will call you up. (×)

**As soon as** he comes, I will call you up. (✓)

- अगर दो कार्य, भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो और दूसरे कार्य का होना पहले कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करे तो पहला कार्य **Simple Present Tense** में होगा और दूसरा **Simple future tense** में होगा। (Future Conditional Sentences देखें )

**RULE 9**

**नोट:** **If/when** का जोड़ा **then** नहीं होता है ।

जैसे: When I come, ~~then~~, I will meet you.

- इसी प्रकार **Since/as/because** के साथ **so/therefore** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

जैसे: Since I was ill, I could not come.

**नोट:** As you sow, so shall you reap में **as** के साथ **so** का प्रयोग होता है।

**Conjunction**

**RULE 10**

**No sooner ..... than**

**Hardly ..... when**

**Scarcely ..... when**

**नोट:** (1) इन तीनों **Co-relatives** में जोड़ा सही होना चाहिये।

**जैसे:** **No sooner** did he see me when he ran away (when हटा कर **than** का प्रयोग करें)

**No Sooner** had the thief seen the police then he ran away. (change 'then' to '**than**')  
(2) इन तीनों **co-relatives** का प्रयोग केवल **Past Tense** में करें।

(3) अगर वाक्य की शुरूआत **Hardly, Scarcely etc.** से हो तो उसके बाद वाक्य का **formation**

**interrogative** के तरीके से होगा यानि **Helping verb + Sub + main verb (Had + S + V<sub>3</sub> or Did + S + V<sub>1</sub>)** लेकिन इससे वाक्य प्रश्न नहीं बन जाता है।

Hardly I saw him when I stopped my car. (×)

**Hardly did I see him when I stopped my car.** (✓)

**RULE 11**

**Lest..... Should**

**.....or.....**

**.....else.....**

**.....otherwise.....**

सही जोड़े का प्रयोग करें।

Run fast lest you will miss the train. (×)

Run fast **lest** you **should** miss the train. (✓)

**RULE 12**

**Unless , Until and Till**

1. **Until** तथा **unless** में फर्क यह है कि **until** समय सूचक है तथा **unless** शर्त सूचक है।

**जैसे:** **Until** the light turns red, no one will stop.

**Unless** you work hard, you won't succeed.

2. हम **till** से वाक्य की शुरूआत नहीं करते।

**जैसे:** Till the train gets the signal, it will not proceed (×) (Till को **Until** में परिवर्तित करें)

**RULE 13**

➤ '**Until / Unless**' के साथ **not** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

**जैसे:** Until the train will not get the signal, it will not run. (×)

**Until** the train gets the signal, it will not run. (✓)

**नोट:** **Until** एवं **Unless** के साथ **will/would/shall** का भी प्रयोग नहीं होता।

**जैसे:** Unless the Government will not take action , corruption will not stop. (×)

**Unless** the Government takes action , corruption will not stop. (✓)

**नोट:** कई बार शब्दों पर जोर देने के लिए दो **Conjunctions, Prepositions, Pronouns** या **Adjectives** का प्रयोग एक साथ किया जाता है हालांकि दोनों का अर्थ लगभग एक ही होता है।

**जैसे:** 1. **Unless and until** you work hard, you won't succeed.

2. The selling price of every commodity was **over and above** the M.R.P.



3. The **first and foremost** duty of every citizen is to respect his country.  
4. **Each and every** student must take the exam.

**RULE 14**

- **Doubt** के बाद **affirmative sentence** में **if/whether** का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि **negative** व **Interrogative sentence** में **doubt** के बाद **that** का प्रयोग होता है।  
➤ **Doubtful** के बाद भी '**Affirmative sentence**' में '**if/whether**' का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि **Negative** व **Interrogative sentence** में **doubtful** के बाद **that** का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे:

**AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCE**

**NEGATIVE / INTERROGATIVE**

**Doubt**————— **if/whether**

**Doubt**————— **that**

**Doubtful**————— **if/whether**

**Doubtful**————— **that**

- जैसे: 1. He doubts that she will help him. (×)  
He **doubts if/whether** she will help him. (*Affirmative Sentence*)  
2. I have no doubt if/whether he will cheat me. (×)  
I have **no doubt that** he will cheat me. (*Negative*)  
3. I am doubtful that my parents will allow me to go to the party. (×)  
I am **doubtful if/whether** my parents will allow me to go to the party. (*Affirmative Sentence*)  
4. He is not doubtful if/whether I will finish his work in time (×)  
He is **not doubtful that** I will finish his work in time. (*Negative Sentence*)

**RULE 15**

- '**The same**' के बाद Relative Pronouns '**that**' या '**as**' का प्रयोग होता है।  
➤ '**The same**' के बाद '**that**' का प्रयोग होता है जब इसके बाद **Verb स्पष्ट** हो।

जैसे: (i) This is **the same** book **that** I wanted.  
Verb

(ii) He is **the same** boy **that** met me in the market  
Verb

- किन्तु '**the same**' के बाद '**as**' का प्रयोग तब होता है जब **Verb स्पष्ट** नहीं हो।

जैसे: (i) This is **the same** book **as** mine. (as के बाद verb का प्रयोग स्पष्ट रूप से नहीं है)  
'the same' के बाद who/which आदि का प्रयोग न करें।

**RULE 16**

- (i) **As ... as** एवं **so ... as** का प्रयोग तुलना करने के लिए किया जाता है। **As .... as** का प्रयोग **Positive** एवं **negative** वाक्यों में होता है और **so...as** का प्रयोग सिर्फ **negative** वाक्यों में होता है।

- जैसे: 1. He is **as** intelligent **as** you. (+ve वाक्य)  
2. He is not **as** intelligent **as** you. (-ve वाक्य)  
3. He is not **so** intelligent **as** you. (-ve वाक्य)

(ii) **As...as** एवं **so ... as** के साथ **adverb** एवं **adjective** के सिर्फ **Positive Degree** का प्रयोग होता है।

**Conjunction**

- जैसे: 1. He ran **as** faster **as** he could. (faster को **fast** में परिवर्तित करें)  
2. He is **as** better **as** you. (better को **good** में परिवर्तित करें)

---

**SPOTTING THE ERROR**

---

1. (a) You are quite cynical/ (b) when you say that the reason why we have/ (c) such a large turnout is because we are serving refreshments./ (d) No error.
2. (a) That store/ (b) hadn't hardly/ (c) any of those goods./ (d) No error.
3. (a) I needed that money/ (b) so desperately, it was/ (c) like manna from heaven when it arrived./ (d) No error.
4. (a) The period/ (b) between 1980 to 1990/ (c) was very significant in my life./ (d) No error.
5. (a) No sooner had the hockey match started/ (b) when it began/ (c) to rain./ (d) No error.
6. (a) She is very/ (b) beautiful/ (c) but intelligent./ (d) No error.
7. (a) Your success in the IAS examinations depends not only on/ (b) what papers you have selected/ (c) but on how you have written them/ (d) No error.
8. (a) No sooner had/ (b) he arrived then/ (c) he was asked to leave again./ (d) No error.
9. (a) I haven't been/ (b) to New York before and/ (c) neither my sister./ (d) No error.
10. (a) Scarcely had/ (b) I arrived than/ (c) the train left./ (d) No error.
11. (a) The reason why/ (b) he was rejected/ (c) was because he was too young./ (d) No error.
12. (a) Unless you do not give/ (b) the keys of the safe/ (c) you will be shot./ (d) No error.
13. (a) None of the diplomats at the conference/ (b) was able either to/ (c) comprehend or solve the problem./ (d) No error.
14. (a) I have found that he is/ (b) neither willing/ (c) or capable./ (d) No error.
15. (a) We are extremely pleased/ (b) for excited as well to invite you/ (c) to attend the meeting./ (d) No error.
16. (a) When her son got a job/ (b) then she was/ (c) very happy./ (d) No error.
17. (a) Bread and butter/ (b) is/ (c) all we want./ (d) No error.
18. (a) The cost of the new/ (b) machines is likely to/ (c) be so high as ten/ (d) times the existing ones./ (e) No error.
19. (a) He walked as faster/ (b) as he could so that/ (c) he would not miss the train to work./ (d) No error.
20. (a) She was running/ (b) a very high fever/ (c) and thus her mother takes her to the doctor./ (d) No error.
21. (a) No sooner the teacher/ (b) enter the class/ (c) than the students stood up./ (d) No error.
22. (a) Unless/ (b) you will work hard,/ (c) you cannot pass./ (d) No error.
23. (a) Keep him at an arm's length/ (b) lest you may not repent/ (c) in the long run./

- (d) No error.
24. (a) The briefing/ (b) will be held/ (c) between 2 P.M. to 3 P.M./ (d) No error.
25. (a) Unless you do not meet/ (b) all the requirements/ (c) your application will be rejected./ (d) No error.
26. (a) How do you manage to speak/ (b) to her with/ (c) so great patience./ (d) No error.
27. (a) No sooner she had realized/ (b) her blunder than she began/ (c) to take corrective measures./ (d) No error.
28. (a) She was not/ (b) so well versed in/ (c) English that we had expected./ (d) No error.
29. (a) Mr. Sinha, my friend, philosopher and guide not only stopped coming/ (b) here but also going to any place/ (c) which is related to his wife's life./ (d) No error.
30. (a) Neither the doctor nor the nurses/ (b) were asleep when/ (c) the injured was brought to the hospital./ (d) No error.
31. (a) As soon as the peon rings the bell, then all/ (b) the students come to the assembly room/ (c) for prayer./ (d) No error.
32. (a) Hardly had he come out of the bus/ (b) then the bomb exploded/ (c) and shattered the bus into pieces./ (d) No error.
33. (a) Scarcely had I bought/ (b) the ticket when the train/ (c) left the platform with a hissing sound./ (d) No error.
34. (a) Many of the freedom fighters/ (b) are so respectful as Gandhiji/ (c) if not more. / (d) No error.
35. (a) This is perhaps the same place who/ (b) was chosen by us/ (c) for the picnic./ (d) No error.
36. (a) She asked me that why I was/ (b) not preparing for the/ (c) Civil Service Examinations./ (d) No error.
37. A) Run fast/ (b) lest you will/ (c) lose the race/ (d) No error.
38. (a) As Amir Khan is a perfectionist,/ (b) so he always insists/ (c) on retakes till he is satisfied with the shot./ (d) No error.
39. (a) You must either/ (b) work hard/ (c) else be prepared to lead a miserable life./ (d) No error.
40. (a) I don't know if any of the students/ (b) of our school is going/ (c) to pay any heed to the principal's order or not./ (d) No error.
41. (a) This is not such a/ (b) complicated problem who cannot be solved/ (c) with determination./ (d) No error.
42. (a) Although these books/ (b) are not useful but the students buy them/ (C) because their seniors did so./ (d) No error.
43. (a) He did not/ (b) succeed in the examination,/ (c) yet he had worked hard and had adopted the right strategy./ (d) No error.
44. (a) He has lots/ (b) of money and/ (c) he will not help any one/ (d) No error.
45. (a) Because he is intelligent,/ (b) therefore he gets good/ (c) marks in all the examinations./ (d) No error.
46. (a) Both the rich alongwith/ (b) the poor are affected equally/ (c) when prices of petrol and diesel increase./ (d) No error.

**Conjunction**

47. (a) I cannot say/ (b) if he has paid/ (c) the fee or not./ (d) No error.
48. (a) Ten years have passed/ (b) that I returned from/ (c) America and settled in India./ (d) No error.
49. (a) It was almost/ (b) ten years ago since he wrote/ (c) a letter to me enquiring about my well being/ (d) No error.
50. (a) He would not/ (b) have died when you had/ (c) helped him in time./ (d) No error.
51. (a) Scarcely we had/ (b) reached the office/ (c) when it started raining cats and dogs./ (d) No error.
52. (a) The labourers/ (b) relax/ (c) between 4.00 p.m. to 5. 00 p.m./ (d) No error.

---

**Answers with Explanation**

---

1. (c) 'the reason why' के साथ 'because' का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता।
2. (b) 'Hardly' अर्थ से नकारात्मक है। इसके साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता। Hadn't को हटा कर 'had' का प्रयोग करें। Hardly had' का प्रयोग करें।
3. (b) 'So' के साथ 'that' का प्रयोग होना आवश्यक है। 'So desperately' के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग करें।
4. (b) Between के साथ 'and' का प्रयोग करें न कि 'to' का।
5. (b) 'No sooner' के साथ 'than' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'when' का।
6. (c) 'but' को 'and' में परिवर्तित करें।
7. (c) 'Not only' के साथ 'but also' का प्रयोग होता है। 'but' के साथ 'also' लगायें।
8. (b) 'No sooner' के साथ 'than' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'then' का।
9. (c) 'Neither' के बाद पहले helping verb का प्रयोग होता है फिर sub का। 'neither has my sister' सही प्रयोग होगा।
10. (b) 'Scarcely' के साथ 'when' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'than' का।
11. (c) 'The reason why' के साथ 'because' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
12. (a) Unless के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। 'unless you give' होना चाहिए।
13. (b) वाक्य में 'Comprehend' और 'solve' दो verb का प्रयोग हो रहा है तो 'comprehend' के पहले 'either' का प्रयोग होगा। 'Either' 'to' के बाद आएगा।
14. (c) 'neither' के साथ 'nor' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'or' का।
15. (b) 'for' के बदले 'and' का प्रयोग करें।
16. (b) 'when' के साथ 'then' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। 'then' हटा कर ',' लगायें।
17. (c) यहाँ 'all' के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (c) So . . . . . as का प्रयोग negative वाक्यों में होता है। यहाँ 'as . . . . . as' का प्रयोग करें।
19. (a) as . . . . . as के बीच adjective/adverb के positive degree 'fast' का प्रयोग होगा।

**Conjunction**

20. (c) 'Thus her mother takes' को 'So her mother took' में परिवर्तित करें।
21. (a) 'No sooner' के बाद 'helping verb' का प्रयोग होगा और फिर 'sub' का। 'No sooner did the teacher enter' सही होगा।
22. (b) Unless/ if/ until/ provided/ before/ after/ in case/ as soon as के साथ 'will/ shall/would' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता। 'you will study hard' के स्थान पर 'you study hard the प्रयोग करें।
23. (a) 'may not' के स्थान पर 'should' का प्रयोग करें ।
24. (c) 'Between' के साथ 'and' का प्रयोग होगा। 'from' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
25. (a) 'Unless' के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। 'Unless you meet' सही formation होगा।
26. (c) 'So' के साथ 'that' का प्रयोग होना जरूरी है।
27. (a) 'No sooner' के बाद 'had' का प्रयोग होगा और फिर sub 'she' का।
28. (c) 'So . . . . as' सही pair है। 'that' के स्थान पर 'as' लगायें।
29. (a) 'not only' का प्रयोग गलत स्थान पर हुआ है। 'Not only' का प्रयोग 'coming' के पहले होगा।
30. (d)
31. (a) 'As soon as' के साथ 'then' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
32. (b) 'Hardly' के साथ 'When' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'then' का।
33. (d)
34. (b) 'So . . . .as का प्रयोग नकारात्मक वाक्यों में होता है। 'as . . . . as' का प्रयोग करें
35. (a) 'The same' के साथ 'that' का प्रयोग करें न कि 'who' का।
36. (a) 'Wh family' के पहले 'that' का प्रयोग गलत है। यहाँ 'why' के पहले कोई Conjunction नहीं आएगा।
37. (b) Lest के साथ should का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'will' का।
38. (b) अगर 'As' का अर्थ क्योंकि/चूँकि हो तो 'as' के साथ कोई Conjunction का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। 'So' हटा दे। 'As. . . .so' का प्रयोग 'जैसा. . .वैसा' का संदर्भ में होता है। Eg- 'As you sow, so shall you reap.'
39. (c) 'Either' का जोड़ा 'or' होता है न कि 'else'
40. (a) If के स्थान पर 'whether' का प्रयोग करें। 'Whether' के साथ 'or' का प्रयोग होता है 'if' के साथ नहीं।
41. (b) Such के साथ 'that' का प्रयोग होगा ।
42. (b) 'Although' के साथ 'but' का नहीं 'yet' का प्रयोग होता है।
43. (c) 'Yet' के स्थान पर 'though का प्रयोग होगा।
44. (b) 'and' के स्थान पर 'but' का प्रयोग करें।
45. (b) 'Because' के साथ 'therefore' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Because / as/ since आदि Conjunctions of Reason है। इनके साथ so/therefore का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
46. (a) 'Both' का जोड़ा 'and' है न कि along with'
47. (b) 'Whether' के साथ 'or' प्रयुक्त होता है। 'if' के स्थान पर 'whether' का प्रयोग करें।
48. (b) 'that' के स्थान पर 'since' का प्रयोग होगा। Since का प्रयोग 'जब से' के अर्थ में होता है।

**Conjunction**

ऐसे वाक्यों में वाक्य के formation का भी ध्यान रखें।

**Present Perfect + Since + Simple Past**

Ten years have passed since I returned

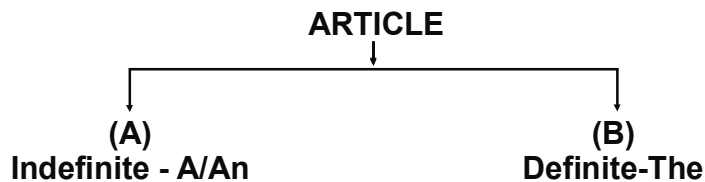
49. (b) 'since' के स्थान पर 'when' का प्रयोग होगा।
50. (b) 'when' के स्थान पर 'if' का प्रयोग होगा। वाक्य Conditional sentence है।
51. (a) 'we had' को 'had we' में परिवर्तित करें।
52. (c) 'between' के साथ 'and' का प्रयोग होता है। 'from' के साथ 'to' का।

# 13

CHAPTER

## ARTICLE

‘A’, ‘An’ एवं ‘The’, Articles कहलाते हैं। **A/An** को **Indefinite** तथा **‘The’** को **Definite article** कहते हैं।



- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) यह कुर्सी है।      | This is <b>a</b> chair.     |
| (b) सीता ने गाना गाया। | Sita sang <b>a</b> song.    |
| (c) यह छतरी है।        | This is <b>an</b> umbrella. |
- इन हिन्दी वाक्यों में ‘एक’ नहीं होते हुए भी, इनका अंग्रेजी अनुवाद करते समय हमने **‘A/An’** का प्रयोग किया है।
  - वाक्यों में **Singular Countable Noun** से पूर्व, ( यदि वह अनिश्चित है ) **Article ‘A/An’** का प्रयोग अवश्य किया जाता है। इन वाक्यों का यह अनुवाद गलत है:
 

(a) This is chair.	<i>(Incorrect)</i>
(b) Sita sang song.	<i>(Incorrect)</i>
(c) This is umbrella.	<i>(Incorrect)</i>

### ARTICLE *ɑ:kɪz; kɪz; dʒk; ɡɪz; ɔs\*

- She is \_\_\_\_\_ excellent.
- कई लोग 'excellent' देख तुरंत 'an' का प्रयोग कर देते हैं परन्तु इस वाक्य में कोई article का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि 'excellent' के बाद कोई noun नहीं है।
  - जैसे: She is an excellent student.
  - Article का प्रयोग **noun** के पहले होता है।
  - जैसे: She is **a** student.
  - noun
  - अगर noun की विशेषता बताने वाला adjective वाक्य में मौजूद हो तो article का प्रयोग **adjective** के पहले होगा।
  - जैसे: She is **an** excellent student.
  - adj                      noun





दृष्टव्य; मकगज.क

1. **An** hour.
2. **An** honour.
3. **An** honourable person.
4. **An** honest man
5. **An** heir.
6. **A** house
7. **An** honorarium.
8. **A** historical monument.
9. **A** young man.
10. **A** ewe.
11. **An** eagle.
12. **A** European.
13. **A** university.
14. **A** unit.
15. **A** union.
16. **An** Umbrella
17. **A** unique planet.
18. **A** useful book.
19. **A** year.
20. **A** one-rupee note.
21. **A** one-eyed man.
22. **An** orange
23. **An** F.O.
24. **A** forest officer.
25. **An** M.P
26. **A** Member of Parliament.

#### **USE OF INDEFINITE ARTICLE A/AN**

1. **Singular Countable noun** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है। **Countable** का अर्थ है जिसकी गिनती की जा सकती है; अगर **Noun** का प्रयोग न हो तो **Article** का भी प्रयोग नहीं होगा।  
जैसे: (a) I have **a** pen (b) She has **a** car. (b) Ram has **an** umbrella. (d) She is **a** house wife.  
नोट: '**Noise**' **uncountable Noun** है। फिर भी इसके साथ Article '**a**' का प्रयोग होता है।  
जैसे: Do not make **a** noise.
2. **Exclamatory वाक्यों** में '**What/How**' के बाद व **Singular Countable nouns** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है;  
जैसे: (a) What **a** grand building!  
(b) What **a** pretty girl!
3. '**प्रति माह**' या '**प्रति वस्तु कीमत**' के सन्दर्भ में प्रयोग करने पर **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।  
जैसे: (a) This car runs twenty kilometers **a** litre.  
(b) I earn Rs. ten thousand **a** month.  
(c) This train runs seventy kms. **an** hour.
4. कुछ गिनती बताने वाले शब्द जैसे: **hundred, thousand, million, dozen, couple** से पूर्व '**a**' लगता है।  
जैसे: (a) **A** dozen pencils were bought by her.  
(b) I have **a** hundred pens.
5. **Half** से पूर्व **a** का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से किया जाता है; जैसे:  
जैसे: (a)  $2\frac{1}{4}$  Metre -two and **a** quarter metre.  
(b)  $3\frac{1}{2}$  Kilo-three and **a** half kilo.  
(c) She has to run half **a** mile every day.
6. जब वाक्य में **Verb** ( क्रिया ) का प्रयोग **Noun** की तरह किया जाता है, उससे पहले **A/An** लगाया जाता है;

**Article**

- जैसे: (a) He goes for **a walk** daily.  
(b) He has gone for **a ride**.  
(c) I had **a long talk** with them.  
(d) I want to have **a drink**.

**7. Many/rather/quite/such** के बाद यदि **singular noun** आता है तो **noun** के पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है;

- जैसे: (a) Many **a** citizen would welcome such a change.  
(b) It is rather **a** pity.  
(c) It was quite **an** impossible task.  
(d) It was such **a** foolish decision.

**8. कुछ विशेष Phrases में A/An का प्रयोग होता है;**

**In a fix, in a hurry, in a nutshell, make a noise, make a foot, keep a secret, as a rule, at a stone's throw, a short while ago, at a loss, take a fancy to, take an interest in, take a liking, a pity, tell a lie.**

- जैसे: (a) Never tell **a** lie.  
(b) Do not make **a** noise.  
(c) Twelve inches make **a** foot.

➤ कुछ **phrases** के साथ **article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है;

**to lose heart, to set foot, to give ear, at home, last but not least, to catch fire, in hand, set on fire, by car/bus etc, at last, by mistake, in danger, to take heart.**

- जैसे: (a) I am at home.  
(b) The house was set on fire.  
(c) I go to college by bus.

**A/AN** ~~is; is not; is not~~ **is; is not; is not** ~~is; is not; is not~~ **is; is not; is not**

**(1)** किसी भी **Plural noun** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

- जैसे: A boys have come (×)  
          pl.n.

Boys have come (✓)

**The** boys have come (✓)

**(2) Uncountable nouns** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग सामान्यतः नहीं किया जाता है; जैसे: **Advice, Accommodation, Baggage, Luggage, News, Permission, Progress, Scenery, Weather, Traffic, Knowledge, Music, Wine, Equipment, Information, Poetry, Furniture, Hair, Business, Mischief, Bread, Stationery, Crockery, Postage, Wastage, Money, Jewellery, Breakage, Work, Evidence.**

- जैसे: (a) He gave me an advice (remove 'an')  
(b) I will buy a furniture today (remove 'a')

➤ **Uncountable nouns** के पूर्व जब **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो इनके साथ कुछ शब्दों का प्रयोग करके उन्हें **Countable Noun** बनाया जाता है।

- जैसे: (a) I have **a piece of information** for you.  
(b) I ate **a slice of bread**.  
(c) He gave me **a piece of work** to do.

➤ Article का प्रयोग **'kind of', 'sort of', 'type of', 'variety of'** के बाद प्रयुक्त **Nouns** के पहले नहीं

होता है।

- जैसे: What sort of a man is he ! (×)  
What sort of man is he ! (✓)

### USE OF DEFINITE ARTICLE 'THE'

- 'The' का प्रयोग उस **noun** से पूर्व किया जाता है, जो निश्चित है या जिसकी चर्चा पहले की जा चुकी है। 'The' को इसी कारण **Definite article** कहा जाता है।

'The' का प्रयोग करने के नियम-

- जब किसी पूर्व निर्धारित वस्तु के बारे में कहा जाता है; जैसे:

जैसे: Once upon a time there lived **a king**. **The king** was very kind. One day he met **an old man**. **The old man** was very poor.

(a) प्रथम वाक्य में **king** से पूर्व सर्वप्रथम 'a' का प्रयोग किया गया है, क्योंकि **introduction** के समय से पहले हमें ये ज्ञात नहीं था कि कहानी किस की सुनाई जा रही है। बाद में 'the' का प्रयोग किया गया है, क्योंकि **introduction** के बाद **king** निश्चित हो गया है। इसी प्रकार **old man** से पहले सर्वप्रथम 'a' का प्रयोग किया गया लेकिन बाद में 'the' का, क्योंकि तीसरे वाक्य में **old man** का उल्लेख पहली बार हो रहा है लेकिन चौथे वाक्य में वह **already introduced** हो चुका है।

(b) **The** man in white shirt is my brother.

(c) **The** boy standing near the gate is my brother .

वाक्य (b) एवं (c) में 'the' का प्रयोग, एक निश्चित, निर्धारित **Noun** के तरफ इंगित करता है।

### USE OF ARTICLE WITH DIFFERENT KINDS OF NOUN

#### PROPER NOUN:

1. किसी भी व्यक्ति अथवा स्थान के नाम के साथ Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

जैसे: Ram was an ideal son.

Rome is an ancient city.

अपवाद:

- निम्न स्थिति में **Proper Noun** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है-

जैसे: (a) **A** Mr Sharma has come to meet you.

(b) This book is written by **a** Suresh Mishra.

'Mr. Sharma' proper noun हैं, जब ये वक्ता के लिए अनजान हैं तो इनसे पूर्व 'a' के प्रयोग का अर्थ किसी (कोई) Mr. Sharma हो जाता है।

- अगर किसी व्यक्ति अथवा स्थान को उसके गुण या दोष की वजह से उदाहरण स्वरूप प्रयोग किया जाये तो उस नाम के पहले **Article** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: He is **the** Ram of modern India.

Jaipur is **the** Rome of India.

He is **a** Hitler.

- कुछ स्थान के नाम के साथ Article '**The**' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

**Article**

जैसे: **The** Ukraine

**The** Great Britain

**The** Netherlands

**The** Hague.

2. राज्यों के नाम के साथ Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता। अपवाद -**The** Punjab.

3. किसी भी देश के नाम के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता।

जैसे: America, Russia.

➤ लेकिन यदि देश के नाम में **Union, United, Republic** या **Kingdom** शब्द का प्रयोग हो तो Article '**The**' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: **The** Soviet Union, **the** United States, **the** Irish Republic

4. पर्वत शृंखला के साथ '**The**' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: **The** Himalayas, **the** Alps,

➤ लेकिन पर्वत की चोटी के नाम के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

जैसे: Mt. Everest, Mt. Abu.

5. **Nationality** (राष्ट्रीयता) व्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों से पूर्व '**The**' का प्रयोग करें लेकिन भाषा के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग न करें।

**The** English speak English.

**The** English defeated **the** French.

6. बिमारियों के नाम के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता।

अपवाद:

**The** Measles, **the** Rickets, **the** Mumps, **the** Plague, **the** Flu.

7. नीचे दिए गये **Proper Noun** के साथ **Article** 'The' का प्रयोग करें। साथ में कुछ उदाहरण प्रत्येक बिन्दु को स्पष्ट करने के लिए दिए गए हैं

(a) नदियों के नाम: जैसे- **The** Yamuna, **the** Ganga, **the** Godawari, **the** Sutlej.

(b) समुद्र के नाम: जैसे- **The** Arabian sea, **the** Caribbean sea.

(c) महासागर के नाम: जैसे- **The** Indian Ocean, **the** Pacific Ocean, **the** Atlantic Ocean.

(d) द्वीप के समूह: जैसे- **The** lakshdweep, **the** Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

(e) भौगोलिक पिण्ड के नाम- जैसे: **The** Sun, **the** Venus, etc.

नोट: जो वस्तु **Unique** हैं, उससे पूर्व '**the**' का प्रयोग होता है; जैसे:

➤ **The** world, **the** universe, etc. लेकिन Heaven, Hell, God, Parliament के पूर्व '**article**' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है;

जैसे: (a) The world is in danger due to green house effect.

(b) Go to hell.

(c) God resides in heaven.

(d) The Bill was passed in Parliament.

➤ **Environment** एवं **Atmosphere** से पूर्व '**The**' का प्रयोग किया जाता है;

जैसे: (a) The atmosphere consists of three layers.

(b) We must protect the environment.

➤ जब **Space** का अर्थ 'अंतरिक्ष' होता है, तो **Space** से पूर्व **article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, लेकिन यदि **Space** 'जगह' के अर्थ में प्रयुक्त हुआ है तो '**The**' का प्रयोग होगा;

जैसे: (a) Many astronauts dream of going to space.

(b) He tried to park his car but **the** space was not sufficient.

8. दिशाओं के नाम: जैसे- **The** East, **the** West, etc.

लेकिन यदि इनके साथ किसी **Place** का नाम जोड़ा गया हो तो '**The**' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। जैसे: **West Bengal**.

➤ इसी तरह **Northern, Southern, Eastern, Western** से पूर्व **article** नहीं आता है; जैसे: **Western India**.

कुछ अन्य उदाहरण-

जैसे: 1. **The** sun rises in **the** east.

2. He is going to **North America**.

3. Rajasthan is in **Western India**.

4. Sweden is in **Northern Europe**.

9. खाड़ी के नाम: जैसे- **The** Bay of Bengal

10. रेगिस्तान के नाम: जैसे- **The** Sahara desert

11. नहरों के नाम: जैसे- **The** Suez Canal

12. समाचार पत्र के नाम: जैसे- **The** Hindu, **The** Times of India

13. पवित्र ग्रंथ के नाम: जैसे- **The** Gita, **the** Bible

➤ लेकिन **Valmiki's Ramayan, Banabhatt's Kadambiri**, जैसी स्थिति में, इनके पूर्व '**The**' नहीं लगता है क्योंकि यहाँ धार्मिक ग्रंथ के नाम के पहले उसके लेखक का भी नाम जुड़ा हुआ है।

14. ऐतिहासिक इमारतों के नाम: जैसे- **The** Taj Mahal, **the** Red Fort.

➤ बहुत-सी महत्त्वपूर्ण **Buildings** एवं **Monuments** के नाम दो शब्दों से मिलकर बने होते हैं। जिनमें से एक शब्द किसी व्यक्ति या स्थान का नाम होता है, ऐसे नाम के साथ '**The**' का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता; जैसे:

**Delhi Airport, Victoria Palace, London Zoo, Jai Singh Palace, Indira Gandhi Airport**

15. आंदोलन के नाम: जैसे- **The** Quit India movement

16. संगठन के नाम: जैसे- **The** United Nations,

17. रेल/हवाई मार्ग के नाम: जैसे- **The** Jet Airways, **the** Intercity, **the** Rajdhani Express.

18. राजनैतिक पार्टियों के नाम: जैसे- **The** B.J.P, **the** Congress, **the** Communist Party.

19. अधिनियम/संवैधानिक इकाई के नाम: जैसे- **The** Indian Penal Code, **the** Legislature

20. वाद यंत्र के नाम: जैसे- **The** Flute, **the** Violin

**Article**

21. धार्मिक समुदायों के नाम: जैसे- **The** Hindus, **the** Muslims, **the** Sikhs.
  22. व्यक्ति के पद के पूर्व: जैसे- **The** Chairman, **the** Director ( अगर 'एक' के संदर्भ में पद का उल्लेख हो तो **a director, an author** इत्यादि भी हो सकता है। यानि **a/an** का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है।)
  23. किसी आविष्कार (**Invention**) के नाम के पूर्व: जैसे- **The** telescope.
  24. समिति, क्लब तथा ट्रस्ट के नाम के पूर्व: जैसे- **The** Lions' Club, **The** Rotary Club.
  25. वंशजों के नाम: जैसे- **The** Marathas, **the** Peshwas.
  26. शरीर के अंगों (**Parts of the body**) के पूर्व '**the**' का प्रयोग तभी होता है जब **possessive adjective (my, his, etc.)** के स्थान पर **Article** का प्रयोग हो; जैसे- He was wounded in **his/the** eye.
  27. तारीख के साथ: जैसे- **The** 10<sup>th</sup> of May.
  28. सशस्त्र बल के साथ: जैसे- **The** Army, **the** Police.
  29. ग्रहों (**Planets**) के नाम के साथ: जैसे- **The** Venus, **the** Mars.
  30. होटल के नाम के साथ: जैसे- **The** Taj Hotel.
  31. खेल की टॉफी एवं कप के नाम के साथ: जैसे- **The** World Cup.
  32. युद्ध, क्रांति एवं सदी के नाम के साथ: जैसे- **The** French revolution, the Middle Ages.
- नीचे दिये गये **Proper Noun** के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग न करें।
1. महीने के नाम: June, July, September etc.
  2. दिन के नाम: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday etc.
  3. विषयों के नाम: Mathematics, Physics etc.
  4. मार्ग के नाम: M.G. Road, Mall Road etc.
  5. **Meals** के नाम: Lunch, Dinner, etc.
  6. भाषा के नाम: English, Hindi, etc.
  7. **Hobbies** के साथ: Gardening, singing.
  8. खेल के नाम के साथ: Hockey, Cricket.
  9. **Noun Complement** के पहले; **appoint, make, elect, select** के साथ।  
जैसे: They elected him **the** president.

**COMMON NOUN:**

1. जब कोई वस्तु **Understood** होती है तो उससे पूर्व '**The**' का प्रयोग होता है; जैसे:  
(a) Kindly return **the** book. (That I gave you)  
(b) Can you turn off **the** light? (The light in the room.)
2. अगर **Singular Common Noun** के पहले **Article** का प्रयोग किया जाये तो वह पूरी प्रजाति का उल्लेख कर सकता है पर इनके साथ **Singular verb** का प्रयोग होगा।  
जैसे: **A** dog **is** a faithful animal.  
नोट:- सिर्फ **man** के उल्लेख मात्र से अर्थ मानव जाति निकलता है।  
जैसे: Man **is** mortal.
3. जब कोई **Noun** किसी व्यक्ति के अंदर मौजूद गुण, भाव या अभिव्यक्ति को व्यक्त करे, तो उससे पूर्व **article** का प्रयोग होता है;

जैसे: (a) **The** judge (moral of judge) in him, prevailed upon **the** father (Love of father for his son) and he sentenced his son to death.

(b) **A** mother (feelings of motherhood) was born in her when she saw the baby.

4. जब **स्कूल, कॉलेज, मन्दिर** इत्यादि का उल्लेख उनके **प्राथमिक उद्देश्य** के संदर्भ में हो तब **article** का प्रयोग न करें।

जैसे: Children should go to school.

I go to temple every morning.

➤ लेकिन जब **स्कूल, कॉलेज** इत्यादि का उल्लेख किसी बिल्डिंग या स्थान के संदर्भ में हो तब Article का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: My house is behind a school.

The college is next to the temple.

### **ABSTRACT/MATERIAL NOUN:**

➤ **Abstract/Material noun** के साथ सामान्यतः **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता। वैसे भी ये **Uncountable Nouns** है। **A/An** का प्रयोग तो हो भी नहीं सकता है।

Gold is precious.

Honesty is the best policy.

➤ लेकिन अगर हम इन Noun का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गये **Sentence formation** में करें तो तब Article '**The**' का प्रयोग होगा।

**Article + Noun + of + ...**

The cotton of Egypt is known for its superior quality.

The honesty of this boy is liked by all.

### **USE OF ARTICLE WITH ADJECTIVE**

1. **Superlative degree** से पूर्व '**the**' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे: (a) He is **the best** student of our class.

(b) She is **the most** beautiful girl of the town.

2. **Comparative Degree** से पूर्व **article 'the'** का प्रयोग किया जाता है जब दो **comparative degree** को एक दूसरे से **directly** या **inversely proportional** दिखाया जाए;

जैसे: (a) **The more** electricity you use, **the higher** your bill will be.

(b) **The higher** you rise, **the greater** is the fall.

3. अगर दो में से एक का चुनाव किया जाए तो **Comparative degree** का प्रयोग होता है जिसके पहले '**the**' और जिसके बाद '**of**' का प्रयोग होगा;

जैसे: (a) He is **the stronger of** the two wrestlers.

(b) She is **the better of** the two players.

➤ अगर सभी में से एक का चुनाव किया जाए तो **superlative degree** का प्रयोग होगा। **Superlative Degree** के पहले भी **article 'the'** और उसके बाद '**of**' का प्रयोग होगा।

**Article**

जैसे: She is **the best of** all the players.

4. जब **Adjectives** जैसे **honest, rich, poor, meek** इत्यादि के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो वह पूरे वर्ग को सम्बोधित करता है। इनके साथ **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे: (a) The honest are always rewarded.

(b) The rich exploit the poor.

(c) The young and the old, the poor and the rich, all demand corruption free India.

5. किसी **Proper noun** के बाद या साथ जब कोई **Adjective/Noun** उसी **Noun** को **qualify** करते हुए लगाया जाता है तो **Proper Noun** के बाद 'the' का प्रयोग होता है;

जैसे: Ashoka, **the great, the great Akbar.**

Napolean, **the warrior.**

6. **Ordinals** से पूर्व 'The' का प्रयोग किया जाता है। **first, second, third...ordinals** तथा **one, two, three...cardinals** कहलाते हैं;

जैसे: (a) Chapter **two** of this book is very difficult.

(b) **The second** chapter of this book is very difficult.

(c) Volume **one** is on verbs.

(d) **The first** volume is on verbs.

7. **Adjective 'same'** एवं '**whole**' के पहले और '**all**' एवं '**both**' के बाद **article 'the'** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे: (a) He is **the same** boy that met me in the market.

(b) **The whole** period was wasted.

8. **Few** एवं **little** के साथ 'a' एवं 'the' लगाने पर उनके अर्थ परिवर्तित हो जाते हैं।

<b>Few</b>	→ a few	( संख्या में कम है लेकिन है )
	→ few	( संख्या में इतना कम की ना के बराबर है )
	→ the few	( संख्या में कम लेकिन निर्धारित व जिसके तरफ हम इंगित कर सकते हैं। )
<b>Little</b>	→ a little	( मात्रा में कम है लेकिन है )
	→ little	( मात्रा में इतना कम की ना के बराबर है )
	→ the little	( मात्रा में कम लेकिन निर्धारित व जिसके तरफ हम इंगित कर सकते हैं। )

9. यदि **Adjective** से पहले **so, as, too, how, quite** का प्रयोग होता है तो उसके बाद **A/An (Indefinite Article)** का प्रयोग किया जाता है;

जैसे: (a) It is too heavy **a** box for me to carry.

(b) Rohit is not so big **a** businessman as you think.

**USE OF ARTICLE ACCORDING TO SUBJECT – VERB AGREEMENT**

1. यदि दो या दो से अधिक **Noun** एक ही व्यक्ति के लिए प्रयुक्त हुए हों तो 'The' का प्रयोग प्रथम **Noun** के पूर्व किया जाता है;

जैसे: (a) The secretary and treasurer was present there.

(b) The director and Producer has come for the shooting.



- यहाँ Secretary and treasurer तथा director and producer एक ही व्यक्ति है।  
लेकिन अगर अलग-अलग व्यक्ति को सम्बोधित करना हो तो article 'the' का प्रयोग सभी पद के पहले करें।  
जैसे: (a) The secretary and the treasurer were present there.
- यहाँ secretary एवं treasurer अलग-अलग व्यक्ति है।

### A/AN ,oaONE ds chp dk varj

- 1. A/An Article हैं, जबकि One एक Adjective है।**
- 2. प्रतिदिन, प्रति सप्ताह, प्रति किलो, कीमत या दर के लिए 'a' का प्रयोग ही किया जायेगा 'one' का नहीं।**  
Ten rupees a kilo, four times a day, Sixty kilometers an hour, Twelve rupees a dozen.
- 3. 'a' एवं 'one' का noun के साथ प्रयोग करने पर भिन्न-भिन्न अर्थ निकलता है। A/An का अर्थ any या every से भी होता है;**  
जैसे: One cow is not enough for the family's requirement. (We need two or more cows.)  
A cow is a useful animal. (Cows are useful.)
- 4. 'One' का प्रयोग another/other के साथ किया जा सकता है, 'a' का प्रयोग नहीं;**  
जैसे: (a) One student wants to study, another wants to play.  
(b) One day he comes, the other day he does not.
- 5. 'One' का प्रयोग day/week/month/year/summer/winter etc. के नाम के पूर्व किया जा सकता है जो उस दिन/समय होने वाली किसी घटना के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त होता है;**  
जैसे: (a) One night there was a terrible storm.  
(b) One day Ravana came to Sita's cottage.
- 6. One day का प्रयोग 'किसी दिन' के अर्थ में किया जाता है;**  
जैसे: (a) One day you'll realise your mistake.  
(b) One day you will feel sorry for what you have done.
- 7. 'One' का प्रयोग 'a/an' के pronoun के समरूप भी किया जाता है;**  
जैसे: (a) Did you get any berth? Yes, I managed to get one.  
➤ 'One' का बहुवचन (plural) उक्त प्रयोग में 'some' होगा;  
जैसे: Did you get berths? Yes I managed to get some.
- 8. 'Noun' के 'repetition' से बचने के लिए pronoun 'one' the का प्रयोग होता है।**  
जैसे: (a) This car is better than that one.

---

### SPOTTING THE ERROR

---

- (a) The loss of jobs/ (b) is regarded by some as an necessary evil/ (c) in the fight against inflation./ (d) No error.
- (a) It is a/ (b) quarter to ten/ (c) by my watch./ (d) No error.
- (a) Gita doesn't usually/ (b) wear jewellery but yesterday/ (c) she wore ring./ (d) No error.

**Article**

4. (a) The police asked us/ (b) about our movements/ (c) on a night of crime./ (d) No error.
5. (a) In science the credit goes to a man/ (b) who convinces the world,/ (c) not to the man to whom the idea first occurs./ (d) No error.
6. (a) It is only after/ (b) the match is over/ (c) that people realize/ how exciting it is./ (d) No error.
7. (a) Of the two/ (b) sisters, she/ (c) is better./ (d) No error.
8. (a) It is unfortunate enough/ (b) to lose few friends we make/ (c) during our school days./ (d) No error.
9. (a) There were a number of intelligent gentlemen at the party/ (b) but it was Mr. Subramaniam, an eminent scientist,/ (c) who remained a centre of attraction./ (d) No error.
10. (a) I have been/ (b) informed that/ (c) Mr. Sharma, the director and the chairman will visit Patna the following month./ (d) No error.
11. (a) He is/ (b) the best worker/ (c) of the factory but unfortunately least paid./ (d) No error.
12. (a) He has come out/ (b) with an unique proposal/ (c) for his friends (d) No error.
13. (a) When the house was/ (b) set on the fire, all the people/ (c) started shouting at the top of their voices./ (d) No error.
14. (a) Little knowledge/ (b) of medicine that he possessed/ (c) proved to be a blessing for him when he was in great pain./ (d) No error.
15. (a) It was/ (b) by a mistake/ (c) that he injured her hand./ (d) No error.
16. (a) These orders of/ (b) the Manager/ (c) may put the lives of two thousand workers in a danger./ (d) No error.
17. (a) I inspired him/ (b) to take the heart/ (c) in all adverse situations and deserve to be called a real hero./ (d) No error.
18. (a) The most happy/ (b) marriage would be/ (c) a union of a deaf man and a blind woman./ (d) No error.
19. (a) John suggested to/ (b) the children of his village that they should/ (c) go to the school regularly and do their home work sincerely./ (d) No error.
20. (a) Some people say that/ (b) her husband is in the jail/ (c) and so she lives alone./ (d) No error.
21. (a) The Greek peoples/ (b) are considered/ (c) very brave/ (d) No error.
22. (a) His father/ (b) asked him to go/ (c) to the temple every morning/ (d) No error.
23. (a) There was little/ (b) milk in the refrigerator and she gave it/ (c) to her crying son./ (d) No error.
24. (a) He leads/ (b) a very luxurious life / (c) so he goes to every part of India by a car./ (d) No error.
25. (a) Thanks to an effort/ (b) and persistence of the doctors, the victims of the blast/ (c) have been able to start a normal life again./ (d) No error.
26. (a) In a hour's time/ (b) I will be back/ (c) but now I have to go./ (d) No error.
27. (a) Terrorist organizations/ (b) kill innocent people/ (c) to spread a violence./ (d) No error.
28. (a) Whole world is/ (b) today facing the threat of extinction/ (c) due to the inventions of Science./ (d) No error.
29. (a) The answer/ (b) to all the sufferings of / (c) human beings lies in the Science./ (d) No error.
30. (a) The police should exercise/ (b) their authority with little/ (c) bit of sensitivity

- and humanity./ (d) No error.
31. (a) This is/ (b) most important/ (c) lesson which we will have to study very carefully./ No error.
32. (a)The Ganges/ (b) is for North India/ (c) what Krishna is for South India./ (d) No error.
33. (a) I like to travel/ (b) by the air as/ (c) I am a very busy person./ (d) No error.
34. (a) The Chairman and the Trustee/ (b) was removed from his/ (c) post because he had misappropriated the fund./ (d) No error.
35. (a) She found/ (b) herself in a trouble/ (c) when she saw the stalker following her persistently./ (d) No error.
36. (a) All the people/ (b) of India know that/ (c) Gandhi ji was a very wise and a noble soul./ (d) No error.
37. (a) The man/ (b) is the only creature/ (c) that is endowed with the art of humour./ (d) No error.
38. (a) It is very difficult/ (b) to find out the number of/ (c) the creatures living on the earth./ (d) No error.
39. (a) While climbing/ (b)the hill, to his amazement , the/ (c) poor man found the box of pearls./ (d) No error.
40. (a) The blast derailed the lives / (b)of many people but in an year/ (c) time leaving apart the victims,no one remembered anything/ (d) No error.
41. (a)Cowards die/ (b) several times,/ (c) the braves die but once/ (d) No error.
42. (a) Akbar became a heir/ (b)to the throne at/ (c) a young age of thirteen/ (d) No error.
43. (a) The both brothers/ (b) are safe now/ (c) and are recuperating./ (d) No error.
44. (a) When the principal entered the classroom/ (b) all boys shook/ (c) in their shoes/ (d) No error.
45. (a) Father in him/ (b) could not bear the condition of/ (c) his ailing daughter/ (d) No error.
46. (a) Let judge in you/ (b) decide what/ (c) punishment should be given to him/ (d) No error.
47. (a) My teacher said that/ (b) Sun is a/ (c) star/ (d) No error.
48. (a) Due to its beauty/ (b) Kashmir is known as/ (c) Switzerland of India/ (d) No error.
49. (a) Most of the people of Southern India/ (b) do not know/ (c) the Hindi/ (d) No error.
50. (a) He went for the lunch/ (b) at 1 p.m. and then/ (c) returned/ (d) No error.
51. (a) The honesty/ (b) is/ (c) a virtue./ (d) No error.
52. (a) Every morning the Sun/ (b) rises/ (c) in east/ (d) No error.
53. (a) He is/ (b) best player/ (c) in India./ (d) No error.
54. (a) When I met him/ (b) the couple of days back/ (c) he was writing a new book,/ (d) No error.

---

### **Answers with explanation**

---

1. (b) 'necessary evil' के पहले 'an' नहीं 'a' का प्रयोग करें। 'necessary' vowel नहीं consonant sound से शुरू होता है।
2. (a) 'Quarter to ten' के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

**Article**

3. (c) 'ring' singular countable noun है जिसका पहली बार जिक्र हो रहा है। अतः 'a' का प्रयोग करें।
4. (c) 'night of crime' वह निश्चित रात है जिस रात crime हुआ। अतः definite article 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
5. (a) जिस व्यक्ति ने world को convince किया वह निश्चित व्यक्ति है। अतः definite article 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
6. (b) यहाँ किसी निश्चित match की बात नहीं की जा रही है अतः 'the' का प्रयोग गलत है। वाक्य का अर्थ है कि जब कोई match खत्म हो जाता है तब लोग समझ पाते हैं वह match कितना exciting था। अतः match के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग करें।
7. (c) better के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें। अगर दो में से एक का चुनाव किया जाता है तो comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है जिसके पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
8. (b) यहाँ 'few' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ उन कुछ दोस्तों की बात हो रही है जिन्हें हम school days में दोस्त बना लेते हैं। वे दोस्त निश्चित noun है अतः definite article 'the' का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (c) 'centre of attraction' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें। क्योंकि 'Mr. Subramaniam' निश्चित noun है अतः definite article 'the' का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (c) यहाँ एक ही व्यक्ति Mr. Sharma को दो पद उपलब्ध है। अतः सिर्फ director के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें, Chairman के पहले नहीं। (sub-verb agreement देखें)
11. (c) 'Least' superlative degree of adjective है। अतः least के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि adjective के superlative degree के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
12. (b) Unique 'यू' sound से शुरू होता है। अतः 'an' नहीं 'a' का प्रयोग करें।
13. (b) 'Set on fire' उपयुक्त Phrase है।
14. (a) यहाँ 'little' का प्रयोग 'थोड़ा सा' के संदर्भ में प्रयुक्त हो रहा है 'न' के बराबर के संदर्भ में नहीं। फिर 'medicine' शब्द से ये definite भी हो जा रहा है अतः 'the little' का प्रयोग करें। वैसे यहाँ 'a little' का भी प्रयोग करना ठीक रहेगा।
15. (b) 'By mistake' सही प्रयोग है।
16. (c) 'in danger' सही प्रयोग होता है।
17. (b) 'to take heart' सही phrase है। इसका अर्थ है आशावादी होना।
18. (c) 'Union' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ किसी एक 'union' की बात नहीं हो रही है।
19. (c) अगर 'school' से हमारा तात्पर्य 'पढ़ाई करना' है तो 'school' के पहले article का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
20. (b) यहाँ 'jail' से हमारा तात्पर्य jail के प्राथमिक उद्देश्य सजा से है अतः jail के पहले article का प्रयोग न करें।
21. (a) 'Peoples' का अर्थ है विभिन्न नस्ल के लोग। 'The Greeks/The Greek people' से हम पूरे Greek नस्ल को सम्बोधित करते हैं। अतः 'peoples' शब्द का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
22. (c) यहाँ 'temple' से हमारा तात्पर्य पूजा है। अतः temple के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
23. (a) यहाँ हमारा तात्पर्य थोड़ा सा दूध है जिसे बच्चे को दिया गया अतः 'a little' का प्रयोग करें।
24. (c) 'By car' सही प्रयोग होगा।
25. (a) 'effort' के पहले 'the' लगाये। यहाँ एक effort की बात नहीं हो रही है।
26. (a) 'hour' का उच्चारण 'अ' से शुरू होता है। अतः hour के पहले 'a' नहीं 'an' का प्रयोग करें।
27. (c) 'Violence' Countable नहीं है। अतः 'violence' के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

28. (a) Whole के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
29. (c) किसी भी विषय के नाम के साथ article का प्रयोग नहीं होता। 'Science' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग न करें।
30. (b) little के पहले a का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'a little' का अर्थ होता है 'थोड़ा-सा' और 'little' का अर्थ होता है 'न के बराबर'।
31. (b) 'most' superlative degree है। अतः most के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
32. (c) Krishna के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि नदियों के नाम के साथ 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
33. (b) 'by air' सही प्रयोग है।
34. (a) वाक्य से ज्ञात होता है कि दोनों पद एक ही व्यक्ति को हासिल है। अतः 'the' का प्रयोग सिर्फ पहले पद (chairman) के लिए करें। 'Trustee' के पहले का 'the' हटा दें।
35. (b) 'trouble' uncountable noun है। अतः उसके पहले 'a' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता।
36. (c) Gandhiji (एक व्यक्ति) के दो विशेषताओं का उल्लेख हो रहा है। अतः 2<sup>nd</sup> adjective 'noble' के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग गलत है।
37. (a) 'Man' का अर्थ होता है मानव जाति। अतः 'man' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग न करें।
38. (c) 'Creatures' के पहले का 'the' हटा दे। 'number of' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग हो चुका है।
39. (c) 'a box of pearls' सही प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि उस 'poor' man' का इसकी जानकारी नहीं थी अतः box of pearls उसके लिए definite नहीं था।
40. (b) 'year' के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग होता है। year का उच्चारण 'इ' से नहीं 'य' से शुरू होता है।
41. (c) 'The brave' का अर्थ है सभी वीर। 'brave' adjective है। Adjective का बहुवचन नहीं बनाया जा सकता 'Cowards' noun है।
42. (a) 'heir' का उच्चारण 'ए' से शुरू होता है। अतः 'heir' के पहले 'an' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'the' का प्रयोग भी उपयुक्त रहता।
43. (a) Both के बाद 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
44. (b) 'All' के बाद 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
45. (a) 'father' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें। जब किसी व्यक्ति के अंदर मौजूद किसी व्यक्तित्व का उल्लेख करना हो तो उसके पहले article का प्रयोग होता है।
46. (a) प्रश्न 45 की व्याख्या देखें।
47. (b) 'sun' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
48. (c) 'Switzerland' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
49. (c) 'Hindi' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग न करें।
50. (a) 'lunch' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग न करें।
51. (a) 'The' हटा दे। Abstract noun के साथ 'article' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
52. (c) 'east' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
53. (b) 'best' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होगा।
54. (b) 'The' को 'a' में परिवर्तित करें।

# 14

## PREPOSITION

### CHAPTER

**Preposition** वह शब्द या शब्द समूह है जो किसी **Noun** या **Pronoun** के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर उस **Noun** या **Pronoun** का अन्य शब्दों के साथ संबंध बताता है; जैसे-

- (i) There is a cat sitting **under** the table.
- (ii) We need a roof **over** us.
- (iii) I go to school **by** bus

**नोट:** **Preposition** का प्रयोग **Noun** या **Pronoun** के पहले नहीं भी हो सकता है;

- जैसे:** (i) Who was he talking **to**?
- (ii) He does not have a pen to write **with**.

### CONFUSING PAIR OF PREPOSITION

<b>Between</b> - <b>Among</b>	<b>Beside</b> - <b>Besides</b>	<b>For</b> - <b>Since</b>
<b>Across</b> - <b>Through</b>	<b>on</b> - <b>upon</b>	<b>on</b> - <b>over</b>
<b>in</b> - <b>into</b>	<b>in</b> - <b>within</b>	<b>by</b> - <b>with</b>
<b>before</b> - <b>in front of</b>	<b>at</b> - <b>in</b>	<b>in spite of</b> - <b>despite</b>

#### (1) **Among**                      **Between**

➤ **Among** का प्रयोग हमेशा दो से अधिक के संदर्भ में होता है।

- जैसे:** 1. A lot of co-operation is needed among the different States to combat naxalism.
2. Alms were distributed **among** the beggars.
3. The teacher distributed sweets **among** them.

➤ **Between** का अर्थ है 'दो के बीच में'।

among

**जैसे:** The match will be played between India and Australia.

➤ **Between** का प्रयोग दो से अधिक के लिए भी होता है बशर्ते उनमें पारस्परिक संबंध (**Mutual relationship**) हो;

- जैसे:** (i) There is a tournament to be played **between** India , Australia and New Zealand.
- (ii) There is an alliance **between** the **three European nations**.

➤ **Between** के बाद हमेशा **objective case** का प्रयोग होता है;

जैसे: (i) There is no enmity **between him** and **me** (न कि he and I)

➤ **Between** के बाद '**and**' Conjunction का प्रयोग किया जाता है;

जैसे: (i) The meeting will be held **between** 10 a.m. **and** 4 p.m.

➤ **Between** के बाद **Noun** या **Pronoun** हमेशा **Plural form** में होता है;

जैसे: (i) Between **the countries**.

(ii) Between **the students**.

(iii) Between **them**.

(iv) Between **us**.

➤ **Between** के बाद कभी भी **each, every** आदि का प्रयोग नहीं होता है;

जैसे: (i) Between **each boy**. (×)

(ii) Between **every girl**. (×)

➤ **Amongst** का प्रयोग **among** के अर्थ में होता है। दोनों के प्रयोग के बीच का अंतर देखें:-

(a) '**The**' से पहले '**amongst**' एवं '**among**' दोनों का प्रयोग हो सकता है;

जैसे: (i) **Among the** boys.

या,

(ii) **Amongst the** boys.

➤ '**Among**' का प्रयोग **Consonant Sound** से शुरू होने वाले शब्दों के पहले तथा **amongst** का प्रयोग **Vowel Sound** से शुरू होने वाले शब्दों के पहले होता है;

जैसे: (i) **among** them

(ii) **amongst** us

➤ **Amid** तथा **Amidst** का प्रयोग भी दो से अधिक के लिए होता है। इनके प्रयोग में वही अन्तर है जो **among** तथा **amongst** के प्रयोग में है। **Amid** एवं **amidst** का प्रयोग **uncountable noun** के साथ भी होता है।

जैसे: (i) The Bill was passed **amid** pandemonium.

(ii) You are sitting **amidst** us and talking against us.

## (2) **Beside** **Besides**

के बगल में                      के अलावा या के अतिरिक्त

जैसे: (i) He sat **beside** me.

(ii) **Besides** his children, his nephews and nieces were also present at the ceremony.

## (3) **For** **Since**

➤ जब अवधि का उल्लेख हो तो **Perfect** एवं **Perfect Continuous Tense** में '**for**' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: 1. I have eaten nothing **for** a long time.

2. She has been living here **for** ten years.

➤ जब शुरुआती समय का उल्लेख हो तो **Perfect** एवं **Perfect Continuous Tense** में '**since**' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: I haven't seen him **since** 2009.

**Preposition**

➤ **Since** का प्रयोग 'चुकिं/ क्योंकि' के अर्थ में भी होता है।

जैसे: **Since** he drove recklessly, he met with an accident.

➤ **Since, because** एवं **as** का Pair **so** नहीं होता है।

since....., (✓),                      since ..... so /therefore(×)

as ..... , (✓),                      as..... so /therefore (×)

because ..... , (✓),              because..... so/therefore (×)

जैसे: **Since** I was ill so I could not come. (×)

**Since** I was ill , I could not come. (✓)

नोट: **As** you sow, **so** shall you reap

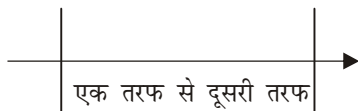
उपरोक्त Phrase में **as** के साथ **so** का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ **as.....so** का अर्थ 'जैसा ..... वैसा' निकलता है।

➤ '**For**' का अर्थ 'के लिए' भी होता है।

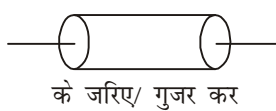
जैसे: The police is **for** our safety.

(4)

**Across**



**Through**



जैसे: 1. I swam **across** the river.

1.The message was conveyed to me by him **through** her.

2.The train passed **through** the tunnel.

**Across** का प्रयोग भी कई अर्थों में होता है—

➤ उस पार (**on the opposite side of**)

(i) He is waiting for me **across** the road.

➤ दोनों तरफ (**both sides**)

(i) A tree fell **across** the railway line that caused the accident.

➤ **come across** ( अचानक मुलाकात होना )

(i) When I was going to college, I **suddenly came across** my childhood friend.(×)

नोट: (1) ध्यान रखें कि '**come across**' का अर्थ है 'अचानक मुलाकात होना'। अतः '**come across**' के साथ '**suddenly**' का प्रयोग न करें।

When I was going to college, I **came across** my childhood friend. (✓)

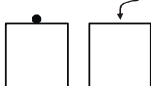
(2) **come across** के साथ **with** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

जैसे: (i) I came across with him. (×)

(ii) I came across him. (✓)

(5)

**on upon**



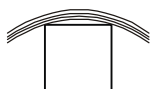


- जैसे: 1. The book is **on** the table. (यहाँ **on** का अर्थ है- के ऊपर - एक दूसरे के स्पर्श में हैं)  
2. The cat jumped **upon** the rat. (यहाँ **upon** का अर्थ है- के ऊपर - **motion** में।)

(6) **over**



- जैसे: We need a roof **over** our head. (यहाँ **over** का अर्थ है- के ऊपर पर स्पर्श में नहीं।)  
➤ अगर किसी वस्तु पर किसी चीज का आवरण हो तो '**over**' का प्रयोग करे चाहे वो touch में हो या नहीं।



- जैसे: 1. The bridge was built **over** the river.  
2. Put a blanket **over** the baby.

(7) **Over** तथा **Under** का प्रयोग **vertical position** बताने के लिए होता है;



- जैसे: (i) There is a fan **over** your head.  
(ii) A cat is sitting **under** the table.

(8) **In** **Into**



- जैसे: 1. We are sitting **in** the classroom. (यहाँ **in** का अर्थ है- में/ के अंदर)  
2. The boy jumped **into** the river. (यहाँ **into** का अर्थ है- के अंदर आता हुआ- **motion** में)  
**नोट:** Enter के साथ 'into' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। यहाँ 'Throw' के साथ भी 'into' नहीं 'in' का प्रयोग करें।

- जैसे: He entered ~~into~~ the room. (into हटा दें)  
He threw the ball into the well. (into के स्थान पर **in** का प्रयोग करें)

**नोट:** **Enter into agreement/alliance** एवं **enter on/upon** (अर्थ: **to undertake**) का प्रयोग करना सही है।

(9) **On time** **In time**  
समय पर समय से

- जैसे: 1. We reach the examination centre **in** time.  
2. The examination starts **on** time.  
3. We thought that the train would be late but it arrived exactly ~~in~~ **on** time.

(10) **By** **With**  
के द्वारा से (औजार या हथियार)

- जैसे: 1. The paper was signed **by** him **with** a parker pen **in** black ink.  
2. The snake was killed **by** the man **with** a stick.  
3. You cannot catch a big fish **with** a small rod.

(11) **Before** **In front of**  
के पहले/ के समक्ष के सामने

**Preposition**

के पहले:

जैसे: I came **before** you.

के समक्ष:

जैसे: India raised the issue of cross-border terrorism **before** the U.N.

**In front of:**

के सामने

जैसे: Don't park your car **in front of** my gate.

**(12) At - In**

➤ सापेक्ष रूप से छोटे स्थान के साथ 'at' का प्रयोग करे और बड़े स्थान के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: I live **at** Mukherji Nagar **in** Delhi.

**(13) In spite of      Despite**

के बावजूद                      के बावजूद

जैसे: **In spite of** working hard, he failed.

नोट: 'Despite' के साथ 'of' लगा कर error दिए जाते हैं। 'Despite' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग न करें।

जैसे: **Despite** being rich, he is not happy.

**(14) By - In**

जैसे: 1. I am sitting **in** the car. (✓)

2. I am going **in** car. (×)

3. I am going **by** car. (✓)

➤ किसी भी वाहन से यात्रा करते हुए दर्शाया जाये तो 'By + vehicle' का प्रयोग किया जाता है लेकिन अगर पैदल यात्रा करने की बात की जाये तब 'on foot' का प्रयोग करते हैं।

जैसे: I go to Paramount **on** foot.

<b>(15)</b>	<b>exact time (hour)</b>	<b>month</b>	<b>year</b>	<b>Day</b>	<b>Date</b>
	<b>at</b>	<b>in</b>	<b>in</b>	<b>on</b>	<b>on</b>

जैसे: I reached Delhi **at** 7 O' clock

**in** May

**in** 2005

**on** Monday

**on** 7th September

➤ 'At' का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित समय के साथ करें।

**at** dawn, **at** dusk, **at** day break, **at** sunrise, **at** noon, **at** sunset, **at** night, **at** midnight etc.

नोट: **Morning/evening** के साथ **in** का प्रयोग होता है। **Morning/evening** के साथ यदि **date/day** का प्रयोग हो, तो इनके पहले भी 'on' का प्रयोग होता है;

जैसे: (i) **in** the morning.

(ii) **in** the evening.

(iii) **on** sunday morning.

(iv) **on** the evening of May, the 2<sup>nd</sup>.

➤ **today, tomorrow, yesterday, the following day, the next day, yesterday evening, yesterday afternoon, last night, this morning, this afternoon, tonight, tomorrow**

**morning, tomorrow evening** आदि कि पहले **Preposition** का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है;

- जैसे: (i) He will go there on **tomorrow**. ('on' हटा दें)  
(ii) They arrived here on last night. ('on' हटा दें)

(16) **After** (के बाद) तथा **Before** (के पहले):

- जैसे: (i) He returned India **after** a long time.  
(ii) I left America **before** Christmas.

(17) **Till/until** का प्रयोग **Point of Time** के साथ होता है;

- जैसे: (i) The Government will not pass any Bill **until/till** next session.

(18) **By** का प्रयोग **Preposition of Time** के रूप में **Point of Time** के साथ होता है;

- जैसे: (i) We shall have finished the syllabus **by** the end of next month.

(19) **During** का प्रयोग अवधि (**duration**) बताने के लिए किया जाता है;

- जैसे: (i) **During** the strike, many people died.

(20) **Up**      **Down**      **Upto**  
    ↑            ↓            ↑

- जैसे: 1. He climbed **up** the tree.  
2. He ran **down** the stairs.  
3. Children can get free education **upto** the age of 14.

#### दोN वU; PREPOSITION-

(1) **TO** का प्रयोग लक्ष्य (**destination**) के लिए किया जाता है;

- जैसे: (i) Ram is going **to** college  
(ii) Send him **to** school.

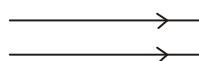
(2) **Towards** का अर्थ है 'की ओर' (**in the direction of**); यह दिशा बताता है, न कि लक्ष्य;

- जैसे: (i) He is going **towards** the college.

(3) **For** का प्रयोग भी **Preposition of direction** के रूप में लक्ष्य (**destination**) के लिए होता है;

- जैसे: (i) He is leaving **for** America tonight.

(4) **Along** ( समानान्तर )



➤ जब किसी एक को किसी दूसरी वस्तु के समानान्तर दर्शाना हो तब **along** का प्रयोग करते हैं।

- जैसे: 1. I walked **along** the railway line.  
2. He walks **along** the road. (न कि on the road)  
जब दो साथ-साथ समानान्तर हो तब **alongwith** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: come **alongwith** me.

(5) **Against** का प्रयोग कई अर्थों में है-

**Preposition**

➤ (a) प्रतिकूल (**opposite**)

जैसे: It is difficult to sail **against** current.

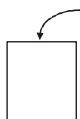
➤ (b) के विरुद्ध

जैसे: I am **against** terrorism.

➤ (c) सहारा लेकर या टेक लगाकर

जैसे: Do not stand **against** the railing. You may fall down.

(6) **Onto**



He jumped **onto** his horse and rode away.

(7) **With**

के साथ

जैसे: I am **with** you through all thick and thin.

(8) **Beyond**

के बाहर/ के परे

जैसे: The case is **beyond** the jurisdiction of the court.

(9) **About** का प्रयोग कई अर्थों में है-

➤ (a) के बारे में

जैसे: I know **about** him.

➤ (b) लगभग

जैसे: It is **about** 100 kms. away from Delhi.

➤ (c) 'about + Infinitive' ( कार्य तुरंत होने का भाव )

जैसे: I am **about to** start a new lesson.

➤ 'about + to+V<sub>1</sub>' के स्थान पर 'going + to+V<sub>1</sub>' या 'be + to + V<sub>1</sub>' का भी प्रयोग करने से वाक्य के

any form

भावार्थ में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है।

जैसे: 1. I am **going to** start a new lesson now.

2. The minister **is to** deliver a speech.

(10) **Above** तथा **Below** का प्रयोग **level** बताने के लिए होता है; किसी मानक (**standard**), स्तर (**level**) या चिन्ह (**mark**) से ऊपर **Above** का प्रयोग और उनसे नीचे **Below** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: (i) The river is flowing **above** the danger level.

(ii) His English is **below** average.

(iii) The selling price of every commodity in the Multiplex is **above** MRP.

(vi) The score was **below** hundred when the last batsman was declared out.

**(11) Of**

- 'Of' का प्रयोग निर्जीव का अधिकार दर्शाने के लिये किया जाता है।  
 जैसे: 1. Table's wood (×)                      2. Chair's leg (×)  
           Wood **of** table (✓)                      Leg **of** chair (✓)
- **Of** का प्रयोग विभिन्न अर्थों में होता है-
- **(a) स्रोत (origin)**  
 जैसे: (i) He comes **of** a royal family.  
 ➤ **(b) बिमारी से मरना - 'die of'. कारण से मरना - 'die from' .**  
 जैसे: (i) He died **of** cancer.  
 (ii) He died **from** thirst.
- **(c) संबंध (relation)**  
 जैसे: (i) The problems **of** Delhi.

**(12) Off से अलगाव (separation) का बोध होता है;**

जैसे: (i) Keep the dog **off** the flower beds.

**(13) Behind (पीछे)**

जैसे: (i) The police are running **behind** the thief.  
 (ii) She hid **behind** the curtain.

**PREPOSITION के बाद 'Objective Case' का प्रयोग;**

**(1) Preposition के बाद Objective Case का प्रयोग होता है;**

जैसे: (i) I do not depend on him.  
Prep. Objective Case

(ii) She relies on me.  
Prep. Objective Case

**(2) यदि दो ऐसे शब्दों को किसी Conjunction (and, or) आदि से जोड़ना हो जिनके बाद भिन्न-भिन्न Prepositions लगते हैं तो इन शब्दों के साथ प्रयुक्त होने वाले Prepositions को स्पष्ट कर देना चाहिए;**

जैसे: (i) She is **conscious of** and **engaged in** her work.  
 (ii) I was **surprised at** as well as **pleased with** her performance.  
 (iii) He is senior and older **than** I. (Use 'to' after 'senior')  
 (iv) His watch is different and cheaper **than** mine. (Use 'from' after 'different')  
 (v) She is younger and taller **than** her brother. (✓)

**(3) अगर Prepositions के बाद 'verb' का प्रयोग होता है तो verb 'v<sub>1</sub>+ing' form में होना चाहिए।**

जैसे: I am **looking forward to going** to London.  
V<sub>1</sub>+ing

**Preposition**

जैसे: He is afraid **of going** out after sunset.  
V<sub>1</sub>+ing

(4) **Home** शब्द के पहले किसी **Preposition** का प्रयोग नहीं होता यदि इसके पहले निम्नलिखित में से किसी भी verb का प्रयोग हो;

जैसे: **Bring, go, get, arrive, reach.**

(i) I went home by car.

नोट: किन्तु, यदि '**home**' के पहले कोई '**Possessive Case**' के Adjective (जैसे: **my, your, his, her, our, their**) या **noun** के साथ '**s**' (जैसे: Ram's, Rohit's) आदि का प्रयोग हो तो **home** के पहले '**to**' का प्रयोग होता है;

जैसे: (i) I went **to his home**.

(ii) I decided to go **to Ram's home**.

(5) **Stress, emphasise, investigate, comprise, accompany, consider, violate, pervade, precede, succeed, invade, resist, enter, eschew, direct, join, sign, affect, ensure, board, discuss, describe, reach, order, tell, demand, attack, control, resemble, और ridicule.**

जब ये **verbs 'Active Voice'** में प्रयोग किये जा रहे हों तो इनके बाद किसी **Preposition** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

जैसे: 1. The teacher emphasised on the need of discipline in life. (Drop 'on').

2. I have ordered for a cup of tea. (Drop 'for')

3. I shall discuss about the problem with you. (Drop 'about')

4. (a) He described/ (b) about the incident/ (c) in his story./ (d) No error

[ (b) में 'about' का प्रयोग गलत है। ]

(6) संवाद (Communication) में प्रयोग किए जाने वाले verb (जो किसी कर्म (object) के पहले आता हो) के साथ **to** का प्रयोग न करें। ये verb हैं: **advise, tell, ask, beg, command, encourage, request, inform, order** etc.

जैसे: (i) I advised **to** him to go. (Drop 'to')

(ii) I informed **to** the police of the accident. (Drop 'to')

(7) **Say / suggest / propose** के बाद हमेशा '**to**' Preposition का प्रयोग होता है यदि इसके बाद **Object** के रूप में कोई व्यक्ति का प्रयोग हो;

जैसे: (i) You **suggested to him** that he should leave the place.

(ii) She **said to me** that she would help me.

(8) **Speak, reply, explain, complain, talk, listen, write** आदि के बाद भी हमेशा '**to**' Preposition का प्रयोग होता है यदि इसके बाद **Object** के रूप में कोई व्यक्ति का प्रयोग हो;

जैसे: (i) He did not **reply to** me.

(9) Preposition के दृष्टिकोण से verb के साथ प्रयुक्त उपयुक्त objects (Direct/Indirect) पर ध्यान दें-

(i) 'Furnish, Intrust, Present, Provide, Supply' इत्यादि के प्रयोग।

जैसे: I provided him money. (Incorrect)

I provided him **with** money. (Correct)

or I provided money **to** him.

(ii) Object के अनुसार निम्न verbs के सही प्रयोग को ध्यान से देखें:-

**Compensate, Explain, Fine, Propose, Recommend, Rob, Suggest,** इत्यादि।

(i) Rob a person **of** something.

(ii) We informed the police **of** an accident.

(iii) I explained the matter **to** him.

(iv) He robbed her **of** her jewellery.

### SOME PHRASE PREPOSITION:

(1) **According to-** के अनुसार

जैसे: **According to** the terms and conditions, he will have to finish it in two days.

(2) **By dint of-** के बल पर

जैसे: I passed the exam **by dint of** hard work.

(3) **In case of-** अगर

जैसे: **In case of** emergency, call 100.

(4) **by virtue of-** के बल पर

जैसे: The judge can pass the order **by virtue of** his powers.

(5) **Owing to -** के कारण

**Owing to** एवं **Due to** अर्थ में एक ही है। दोनों के बीच मुख्यतः दो अंतर हैं-

(1) वाक्य की शुरुआत 'owing to' से करें 'due to' से नहीं।

जैसे: Due to heavy rains, I could not come. (×)

Owing to heavy rains, I could not come. (✓)

(2) 'Be' के किसी भी form के बाद 'due to' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: The accident was owing to heavy rains. (×)

The accident <sup>form of 'be'</sup>  
was due to heavy rains. (✓)  
<sub>form of 'be'</sub>

(6) **With reference to-** के सन्दर्भ में

जैसे: **With reference to** your letter, dated 27th July 2011, I hereby submit my reply.

(7) **In order to-** ताकि

जैसे: We vacated the premises **in order to** avoid litigation.

(8) **In course of-** के दौरान

जैसे: **In course of** time, I faced many problems

(9) **On behalf of-** के स्थान पर

जैसे: He came to receive the award **on behalf of** his brother.

(10) **Agreeably to-** के अनुसरण में

जैसे: **Agreeably to** the terms of the agreement, we will pay you ` 1 lakh.

**Preposition**

(11) **By means of-** के सहायता से

जैसे: He amassed a lot of money **by means of** sharp practices.

(12) **For the sake of-** के वास्ते

जैसे: Save plants atleast **for the sake of** your children.

(13) **In favour of-** के पक्ष में

जैसे: He voted **in favour of** his friend.

(14) **In lieu of-** के बदले में

जैसे: He got fifty thousand rupees **in lieu of** his claim.

(15) **On account of-** के कारण

जैसे: **On account of** his negligence, the company suffered heavy loss.

(16) **In relation to-** के संबंध में

जैसे: There are some rules **in relation to** the organization of the match.

**उत्तरावली:-**

1. I acted **according to** your order.  
I acted **in accordance with** your order.
2. Mother Teresa had **affection for** all.  
Mother Teresa was **affectionate to** all.
3. He has **ambition for** fame.  
He is **ambitious of** fame.
4. I am **capable of** doing hard work.  
I have **capacity for** doing hard work.
5. I have **confidence in** myself.  
I am **confident about** myself.
6. He has **desire for** money and fame.  
He is **desirous of** money and fame.

**USE OF APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS**

**\*\*\*A\*\*\***

Abhorrence <b>of</b> .....	से नफरत
Abhorrent <b>to</b> .....	से नफरत होना
Absorbed <b>in</b> .....	में व्यस्त
Abstemious <b>in</b> .....	में पहरेज
Abstinence <b>from</b> .....	से पहरेज
Acceptable <b>to</b> .....	को स्वीकार्य
Access <b>to</b> .....	तक पहुँच होना
Accessible <b>to</b> .....	तक पहुँच
Accession <b>to</b> .....	किसी पद तक पहुँचना
Accomplished <b>in</b> .....	में निपुण
Accurate <b>in</b> .....	में सटीक



Accused <b>of</b> .....	में आरोपी होना
Accustomed <b>to</b> .....	का आदी होना
Acquaintance <b>with</b> .....	से वाकिफ
Acquainted <b>with</b> .....	से वाकिफ होना
Acquit <b>of</b> .....	से बरी होना
adapted <b>to</b> .....	के अनुकूल होना
Addicted <b>to</b> .....	का लत होना
Adjacent <b>to</b> .....	के बगल में
Affable <b>to</b> .....	प्रिय/मित्र होना
Affection <b>for</b> .....	से लगाव
Affectionate <b>to</b> .....	से लगाव होना
Afflicted <b>with</b> .....	से त्रस्त होना
Afraid <b>of</b> .....	से डरना
Agreeable <b>to</b> .....	के अनुकूल
agree <b>with</b> someone.....	किसी व्यक्ति से सहमत होना
Agree <b>to</b> something.....	किसी चीज/योजना से सहमत होना
Akin <b>to</b> .....	के जैसा होना
alarmed <b>at</b> .....	से/पर स्तब्ध होना
Alien <b>to</b> .....	से अंजान/अभिज्ञ होना
Allegiance <b>to</b> .....	वफादार/पक्ष में होना
Alliance <b>with</b> .....	से सन्धि/संबंध होना
Alternative <b>to</b> .....	का विकल्प होना
Ambition <b>for</b> .....	का लक्ष्य होना
Amenable <b>to</b> .....	इच्छुक होना
Analogous <b>to</b> .....	के जैसा होना
angry <b>with</b> (someone).....	किसी व्यक्ति से गुस्सा होना
Angry <b>at</b> (something).....	किसी बात/चीज पर गुस्सा होना
annoyed <b>at</b> (something).....	किसी चीज से परेशान हो/चिढ़ जाना
annoyed <b>with</b> (someone).....	किसी व्यक्ति से परेशान हो/चिढ़ जाना
Antidote <b>to</b> .....	किसी जहर का काट होना
Antipathy <b>to</b> .....	से नफरत होना
Anxiety <b>for</b> .....	की चिन्ता होना
anxious <b>about</b> something.....	किसी कारण चिन्तीत होना
Apologise <b>for</b> a fault.....	गल्ती के लिए माफी माँगना
Apologise <b>to</b> a person.....	किसी से माफी माँगना
Apology <b>for</b> .....	का खेद होना
Appetite <b>for</b> .....	का भुख होना
Applicable <b>to</b> .....	पर लागू होना

**Preposition**

Apply <b>for</b> a post etc.	पद के लिए आवेदन करना
Apply <b>to</b> a person, office etc.	किसी को आवेदन करना
Appoint <b>to</b> a post	किसी पद पर नियुक्ति होना
Apprehensive <b>of</b>	की आशंका होना
Apprise <b>of</b>	के बारे में सूचित करना
Approach <b>to</b>	को संपर्क करना
Appropriate <b>to</b>	के अनुकूल होना
Approve <b>of</b>	की स्वीकृति देना
Argue <b>before</b> someone	बहस करना (के सामने)
Argue <b>with</b> a person	किसी से बहस करना
Arrive <b>at</b> (a place)	पहुँचना (जगह पर)
Arrive <b>in</b> (a country)	पहुँचना (देश में)
Ashamed <b>of</b>	के लिए लज्जित होना
Ask <b>for</b> (a thing)	माँग करना (किसी चीज़ का/किसी से)
Ask <b>of</b> or <b>from</b> somebody <b>for</b> something	माँग करना (किसी से) किसी चीज़ के लिए
Assent <b>to</b>	की स्वीकृति देना
Assiduous <b>in</b>	में मेहनती होना
Associated <b>with</b>	के साथ/सहयोगी हो जाना
Assurance <b>of</b>	का भरोसा
Assure <b>of</b>	का भरोसा दिलाना
Astonished <b>at</b>	पर अर्चभित होना
Attachment <b>to</b>	से लगाव होना
Attend <b>to</b> (duty etc.)	निभाना (कर्तव्य इत्यादि)
Attention <b>to</b>	के तरफ ध्यान देना
Attract <b>to</b> or <b>towards</b> (a person or thing)	के तरफ आकर्षित होना
Avail <b>of</b> (opportunity etc.)	का लाभ उठाना
Averse <b>to</b>	नापसंद होना
Aware <b>of</b>	से वाकिफ होना
Abound <b>in</b> (mineral etc.)	में सम्पन्न होना
Abound <b>with</b> (things)	से भरा
Absolve <b>from</b> (guilt, promise, duty etc.)	से मुक्त/बरी होना
Absorb <b>in</b> (work)	में व्यस्त
Abstain <b>from</b> (bad habits)	से परहेज
Accede <b>to</b> (a request or proposal)	मान जाना (किसी निवेदन को)
Adhere <b>to</b> (rules)	का अनुपालन करना
Approve <b>of</b> (proposal)	की स्वीकृति देना
Acquaint <b>with</b>	से अवगत
Attain <b>to</b> (a position/post)	पर पहुँचना

**English – from Plinth to Paramount**

Attraction <b>for</b> (a thing or person) .....	के प्रति आकर्षण
Aloof <b>from</b> (bad company) .....	से अलग
Abide <b>by</b> (rules) .....	का पालन करना
Admit <b>to</b> (school etc.) .....	में भर्ती करना
Admit <b>of</b> .....	की गुंजाइश
Alight <b>on</b> (the ground) .....	पर उतरना
Alight <b>from</b> (a bus, car, train) .....	से उतरना
Amuse <b>at</b> .....	का मजाक उड़ाना
Amuse <b>with</b> .....	के साथ लुत्फ उठाना
Answer <b>to</b> (a person) .....	को जवाब देना
Answer <b>for</b> (etc.) .....	का जवाबदेह होना
Antipathy <b>to</b> (a thing) .....	किसी चीज से विरक्ति
Antipathy <b>against</b> (a person) .....	किसी व्यक्ति से विरक्ति
Affiliated <b>to</b> (a University or Board) .....	से सम्बद्ध
Affiliated <b>with</b> (a party) .....	से साथ होना
Attend <b>to</b> .....	के तरफ ध्यान देना
Antidote <b>to</b> (poison) .....	का नाशक
Antidote <b>against</b> .....	का इलाज
Agree <b>with</b> (a person) .....	किसी से सहमत होना
Agree <b>on</b> (a point) .....	किसी मुद्दे पर सहमत होना
Agree <b>to</b> (views) .....	किसी विचार से सहमत होना
Atone <b>for</b> (a fault, sin) .....	का प्रायश्चित्त करना
Acquiesce <b>in</b> .....	में सहमति देना
Act <b>upon</b> (advice etc.) .....	का अनुपालन करना
Adept <b>in</b> (art etc) .....	में निपुण
Adept <b>at</b> (thing) .....	(किसी कार्य में) निपुण
Adapt <b>to</b> (environment) .....	के अनुकूल बनना
Aspire <b>after</b> (fame) .....	(प्रसिद्धि) की लालसा करना
Aspire <b>at</b> (the post) .....	(पद) की लालसा करना
Attracted <b>to</b> .....	के तरफ आकर्षित होना
Avail <b>of</b> .....	का लाभ उठाना
Abide <b>by</b> .....	नियमों का अनुपालन करना
Admit <b>to</b> .....	में दाखिल/ भर्ती होना
Alight <b>at</b> .....	उतरना
Account <b>for</b> .....	विवरण देना, व्याख्या करना
Allowance <b>for</b> .....	गुंजाइश करना, स्वीकार करना
Aptitude <b>for</b> .....	में प्रतीभा दर्शाना

\*\*\*B\*\*\*

**Preposition**

Backward <b>in</b> .....	में पिछड़ा होना
Bargain <b>with</b> .....	से मोल-भाव करना
Bathe <b>in</b> .....	में नहाना
Beg <b>for</b> (a thing) .....	किसी चीज़ का भीख माँगना
Beg <b>of</b> (a person) .....	किसी से भीख माँगना
Begin <b>with</b> .....	से शुरू करना
Belong <b>to</b> (a person, place, etc) .....	कहीं से/का होना
Beneficial <b>to</b> .....	के लिए लाभकारी होना
Bent <b>on</b> (doing something) .....	तुल जाना
Bereft <b>of</b> .....	से वंचित होना
Beset <b>with</b> .....	से ग्रस्त होना
Bestow (something) <b>upon</b> (a person) .....	नवाज़ना/देना
Beware <b>of</b> (something) .....	से सावधान होना
Bigoted <b>in</b> .....	में अंधा हो जाना (धर्म/विचार में)
Blame <b>for</b> .....	का आरोप लगाना
Blind <b>in</b> (love etc) .....	में अँधा होना
Blind <b>in</b> an eye. ....	आँख से अँधा होना
Blind <b>to</b> (something) .....	किसी चीज़ के प्रति अँधा होना
Born <b>of</b> parents/Born <b>in</b> family .....	पैदा होना (Parents के साथ ' <b>of</b> ' और family के साथ ' <b>in</b> ' लगेगा)
Born <b>to</b> them (past participle when used passively) .....	Passive voice में ' <b>born to</b> ' का प्रयोग होता है।
Borrow <b>of</b> or <b>from</b> a person. ....	से उधार लेना
Break <b>into</b> (a building etc.) .....	जबरन/बिना अनुमति दाखिल देना
Break <b>with</b> (a person) .....	से संबंध खत्म करना
Burdened <b>with</b> (work etc.) .....	काम का भार पड़ना
Busy <b>with</b> .....	में व्यस्त होना
Blush <b>at</b> (praise) .....	से झेंप जाना
Blush <b>for</b> (a fault) .....	के कारण लज्जित होना
Benefit <b>by</b> .....	से लाभावित होना
Believe <b>in</b> .....	में विश्वास/ श्रद्धा रखना
Benefit <b>from</b> .....	से फायदा/ लाभ उठाना
<b>***C***</b>	
Callous <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति क्रूर होना
Candidate <b>for</b> .....	का प्रत्याशी होना
Capacity <b>for</b> .....	की क्षमता होना
Care <b>for</b> or <b>about</b> (something) .....	किसी चीज़ का परवाह होना
(take) Care <b>of</b> child etc. ....	ध्यान रखना
Careful <b>about</b> .....	को लेकर सावधान रहना
Cautious <b>of</b> .....	से सावधान होना

Certain <b>of</b> .....	सुनिश्चित होना
Characteristic <b>of</b> .....	की विशेषताएँ
Charge <b>of</b> .....	नेतृत्व में होना
Charge <b>with</b> (responsibility, blame etc.) .....	की जिम्मेदारी/ इल्जाम डालना
Cheat a person <b>of</b> money etc. ....	व्यक्ति के साथ cheat में कोई Preposition नहीं लगता है। चीज़ के साथ cheat के बाद of लगायें।
Cling <b>to</b> (a seat, job or place) .....	से चिपकना
Command <b>on</b> (language) .....	पर पकड़ होना
Common <b>to</b> .....	आम होना
Comparable <b>to</b> .....	की तुलना में
Comparison <b>with</b> .....	से तुलना
Compassion <b>for</b> .....	के प्रति हमदर्दी
Compatible <b>with</b> .....	के अनुकूल होना
Compensation <b>for</b> .....	के लिए मुआवजा
Compete <b>with</b> (a person/etc.) .....	से प्रतिस्पर्धा करना
Competent <b>for</b> a job. ....	में सक्षम होना
Complain <b>against</b> (someone) .....	(व्यक्ति) के विरुद्ध शिकायत करना
Complain <b>of</b> (something) .....	(चीज़) के विरुद्ध शिकायत करना
Complain <b>to</b> (a person) .....	को शिकायत करना (Complain (verb) के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।)
Complaint <b>with</b> .....	(Complaint (Noun) के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग
Comply <b>with</b> (rules, wishes etc.) .....	के अनुसार चलना/ का अनुसरण करना
Composed <b>of</b> .....	से बना होना
Concede <b>to</b> (a request) .....	निवेदन मान लेना
Concession <b>to</b> .....	को रियायत
Condemned <b>to</b> .....	अवांछित स्थिति में डाल देना
Conducive <b>to</b> (health) .....	लाभकारी होना
Confer honour <b>on</b> (a person) .....	को सम्मान से नवाज़ना
Confidence <b>in</b> a person. ....	में विश्वास होना
Confident <b>of</b> .....	सुनिश्चित होना
Confined <b>to</b> .....	में सीमित होना
Conformity <b>with/to</b> .....	अनुरूपता होना
Congenial <b>to</b> .....	के अनुकूल होना
Conscious <b>of</b> .....	से अवगत/वाकिफ़ होना
Consent <b>to</b> (a proposal) .....	की स्वीकृति देना
Consistent <b>with</b> .....	अटल/एक सा
Contempt <b>for</b> .....	के प्रति असम्मान होना
Content <b>with</b> .....	से संतुष्ट होना
Contrary <b>to</b> .....	के विपरीत

**Preposition**

Conversant <b>with</b> .....	से वाकिफ
Convicted <b>of</b> .....	का दोषी
Convinced <b>of</b> .....	से संतुष्ट/ निश्चित
Convulsed <b>with</b> .....	से ऐंठ जाना
Copy <b>from</b> a book. ....	से उतारना/नकल करना
Copy <b>of</b> something. ....	का प्रतिलिपि होना
Count <b>on</b> something. ....	पर निर्भर रहना
Covetous <b>of</b> .....	का अभिलाषी
Craving <b>for</b> .....	का लालायित होना
Cure <b>for</b> .....	का इलाज होना
Cured <b>of</b> (disease) .....	(बिमारी से) ठीक होना
Compensate <b>for</b> (loss etc.) .....	की क्षतिपूर्ति करना
Cure <b>of</b> (a disease) .....	से रोगमुक्त होना
Cure <b>for</b> (treatment) .....	का इलाज
Compete <b>with</b> (person) .....	से प्रतिस्पर्धा करना
Cling <b>to</b> (something/someone) .....	से चिपक कर रहना
Cordone <b>off</b> .....	हर तरफ से घेर कर सुरक्षित किया जाना
Commit <b>to</b> (a promise, pledge, sentence) .....	के प्रति वचनबद्ध होना
Confide <b>in</b> (a person) .....	को राज बताना
Consist <b>in</b> .....	में होना
Consist <b>of</b> .....	से बना होना
Commence <b>with</b> .....	से शुरू होना
Clamour <b>for</b> .....	के लिए जोरदार तरीके से माँग करना
Clamour <b>against</b> .....	का विरोध करना
Cause <b>for</b> .....	का कारण होना
Cause <b>of</b> .....	का नतीजा होना
Condole <b>with</b> (a person) .....	के साथ सहानुभूति रखना
Count <b>on</b> .....	पर निर्भर
Charge <b>of</b> (noun) .....	(किसी कुकृत्य) का इल्जाम
Charge <b>with</b> (verb) .....	(किसी कुकृत्य को करने) का इल्जाम लगाना
Cope <b>with</b> .....	का मुकाबला करना/ सामना करना
Cash <b>in on</b> .....	का लाभ उठाना
Contribute <b>to</b> .....	सहभागी बनना/ भाग लेना
Commence ( <b>On</b> a day, <b>at</b> time, <b>in</b> a month) .....	शुरू होना
Concern <b>for</b> .....	को ले कर चिन्तित होना/गम्भीर होना
Concerned <b>with</b> .....	से सम्बन्ध या मतलब होना
Congratulate <b>on</b> .....	पर बधाई देना

**\*\*\*D\*\*\***

Deaf <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति बहरा होना
----------------------	--------------------

Deal <b>in</b> (a commodity) .....	में व्यापार करना
Deal <b>with</b> (a subject or person) .....	से निपटना
Defective <b>in</b> .....	में श्रुतिपूर्ण होना
Defend <b>from</b> or <b>against</b> danger. ....	से बचाना
Deficient <b>in</b> .....	की कमी होना
Delight <b>in</b> .....	में खुशी पाना
Delighted <b>with</b> .....	से खुश होना
Deliverance <b>from</b> .....	से छुटकारा पाना
Deluged <b>with</b> .....	से सराबोर होना
Depend <b>on</b> or <b>upon</b> something. ....	पर निर्भर करना
Deprive <b>of</b> (advantage, right etc.) .....	से वंचित होना
Derogatory <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति अपमानजनक होना
Descent <b>from</b> .....	का वंशज होना
Desire <b>for</b> .....	का इच्छा होना
Desirous <b>of</b> .....	का अभिलाषी होना
Destitute <b>of</b> .....	से वंचित होना
Detrimental <b>to</b> .....	हानिकारक होना
Devoid <b>of</b> (certain quality) .....	से वंचित
Devoted <b>to</b> .....	को समर्पित होना
Die <b>for</b> (a cause) .....	के लिए मरना
Die <b>from</b> (reason like thirst/ hunger etc.) .....	(कारण) से मरना
Die <b>of</b> (some disease.) .....	(बिमारी) से मरना
Differ <b>from</b> a thing. ....	से अलग होना
Differ <b>on</b> a point. ....	पर (मुद्दा) अलग मत रखना
Differ <b>with</b> a person. ....	से (व्यक्ति) अलग मत होना
Different <b>from</b> .....	से अलग
Diffident <b>of</b> .....	में हिचकिचाहट
Diligent <b>in</b> .....	में मेहनती होना
Disastrous <b>to</b> .....	के लिए दुर्भाग्यपूर्ण
Disgrace <b>to</b> .....	के लिए लज्जाजनक
Disgusted <b>with</b> .....	से चिढ़ा होना
Displeased <b>with</b> .....	से नाखुश होना
Distinguish <b>between</b> two things. ....	के बीच अंतर करना
Distinguish one thing <b>from</b> another. ....	एक का दूसरे से अंतर बताना
Divide <b>into</b> shares, parts. ....	में बाँटना
Doubt <b>of</b> .....	में शंका होना
Drenched <b>with</b> .....	से सराबोर होना
Due <b>to</b> .....	के कारण
Duty <b>to</b> (parents etc.) .....	के प्रति कर्तव्य होना

**Preposition**

Dwell <b>in</b> (a house etc.)	में निवास करना
Disappoint <b>of</b> (hopes)	से निराश होना
Despair <b>of</b> (hopes)	से निराश होना
Dabble <b>in/at</b> (art, politics etc.)	में हल्का दिलचस्पी लेना
Destined <b>for</b> (some future)	के लिए नियत होना
Disgrace <b>on</b> (family etc.)	के लिए कलंक
Dispense <b>with</b>	से छुटकारा पाना
Dispense	बाँटना (कोई Prep का प्रयोग नहीं)
Dispose <b>of</b>	बेच देना/दे देना
Disposed <b>to</b>	के प्रति झुकाव होना
Decamp <b>with</b> (cash etc.)	चम्पत हो जाना/भाग जाना
Disgust <b>with</b> (a person, life)	से परेशान
Disgust <b>at</b> (an act)	(किसी काम/ घटना) से परेशान
Discriminate <b>against</b>	से दुर्व्यवहार करना
Discriminate <b>between</b>	के बीच भेदभाव करना
Disappoint <b>of</b>	निराश होना
Dabble <b>in</b> (art/politics etc)	हल्का दिलचस्पी लेना
Dwell <b>on/upon</b>	पर विस्तृत रूप से लिखना/ बोलना

**\*\*\*E\*\*\***

Eligible <b>for</b> (appointment/ election etc.)	के योग्य होना
Enamoured <b>of</b>	से मोहित होना
Endowed <b>with</b>	से लैस/सम्पन्न होना
Enmity <b>to</b>	से दुश्मनी होना
Enquire <b>into</b> (a matter)	किसी मामले में छान बीन करना
Enquire <b>of</b> (a person)	से (व्यक्ति) पूछताछ करना
Entitled <b>to</b>	का अधिकार प्राप्त होना/के लायक होना
Entrust a person <b>with</b> a responsibility, work etc.	काम सौंपना
Enveloped <b>in</b>	से ढका होना
Envious <b>of</b>	से इर्ष्या रखना
Equal <b>to</b>	के बराबर होना
Escape <b>from</b>	से बच निकलना
Essential <b>to</b> (health, etc.)	जरूरी होना
Exception <b>to</b>	अपवाद होना
Exemption <b>from</b>	से छूट प्राप्त होना
Experience <b>of</b>	का अनुभव रखना
Experienced <b>in</b>	में अनुभव रखना
Embark <b>on</b> (venture)	किसी काम में लग जाना
Enter (place)	किसी Prep का प्रयोग नहीं
Enter <b>into</b> (alliance, agreement)	शामिल होना (समझौता इत्यादि में)

**English – from Plinth to Paramount**



Enrage <b>at</b> (a thing, an act) .....	(किसी चीज़/ घटना) से गुस्सा होना
Enrage <b>with</b> (a person) .....	(किसी व्यक्ति) से गुस्सा होना
Enlarge <b>upon/on</b> .....	ज्यादा कहना या लिखना
Enamoured <b>with</b> (a person) .....	मोहित होना/आसतिन

\*\*\*F\*\*\*

Failed <b>in</b> .....	में असफल होना
Failure <b>of</b> .....	की असफलता
Faithful <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति वफादार होना
False <b>to</b> (promise) .....	(वादे का) झूठा
Familiar <b>to</b> .....	से अवगत होना
Familiar <b>with</b> (a subject) .....	(किसी विषय) से अवगत होना
Famous <b>for</b> (something) .....	(किसी कारण) प्रसिद्ध होना
Fatal <b>to</b> (life/ future prospects etc.) .....	घातक होना
Fatigued <b>with</b> .....	से थकावट होना
Favourable <b>to</b> .....	के अनुकूल होना
Fearful <b>of</b> .....	से डरना
Fertile <b>in</b> .....	में उपजाऊ होना
Fond <b>of</b> .....	पसंद होना
Fondness <b>for</b> .....	पसंद
Foreign <b>to</b> .....	से अनजान होना
Fought <b>against</b> .....	से लड़ना
Free <b>from</b> (worries) .....	(चिन्ता) से मुक्त होना
Free <b>of</b> cost. ....	बिना कीमत के
Full <b>of</b> .....	से भरा होना
False <b>of</b> (heart) .....	से झूठा
Fascinated <b>by</b> (a thing) .....	किसी चीज से मोहित
Fascinated <b>with</b> (a person) .....	किसी व्यक्ति से मोहित
Fly <b>into</b> (anger) .....	अचानक गुस्से में आना
Feed <b>on</b> (live on) .....	पर ज़िंदा रहना
For lack <b>of</b> .....	कुछ (कमी) के कारण
For short <b>of</b> .....	कुछ (कमी) के कारण
For want <b>of</b> .....	कुछ (कमी) के कारण

\*\*\*G\*\*\*

Get <b>at</b> (the truth) .....	(सच) तक पहुँचना
Get <b>on</b> (with a person) .....	से अच्छा तालमेल होना
Get out <b>of</b> (gate etc.) .....	से बाहर जाना
Get <b>over</b> (the difficulty) .....	(कठिनाई) से उबरना
Gifted <b>with</b> .....	से समृद्ध/धनी होना

**Preposition**

Good <b>at</b> (English/singing etc.)	में अच्छा
Grateful <b>to</b> a person.	के प्रति कृतज्ञ होना
Greedy <b>of</b> (wealth etc.)	का लालची होना
Guilty <b>of</b> (an offence)	का दोषी होना
Grieve <b>for</b> (a person)	किसी (व्यक्ति) का मातम मनाना
Grieve <b>over</b> (a thing)	किसी (चीज) का मातम मनाना
Grieve <b>at</b> (an event)	किसी (घटना) का मातम मनाना
Guard <b>against</b> (mistakes, temptations)	गलती/लुभावन से सचेत करना
Guard <b>from</b> (a danger, a thing etc.)	किसी खतरे/चीज से बचाना
Glance <b>at</b> (someone etc.)	पर एक नजर डालना
Glance <b>through</b> (letter etc.)	पढ़ना
Good <b>for</b> (nothing)	किसी काम का नहीं

**\*\*\*H\*\*\***

Hatred <b>of</b> or <b>for</b> something.	के प्रति नफरत होना
Heedless <b>of</b>	से असावधान
Heir <b>to</b> (the throne).	का उत्तराधिकारी होना
Honest <b>in</b>	में ईमानदार
Hope <b>for</b> (good or success etc.)	की आशा रखना
Hopeful <b>of</b> (some result)	के प्रति आशावित होना
Hostile <b>to</b>	से प्रति शत्रुतापूर्ण
Hurtful <b>to</b>	के प्रति हानिकर/चोट पहुँचाने वाला
Hear <b>from</b> (a person)	से कोई खबर मिलना
Hear <b>of</b> (something)	के बारे में सुनना
Hear <b>by</b> (post, communication)	ज्ञात होना (किसी श्रोत से)
Hard <b>by</b>	नजदीक
Hard <b>up</b>	तंगी होना
Hanker <b>after</b>	के पीछे पड़ना
Healed <b>of</b> (a disease)	ठीक होना (बिमारी से)

**\*\*\*I\*\*\***

Ignorant <b>of</b>	से अनभिज्ञ होना
Ill <b>with</b>	से बिमार
Immaterial <b>to</b>	के लिए महत्त्वहीन
Impertinent <b>to</b>	के प्रति गुस्ताख
Impervious <b>to</b>	के लिए अभेध
Implicated <b>in</b>	में फंसना/आरोपित होना
Inclined <b>to</b>	के प्रति झुकाव
Indebted <b>to</b>	के प्रति कृतज्ञ्य
Indifference / indifferent <b>to</b>	के प्रति उदासीन/ उदासीन होना
Indigenous <b>to</b>	का मूल निवासी होना

**English – from Plinth to Paramount**

Indispensable <b>to</b> .....	के लिए अपरिहार्य होना
Indulge <b>in</b> .....	में लिप्त होना
Infatuated <b>with</b> .....	से आकर्षित होना
Infected <b>with</b> .....	से ग्रस्त होना
Inference <b>from</b> .....	से निष्कर्ष
Inferior <b>to</b> (something or somebody) .....	से खराब (quality में )होना
Infested <b>with</b> .....	से ग्रस्त (काफी अधिक संख्या में)
Informed <b>of</b> .....	सूचित
Inimical <b>to</b> .....	का विरोधी
Injurious <b>to</b> .....	के लिए हानिकारक होना
Innocent <b>of</b> .....	से दोषमुक्त
Inquired <b>of</b> .....	का पुछताछ करना
Insensible <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति संवेदनहीन
Insist <b>on</b> .....	पर जोर देना
Inspired <b>with</b> .....	से प्रेरित
Interested <b>in</b> .....	में दिलचस्पी
Interfere <b>in</b> a matter. ....	में दखल देना
Intimacy <b>with</b> .....	से घनिष्टता
Intimate <b>with</b> .....	से घनिष्ठ होना
Introduce <b>to</b> .....	किसी से परिचय करवाना
Inured <b>to</b> .....	प्रतिरोधी होना
Invitation <b>to</b> .....	का आमंत्रण
Invite <b>to</b> .....	पर आमंत्रित करना
Involved <b>in</b> .....	में शामिल
Irrelevant <b>to</b> .....	के लिए अप्रासंगिक
Irrespective <b>of</b> .....	का ध्यान/विचार किए बिना
Impress <b>with</b> (a thing) .....	से प्रभावित होना
Impress <b>upon</b> (a person) .....	पर छाप/प्रभाव छोड़ना
Inquire <b>for/about</b> (a thing) .....	किसी चीज के बारे में पुछताछ करना
Inquire <b>after</b> (welfare) .....	का हालचाल पुछना
Inquire <b>of</b> (ask a person) .....	किसी व्यक्ति से पुछताछ करना
Inquired <b>into</b> (investigate) .....	जाँच पड़ताल करना
Interfere <b>in</b> (a thing) .....	टाँग अड़ाना
Interfere <b>with</b> (course of justice etc.) .....	अड़चन डालना
Influenced <b>with</b> (a person) .....	से प्रभावित होना
Influence <b>over</b> (the people) .....	पर प्रभाव (किसी व्यक्ति का)
Influence <b>of</b> something <b>on</b> someone .....	किसी चीज का प्रभाव किसी पर
Intrude <b>into</b> (room) .....	बिना इजाजत अंदर आना
Intrude <b>on</b> (privacy) .....	Privacy में दखल देना
Incensed <b>at</b> (thing) .....	गुस्सा होना

**Preposition**

Indignant <b>at</b> (thing) .....	से रूष्ट होना
Insight <b>into</b> (reality, situation) .....	में अंतरदृष्टि
Impress ( <b>with</b> a thing) .....	प्रभावित करना
Invest <b>with</b> (authority) .....	के साथ।
Influence <b>on</b> (a thing) .....	प्रभाव/असर
Irritated <b>at</b> (thing) .....	चिढ़ जाना/खीज जाना
Irritated <b>against</b> (person) .....	चिढ़ जाना/खीज जाना

**\*\*\*J\*\*\***

Jealous <b>of</b> (a person) .....	से ईर्ष्या होना
Junior <b>to</b> (a person) .....	से कनिष्ठ होना
Judge <b>of</b> (things) .....	राय देना
Judge <b>by</b> .....	आँका जाना
Jump <b>to</b> (conclusion) .....	तुरंत निष्कर्ष पर पहुँचना
Jump <b>at</b> (an offer) .....	उछल पड़ना
Jeer <b>at</b> (a thing) .....	का मजाक उड़ाना
Jest <b>at</b> (a thing) .....	का मजाक उड़ाना

**\*\*\*K\*\*\***

Key <b>to</b> .....	की कुंजी
Kind <b>to</b> (a person) .....	के प्रति दयालु होना
Knock <b>at</b> (the gate) .....	खटखटाना
Known <b>to</b> .....	Passive voice में known के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
Known <b>by</b> .....	के कारण जाना जाता हो
Known <b>for</b> (a quality) .....	के लिए जाना जाता हो
Knock <b>at</b> (the door) .....	खटखटाना (अगर 'knock' verb हो तो)
Knock <b>on</b> .....	खटखटाहट (अगर 'knock' noun हो तो)

**\*\*\*L\*\*\***

Lame <b>of</b> (a leg) .....	से लंगड़ा
Laugh <b>at</b> (a person or thing) .....	पर हँसना
Lax <b>in</b> .....	में शिथिल होना
Lean <b>against</b> .....	पर (टेक लगा कर) झुकना
Leniency <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति नमी
Liabie <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति उत्तरदायी
Liabie <b>to</b> (punishment) .....	(सजा कर) हकदार होना
Liking <b>for</b> .....	की चाहत
Limited <b>to</b> .....	में सीमित
Listen <b>to</b> .....	को ध्यान से सुनना
Live <b>by</b> (hard labour) .....	मेहनत कर जीना

Live <b>on</b> (a meagre income/ food).	पर (संसाधन) जीना / पर निर्वाह करना
Live <b>within</b> (means etc).	(संसाधन इत्यादी) के अंदर जीना
Look <b>after</b>	खयाल रखना
Look <b>at</b> something.	किसी चीज़ के तरफ देखना
Look <b>for</b>	खोजना
Look <b>into</b>	जाँच-पड़ताल करना
Lost <b>to</b> (one's opponent)	हार जाना
Loyal <b>to</b>	के प्रति वफादार
Laugh <b>with</b> (others)	के साथ हँसना
Laugh <b>at</b>	पर हँसना
Lean <b>on</b> (someone)	पर निर्भर करना
Lean <b>to</b>	के तरफ झुकाव होना
Live <b>in</b> (region, area, country)	रहना (जब बड़े स्थान का उल्लेख हो)
Live <b>at</b> (indicate the place)	रहना (जब छोटे स्थान का उल्लेख हो)
Live <b>by</b> (livelihood, manner)	(आजीविका व रीति-रिवाज) के अनुसार जीना
Live <b>off</b> (source)	(श्रोत) पर जीना
Liabile <b>for</b>	का जिम्मेदार होना
Liabile <b>to</b> (punishment)	का हकदार होना
Lacking <b>in</b>	कुछ (कमी)
Likeness <b>to</b>	समानता
Limit <b>to</b>	सीमित होना/मर्यादा में होना
<b>***M***</b>	
Mad <b>after/about/for/on</b> (a thing or subject)	के लिए पागल होना
Mad <b>with</b> anger.	गुस्से से पागल होना
Malice <b>against</b> a person.	किसी व्यक्ति के प्रति दुर्भावना होना
Match <b>for</b>	की बराबरी
Material <b>to</b> /Immaterial <b>to</b>	के लिए महत्त्व रखना/महत्त्वहीन होना
Menace <b>to</b>	के लिए समस्या/हानिकारक
Motive <b>for</b>	का मंशा
Muse <b>upon</b> a subject.	पर विचार करना
Move <b>to</b> (tears)	रो पड़ना
Move <b>with</b> (pity)	(दया से) पिघल जाना
Married <b>to</b> (a woman)	से विवाह (जब पुरुष स्त्री से करें)
Married <b>with</b> (a man)	से विवाह (जब स्त्री पुरुष से करें)
Mix <b>with</b> (a thing)	मिलना
Mock <b>at</b> (a thing)	का मजाक उड़ाना
Meditate <b>on</b> (past act)	भूतकाल की घटना पर विचार करना
Meditate (future act)	भविष्य काल की घटना पर विचार करना

**Preposition**

Menace **to** ..... के लिए खतरा/ समस्या होना।

**\*\*\*N\*\*\***

Natural **to** ..... के लिए स्वभाविक  
Necessary **to** ..... के लिए जरूरी  
Need **for** ..... की जरूरत  
Negligent /neglectful **of** one's duty. .... के प्रति लापरवाह होना  
Neglectful **of** (a person, work, a thing) ..... से लापरवाह  
Negligent **in** (duty) ..... में लापरवाह होना  
Neglectful **of** (a person, working a thing) ..... उदासीन होना  
Need **of** ..... इच्छा/जरूरत होना

**\*\*\*O\*\*\***

Obedience **to** ..... के प्रति फर्माबरदारी  
Obedient **to** a person. .... का आज्ञाकारी होना  
Objected **to** ..... के खिलाफ आपत्ति करना  
Objection **to** ..... का विरोध/एतराज  
Obliged **by** or **to** a person. .... से/के प्रति कृतज्ञ होना  
Obstruction **to** ..... के लिए रूकावट  
Offensive **to** ..... के लिए अपमानजनक  
Opportunity **for** ..... के लिए अवसर  
Opposite **to** ..... के विरुद्ध  
Originate **in** ..... में उत्पन्न होना  
Overwhelmed **with** (joy) ..... से अभिभूत होना  
Originate **in** (place as a source) ..... में उत्पन्न होना  
Originate **with** (a person) ..... को पहली बार सुझना  
Occupied **in** (doing a thing) ..... (काम) करने में व्यस्त  
Occupied **with** (a thing) ..... (कोई काम) में व्यस्त  
Operate **on/upon** (leg etc.) ..... का ऑपरेशन करना  
Oblivious **of** ..... से बेखबर  
Offend **at** (thing) ..... (कारण) से अप्रसन्न  
Offend **with** (person) ..... (व्यक्ति) से अप्रसन्न  
Overwhelm **with** (feelings) ..... (भावनाओं) से भर जाना  
Overwhelm **by** (a book etc.) ..... (किताब) से प्रभावित होना

**\*\*\*P\*\*\***

Painful **to** ..... के लिए कष्टदायक  
Part **from** (a person) ..... से (व्यक्ति) जुदा होना  
Parted **with** (something) ..... से (चीज़) अलग होना

Partial <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति पक्षपातपूर्ण
Passion <b>for</b> .....	के लिए अत्यन्त लगाव
Peculiar <b>to</b> .....	निज का
Penetrate <b>into</b> something.....	में समाना
Pertinent <b>to</b> .....	प्रासंगिक
Pity <b>for</b> .....	के लिए तरस/दया
Pledged <b>to</b> .....	का शपथ लेना
Popular <b>with</b> .....	के बीच प्रसिद्ध
Postscript <b>to</b> .....	का उपलेख
Pray <b>to</b> God <b>for</b> something.....	भगवान को प्रार्थना करना (किसी चीज़ के लिए)
Precaution <b>against</b> (disease).....	(बिमारी) से बचाव करना
Predilection <b>for</b> .....	के प्रति झुकाव
Preface <b>to</b> .....	का प्रस्तावना
Prefer <b>to</b> .....	के तुलना ज्यादा पसंद करना
Preferable <b>to</b> .....	से श्रेयस्कर
Prejudicial <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति पूर्वाग्रही
Prepared <b>for</b> .....	की तैयारी करना
Preside <b>over</b> .....	की अध्यक्षता करना
Pretext <b>for</b> .....	के बहाने
Prevent <b>from</b> (doing an act.).....	से बचना / रोकना
Prior <b>to</b> .....	से पहले
Productive <b>of</b> .....	का फलप्रद
Proficient <b>in</b> .....	में कुशल
Profit <b>by</b> .....	से लाभावित होना
Profitable <b>to</b> .....	के लिए लाभदायक
Prone <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति रूक्षान/झुकाव
Proof <b>of</b> .....	का सबूत
Proud <b>of</b> .....	के लिए गौरवान्वित/पर गर्व
Provide <b>with</b> .....	उपलब्ध कराना
Partiality <b>for</b> (a thing).....	पसंद होना
Partiality <b>to</b> (a person).....	के पक्ष में होना
Perish <b>by</b> (famine, sword).....	नष्ट होना/मारा जाना
Perish <b>with</b> (hunger).....	से (भुख) से नष्ट होना/ मर जाना
Point <b>at</b> .....	आरोप लगाना
Point <b>to</b> .....	उल्लेख करना
Preside <b>at</b> (a party).....	का मुख्य अतिथि होना
Preside <b>over</b> (meeting, president).....	का अध्यक्षता करना
Provided <b>against</b> (adversity).....	उपलब्ध कराना (प्रतिकूल समय के लिए)
Provided <b>for</b> (family etc.).....	के लिए उपलब्ध कराना
Pine <b>for</b> .....	का लालसा करना

**Preposition**

Pine <b>away</b> .....	शोक से मर जाना
Play <b>at</b> (cards) .....	(ताश) खेलना
Play <b>upon</b> (a musical instrument) .....	(वाद यन्त्र) बजाना
Partake <b>of</b> (food) .....	में अपना हिस्सा लेना
Prey <b>on</b> .....	शोषण करना
Passion <b>for</b> .....	तीव्र लालसा होना
Feel(Pity) <b>for</b> (noun) .....	दया करना
Take(Pity) <b>on</b> (noun) .....	दया करना
Pity (verb) .....	Pity अगर verb है तो कोई Prep का प्रयोग नहीं होता
Pride <b>on</b> (verb) .....	पर गर्व करना
Pride <b>in</b> (noun) .....	पर गर्व होना
Prompt <b>in</b> .....	पर तुरंत/फूर्तीला
Prevail <b>against</b> (a thing, face) .....	सामना करना व जीतना
Prevail <b>on/upon</b> (a person, to compel) .....	बहकाना/मजबूर करना/जोर देना
Popular <b>for</b> (a good quality) .....	प्रसिद्ध व लोकप्रिय होना
Popular <b>with</b> (the people) .....	के बीच लोकप्रिय

**\*\*\*Q\*\*\***

Quarrel <b>over</b> (some affair) .....	किसी मुद्दे पर लड़ना
Quarrel <b>with</b> (some person) .....	से लड़ना
Quest <b>for</b> (knowledge) .....	(ज्ञान) की लालसा होना
Quick <b>at</b> (a thing) .....	में फूर्तीला
Quick <b>in</b> (doing a thing) .....	(काम) करने में फूर्तीला

**\*\*\*R\*\*\***

Rebel <b>against</b> (government , customs etc.) .....	का विरोध करना
Recovered <b>from</b> .....	से उबरना
Reduced <b>to</b> .....	घट कर होना
Reference <b>to</b> .....	के संदर्भ में
Refrain <b>from</b> (an act) .....	से बचना/परहेज करना
Regard <b>for</b> .....	के प्रति सम्मान होना
Regardless <b>of</b> .....	के तरफ बिना ध्यान दिए
Rejoice <b>at</b> (success) .....	खुशी मनाना
Related <b>to</b> .....	से संबंधित
Relations <b>with</b> .....	से संबंध
Relevant <b>to</b> .....	के लिए प्रासंगिक
Remorse <b>for</b> .....	का पश्चाताप होना
Remarkable <b>for</b> .....	के लिए विशिष्ट
Remiss <b>in</b> .....	में सुस्त
Replete <b>with</b> .....	से भरना/पूरा करना
Reply <b>to</b> .....	का जवाब

**English – from Plinth to Paramount**



Repugnance <b>to</b> .....	के लिए अरूचिकर
Repugnant <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति अरूचिकर होना
Reputation <b>for</b> .....	के लिए नाम होना/जाना जाना
Resemblance <b>to</b> .....	का प्रतिरूप
Respite <b>from</b> .....	से मुक्ति
Responsible <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति जिम्मेदार
Restricted <b>to</b> .....	में सीमित
Result <b>of</b> .....	का परिणाम
Revenge <b>on</b> (a person or anything) .....	का बदला लेना
Revolt <b>against</b> (king, dictatorship, etc.) .....	के विरुद्ध बगावत करना
Revenge oneself (a person) .....	से बदला लेना
Revenge <b>for</b> (noun) (an injury) .....	का बदला लेना
Reconcile oneself <b>to</b> (a thing) .....	(हालात इत्यादी) को स्वीकार कर
Reconcile <b>with</b> (a person) .....	से
Reckon <b>on/upon</b> .....	पर निर्भर करना
Remonstrate <b>with</b> (a person) .....	विरोध प्रकट करना
Remiss <b>in</b> (duty) .....	में लापरवाह होना
Reason <b>with</b> (a person) .....	तर्क करना/बहस करना/सौंच-विचार करना
Replace <b>by</b> .....	नई से बदलना/बदलना
Repent <b>of</b> .....	पश्चाताप/प्रायश्चित्त करना
Recourse <b>to</b> .....	उपाय/सहारा/सहायता
<b>***S***</b>	
Sacred <b>to</b> .....	के लिए पावन
Sanguine <b>of</b> .....	के प्रति आशावित
Satiated <b>with</b> .....	से तृप्त
Satisfied <b>with</b> .....	से संतुष्ट होना
Save <b>from</b> .....	से बचाना
Search <b>for</b> (something).....	की खोज करना
Search <b>into</b> (a matter) .....	(मामले में) पड़ताल करना
See <b>into</b> (a case) .....	जाँच-पड़ताल करना
Sensible <b>of</b> .....	से वाकिफ
Sensitive <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति संवेदनशील
Sentenced <b>to</b> (imprisonment/death/etc.) .....	सजा प्राप्त करना
Sequel <b>to</b> (a film etc.) .....	का अगला भाग
Short <b>of</b> (funds) .....	की कमी होना
Sick <b>of</b> .....	से ग्रस्त/परेशान/बिमार
Smiled <b>on</b> .....	पर खुश होना
Sorry <b>for</b> .....	के लिए अफसोस करना
Stick <b>to</b> (promise, etc.) .....	पर अडिग रहना

**Preposition**

Subject <b>to</b> (conditions etc.)	सशर्त
Submission <b>to</b>	के समक्ष अधीनता
Subsist <b>on</b>	पर निर्वाह
Succession <b>to</b>	के अनुक्रम
Suffering <b>from</b>	से ग्रस्त होना
Sufficient <b>for</b> (a purpose)	के लिए प्रचुर होना
Suit <b>to</b> (a purpose)	के लिए उपयुक्त होना
Suitable <b>to</b>	के लिए उपयुक्त
Superior <b>to</b>	से बेहतर होना
Supplement <b>to</b>	का अनुपूरक
Sure <b>of</b>	के प्रति आश्वस्त
Surprised <b>at</b>	पर आश्चर्य चकित होना
Surrender <b>to</b> (a person)	समर्पण करना
Susceptible <b>to</b>	का ग्रहणशील
Suspicious <b>of</b>	का संदेही होना
Sympathise <b>with</b>	से संवेदना व्यक्त करना
Show <b>off</b>	दिखावा करना
Speak <b>for</b> (someone)	के पक्ष में बोलना
Speak <b>of</b> (praise)	का तारीफ करना
Start <b>on</b> (journey)	(यात्रा) शुरू करना
Strive <b>for</b>	की कोशीश करना
Strive <b>with</b>	से प्रतिस्पर्धा करना
Side <b>with</b> (someone)	का पक्ष लेना
Search <b>for</b> (a thing)	खोजना
Seek (shelter)	की कोशीश करना
Seek <b>after</b>	माँग होना
Suffer (loss)	सहना (घाटा)
Suffer <b>from</b> (disease)	ग्रस्त होना (बिमारी से)
Smile <b>at</b>	का मजाक उड़ाना
Smile <b>on</b>	पर मेहरबान होना
Substitute <b>for</b> (for old object)	कि विकल्प
Shoot <b>at</b> , Strike <b>at</b> , Hit <b>at</b> , Catch <b>at</b> (unsuccessful in attempt)	जब प्रयास असफल हो
Shoot, strike, hit, catch (successful in attempt)	जब प्रयास सफल हो
Spark <b>off</b>	शुरू करना
Seek <b>for</b>	जीतने का प्रयत्न करना
Seething <b>with</b> (anger etc.)	(गुस्से से) बोखलाना/उबलना
Slow <b>at</b>	धीमा
Scare <b>of</b>	भयभीत करना/डराना

Sentence <b>to</b> (death, etc.) .....	दण्डित करना/दण्ड देना
<b>***T***</b>	
Talk <b>over</b> (a matter) .....	किसी मामले पर बात करना
Talk <b>to</b> someone .....	से बात करना
Tantamount <b>to</b> .....	के समान होना
Taste <b>for</b> .....	का परख होना
Teeming <b>with</b> .....	से भरा होना
Temperate <b>in</b> (one's behaviour) .....	में शान्त
Temptation <b>to</b> .....	के लिए प्रलोभव
Think <b>of</b> .....	के बारे में सोचना
Think <b>over</b> (a matter) .....	किसी मामले पर सोचना
Threaten <b>with</b> (revolver/bad consequences, etc.) .	से डराना
Tired <b>of</b> (bad person/continued sickness, etc.) .....	से त्रस्त हो जाना/थक जाना
Tired <b>with</b> (hard labour). .....	(मेहनत) से थक जाना
Tolerant <b>of</b> .....	के प्रति सहनशील
Touched <b>with</b> .....	से द्रवित होना
Trade <b>in</b> commodity .....	का व्यापार करना
Trade <b>with</b> someone. ....	से व्यापार करना
Traitor <b>to</b> .....	के प्रति गद्दार
Triumph <b>over</b> (enemy etc.) .....	पर विजय प्राप्त करना
True <b>to</b> (one's word/one's soil) .....	का सच्चा
Trust <b>in</b> .....	में विश्वास करना
Turn <b>to</b> a direction. ....	के तरफ मुड़ना
Trifle <b>with</b> .....	मजाक उठाना
Trespass <b>on</b> land .....	अनाधिकृत प्रवेश करना
Tresspass <b>against</b> (law) .....	का उल्लंघन करना
Treat <b>of</b> (a subject) .....	उपाय/संसाधित करना/समाधान निकालना
<b>***U***</b>	
Useful <b>for</b> .....	में लाभदायक होना
Useful <b>to</b> (a person) .....	किसी व्यक्ति के लिए लाभदायक होना
Usher <b>in</b> .....	परिचय करवाना/संचालन करना
<b>***V***</b>	
Versed <b>in</b> .....	में दक्ष
Victory <b>over</b> (enemies etc.) .....	पर विजय प्राप्त करना
Void <b>of</b> .....	से रहित

**Preposition**

Vote <b>for</b> (a person) .....	को वोट देना
Vote <b>on</b> (resolution) .....	पर वोट देना
Vote <b>to</b> (power) .....	जीतना
Vain <b>of</b> .....	का घमंड होना
Vexed <b>with</b> (person) .....	(व्यक्ति) से परेशान होना
Vexed <b>at</b> (a thing) .....	(वस्तु) से परेशान होना
Venture <b>upon</b> .....	जोखिम उठाना

**\*\*\*W\*\*\***

Wait <b>for</b> a person, etc. ....	का इन्तजार करना
Want <b>of</b> .....	की कमी
Warn <b>of</b> (danger/bad consequences etc.) .....	की चेतावनी देना
Weary <b>of</b> .....	से थका
Wonder <b>at</b> .....	पर अर्चभित होना
Worthy <b>of</b> (trust, etc.) .....	के लायक
Wait <b>for</b> (person, thing) .....	का इंतजार करना
Weary <b>of</b> (a thing) .....	से थक जाना
Warn <b>against</b> (fault, danger) .....	से सावधान करना
Warn <b>of</b> (danger) .....	से सावधान करना
Wish <b>for</b> (a thing) .....	की कामना करना
Ward <b>off</b> (evils etc.) .....	को दूर रखना
Warn <b>of</b> .....	खतरे से सतर्क करना
Wanting <b>in</b> .....	की कमी होना

**\*\*\*Y\*\*\***

Yield <b>to</b> (force/ threat, etc.) .....	हार मान जाना
Yearn <b>for</b> .....	की लालसा करना

**\*\*\*Z\*\*\***

Zeal <b>for</b> (social reform etc.) .....	उत्साह होना
--	-------------

**SPOTTING THE ERROR**

1. (a) He took/ (b) leave of/ (c) four days/ (d) No error.
2. (a) Children/ should always/ (b) listen the advice of their elders/ (c) and well wishers./ (d) No error.
3. (a) He will not/ (b) listen/ (c) what you say./ (d) No error.
4. (a) Nobody denies/ (b) that my ideas/ (c) are different than yours./ (d) No error.
5. (a) It was I who was responsible of/ (b) making all the arrangements for the/ (c) successful completion of his studies./ (d) No error.
6. (a) She was in the courtyard/ (b) when the burglars/ (c) entered into her house./ (d) No error.
7. (a) Our teacher/ (b) emphasised on/ (c) the use of correct grammar./ (d) No error.
8. (a) On the time/ (b) of the opening ceremony of the theatre/ (c) a large crowd had assembled/ (d) No error.
9. (a) While they were returning/ (b) from school,/ (c) a stalker attacked on them with a knife./ (d) No error.
10. (a) The decline of his moral values/ (b) has caused a lot/ (c) of pain to his parents/ / (d) No error.
11. (a) Without thinking/ (b) for a moment he/ (c) entrusted me in all the responsibilities ./ (d) No error.
12. (a) Sudha fell in/ (b) the well and nobody / (c) tried to save him./ (d) No error.
13. (a) I / (b) prefer coffee/ (c) than tea/ (d) No error.
14. (a) Suresh is busy / (b) in his work/ (c) for his presentation/ (d) No error.
15. (a) While crossing the road/ (b) an old man was/ (c) run out by a bus/ (d) No error.
16. (a) Amphibians / (b) can live / (c) in water as well as land./ (d) No error.
17. (a) My mother is fond off/ (b) cooking different / (c) types of dishes/ (d) No error.
18. (a) Our teacher/ (b) cannot/ (c) control on the students./ (d) No error.
19. (a) The lawyer has been waiting/ (b) for the prisoner / (c) since two hours / (d) No error.
20. (a) Mr. Bacon has / (b) great affection to/ (c) his family./ (d) No error.
21. (a) Rekha has a great/ (b) enmity for her/ (c) brother's friend./ (d) No error.
22. (a) He threw the bucket/ (b) into the river/ (c) and returned home without any water./ (d) No error.
23. (a) There appears/ (b) to be very little/ (c) understanding among the two brothers / (d) No error.
24. (a) She was/ (b) angry on me because I/ (c) had not invited her to party./ (d) No error.
25. (a) He got a prestigious job though/ (b) he was not worthy/ (c) for it./ (d) No error.
26. (a) He described about/ (b) the incident/ (c) in a very interesting way./ (d) No error.
27. (a) My father/ (b) deals/ (c) with garments/ (d) No error.
28. (a) I cannot / (b) deal from/ (c) those unruly students/ (d) No error.
29. (a) Despite of / (b) working hard/ (c) he failed/ (d) No error.
30. (a) Ashok/ (b) married with/ (c) Rekha last month./ (d) No error.
31. (a) The earth's atmosphere/ (b) comprises of/ (c) three layers/ (d) No error.
32. (a) The court held/ (b) the local MLA responsible/ (c) for the loss or damage to any public property./ (d) No error.

**Preposition**

33. (a) He was debarred to attend/ (b) the monsoon session/ (c) of the Parliament./ (d) No error.
34. (a) We will have to await for/ (b) the result/ (c) as the managent is on strike./ (d) No error.
35. (a) He should refrain/ (b) to associate himself with any party/ (c) because people have faith in his integrity./ (d) No error.
36. (a) The songs of / (b) the old movies are/ (c) worthlistening to./ (d) No error.
37. (a) It should be obvious to you/ (b) that if you persist bothering him,/ (c) he will get angry with you/ (d) No error.
38. (a) I certainly/ (b) differ with you/ (c) in this matter (d) No error.
39. (a) He had a suspected fracture, / (b) so he was/ (c) admitted into the hospital/ (d) No error.
40. (a) If you put your / (b) heart to it,/ (c) you will be a winner/ (d) No error.
41. (a) He walked/ (b) ten miles/ (c) by foot/ (d) No error.
42. (a) He is good / (b) in mathematics/ (c) but his friend isn't./ (d) No error.
43. (a) Those who are in power/ (b) have to be sensitive of/ (c) the sufferings of the poor/ (d) No error.
44. (a) Which newspaper/ (b) do you/ (c) subscribe for?/ (d) No error.
45. (a) We thought that the train/ (b) would be late but/ (c) it arrived exactly in time./ (d) No error.
46. (a) Despite of repeated warnings, / (b) he touched a live electric wire,/ (c) and was electrocuted./ (d) No error.
47. (a) It is my pleasure / (b) to congratulate you for your success/ (c) in the Civil Services Examination/ (d) No error.
48. (a) I will avail/ (b) myself with/ (c) this golden opportunity/ (d) No error.
49. (a) It is half/ (b) past two/ (c) in my watch/ (d) No error.
50. (a) She can / (b) cope up with any difficult situation/ (c) as she is a braveheart./ (d) No error.
51. (a) Ravi/ (b) told to his friend/ (c) to buy a car./ (d) No error.
52. (a) He is/ (b) accused with/ (c) committing the murder./ (d) No error.
53. (a) The poet/ (b) described about/ (c) the spring season./ (d) No error.
54. (a) The atmosphere/ (b) comprises of/ (c) many inert gases also./ (d) No error.
55. (a) We disposed off / (b) our old furniture/ (c) before moving to Mumbai./ (d) No error.
56. (a) He was/ (b) bereft from / (c) all his possession./ (d) No error.
57. (a) He assented of/ (b) my proposal/ (c) as it was very attractive./ (d) No error.
58. (a) A large sign near/ (b) the entrance warns the visitors/ (c) to beware about bears./ (d) No error.
59. (a) The teacher was tense/ (b) when he entered/ (c) the class which comprised of/ (d) a hundred students.
60. (a) There is no rule/ (b) regarding the length of a precis/ (c) with relation to/ (d) that of the original passage.
61. (a) He/ (b) is suffering/ (c) with flu./ (d) No error.
62. (a) He wanted to go/ (b) to home/ (c) as he was sick./ (d) No error.

**Answers with Explanation**

1. (b); 'leave for four days' का प्रयोग करें।
2. (b); 'listen' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग करें।
3. (b);
4. (c); 'different' के साथ 'from' का प्रयोग करें।
5. (a); 'responsible' के साथ 'for' का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (c); 'entered' के साथ 'into' का प्रयोग न करें।
7. (b); 'emphasised' के साथ 'on' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
8. (a); 'On' के स्थान पर 'at' का प्रयोग करें।
9. (c); 'attack' के साथ 'on' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
10. (a); 'decline' के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होता है।
11. (c); 'entrusted' के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (a); 'fell into' का प्रयोग करें।
13. (c); 'than' के स्थान पर 'to' का प्रयोग करें। 'Prefer' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
14. (b); busy के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'in' का।
15. (c); 'run out' के स्थान पर 'run over' का प्रयोग करें। 'Run over' का अर्थ है 'कुचला जाना'।
16. (c); Land के पहले 'on' का प्रयोग करें।
17. (a); Fond के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'off' का।
18. (c); अगर 'Control' verb हो तो उसके साथ 'on' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
19. (c); 'Since' के स्थान पर 'for' का प्रयोग करें। 'two hours' अवधि है।
20. (b); 'affection' के साथ 'for' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'to' का।
21. (b); 'enmity' के साथ 'towards' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'for' का।
22. (b); 'threw' के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'into' का।
23. (c); 'among' के स्थान पर 'between' का प्रयोग होगा।
24. (b); 'angry' के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होता है जब किसी व्यक्ति का उल्लेख हो।  
नोट:- angry with someone.  
angry at something.
25. (c); 'worthy' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'for' का।
26. (a); 'describe' के साथ किसी 'preposition' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
27. (c); अगर 'deal' का अर्थ है 'व्यापार करना' तो 'deal' के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होगा।
28. (b); अगर 'deal' का अर्थ है 'fuiVuk' तो deal के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होगा।
29. (a); 'Despite' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
30. (c); 'with' हटा दें।
31. (b); 'Active Voice' में 'Comprise' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
32. (c); 'Loss' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग करें।
33. (a); 'debarred from attending' का प्रयोग करें।
34. (a); 'await for' के स्थान पर 'wait for' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'to' का।
35. (b); 'Refrain' के बाद 'preposition' 'from' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'to' का।
36. (c); 'listen' के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है 'worthlistening' के बाद नहीं।

**Preposition**

37. (b); 'persist' के बाद 'in' का प्रयोग करें।
38. (b); 'differ' के साथ 'from' का प्रयोग करें न कि 'with' का।
39. (c); 'admitted to' का प्रयोग करें।
40. (b); 'put your heart into it' (मन लगाना) सही चीतेंम है।  
'to' को 'into' में परिवर्तित करें।
41. (c); 'on foot' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ है पैदल।
42. (b); 'Good' के साथ 'at' का प्रयोग होता है।
43. (b); 'Sensitive' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग करें।
44. (c); 'subscribe' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग करें।
45. (c); 'On time' का अर्थ है ठीक समय पर और 'in time' का अर्थ है समय से। Exactly का प्रयोग 'On time' को ज्यादा उपयुक्त विकल्प बना रहा है।
46. (a); 'Despite' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग न करें।
47. (b); 'Congratulate' के साथ 'on' का प्रयोग करें।
48. (b); 'avail' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग होता है। 'Avail myself of this' का प्रयोग करें।
49. (c); 'in' के स्थान पर 'by' का प्रयोग करें।
50. (b); 'Cope with' (अर्थ- to handle) का प्रयोग करें।
51. (b); 'told' एवं 'tell' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
52. (b); 'accused' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग करें न कि 'with' का।
53. (b); 'described' के साथ 'about' का प्रयोग न करें।
54. (b); अगर वाक्य active voice में हो तो 'comprise' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग न करें।
55. (a); 'disposed' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'off' का।
56. (b); 'bereft' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग होता है।
57. (a); 'assented' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग करें न कि 'of' का।
58. (c); 'beware' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग करें न किया 'about' का।
59. (c); अगर वाक्य active voice में हो तो 'comprised' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग न करें।
60. (c); 'with relation to' को 'in relation to' में परिवर्तित करें।
61. (c); 'with' को 'from' में परिवर्तित करें। 'suffer' के साथ 'from' का प्रयोग होता है।
62. (b); 'to' हटा दे। 'Get, arrive, reach, go, come' के साथ अगर 'home' का प्रयोग होता है तो बीच में कोई 'preposition' नहीं आता है।

**FILL IN THE BLANKS WITH APPROPRIATE PREPOSITION**

1. He drove from Maharashtra \_\_\_\_\_ Karnataka without stopping to rest.  
(a) is (b) to (c) into (d) towards.
2. Bill's fight \_\_\_\_\_ hunting put 26 professional shikar companies out of jobs.  
(a) towards (b) for (c) over (d) against
3. The court has absolved him \_\_\_\_\_ all the charges leveled against him.  
(a) off (b) with (c) in (d) of



4. you are welcome to partake \_\_\_\_\_ their light refreshment.  
(a) in (b) for (c) at (d) of
5. We met a lot of people \_\_\_\_\_ our holidays.  
(a) on (b) in (c) during (d) at
6. The firm has been dealing \_\_\_\_\_ luxury goods for more than two decades.  
(a) in (b) with (c) out (d) on
7. Today students should be reconciled \_\_\_\_\_ the way things are changing.  
(a) with (b) to (c) for (d) at
8. That week the dollar dropped \_\_\_\_\_ its lowest levels.  
(a) to (b) at (c) into (d) by
9. He went \_\_\_\_\_ sea alone.  
(a) in (b) to (c) into (d) on
10. Everyone in this world is accountable to God \_\_\_\_\_ his actions.  
(a) actions (b) for (c) to (d) over
11. Speed is \_\_\_\_\_ essence in a project of this type.  
(a) in (b) for (c) about (d) of
12. A wise man profits \_\_\_\_\_ the mistakes of others.  
(a) through (b) from (c) with (d) by
13. Ram agreed \_\_\_\_\_ my proposal .  
(a) with (b) for (c) on (d) to
14. He is addicted \_\_\_\_\_ smoking.  
(a) to (b) with (c) on (d) for
15. He sat \_\_\_\_\_ the shade of a tree.  
(a) under (b) into (c) in (d) on
16. There is something wonderful \_\_\_\_\_ him  
(a) of (b) about (c) for (d) in side
17. When will you hand \_\_\_\_\_ your assignment?  
(a) in (b) back (c) down (d) into
18. A new minister has taken \_\_\_\_\_ after the election.  
(a) to (b) over (c) off (d) down
19. There is a bridge \_\_\_\_\_ the river.  
(a) over (b) on (c) down (d) across
20. Please make yourself \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
(a) with (b) at (c) in (d) on
21. The brave youth immediately jumped \_\_\_\_\_ the river to save the drowning child.  
(a) in (b) into (c) inside (d) to
22. We can make no progress if we continue working \_\_\_\_\_ these conditions.  
(a) into (b) with (c) under (d) for

**Preposition**

23. Keep your dog \_\_\_\_ the flower beds. It may damage the flowers.  
(a) out (b) from (c) beside (d) off
24. \_\_\_\_\_ a moment she felt disappointed for no stockings hung from the fire place.  
(a) just (b) for (c) at (d) since
25. We were completely taken \_\_\_\_ by the estate agent who turned out to be a crook.  
(a) for (b) on (c) off (d) in
26. Dr. Sharma concluded his speech \_\_\_\_\_ explaining the importance of charity.  
(a) by (b) with (c) at (d) in
27. Shivaji Maharaj fought \_\_\_\_\_ every kind of aggression.  
(a) against (b) to (c) with (d) at
28. Don't depend \_\_\_\_\_ others; you must stand on your own feet.  
(a) at (b) on (c) to (d) for
29. Our life promises a lot \_\_\_\_\_ pleasure and we must learn to enjoy it.  
(a) with (b) for (c) of (d) at
30. He travelled all \_\_\_\_\_ the world when he was eighty years old.  
(a) in (b) over (c) with (d) of
31. My father lives \_\_\_\_\_ Delhi  
(a) in (b) at (c) inside (d) on
32. Madhav is good \_\_\_\_\_ English.  
(a) in (b) at (c) on (d) with
33. Naina did not disclose the fact \_\_\_\_\_ her husband.  
(a) to (b) before (c) from (d) on
34. The child did not approve \_\_\_\_\_ the father's plan.  
(a) to (b) by (c) of (d) with
35. The tribes lived \_\_\_\_\_ customs different from the English had ever seen.  
(a) on (b) by (c) off (d) with
36. The strike has been called \_\_\_\_\_ .  
(a) of (b) at (c) off (d) by
37. We warned her \_\_\_\_\_ the danger  
(a) from (b) about (c) against (d) of
38. We laughed \_\_\_\_\_ the affair.  
(a) over (b) about (c) for (d) on
39. Put a blanket \_\_\_\_\_ the baby.  
(a) over (b) about (c) at (d) on
40. Stay \_\_\_\_\_ your limits.  
(a) within (b) in (c) at (d) on
41. She was happy to partake \_\_\_\_\_ the festivities.  
(a) in (b) of (c) at (d) for

42. I can cope \_\_\_\_\_ any problem.  
(a) up with                      (b) with                              (c) up                              (d) from
43. His manners \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
(a) speak of                      (b) speak out                      (c) speak up                      (d) speak for
44. A thorough search of the aircraft was carried \_\_\_\_\_ in the airport.  
(a) out                              (b) off                              (c) on                              (d) along
45. Discrimination \_\_\_\_\_ any form should be avoided.  
(a) of                              (b) by                              (c) from                              (d) in
46. A large number of people have fallen victim \_\_\_\_\_ dengue fever.  
(a) to                              (b) of                              (c) from                              (d) with
47. She scoffed \_\_\_\_\_ the idea of revolution.  
(a) for                              (b) at                              (c) about                              (d) on
48. This work of art is worthy \_\_\_\_\_ praise.  
(a) of                              (b) for                              (c) for                              (d) to
49. It is our duty to get \_\_\_\_\_ the truth.  
(a) to                              (b) over                              (c) into                              (d) at
50. For a child, a blow \_\_\_\_\_ self-esteem is a terrible thing.  
(a) of                              (b) with                              (c) to                              (d) on
51. He is a descendent \_\_\_\_\_ the Mughal royalty.  
(a) of                              (b) from                              (c) in                              (d) for
52. Fate smiled \_\_\_\_\_ him in all his ventures.  
(a) above                              (b) below                              (c) on                              (d) at
53. Don't put \_\_\_\_\_ until tomorrow what you can do today.  
(a) up                              (b) of                              (c) on                              (d) off
54. The train is arriving \_\_\_\_\_ platform number 4.  
(a) at                              (b) on                              (c) before                              (d) upon
55. The criminal was totally taken \_\_\_\_\_ when the police recognized him.  
(a) aback                              (b) up                              (c) for                              (d) away
56. The examination will begin \_\_\_\_\_ Monday.  
(a) from                              (b) in                              (c) at                              (d) on
57. You must apologise \_\_\_\_\_ him for this.  
(a) with                              (b) to                              (c) of                              (d) for
58. She seems cursed \_\_\_\_\_ bad luck.  
(a) by                              (b) with                              (c) for                              (d) on
59. He was brought \_\_\_\_\_ by his aunt as his mother had died when he was just a lad.  
(a) up                              (b) put                              (c) off                              (d) with
60. As she became tired, errors began to creep \_\_\_\_\_ her work.  
(a) with                              (b) into                              (c) off                              (d) up.

**Preposition**

61. Small pox has been eradicated \_\_\_\_\_ India.

- (a) in (b) from (c) within (d) out of

62. I complimented him \_\_\_\_\_ his success.

- (a) about (b) for (c) on (d) at

**Answer Key**

1. (b) 2. (d) 3. (d) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (b)  
11. (d) 12. (b) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (c) 16. (b) 17. (a) 18. (b) 19. (a) 20. (b)  
21. (b) 22. (c) 23. (d) 24. (b) 25. (d) 26. (a) 27. (a) 28. (b) 29. (c) 30. (b)  
31. (a) 32. (b) 33. (a) 34. (c) 35. (b) 36. (c) 37. (d) 38. (a) 39. (a) 40. (a)  
41. (a) 42. (b) 43. (d) 44. (a) 45. (d) 46. (a) 47. (b) 48. (a) 49. (d) 50. (c)  
51. (a) 52. (c) 53. (d) 54. (a) 55. (a) 56. (d) 57. (b) 58. (b) 59. (a) 60. (b)  
61. (b) 62. (c)

# 15

## ADVERB

### CHAPTER

#### **ADVERB** og 'kChgS tks&

(i) किसी क्रिया (**Verb**) की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: He works hard.  
          verb        Adv.

↑           ↑

(ii) किसी विशेषण (**Adjective**) की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: He is very good.  
          Adv.     Adj.

↑           ↑

(iii) किसी क्रिया-विशेषण (**Adverb**) की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: She works very hard.  
                  Adv.     Adv.

↑           ↑

(iv) किसी **Preposition** की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: The helicopter hovered exactly over his house.  
                                  Adv.     Prep.

↑           ↑

(v) किसी **Conjunction** की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: He likes her simply because she has a clear conscience.  
                          Adv.     Conj.

↑           ↑

(vi) किसी वाक्य (**Sentence**) की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: Fortunately, no one was hurt.  
          Adv.                Sentence

↑           ↑

(vii) सामान्यतः **Noun** या **Pronoun** की विशेषता बताने का काम **Adjectives** करते हैं, किन्तु कुछ ऐसे **Adverbs** हैं जो किसी **Noun** या **Pronoun** की विशेषता भी बताते हैं। ये adverbs हैं- **Only, even, at last, almost;**

**Adverb**

जैसे: 1. **Only** I know the truth.  
          Adv.   Pronoun



2. **Only** Rohit can help you.  
          Adv.   Noun



**ADVERB**

- 1. Simple Adverb
- 2. Relative Adverb
- 3. Interrogative Adverb

**1. SIMPLE ADVERB**

➤ Simple Adverb के द्वारा समय (time), स्थान (place), संख्या (number or frequency), ढंग (manner), कारण (reason), परिमाण (degree), स्वीकृति अथवा निषेध (affirmation or negation) का बोध होता है।

ये सात प्रकार के हैं:-

**(a) Adverb of Manner**

➤ Adverb of manner shows **how** (ढंग)- ये कार्य होने का तरीका बताता है।

जैसे: He works **honestly**.

He walks **slowly**.

**Remember:** Adjectives से बनने वाले Adverbs जिनके अंत में **-ly** होता है, प्रायः **Adverbs of Manner** कहलाते हैं।

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
Slow	Slowly
glad	gladly
Honest	Honestly.

**नोट:** Miser, Niggard एवं Coward ऐसे nouns हैं जिनके adjective forms को हम adverb forms मानने की गलती कर बैठते हैं। इन nouns के adjective एवं adverb forms इस प्रकार हैं।

Noun	Adjective Form	Adverb Form
Coward	Cowardly	In a cowardly manner
Niggard	Niggardly	In a niggardly manner
Miser	Miserly	In a miserly manner
Scholar	Scholarly	In a scholarly manner

नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण देखें:-

- (1) He is miser. (×) (miser noun है। अतः miser के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग करें।)  
He is a miser. (✓)
- (2) He is a miser man. (×) (man की विशेषता बताने के लिए adjective 'miserly' का प्रयोग करें।)  
He is a miserly man. (✓)
- (3) He behaved miserly. (×) ('behaved' verb है। क्रिया की विशेषता बताने के लिए adjective 'miserly' नहीं बल्कि adverb 'in a miserly manner' का प्रयोग करें।)  
He behaved in a miserly manner. (✓)

**Remember:**

1. कुछ शब्द एक ही रूप (Form) में **Adverb** और **Adjective** की तरह प्रयोग हो जाते हैं; '**Fast, straight, outright, direct, hard, late, high, safe, quiet**' इत्यादि **adjective** एवं **adverb** दोनों हैं।

जैसे: **Adverb**

**Adjective**

He works **hard**.

This is a **hard** task.

He wakes up **early**.

He came by an **early** flight.

Do not talk **loud**.

We should not speak in a **loud** tone.

Run **fast**.

He is a **fast** runner.

He waited **long** for me.

He went on a **long** journey.

Come **near**.

He is of my **near** relation.

2. किन्तु कुछ **Adverbs** के दो रूपों का अर्थ भिन्न होता है;

(a) **Late** **Latently**

देर से      हाल-फिलहाल

जैसे: 1. I haven't seen Akila **latently**.

2. He came **late** for the meeting.

(b) **Hard** **Hardly**

मेहनत से      मुश्किल से

जैसे: 1. She works **hardly** to make both ends meet. (×)

She works **hard** to make both ends meet. (✓)

2. He **hardly** does any work. (✓)

(c) **Free** **Freely**

मुफ्त में      स्वतंत्रता से

जैसे: 1. We can move about **freely** in India.

2. Rides are provided **free** in this water park.

➤ '**Loudly**' and '**Aloud**' adverbs है लेकिन अर्थ में भिन्न। **Aloud** का अर्थ है इतनी तेज आवाज ताकि वक्ता **audible** हो परन्तु **Loudly** का अर्थ है '**with a lot of noise**'.

**Adverb**

**(b) Adverb of Time**

➤ Adverb of Time shows **when** ( समय )- ये कार्य होने का समय बताता है।

जैसे: I came **late**.

➤ समय दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:

**after, ago, early, late, now, then, soon, today, tomorrow** आदि।

**(c) Adverb of Place**

➤ Adverb of place shows **where** ( स्थान )- ये कार्य होने का स्थान बताता है।

जैसे: I could not find him **anywhere**.

➤ स्थान दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverb निम्नलिखित हैं:

**here, there, in, out, up, down, within above, below** आदि।

**(d) Adverbs of Frequency or Number**

➤ Adverb of Frequency or Number shows **how often** ( कितनी बार )- ये कार्य होने की frequency ( आवृत्ति ) बताता है।

जैसे: I can **never** do so.

She **seldom** goes there.

She **often** comes to meet me.

➤ 'Frequency' को दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:

**once, twice, thrice, always, never, seldom, often, frequently** आदि।

**(e) Advers of Degree**

➤ Adverb of degree shows **how much** ( परिमाण )- ये बताता है कार्य कितना अधिक हुआ या कितना कम हुआ।

जैसे: The work is **almost** complete.

I am **quite** well.

➤ 'Degree' को दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:

**very, much, more, too, quite, little, almost** आदि।

**(f) Adverb of Reason**

➤ Adverb of Reason shows **why** ( कारण )- ये कारण बताता है।

जैसे: I could not come **because** I was not well.

I don't like him **since** he has cheated many people.

➤ 'Reason' को दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:

**So, hence, therefore, on account of, consequently** आदि।

**(g) 1. Adverbs of Affirmative ( स्वीकारात्मक )**

जैसे: She will **truly** help you.

I will **surely** repay the loan.



- 'Affirmation' को दर्शाने वाले Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:

**surely, certainly, truly** आदि।

**2. Adverbs of Negation** (निषेधात्मक)

जैसे: She did **not** reply to my letter.

I have **never** cheated anybody.

- 'Negation' को दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:

**No, not, never** आदि।

**2. RELATIVE ADVERBS**

- **Relative Adverb** वाक्यों को जोड़ता है। अपने **antecedent** (पूर्व प्रयुक्त Noun या Pronoun) की ओर संकेत करते हुए **time, place, reason** और **manner** बताता है। Relative Adverbs हैं- **When, Where, Why** और **How**.

जैसे: I don't know **where** he has gone.

He will come **when** I call him.

**3. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS**

- Interrogative Adverbs हैं- **Why, when, where, how**.

जैसे: **Why** are you surprised?

**Where** has she seen me?

**Adverb: Comparison**

- Adjectives की भांति कुछ Adverbs की भी **Degree of Comparison** होती हैं।

जैसे:	<u>Positive</u>	<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Superlative</u>
(a)	Hard	harder	hardest
	Fast	faster	fastest
	Soon	sooner	soonest
	near	nearer	nearest
	early	earlier	earliest
(b)	Beautifully	more Beautifully	most beautifully
	Carefully	more carefully	most carefully
	Swiftly	more swiftly	most swiftly
	Slowly	more slowly	most slowly
	Wisely	more wisely	most wisely
(c)	Ill, Badly	worse	worst
	Forth	further	furthest
	Far	farther	farthest
	Late	later	latest, last
	Little	less	least
	Much	more	most
	Well	better	best

**Adverb**

**POSITION OF ADVERBS**

➤ Adverb सदैव उस शब्द के निकट रखा जाता है, जिसको यह **modify** करता है। यदि Adverb के Position को बदल दिया जाए तो वाक्य का अर्थ ही बदल जाता है।

जैसे: **Only** she saw my dress.           केवल उसने किसी और ने नहीं।  
 She **only** saw my dress.           केवल देखा, और कुछ नहीं किया।  
 She saw **only** my dress.           केवल मेरी dress, किसी और की नहीं।  
 She saw my **only** dress.           एकमात्र dress जो मेरे पास थी।  
 She saw my dress **only**.           केवल dress, पुस्तक या कुछ और नहीं।

**1. वाक्य के आरंभ में (At the beginning)**

(i) **Interrogative Adverb** का प्रयोग सदैव **sentences** के आरंभ में होता है।

जैसे: **When** are you returning home?

(ii) सारे वाक्य को **modify** करने के लिए Adverb आरंभ में प्रयुक्त होता है।

जैसे: **Surely**, I will take care of you.

(iii) **Emphasis** के लिए भी **Adverb** आरंभ में प्रयुक्त होता है।

जैसे: **Off** she goes.

**Here** comes the prince.

**2. दो वाक्यों के मध्य में (In the Middle)**

(i) कुछ **Adverbs of Time** (**always, never, ever, often, seldom, sometimes** आदि) उन **Verbs** से पहले प्रयुक्त होते हैं, जिनको ये **modify** करते हैं।

जैसे: She **never** comes here.

I **seldom** go there.

(ii) जब sentences में Auxiliary Verb दे रखा हो, तो **Adverb** का प्रयोग **Auxiliary Verb** और **Main Verb** के बीच में होता है।

जैसे: He will **never** come here.  
                  H.V.                           M.V.

I have **seldom** gone there.  
                  H.V.                           M.V.

(iii) Verb '**to be**' का प्रयोग **Main Verb** की तरह हो या **Helping Verb** की तरह, Adverb का प्रयोग **Verb** के बाद ही किया जाता है।

जैसे: She is **always** happy.  
                  M.V.

I am **never** sad.  
                  M.V.

He is always praised for his sweet voice.  
                  H.V.                           M.V.

**SEE THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES**

- I. He comes often every Sunday. (Place 'often' before 'comes')
- II. He goes usually to shop every Sunday. (Place 'usually' before 'goes')
- III. He is always happy. (✓)

**USE OF SOME ADVERBS**

**1. Very तथा Much के प्रयोग में अन्तर एवं समानता:-**

- (A) **Very** का प्रयोग **Positive degree** के साथ होता है; जैसे - very good, very wise, very lucky, very honest लेकिन **much** का **Comparative Degree** के साथ; जैसे: much better, much wiser, much luckier, much more honest etc.

**नोट:** **very much + comparative degree** का प्रयोग होता है; जैसे - Very much better, very much wiser, very much luckier etc.

- (B) **Very** या **much** का प्रयोग **Superlative Degree** के साथ भी होता है।

(a) 

The	very	best	boy.
The+	very+	Sup.	

- (C) **Very** का प्रयोग **Present Participle** के पहले होता है; जैसे: very interesting, very daring, very confusing, very boring, very entertaining. किन्तु **much** का **Past Participle** के साथ; जैसे: much surprised, much grieved, much admired etc.

**नोट:** Very का प्रयोग Past Participle के पहले नहीं होता है किन्तु निम्नलिखित **Past Participles** के पहले **Very** का प्रयोग होता है

very tired, very dejected, very contented, very discontented, very pleased, very drunk, very limited, very delighted.

**2. Quite का अर्थ है 'perfectly या completely' ( पूर्णतया, पूर्णरूपेण ) और इसका प्रयोग 'very' की जगह नहीं होता है। अतः**

- (i) She is quite lovely. (×)
- (ii) You are quite handsome. (×)

**इन वाक्यों का शुद्ध रूप है-**

- (i) She is **very lovely**.
- (ii) You are **very handsome**.

**3. Fairly तथा Rather**

- (A) **Fairly** का प्रयोग **Positive Degree** के साथ होता है। जैसे: fairly wise, fairly good, etc.

➤ किन्तु, **Rather** का प्रयोग **Positive** तथा **Comparative Degree** के साथ होता है; जैसे: rather bad, rather difficult, rather worse, rather hotter, etc.

- (B) **Fairly** के बाद **too** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है जबकि **Rather** के बाद **too** का प्रयोग भी होता है; जैसे:

(i) fairly too good कहना गलत है। लेकिन, rather too good कहना बिल्कुल सही है।

- (C) **Fairly** के बाद **Pleasant Adjectives** का प्रयोग होता है; जैसे:

fairly wise, fairly beautiful, etc.

**Adverb**

➤ **Rather** के बाद **unpleasant adjectives** का; जैसे: rather wicked, rather difficult, rather troublesome, rather dull etc. किन्तु, rather amusing, rather good, rather clever, rather pretty, rather beautiful का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

**4. Too**

(a) Too = का अर्थ है **also**

जैसे: I **too** was invited to tea.

(b) Too – का अर्थ है **more than required** ( आवश्यकता से अधिक )

➤ इसका प्रयोग **Unpleasant Adjectives** के साथ होता है। जैसे: **too bad, too naughty, too wicked, too fat, too dull, etc.**

अतः too glad, to happy, to pleased, too healthy आदि कहना गलत है।

➤ I am too glad to meet you का अर्थ है 'मैं आपसे मिलकर इतना खुश हूँ जितना नहीं होना चाहिए'। इस वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा।

जैसे: I am **very glad** to meet you.

(c) **Too .... to** पर आधारित वाक्यों में too के बाद अर्थ के अनुसार **Pleasant Adjective** का प्रयोग भी हो सकता है।

जैसे: (i) He is **too** intelligent **to** be cheated. (=He is so intelligent that he cannot be cheated.)

**Too + Adjective**

1. He is **too** tall. (वह इतना ज्यादा लंबा है जितना नहीं होना चाहिए।)
2. She is **too** slim. (वह इतनी ज्यादा दुबली-पतली है जितना नहीं होना चाहिए।)
3. It is **too** cold. (इतनी अधिक ठंड है जितना नहीं होना चाहिए।)

**Verb + Adjective**

1. He is **very** tall. (वह बहुत लंबा है।)
2. She is **very** slim. (वह बहुत दुबली-पतली है।)
3. It is **very** cold. (बहुत ठंड है।)

**5. So**

➤ '**So**' का प्रयोग '**very**' के स्थान पर नहीं हो सकता। '**So**' के बाद '**that**' का एवं '**Too**' के बाद '**to**' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे: 1. I am **so** happy (Incorrect)  
2. I am **very** happy (Correct)  
3. I am **so** happy **that** I am unable to control my feelings (Correct)

**6. Enough**

(A) '**Enough**' adjective एवं adverb दोनों ही रूप में कार्य कर सकता है। जब '**enough**' adverb का कार्य करता है तो इसका प्रयोग उस **adjective** के बाद होता है जिसके लिए ये प्रयुक्त हुआ हो। **Adjective** के रूप में इसका प्रयोग उस **Noun** के पहले होता है जिसके लिये ये प्रयुक्त हुआ है।

➤ इसका प्रयोग **Noun** से पहले परंतु **Adjective** या **Adverb** के तुरंत बाद लगाया जाता है।

जैसे: 1. She is wise **enough** to understand your intention.  
2. He has enough **money** to buy this car. (Correct)

- **Enough** के पहले हमेशा **Adjective** या **Adverb** के **Positive Degree** का प्रयोग होता है।  
जैसे: 1. (A) He is / (B) faster enough / (C) to defeat / (D) you. / (E) No Error.  
2. (A) He is bravest / (B) enough to be / (C) selected for / (D) the post of soldier. / (E) No Error.
- वाक्य (i) के Part (B) में faster के बदले fast तथा वाक्य (ii) के Part (A) में bravest के बदले brave का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि **Positive Degree + enough** का प्रयोग होता है।

### 7. Yet

- **Yet** का प्रयोग 'अब तक' अर्थात् 'बोलने के समय तक' (**up to the moment/time of speaking**) के अर्थ में **Interrogative** तथा **Negative Sentence** में verb के बाद या verb + object के बाद होता है।

**नोट:** Yet का प्रयोग present perfect के -ve वाक्य में होता है न कि Past Tense में।

- जैसे: 1. The postman did not come yet. (×)  
2. The postman has not come yet. (✓)  
3. Didn't the postman come yet? (×)  
4. Hasn't the postman come yet? (✓)

## SOME RULES

### RULE 1

'Else' के बाद 'but' का प्रयोग करें

- '**Rather**', '**Other**' एवं '**otherwise**' के बाद '**than**' का प्रयोग करें।

- जैसे: 1. I would rather die than beg.  
2. It is nothing else than sheer foolishness. (Use 'but' in place of 'than')  
3. Rahul had no other alternative but to work hard. (Use 'than' in place of 'but')  
4. Rohit has no one else to talk to except his wife. (Use 'but' in place of 'except')

### RULE 2

- Adverbs '**Seldom**, **nowhere**, **never**, **nothing**, **hardly**, **scarcely**, **neither**, **barely**, **rarely**' के अर्थ नकारात्मक होते हैं। अतः इनका प्रयोग किसी दूसरे नकारात्मक शब्द के साथ न करें।

- जैसे: 1. I **rarely** went to meet nobody. (Use '**anybody**' in place of 'nobody')  
2. She **hardly** knows nothing about me. (Use '**anything**' in place of 'nothing')  
3. I **hardly** know somebody in the city. (Say '**anybody**' in place of 'somebody')

### RULE 3

- Negative, शब्द जैसे '**not**' व '**never**' का प्रयोग '**deny**, **forbid**, **Unless**, **Until**, **lest**, **too .... to** और '**both**' के साथ न करें।

1. She denied that she had not done anything wrong. (Delete 'not')  
2. Both of us are not going there. (×)  
Neither of us is going there. (✓)  
3. Unless he will not come, I will not go. (×)  
Unless he comes, I will not go. (✓)

**Adverb**

**RULE 4**

- (A) Adverb 'as' का प्रयोग नीचे दिए गये verbs के साथ किया जा सकता है।  
**'regard, describe, define, treat, view, know'.**
- (B) Adverb 'as' का प्रयोग नीचे दिए गये verbs के साथ न करें।  
**'name, elect, think, consider, call, appoint, make, choose.'** e.g.,
1. I **regard** him my brother. (Add 'as' after 'him')
  2. Biology has been **defined** the study of organism. (Add 'as' after 'defined')
  3. She is **considered** as the best student of my class. (Drop 'as' after 'considered')
  4. The teacher **called** him as stupid. (Drop 'as')
  5. The principal **appointed** him as lecturer. (Remove 'as')
  6. He **thinks** her as a fool. (Remove 'as')

**RULE 5**

- वाक्य में 'adverb' के बाद 'Helping verb' का प्रयोग करें और फिर 'subject' का।
1. Seldom he comes to Delhi. (×)  
**Seldom does** he come to Delhi. (✓)
  2. Never I'll go there. (×)  
**Never shall** I go there. (✓)
  3. No sooner she reached the station than the train left. (×)  
**No sooner did** she reach the station than the train left. (✓)
  4. Hardly she had reached the station when the train arrived. (×)  
**Hardly had** she reached the station when the train arrived. (✓)
  5. So quickly she ran that she overtook her friends. (×)  
**So** quickly did she run that she overtook her friends. (✓)
  6. His wife comes here and **so** does he.
  7. He doesn't know any one here and **neither** do I.

**RULE 6**

- (A) 'Too' and 'as well' का प्रयोग 'Besides', in 'addition to', 'also' के रूप में **affirmative sentences** में किया जाता है। 'Also' का प्रयोग वाक्य के अंत में नहीं करना चाहिए।  
जैसे: She found her bag and money **too/as well**.

**RULE 7**

- 'Seldom or never', 'seldom, if ever', 'little or nothing', 'little, if anything' का प्रयोग वाक्य में किया जाता है परन्तु 'seldom or ever' या 'little or anything' कहना गलत होगा।  
जैसे: He **seldom or never** goes to see movies.

**RULE 8**

- **Verbs of sensation (Taste, Smell, Feel, Appear, Seem, Sound, एवं Look)** हमारे पाँचों इंद्रियों से संबंधित होते हैं। इनके बाद **adverb** नहीं **adjective** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: I look honest.  
Verb of sensation      Adjective

I work honestly.  
ordinary verb      adverb

I felt bad.  
verb of sensation      adj

I sing badly.  
Ordinary verb      Adv

➤ कुछ अन्य Verbs जिनके साथ adverb नहीं adjective का प्रयोग होता है वे हैं- **be, become, turn, get, grow, keep, make** और **prove**.

जैसे: He got angry.  
adj

### **RULE 9**

➤ **Manly, masterly, slovenly, friendly, orderly, gentlemanly, sickly, weekly, monthly** Adjectives हैं। 'ly' में अंत होने के वजह से हम इन्हें adverb मानने की भूल कर बैठते हैं।

जैसे: He behaved friendly. (×)

He behaved in a friendly manner. (✓)

---

## **SPOTTING THE ERROR**

---

1. (a) A soldier is/ (b) taught never to/ (c) fight cowardly/ (d) No error.
2. (a) A man of fifty/ (b) cannot be called/ (c) as young./ (d) No error.
3. (a) He is being/ (b) very politely/ (c) for the reason best known to him. / (d) No error.
4. (a) He is enough tall/ (b) to be selected as Sub Inspector/ (c) in Delhi Police/ (d) No error.
5. (a) He is niggard/ (b) and saves each/ (c) and every paise/ (d) No error.
6. (a) I am full of energy/ (b) today because I / (c) soundly slept last night/ (d) No error.
7. (a) I did not know hardly/ (b) anyone in the college/ (c) and so I felt lonely all the time/ (d) No error.
8. (a) I have never seen/ (b) a coward man / (c) like Sohan/ (d) No error.
9. (a) I never remember/ (b) to have met a more intelligent/ (c) man in my life/ (d) No error.
10. (a) I refused to accompany him/ (b) because he was/ (c) so boring/ (d) No error.
11. (a) I refused to consider/ (b) him as an honest boy / (c) as he had cheated many

**Adverb**

- people/(d) No error.
12. (a) I see him often/(b) at the/(c) bus terminal/(d) No error.
  13. (a) Mangoes taste /(b) more sweetly than /(c) any other fruit of this world/(d) No error.
  14. (a) My father /(b) is very quicker than/(c) I at Chess/(d) No error.
  15. (a) Never in the history/(b) there has been/ (c) as shrewd a mentor as Chanakya/(d) No error.
  16. (a) Outright rejection/(b) of my plea /(c) disappointed me/(d) No error.
  17. (a) She did her job/ (b) as better as she/(c) could do/(d) No error.
  18. (a) She does her/(b) work good as she/(c) is a trained nurse/(d) No error.
  19. (a) She had barely/(b) nothing to wear/(c) when she came to me for help/(d) No error.
  20. (a) She is either/(b) dumb or deaf,/ (c) if not both/(d) No error.
  21. (a) She knows/(b) riding/ (c) a horse/(d) No error.
  22. (a) Great leaders tried / (b) to eradicate social evil practices/(c) with tooth and nail/(d) No error.
  23. (a) It rained/ (b)like cats and dogs/ (c)throughout the night./ (d) No error
  24. (a) The State Government/(b) appointed him as /(c) officer-in-charge/(d) No error.
  25. (a) The teacher asked/ (b) the students to/(c) talk loudly/(d) No error.
  26. (a) Though he was brave,/ (b) he could not face the ups and downs/(c) of life manly/(d) No error.
  27. (a) We must try /(b) to save our hardly /(c) earned money/(d) No error.
  28. (a) We seldom or ever/(b) go out these days /(c) because it is too hot now-a-days/(d) No error.
  29. (a) We should /(b) keep our belongings/(c) orderly/(d) No error.
  30. (a) Vijay could not scarcely conceal/ (b) his happiness /(c) at my resignation./ (d) No error.
  31. (a) When I read his biography,/(b) I hardly found something/(c)in his character that I could admire/(d) No error.
  32. (a) When she received the good news,/ (b) she ran straightly /(c) to call up her parents/(d) No error.
  33. (a) You always /(b) come lately/ (c) to class/(d) No error.
  34. (a) You have /(b) acted nobler than/(c) all of us/(d) No error.
  35. (a) You should have/(b) sufficiently collateral/(c) to pay back the loan d) No error.
  36. (a) Veena worked /(b)very hardly /(c)as she wanted to be a surgeon/(d) No error.
  37. (a) She sounded /(b)very sadly after /(c)the death of her pet/(d) No error.
  38. (a) Her speech was not clearly /(b)but we understood /(c)the underlying meaning/(d) No error



39. (a) All the pupils/ (b) stood up respectively/ (c) as the Guru entered the room./ (d) No error.

### Answers with Explanation

1. (c); fight क्रिया है जिसकी विशेषता adverb बताता है। 'Cowardly' adjective है। अतः adverb form 'in a cowardly manner' का प्रयोग करें।
2. (c); 'as' हटा दें। 'call' के साथ 'as' का प्रयोग गलत है।
3. (c); 'politely' के स्थान पर 'polite' का प्रयोग करें।
4. (a); enough का प्रयोग 'adjective' के बाद होता है। अतः tall के बाद 'enough' का प्रयोग करें।
5. (a); 'Niggard' noun है। अतः niggard के पहले article 'a' का प्रयोग करें।
6. (c); Slept (verb) के बाद soundly (adverb) का प्रयोग करें।
7. (a); Hardly एवं not का प्रयोग एक साथ न करें क्योंकि दोनों ही अर्थ में नकारात्मक हैं। 'I hardly knew anyone' का प्रयोग करना सही होगा।
8. (b); 'Man' noun है जिसकी विशेषता adjective बताता है। 'Cowardly' का प्रयोग सही होगा।
9. (a); Never का प्रयोग 'remember' के बाद होगा।
10. (c); 'So' के प्रयोग के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग होना जरूरी होता है। अतः 'So' के स्थान पर 'very' का प्रयोग करें।
11. (b); Consider के साथ 'as' का प्रयोग गलत है।
12. (a); Often the प्रयोग main verb 'see' के पहले होगा।
13. (b); 'taste' verb of sensation है। इसके बाद 'adverb' नहीं 'adjective' का प्रयोग करें। Sweetly को 'Sweet' में परिवर्तित करें।
14. (b); Comparative degree (quicker) के साथ 'very' नहीं 'much' का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (b); Never (adv) से शुरू होने वाले वाक्य के बाद पहले helping verb (यहाँ-has) का प्रयोग करें फिर Sub (यहाँ-there)का।
16. (d);
17. (b); As.....as के बीच हमेशा adjective/adverb का positive degree का प्रयोग करें। 'as well as' सही प्रयोग है।
18. (b); 'Good' adjective है। यहाँ adverb 'well' का प्रयोग करें।
19. (b); 'Barely' negative शब्द है। इसके साथ दूसरा negative शब्द 'nothing' का प्रयोग न करें।
20. (c); If not both के जगह पर 'if neither'.
21. (b); Know एवं wonder दो ऐसे verbs हैं जिनके बाद 'wh' family का प्रयोग होना जरूरी है। 'knows how to ride' का प्रयोग सही होगा।
22. (c); 'with' हटा दे।
23. (b); 'like' हटा दे।
24. (b); appoint के साथ 'as' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
25. (c); loudly के स्थान पर aloud शब्द का प्रयोग करें। 'Aloud' शब्द उपयुक्त है क्योंकि इसका अर्थ है- audible voice में (सुनने लायक आवाज में) जबकि loudly का अर्थ है शोर से भरा हुआ। (with a lot of noise)
26. (c); Manly के स्थान manfully शब्द का प्रयोग करें। Manly adjective है जिसका अर्थ है brave/strong.

**Adverb**

27. (b); Hardly के स्थान पर hard earned money का प्रयोग करें। Hardly का अर्थ है मुश्किल से। Hard का अर्थ है मेहनत से।
28. (a); Seldom के साथ never का प्रयोग करें।
29. (c); Orderly adjective है। 'In an orderly manner' का प्रयोग करें।
30. (a); 'Scarcely' negative शब्द है। इसके साथ दूसरा negative शब्द 'not' का प्रयोग न करें।
31. (b); 'hardly' के साथ 'anything' का प्रयोग करें।
32. (b); 'Straight' adjective एवं adverb दोनों हैं। 'Straightly' कोई शब्द नहीं है।
33. (b); 'Lately' का अर्थ है हाल-फिलहाल। 'late' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ है देर से।
34. (b); 'more nobly' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'nobler' का।
35. (b); 'Collateral' noun है। इसकी विशेषता 'sufficient' (adj) बताता है न कि 'sufficiently' (adv).
36. (b); 'Hard' का प्रयोग करें।
37. (b); Sound (verb of sensation) के साथ 'sad' (adj) का प्रयोग होगा।
38. (a); 'Clearly' के स्थान पर 'clear' का प्रयोग करें। 'Speech' noun है। इसकी विशेषता 'clear' (adj) बताता है न कि 'clearly' (adv).
39. (b); 'respectively' को 'respectfully' में परिवर्तित करें।

# 16

## WORD OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED

### CHAPTER

<b>S.N.</b>	<b>WORD</b>	<b>हिन्दी में अर्थ</b>	<b>Meaning in English</b>
1.	<b>Accept</b> <b>Except</b>	स्वीकार करना के अलावा	To receive a thing. Leaving apart or excluding.
2.	<b>Expect</b> <b>Suspect</b>	उम्मीद करना आशंका करना	To hope To apprehend
3.	<b>Adopt</b>  <b>Adept</b> <b>Adapt</b>	अपनाना/गोद लेना  निपुण ढालना	To accept/to take another person's child legally. Proficient To change accordingly.
4.	<b>Allude</b> <b>Elude</b>	उल्लेख करना बचना	Refer to To escape
5.	<b>Alternate</b> <b>Alternative</b>	एक छोड़ कर एक विकल्प	One after another. Available instead /substitute
6.	<b>Aural</b> <b>Oral</b>	कान से संबंधित मौखिक	Of ear Verbal
7.	<b>Access</b> <b>Excess</b>	पहुँच प्रचुरता में	Approach More than due.
8.	<b>Averse</b> <b>Adverse</b>	नापसंद करना विपरीत	To dislike Unfavourable
9.	<b>Advice (N)</b> <b>Advise (V)</b>	सलाह सलाह देना	An opinion To offer an opinion.
10.	<b>Affect (V)</b> <b>Effect (N)</b>	असर करना परिणाम	To influence Result
11.	<b>Apposite</b> <b>Opposite</b>	उपयुक्त के सामने/विपरीत	Proper In front of/ contrary
12.	<b>Amend</b> <b>Emend</b>	संशोधन करना अशुद्धियाँ निकाल देना	To improve To remove the mistakes
13.	<b>Amoral</b> <b>Immoral</b>	निर्नैतिक अनैतिक	Having no moral sense. Not conforming to moral standards.

**Word Often Confused & Misused**

<b>14. Antics</b>	हँसाने के लिए की गई हरकत	Tricks
<b>Antiques</b>	प्राचीन कला की वस्तुएँ	Ancient pieces of art.
<b>15. Appraise</b>	मूल्यांकन करना	Assess the quality/ value of.
<b>Apprise</b>	सूचित करना	Inform
<b>16. Allusion</b>	संदर्भ में (अप्रत्यक्ष रूप से)	Indirect reference
<b>Illusion</b>	भ्रम	Deception
<b>17. Beside</b>	के बगल में	By the side of
<b>Besides</b>	के अलावा	Apart from
<b>18. Bridle</b>	लगाम	Headgear of horse
<b>Bridal</b>	दुल्हा/दुल्हन से संबंधित	Related to bride/ bridegroom
<b>19. Beneficial</b>	लाभदायक	Useful
<b>Beneficiary</b>	लाभान्वित व्यक्ति	One who receives benefit.
<b>20. Boar</b>	सुअर	A pig
<b>Bore</b>	बर्दाश्त करना/ पैदा करना	To tolerate or to produce (V <sub>2</sub> of bear)
<b>21. Bought</b>	खरीदना	V <sub>2</sub> and V <sub>3</sub> of buy.
<b>Brought</b>	लाना	V <sub>2</sub> and V <sub>3</sub> of bring.
<b>22. Catch</b>	गतिशील को पकड़ना	To take hold of something when it is moving.
<b>Hold</b>	थामना	To take hold of something when it is static.
<b>23. Childish</b>	बेवकूफी भरा	Foolish
<b>Childlike</b>	मासूम	Innocent
<b>24. Continual</b>	नियमित रूप से	Happening repeatedly
<b>Continuous</b>	लगातार	Without break
<b>25. Credible</b>	विश्वसनीय	Believable
<b>Creditable</b>	सम्माननीय	Praiseworthy, honourable
<b>26. Censure</b>	निन्दा करना	To criticise
<b>Censor</b>	प्रतिबन्धित करना	Official licensing of films etc.
<b>27. Canon</b>	नियम	Rule
<b>Cannon</b>	तोप	A powerful gun fixed to wheels.
<b>28. Canvas</b>	मोटा कपड़ा	Coarse cloth
<b>Canvass</b>	घूम-घूम के वोट माँगना	Visit houses to get political support.
<b>29. Cemetery</b>	कब्रगाह	A burial place
<b>Symmetry</b>	एक सा	Harmony
<b>30. Casual</b>	उदासीन, अनौपचारिक	Not formal, not taking much interest.
<b>Causal</b>	कारक संबंधी	Relating to cause
<b>31. Climactic</b>	उत्कर्ष से संबंधित	Relating to climax

**Word Often Confused & Misused**

	<b>Climatic</b>	जलवायु संबंधित	Relating to climate
32.	<b>Coarse</b>	भद्दा/ मोटा/ समतल नहीं	Rough
	<b>Course</b>	किसी कार्य का सिलसिलेवार रास्ता	A line of action.
33.	<b>Confidant</b>	राजदार	A person who is entrusted with secrets.
	<b>Confident</b>	आत्मविश्वास के साथ	Sure and certain.
34.	<b>Contagious</b>	बिमारी जो छूने से फैले	A disease that spreads by contact.
	<b>Contiguous</b>	सिमांत	Near
	<b>Infectious</b>	बिमारी जो हवा एवं पानी से फैले	A disease that spreads by air or water.
35.	<b>Corps</b>	सेना की टुकड़ी	A division of army.
	<b>Corpse</b>	मृत शरीर (इंसान का)	A dead body.
	<b>Carcass</b>	किसी बड़े जानवर का मृत शरीर	The dead body of a large animal.
36.	<b>Conscious</b>	अवगत	To know
	<b>Conscientious</b>	जमीरवाला	With a sense of duty.
37.	<b>Complain (V)</b>	शिकायत करना	To say that something is wrong or not satisfactory.
	<b>Complaint (N)</b>	शिकायत	A report of a problem.
38.	<b>Complacent</b>	आत्म संतुष्ट	Self-satisfied.
	<b>Complaisant</b>	आज्ञाकारी	Obedient and compliant.
39.	<b>Complement</b>	पूरक	N-a thing that completes or improves. V-add to something in a way that it improves.
	<b>Compliment</b>	तारीफ	A remark of admiration.
40.	<b>Custom</b>	सामाजिक नियम	Social usage.
	<b>Habit</b>	आदत	Personal usage.
41.	<b>Compose</b>	बनाना	Make up the whole.
	<b>Comprise</b>	से बना होना	Consist of.
42.	<b>Career</b>	पेशा	Course through life.
	<b>Carrier</b>	सामान ढोने की गाड़ी	That which carries.
43.	<b>Credible</b>	विश्वसनीय	Believable
	<b>Credulous</b>	जो आसानी से विश्वास कर ले	Too ready to believe.
44.	<b>Discreet</b>	(सचेत ताकि किसी को व्यवहार या भाषा से चोट न पहुँचे)	Careful not to cause offence by speech or behaviour.
	<b>Discrete</b>	(पृथक)	Separate, distinct.
45.	<b>Disease</b>	बिमारी	Ailment or illness.
	<b>Decease</b>	मृत्यु	Death.
46.	<b>Decent</b>	सभ्य	Nice, respectable.
	<b>Descent</b>	दलान	Downward motion.
	<b>Dissent</b>	मतभेद	Difference of opinion.

**Word Often Confused & Misused**

<b>47. Dual</b>	दोहरा	With two parts.
<b>Duel</b>	द्वंद्व युद्ध	A fight between two persons using guns or swords.
<b>48. Deface</b>	विकृत करना	Disfigure.
<b>Efface</b>	मिटा देना	Wipe out.
<b>49. Deny</b>	खंडन करना	To declare untrue.
<b>Decline</b>	अस्वीकार करना	Refuse to accept an offer.
<b>Refuse</b>	इन्कार करना	Show unwillingness towards.
<b>Refute</b>	खंडन करना (सबूत के साथ)	Prove wrong.
<b>50. Defy</b>	उल्लंघन करना	To break the law.
<b>Deify</b>	ईश्वर बना देना	To make someone or something a god.
<b>51. Defuse</b>	तनाव कम करना	Remove the tension.
<b>Diffuse</b>	फैलाना/अस्पष्ट	Spread out; not clear or concise.
<b>52. Desert</b>	N- रेगिस्तान, V- त्याग देना	N- An area where there is little rain. V- To leave someone.
<b>Dessert</b>	भोजन के बाद का मीठा व्यंजन	Sweet dish eaten at the end of a meal.
<b>53. Depression</b>	गड्डा/अवसाद	Hollow/ A mental state of despair.
<b>Depreciation</b>	मूल्य कम होना	Undervalue.
<b>54. Disinterested</b>	निष्पक्ष	Impartial.
<b>Uninterested</b>	दिलचस्पी ना होना	Not interested.
<b>55. Delightful</b>	प्रसन्नतादायक	Very pleasant.
<b>Delicious</b>	स्वादिष्ट	Pleasing to taste.
<b>56. Deprecate</b>	नापसंद करना	To hate.
<b>Depreciate</b>	मूल्य कम करना	To reduce in value.
<b>57. Defective</b>	त्रुटिपूर्ण	Having a certain imperfection.
<b>Deficient</b>	कमी होना	Lacking something.
<b>58. Decided</b>	निर्णय किया हुआ (निश्चित)	Clear and definite.
<b>Decisive</b>	निर्णायक	Deciding.
<b>59. Effective</b>	असरदार	Producing effect.
<b>Efficacious</b>	जो निश्चित ही उत्तम परिणाम दे	Able to produce the desired result.
<b>Efficient</b>	कार्यकुशल	Competent.
<b>60. Elicit</b>	उत्पन्न कर पाना	To get or produce something.
<b>Illicit</b>	अवैध	Illegal or disapproved of by society.
<b>61. Economical</b>	कम खर्च वाला	Involving less expenditure.
<b>Economic</b>	अर्थव्यवस्था सम्बन्धित	Relating to economy.
<b>62. Enduring</b>	लम्बे समय तक कायम	Existing for a long time.
<b>Endurable</b>	सहन करने लायक	Bearable.

**Word Often Confused & Misused**

<b>63. Emigrant</b>	प्रवासी	A person who leaves his country to settle in another.
<b>Immigrant</b>	अप्रवासी	One who comes to another country.
<b>64. Enormity</b>	अति, घोर	Extreme seriousness.
<b>Enormousness</b>	ज्यादा होना	Great in size or scale.
<b>65. Ensure</b>	सुनिश्चित करना	To make sure.
<b>Insure</b>	बीमा करना	To protect against risk.
<b>Assure</b>	दिलासा देना	To make certain of.
<b>66. Envelop</b>	(ढक देना)	To cover or surround something completely.
<b>Envelope</b>	(लिफाफा)	A flat usually square paper container for a letter.
<b>67. Especially</b>	विशेष कर	In particular, above all.
<b>Specially</b>	किसी विशेष अवसर के लिए	For a special purpose.
<b>68. Excite</b>	उत्तेजित करना	To arouse feelings of happiness or enthusiasm.
<b>Incite</b>	उकसाना / भड़काना	To arouse unpleasant or violent feelings.
<b>69. Expedient</b>	सही/ लाभदायक	Helpful or useful in a particular situation.
<b>Expeditious</b>	शीघ्र/ फुर्ती से	Prompt.
<b>70. Extinct</b>	विलुप्त	No longer existing.
<b>Instinct</b>	मूल प्रवृत्ति	Inborn impulse.
<b>71. Flair</b>	जन्मजात प्रवृत्ति	Natural ability.
<b>Flare</b>	धधकना, फैलना	A burst of flame or light/ to become angry.
<b>72. Flaunt</b>	दिखावा करना	Display ostentatiously/to show off.
<b>Flout</b>	उल्लंघन करना	Disregard a rule or custom.
<b>73. Fortuitous</b>	आकस्मिक	Happening by chance.
<b>Fortunate</b>	भाग्यशाली	Lucky.
<b>74. Felicity</b>	प्रसन्नता	A blessing, happiness.
<b>Facility</b>	सुविधा	Ease or comfort
<b>Faculty</b>	कार्यशक्ति/ कॉलेज का विभाग /कॉलेज के अध्यापकगण	Ability/departments of college/ the people who teach
<b>75. Fatal</b>	घातक	Deadly
<b>Fateful</b>	महत्त्वपूर्ण/परन्तु नकारात्मक परिणामयुक्त	Important but with usually negative effect.
<b>76. Fain</b>	खुशी से	Gladly
<b>Feign</b>	दिखावा करना (जो सच नहीं है)/बहाना बनाना	To pretend to feel something.

**Word Often Confused & Misused**

<b>77. Floor</b>	फर्श	The flat surface of room on which we walk.
<b>Ground</b>	जमीन	The surface of earth outside the room.
<b>78. Graceful</b>	भव्य	Handsome or attractive
<b>Gracious</b>	दयालु	Merciful
<b>79. Gate</b>	द्वार	An entrance
<b>Gait</b>	चलने का तरीका	A particular way of walking.
<b>80. Gourmand</b>	पेटू	A glutton
<b>Gourmet</b>	पाक कला का पारखी	A food connoisseur.
<b>81. Hear</b>	सुनना	To receive sound.
<b>Listen</b>	ध्यान से सुनना	To hear carefully.
<b>82. Hoard</b>	छिपाकर संग्रह करना	To store in a secret place.
<b>Horde</b>	एक बड़ा समूह	A large group of people.
<b>83. Humility</b>	विनम्रता	The quality of being humble.
<b>Humiliation</b>	अपमान	Disrespect
<b>84. Historic</b>	महत्त्वपूर्ण	Important
<b>Historical</b>	ऐतिहासिक	Relating to history
<b>Histrionic</b>	नाटकीय एवं बढ़ा चढ़ाकर	Dramatic and exaggerated
<b>85. Human</b>	मानव	Relating to man
<b>Humane</b>	दयालु	Kind
<b>86. Illegal</b>	गैरकानूनी	Against the law
<b>Illicit</b>	अवैध	Disapproved of by society.
<b>87. Incredible</b>	अविश्वसनीय	Unbelievable
<b>Incredulous</b>	जो विश्वास न करें	Not ready to believe something/ someone.
<b>88. Ingenious</b>	बढ़िया एवं नई युक्ति भरा	Clever and involving new ideas.
<b>Ingenuous</b>	निष्कपट, सरल	Honest and sincere.
<b>89. Intense</b>	तीव्र	Extreme and forceful.
<b>Intensive</b>	गहन	Involving a lot of effort.
<b>90. Invent</b>	आविष्कार करना	To create something which never existed before.
<b>Discover</b>	खोज करना	To find something for the first time which nobody was aware of.
<b>91. Industrial</b>	उद्योग संबंधी	Relating to industry
<b>Industrious</b>	मेहनती	Hard-working
<b>92. Imperious</b>	दबंग	Haughty
<b>Imperial</b>	राजसी	Majestic, relating to empire.
<b>93. Incumbent</b>	जरूरी	To be necessary
<b>Recumbent</b>	लेटा हुआ	Lying down
<b>94. Jealous</b>	ईर्ष्यालु (जब वस्तु हमारी हो)	When we are afraid of losing the person/ thing we love, we feel jealous.



**Word Often Confused & Misused**

<b>Envious</b>	ईर्ष्यालु (जब वस्तु हमारी नहीं हो)	When we wish we had what someone else have, we feel envious. Envy and jealousy are slightly different in meaning.
<b>95. Judicial</b>	न्याय संबंधी	Relating to a judge or justice.
<b>Judicious</b>	समझदार	Wise, Prudent
<b>96. Light</b>	V- जलाना-प्रकाशित करने के लिए N- रोशनी, Adj- हल्का	<i>Verb</i> -to start flames in order to spread light/ <i>Noun</i> -radiance/ <i>Adj</i> -not heavy.
<b>Burn</b>	V- जलाना-नाश करने के लिए, N- फफोला	<i>V</i> -to start flames to destroy something/ <i>N</i> -the part of body damaged due to heat.
<b>97. Lightening</b>	उजाला करना, हल्का करना, गौरा करना	To make bright/ less heavy/ pale/ less serious.
<b>Lightning</b>	बिजली-जो आसमान में दिखती है	A flash of bright light seen in the sky.
<b>Lighting</b>	बिजली की व्यवस्था	The arrangement of lights.
<b>98. Loath</b>	अनिच्छुक	Reluctant, unwilling
<b>Loathe</b>	घृणा करना	To hate
<b>99. Loose</b>	ढीला	Not tight.
<b>Lose</b>	खोना/हारना	Be defeated.
<b>Loss</b>	घाटा/हानि	The state of not in possession of something or having it less than before.
<b>100. Luxuriant</b>	प्रचुरता में उगना	Strong in growth
<b>Luxurious</b>	विलासितापूर्ण	Very comfortable and expensive.
<b>101. Lovely</b>	प्यारा, सुंदर	Beautiful
<b>Lovable</b>	प्यार करने योग्य	Worthy of love
<b>102. Metal</b>	धातु	A chemical element. Eg-gold, iron etc.
<b>Mettle</b>	क्षमता	Ability.
<b>103. Metre</b>	लम्बाई की इकाई	A unit of length.
<b>Meter</b>	एक यंत्र	A device used to measure the amount of something that is used.
<b>104. Negligent</b>	लापरवाह	Careless
<b>Negligible</b>	नगण्य	Very little
<b>105. Momentary</b>	क्षणिक	Short-lived
<b>Momentous</b>	महत्त्वपूर्ण	Very important
<b>106. Minor</b>	नाबालिग	Underage
<b>Miner</b>	खदान कर्मी	One who works in mines.
<b>107. Militate</b>	प्रतिकूल होना	To hinder
<b>Mitigate</b>	तीव्रता कम करना/शान्त करना	Make less severe.
<b>108. Naval</b>	नेवी संबंधित	Relating to a navy.

**Word Often Confused & Misused**

<b>Navel</b>	नाभी	Small round part in the middle of the stomach.
<b>109. Notable</b>	ध्यान देने लायक	Important and deserving attention.
<b>Notorious</b>	कुख्यात	Known for bad qualities.
<b>Famous</b>	प्रसिद्ध	Well known
<b>Eminent</b>	प्रसिद्ध एवं सम्माननीय	Well known and respected
<b>110. Official</b>	आधिकारिक	Relating to an office.
<b>Officious</b>	सलाह देने के लिए तत्पर	Too eager to tell others what to do.
<b>111. Ordinance</b>	अध्यादेश	A law made by the government.
<b>Ordnance</b>	सेना का साजो-सामान	Military material such as weapons, ammunition etc.
<b>112. Pane</b>	खिड़की/दरवाजे का काँच	A flat piece of glass used in a window/door.
<b>Pain</b>	दर्द	Feeling of physical suffering.
<b>Pains</b>	अथक प्रयास	A lot of efforts.
<b>113. Palate</b>	तालू	The roof of the mouth/ the sense of taste.
<b>Palette</b>	रंग मिलाने का बर्तन	An artist's mixing board.
<b>Pellet</b>	किसी चीज़ का छोटा गोला	A small ball of any substance.
<b>114. Pedal</b>	पैर से चलाने वाला	A foot-operated lever.
<b>Peddle</b>	घूम-घूम कर सामान बेचना	To sell goods by going from one place to another.
<b>115. Perpetrate</b>	करना (गुनाह)	To commit (a crime).
<b>Perpetuate</b>	किसी कार्य/हालात के जारी रहने का कारण बनना	To cause something to continue.
<b>116. Personal</b>	निजी	Private
<b>Personnel</b>	कर्मि	Staff
<b>117. Pore</b>	छेद	Small hole.
<b>Pour</b>	बहना, उड़ेलना	Flow, cause to flow.
<b>118. Practice (N)</b>	अभ्यास	Regular activity.
<b>Practise (V)</b>	अभ्यास करना	To do something regularly.
<b>119. Practicable</b>	व्यवहारिक	Able to be done.
<b>Practical/ Pragmatic</b>	वास्तव में/प्रयोगात्मक	Effective or realistic.
<b>120. Prescribe</b>	सलाह देना (के रूप में)	To recommend
<b>Proscribe</b>	गैर कानूनी करार देना	Forbid or condemn.
<b>121. Proceed</b>	आगे बढ़ना	To continue
<b>Precede</b>	पहले आना	To come before/happen before.
<b>122. Popular</b>	प्रसिद्ध	Liked by all.

**Word Often Confused & Misused**

<b>Populous</b>	घनी आवादी वाला	Thickly populated.
<b>123. Pray</b>	प्रार्थना करना	To offer prayer to God.
<b>Prey</b>	(V) शिकार करना/(N) शिकार	Hunt and kill/ victim
<b>124. Principal</b>	प्रधानाचार्य/ मुख्य	One who is in charge of a school/ first in order of importance.
<b>Principle</b>	सिद्धान्त	Most important basic idea / moral rule.
<b>125. Quite</b>	पूर्ण/थोड़ा	Completely/a little/ <b>Note: both meanings are different from each other</b>
<b>Quiet</b>	चुप	To be silent
<b>Quit</b>	छोड़ देना	to give up
<b>126. Respectable</b>	सम्माननीय	Worthy of respect.
<b>Respectful</b>	सम्मानजनक	Showing respect
<b>Respective</b>	विशिष्ट, अलग-अलग	Particular
<b>127. Resource</b>	संसाधन	Means
<b>Recourse</b>	रास्ता	Resort
<b>128. Refute</b>	खण्डन करना	Prove to be wrong.
<b>Repudiate</b>	सही या सच मानने से इंकार करना	Refuse to accept as true or correct.
<b>129. Regrettable</b>	खेदजनक	Causing regret, undesirable.
<b>Regretful</b>	दुखी	Feeling sorry
<b>130. Rise</b>	उठना/जागना/तरक्की करना	To get up, to progress.
<b>Raise</b>	उठाना	To lift
<b>Raze</b>	ध्वस्त करना	To demolish
<b>Rage</b>	गुस्सा	Anger
<b>131. Ride</b>	दोपहिया या जानवर की सवारी करना	To sit on an animal or two-wheeler and travel.
<b>Drive</b>	चार-पहिया की सवारी करना	To travel by a four-wheeler.
<b>132. Rout</b>	धराशाही करना	To defeat completely and easily.
<b>Route</b>	रास्ता	Path
<b>Root</b>	जड़	The underground part of a plant.
<b>133. Septic</b>	एक चिकित्सा संबंधी समस्या	A medical term involving sepsis.
<b>Sceptic</b>	संदेही	Doubtful of an idea or belief.
<b>134. See</b>	देखना	Perceive with eyes.
<b>Look</b>	ताकना/नजर डालना	To direct the eyes in order to see.
<b>Watch</b>	देखना (कुछ अंतराल तक)/ नजर रखना	To look at something for a period of time/ to keep an eye on.
<b>Stare</b>	घूरना	To look continuously for a long time.
<b>Peep</b>	झाँकना	To see secretly or through a hole.
<b>Glance</b>	नजर डालना	To give a quick short look.
<b>Glare</b>	गुस्से में घूरना	To stare angrily.
<b>Glimpse</b>	एक झलक देखना	To see someone very briefly.
<b>Glower</b>	गुस्से से देखना	To see angrily.

**Word Often Confused & Misused**

<b>135. Sever</b>	अलग करना	To break/ to separate.
<b>Amputate</b>	शरीर के किसी बाहरी अंग (हाथ या पैर)को काट कर अलग करना, क्योंकि वह स्थायी रूप से क्षतिग्रस्त हो चुका है	Cut off a body part that is permanently damaged.
<b>Maim</b>	शरीर के किसी अंग को स्थायी रूप से क्षतिग्रस्त करना	To damage any body part permanently.
<b>Severe</b>	तीव्र	Extreme
<b>Sewer</b>	नाला	Drain
<b>136. Story</b>	कहानी	Account of any event.
<b>Storey</b>	तल	Floor
<b>137. Suit</b>	वाद/अभियोग	Action in a law court.
<b>Soot</b>	कालिख	Black substance in smoke.
<b>Suite</b>	सेट	A set of rooms / furniture.
<b>138. Statue</b>	मूर्ति	Image
<b>Statute</b>	लिखित कानून	Written law
<b>139. Straight</b>	सीधा	Extending without a curve.
<b>Strait</b>	जलसंधि	Narrow passage of water.
<b>140. Stationary</b>	स्थिर	Not moving.
<b>Stationery</b>	पैन, कॉपी इत्यादि	Things needed for writing.
<b>141. Sight</b>	दृष्टि/ नजारा	Ability to see/view.
<b>Site</b>	कार्यस्थल	A place of construction.
<b>Cite</b>	उल्लेख करना	To mention.
<b>142. Shear</b>	काटना (बाल, इत्यादि)	To cut off-hair, wool etc.
<b>Sheer</b>	पूर्ण रूप से	Utter, complete
<b>143. Toe</b>	पैर की ऊँगली	Any of the five separate parts at the end of the foot.
<b>Tow</b>	खींच कर गाड़ी ले जाना	To pull a vehicle using a rope or chain tied to another vehicle.
<b>144. Temper</b>	गुस्सा	Anger, rage
<b>Tamper</b>	छेड़-छाड़ करना (किसी चीज से)	To interfere with.
<b>145. Temporary</b>	क्षणिक, तत्कालिक	Short lived
<b>Temporal</b>	सांसारिक	Earthly or worldly
<b>146. Titillate</b>	उत्तेजित करना	Stimulate or excite especially in a sexual way.
<b>Titivate</b>	सुन्दरता बढ़ाना	To make smarter or more pretty.
<b>147. Topical</b>	प्रासंगिक/आधुनिक विषय से	Related to present time.
<b>Tropical</b>	उष्ण	With hot climate
<b>148. Vain</b>	बेकार में/घमंडी	Not successful/arrogant.
<b>Vein</b>	नाड़ी	Tube that carries blood to the heart in our body.

**Word Often Confused & Misused**

<b>149. Verbal</b>	शाब्दिक	Relating to words
<b>Verbose</b>	शब्दों से भरा	Containing more words than necessary
<b>Oral</b>	मौखिक	Spoken
<b>Verbiage</b>	जरूरत से ज्यादा शब्दों भरा जिससे अर्थ समझना कठिन हो जाए	Use of too many words due to which it becomes difficult for one to understand the speech or article.
<b>150. Virtuous</b>	नैतिक रूप से अच्छा	Having good moral qualities
<b>Virtual</b>	आभासीय	In effect, though not in fact
<b>151. Vile</b>	नीच	Immoral
<b>Wile</b>	युक्ति	Tricks
<b>152. Vale</b>	घाटी	Valley
<b>Veil</b>	नकाब, घूँघट	Cover of face
<b>Wail</b>	रोना	Weep
<b>153. Vocation</b>	व्यवसाय	Profession
<b>Vacation</b>	अवकाश	Holidays
<b>154. Violence</b>	हिंसा, प्रहार	Force
<b>Violation</b>	नियम की अवहेलना	Infringement of law
<b>155. Wither</b>	मुरझा जाना	To fade
<b>Whither</b>	कहाँ	Where
<b>Weather</b>	मौसम	Atmospheric condition (of a short period)
<b>Whether</b>	या.....या	'Whether ..... or' is a co-relative
<b>156. Wave</b>	लहर (N)/ लहराना (V)	Raised mass of water in sea/ to move.
<b>Waive</b>	त्याग देना	To give up

# 17

## VOCABULARIES

### CHAPTER

<b>S.N.</b>	<b>WORD</b>	<b>हिन्दी में अर्थ</b>	<b>Meaning in English</b>
1.	<b>Abase</b>	नीचा दिखाना	Degrade.
2.	<b>Abash</b>	लज्जित करना	To embarrass.
3.	<b>Abattoir</b>	बूचड़ खाना	Place where animals are killed.
4.	<b>Abdicate</b>	त्याग देना	Give up.
5.	<b>Aberrant</b>	असामान्य	Abnormal.
6.	<b>Abetment</b>	दूषप्रेरण	The act of helping someone in wrongdoing.
7.	<b>Abeyance</b>	निलंबित अवस्था	Suspended action.
8.	<b>Abhor</b>	घृणा करना	Detest, dislike, hate.
9.	<b>Abject</b>	बुरी हालत में	Extremely poor or unhappy.
10.	<b>Abjure</b>	सौगन्ध खा कर त्याग करना	Renounce upon oath.
11.	<b>Ablution</b>	शुद्धि हेतु स्नान	The act of washing oneself.
12.	<b>Abnegation</b>	त्याग देना-अधिकार या दावा	To give up a right or a claim.
13.	<b>Abode</b>	निवास	The place where someone lives.
14.	<b>Abolish</b>	उन्मूलन करना	To put an end to.
15.	<b>Abominable</b>	घृणित	Very bad or unpleasant.
16.	<b>Aboriginal</b>	आदिवासी	Native.
17.	<b>Abortive</b>	निष्फल	Fruitless, futile.
18.	<b>Abrasive</b>	घिसने का सामान	Substance used for rubbing.
19.	<b>Abridge</b>	संक्षिप्त करना	Shorten.
20.	<b>Abrogate</b>	खत्म करना (किसी परम्परा/ कानून को)	Abolish some custom etc.
21.	<b>Abscission</b>	चीरा	Cutting off.
22.	<b>Abscond</b>	भाग जाना	Depart secretly.
23.	<b>Absolute</b>	पूर्ण रूप से	Complete.
24.	<b>Absolve</b>	दोष से मुक्त करना	Pardon.
25.	<b>Abstain</b>	रोकना, परहेज करना	Refrain from.
26.	<b>Abstract</b>	संक्षेप दस्तावेज/सिर्फ भावना के रूप में ही मौजूद	A shortened form of speech/existing as an idea or feeling only.

27. **Abstruse** ..... मुश्किल, कठिन ..... Difficult to understand.
28. **Abysmal** ..... बहुत बुरा ..... Not measurable, very bad.
29. **Accede** ..... मान जाना ..... Agree to do.
30. **Acclaim** ..... प्रशंसा करना ..... Applaud.
31. **Accolade** ..... पुरस्कार ..... Award of merit.
32. **Accomplice** ..... गुनाह का साथी ..... Partner in crime.
33. **Accord** ..... सामंजस्य से ..... Do something in complete agreement.
34. **Accused** ..... आरोपी ..... One who is under trial in a court.
35. **Acme** ..... शिखर ..... Peak.
36. **Acquit** ..... बरी करना ..... Declared to be not guilty.
37. **Adapt** ..... अनुकूल बनाना ..... To change to suit different environment.
38. **Adept** ..... निपुण ..... Proficient.
39. **Adolescent** ..... किशोर ..... One who is growing into an adult.
40. **Adulteration** ..... मिलावट ..... Mixing some undesired commodity.
41. **Adultery** ..... विवाहेत्तर संबंध, व्याभिचार ..... To have sex outside marriage.
42. **Adverse** ..... प्रतिकूल ..... Unfavourable.
43. **Aftermath** ..... किसी अप्रिय घटना के बाद का समय ..... The period which follows an undesired event.
44. **Aghast** ..... हतप्रभ रह जाना ..... Sudden feeling of shock and worry.
45. **Agile** ..... लचीला ..... Able to move your body quickly.
46. **Agony** ..... दर्द ..... Extreme sufferings.
47. **Aisle** ..... सीट के श्रृंखला के बीच जाने-आने का रास्ता ..... Narrow, long space between the two rows of seats.
48. **Alchemist** ..... पारस ..... One who tries to turn other base metal into gold.
49. **Alimony** ..... तलाक पश्चात दी जाने वाली रकम ..... Money paid usually to a wife after break-down of marriage.
50. **Altar** ..... बेदी ..... Table/place where offerings are put in a religious place.
51. **Altercation** ..... वाक युद्ध, कहा-सुनी ..... A loud argument.
52. **Ambiguous** ..... अस्पष्ट, द्विअर्थी ..... Having more than one possible meaning.
53. **Amenable** ..... सुझाव स्वीकार करने को तैयार ..... Willing to accept a suggestion.
54. **Amiable** ..... दोस्ताना ..... Pleasant and friendly behaviour.
55. **Angst** ..... चिन्ता ..... Great anxiety.
56. **Anguish** ..... वेदना, व्यथा ..... Extreme unhappiness.

**Vocabularies**

57. **Annotate** ..... टिप्पणी ..... To add a brief explanation.
58. **Anonymous** ..... गुमनाम ..... Made/done by someone unknown.
59. **Antecedent** ..... पूर्वगामी ..... Something/someone existing before.
60. **Apathy** ..... उदासीनता ..... Lack of interest/enthusiasm/  
emotion.
61. **Appalling** ..... बहुत भयावह ..... Very bad and shocking.
62. **Appeasement** .. तुष्टीकरण ..... The act of giving advantage to one  
party.
63. **Archives** ..... ऐतिहासिक/ सरकारी दस्तावेज जहाँ रखा जाए ..... Place where historical records are  
kept.
64. **Argumentative** बहस करने वाला ..... Often arguing or ready to argue.
65. **Articulate** ..... अच्छा वक्ता ..... A good orator.
66. **Asceticism** ..... सन्यास/ वैराग्य ..... Religious beliefs and avoidance of  
life of pleasure.
67. **Assault** ..... मारपीट करना ..... A violent attack.
68. **Asset** ..... सम्पत्ति ..... Valuables.
69. **Atrocities** ..... जुल्म ..... Violent and cruel act.
70. **Attenuate** ..... शान्त करना ..... To calm or soothe.
71. **Attrition** ..... सनिघर्षण ..... The gradual weakening of something.
72. **Augment** ..... बढ़ाना ..... Add to/increase.
73. **August** ..... महत्त्वपूर्ण/राजसी ..... Important/Magestic.
74. **Aura** ..... आभा ..... A feeling or character a person/place  
seems to have.
75. **Averse** ..... नापसंद ..... Strong disliking.
76. **Awful** ..... अत्यंत बुरा ..... Hateful.
77. **Babble** ..... बड़बड़ाना ..... Talk in a way which is difficult to  
understand.
78. **Bacchanalian** .. शराबी ..... Drunken.
79. **Backbite** ..... चुगली करना ..... To speak something at the back of  
someone.
80. **Badger** ..... परेशान करना ..... Annoy.
81. **Badinage** ..... मजाक में चिढ़ाना ..... playful teasing/banter.
82. **Baffle** ..... चकरा देना ..... Confuse.
83. **Bait** ..... चारा ..... Snare, Trap, Decoy.
84. **Baleful** ..... घातक, हानिकारक ..... Deadly.
85. **Balk** ..... अनिच्छुक होना ..... To be unwilling to do something.
86. **Balmy** ..... गर्म ..... Pleasantly warm.



87. **Bane** ..... अभिशाप ..... Curse.
88. **Banter** ..... मजाक में चिढ़ाना ..... Conversation which is funny and not serious.
89. **Barb** ..... काँटा ..... Sharp projection from fish hook.
90. **Barbaric** ..... बर्बर ..... Savagely cruel.
91. **Bard** ..... कवि ..... Poet.
92. **Barefaced** ..... बेशर्म ..... Shameless.
93. **Baroque** ..... सजा हुआ ..... Highly ornate.
94. **Barrage** ..... बाँध ..... Structure built across a river.
95. **Beeline** ..... सीधी रेखा/रास्ता ..... Direct or quick route.
96. **Beget** ..... पैदा करना ..... To father or produce.
97. **Begrudge** ..... बेमन से देना ..... To give unwillingly.
98. **Beguile** ..... दिशा भ्रमित करना ..... Cheat or mislead.
99. **Behemoth** ..... बहुत बड़ा जीव ..... Huge creature.
100. **Behest** ..... के निवेदन/ आदेश पर ..... At the request or order of.
101. **Benevolence** ..... दया ..... Kindness.
102. **Betray** ..... धोखा देना ..... To be disloyal/ to deceive.
103. **Blackguard** ..... आवारा, अनैतिक व्यक्ति ..... A man who has no moral principles.
104. **Blatant** ..... बेशर्मी के साथ खुलेआम ..... Open and unashamed.
105. **Blister** ..... फफोला ..... Swellings on skin.
106. **Blizzard** ..... बर्फीला तूफान ..... Stormy weather.
107. **Blunder** ..... बहुत बड़ी गलती ..... A big mistake.
108. **Blush** ..... शर्म से लाल होना ..... To become pink in the face due to shyness.
109. **Boisterous** ..... शोर-गुल मचाने वाला, जोश से भरा ..... Noisy and full of energy.
110. **Bombast** ..... बड़ी-चढ़ी बात ..... Pompous language with little meaning.
111. **Boost** ..... बढ़ाना ..... To improve/increase.
112. **Booze** ..... शराब पीना ..... To take alcoholic drink.
113. **Brickbat** ..... बक-झक ..... An insult, spoken attack.
114. **Brutal** ..... बर्बर ..... Savagely violent
115. **Buckle** ..... दबाव में टूट जाना ..... Crumble under pressure.
116. **Bully** ..... परेशान करना/ डराना ..... To hurt/frighten someone.
117. **Bunk** ..... बिना अनुमति के चले जाना ..... To leave without permission.
118. **Butcher** ..... हत्या करना ..... To kill/murder someone.
119. **Cabal** ..... षड्यन्त्र करने वाला समूह ..... Group of people who plan secretly.

**Vocabularies**

- 120. Cache** ..... छिपाने का स्थान ..... Hiding place.
- 121. Cacophony** ..... शोरगुल ..... Harsh mixture of sound.
- 122. Cadaver** ..... शव ..... A dead human body.
- 123. Cadence** ..... स्वर का उतार चढ़ाव ..... Regular rise and fall of voice.
- 124. Cahoots** ..... षड्यन्त्र ..... Acting together generally for a dishonest purpose.
- 125. Calamity** ..... संकट ..... Disaster.
- 126. Caldron** ..... कढ़ाई ..... Large kettle.
- 127. Calibre** ..... क्षमता ..... Ability.
- 128. Calligraphy** ..... सुंदर लेखन कला ..... Art of writing beautifully.
- 129. Callous** ..... निर्दयी ..... Cruel.
- 130. Callow** ..... अनुभवहीन ..... One with little experience or knowledge.
- 131. Canvass** ..... घूम-घूम कर वोट माँगना ..... Seek votes.
- 132. Capitalize** ..... पूँजी उपलब्ध कराना ..... To supply money to a business.
- 133. Capitulate** ..... आत्मसमर्पण करना ..... Surrender.
- 134. Capricious** ..... सनकी ..... Fickle-minded.
- 135. Carcass** ..... मृत शरीर (जानवर का) ..... A dead body of a large animal.
- 136. Cardinal** ..... प्रमुख ..... most important.
- 137. Careen** ..... तेजी से आगे बढ़ते हुए बाएँ-दाएँ हिलना ..... Sway from side to side while moving forward quickly.
- 138. Carnage** ..... जनसंहार ..... Slaughter/massacre.
- 139. Casanova** ..... दिलफेंक ..... One who has lots of sexual relationship.
- 140. Catastrophe** .... विपत्ति, संकट ..... A sudden destructive event/ unpleasant and disastrous.
- 141. Cave (V)** ..... दवाब में टूट जाना ..... Collapse/give in to demands.  
**Cave (N)** ..... गुफा ..... A large hole on the side of a hill.
- 142. Censor** ..... प्रतिबंधित करना ..... To ban unacceptable parts.
- 143. Censure** ..... निन्दा करना ..... Strongly criticise.
- 144. Chaos** ..... अव्यवस्था ..... Complete disorder.
- 145. Charismatic** .... आकर्षक ..... Attractive.
- 146. Chaste** ..... पवित्र ..... Pure.
- 147. Chauvinism** .... बढ़प्पन की भावना (अपनी नस्ल/ मर्द होने पर) ..... Feeling of superiority due to race or gender.

- 148. Cheat** ..... धोखेबाज/ धोखा देना ..... One who cheats or deceives/the act of deceiving.
- 149. Chide** ..... डाँटना ..... To reprimand and to speak severely to someone.
- 150. Clamour** ..... शोर मचा कर माँग या शिकायत करना .. To make a loud complaint or demand.
- 151. Clandestine** .... गुप्त ..... Planned/done in secret.
- 152. Clasp** ..... जोर से थामना ..... To hold something firmly.
- 153. Cloak**..... लम्बा चोगा/ छिपाना ..... Long gown/ to hide.
- 154. Coalition** ..... साझा ..... A temporary alliance.
- 155. Coddle** ..... कुछ ज्यादा ही देखभाल करना ..... To protect something/ someone too much.
- 156. Collate** ..... क्रम में रखना, गलती दूढ़ने हेतु मिलान करना To put in proper order.
- 157. Collision** ..... टक्कर ..... The act of hitting something with other thing.
- 158. Combat**..... लड़ाई ..... A fight especially during a war.
- 159. Commendable** . प्रशंसनीय ..... Praiseworthy.
- 160. Commute** ..... यात्रा करना जो नियमित हो/ बदल देना ... To make the same journey regularly/ to change.
- 161. Complement** ... पूरक ..... A thing that improves.
- 162. Conceal** ..... छिपाना ..... To hide.
- 163. Concede** ..... स्वीकार कर लेना ..... Admit to be true.
- 164. Concurring** ..... सहमत होना ..... To agree with someone.
- 165. Condolence** ..... संवेदना व्यक्त करना ..... Sympathy for the family of a person who has recently died.
- 166. Confrontation** टकराव ..... Fight/argument.
- 167. Consecrate** ..... पवित्र बनाना/पवित्र घोषित करना ..... Make or declare sacred.
- 168. Conspicuity** ..... प्रत्यक्ष होना ..... Clarity.
- 169. Conspirator** ..... षड्यंत्रकारी ..... One who plans something illegal.
- 170. Contemplate** ... विचार करना ..... Think of a particular thing for a long time.
- 171. Convalesce**..... स्वास्थ्य लाभ करना ..... Regain health after illness.
- 172. Conversant** ..... ज्ञान होना ..... Having knowledge of.
- 173. Convict** ..... दोषी सिद्ध करना/दोषसिद्ध व्यक्ति ..... One proved guilty/to be proved guilty.
- 174. Conviviality** .... दोस्ताना ..... Friendly.
- 175. Corporal** ..... शारीरिक ..... Bodily.
- 176. Corpse** ..... मुर्दा शरीर ..... A dead body of a person.
- 177. Corroborate** ..... पुष्टि करना ..... Confirm or support.

**Vocabularies**

- 178. Countenance**... चेहरे का भाव..... The expression of the face.
- 179. Couplet** ..... एक सुर की दो पंक्तियाँ ..... Two successive rhyming lines of verse.
- 180. Cramp** ..... बाधा डालना/मरोड़ ..... Hamper or restraint/painful involuntary tightening of a muscle.
- 181. Credentials** ..... योग्यता एवं अनुभव ..... Qualities/documents proving ability and experience.
- 182. Crooked** ..... बेईमान/ सीधा नहीं ..... Dishonest/not forming a straight line.
- 183. Culminate** ..... तक पहुँचना तब खत्म होना ..... To reach a point and then finish.
- 184. Culprit** ..... दोषी ..... Someone who has done something wrong.
- 185. Curb** ..... अंकुश लगाना ..... To check/restrain.
- 186. Dab hand** ..... किसी काम में निपुण ..... An expert in something.
- 187. Dabble** ..... सिर्फ ऐसे ही कोई कार्य करना ..... Work in non-serious way.
- 188. Daft** ..... मूर्ख ..... Silly or stupid.
- 189. Dainty** ..... छोटा एवं सुन्दर ..... Small and graceful.
- 190. Dally** ..... कोई कार्य धीरे-धीरे करना ..... Procrastinate/to waste time or do something slowly.
- 191. Damsel** ..... अविवाहित युवती ..... A young unmarried girl.
- 192. Dank** ..... भीगा हुआ ..... Damp/wet.
- 193. Dapper** ..... साफ-सुथरा ..... Neat and tidy.
- 194. Dappled** ..... चितकबरा ..... Spotted.
- 195. Daub** ..... लेपना ..... Smear.
- 196. Daunt** ..... डराना ..... Intimidate, frighten.
- 197. Dauntless** ..... निडर ..... Bold.
- 198. Dearth** ..... कमी ..... Lack of.
- 199. Debauched** ..... पथभ्रष्ट (शराब, सेक्स इत्यादि में लिप्त) ..... One who is given to sex, alcohol etc.
- 200. Debilitate** ..... कमजोर बनाना ..... Weaken.
- 201. Debonair** ..... दोस्ताना ..... Friendly.
- 202. Debunk** ..... कम महत्वपूर्ण ठहरना ..... To show that some thing is less important.
- 203. Debut** ..... पहला अवसर ..... Something performed for the first time.
- 204. Decency** ..... सभ्य तरीका ..... good and moral behavior.
- 205. Decimate** ..... हत्या करना ..... Kill/destroy.
- 206. Decipher** ..... किसी लिखित दस्तावेज को पढ़ कर अर्थ स्पष्ट करना ..... Decode.

- 207. Declivity** ..... ढाल ..... Downward slope.
- 208. Deface** ..... बदशक्ल बनाना ..... Disfigure.
- 209. Defacto** ..... वास्तविक ..... Existing in fact.
- 210. Defeatist** ..... निराशावादी ..... One who accepts defeat easily.
- 211. Deference** ..... सम्मान ..... Respect.
- 212. Defiant** ..... अवज्ञाकारी ..... Disobedient.
- 213. Deforestation** .. जंगल साफ करना ..... Cutting down of trees in a large area.
- 214. Defuse** ..... तनाव कम करना ..... Reduce tension.
- 215. Deluge** ..... बाढ़ ..... A large amount of rain/water.
- 216. Demographer** .. जन्म का विवरण रखने वाला ..... A person who studies changes in number of births.
- 217. Denounce** ..... निन्दा करना ..... To criticize strongly.
- 218. Deplorable** ..... घृणित ..... Very bad.
- 219. Deposition** ..... बयान ..... A testimony.
- 220. Derail** ..... पटरी से उतरना ..... To come off the railway track.
- 221. Desecration** ..... पवित्रता भंग करना ..... Treatment of something sacred with disrespect.
- 222. Desperate** ..... किसी कार्य या चीज के लिए तीव्र इच्छा ..... Feeling involving great willingness.
- 223. Despicable** ..... घृणित ..... Unpleasant, causing strong feeling of dislike.
- 224. Detente** ..... तनाव की कमी ..... The easing of hostility between countries.
- 225. Deterrent** ..... हतोत्साहित करने वाला ..... Discouragement from action.
- 226. Detrimental** .... नुकसानदायक ..... Harmful.
- 227. Diffuse** ..... फैल जाना ..... Spread over a wide area.
- 228. Dine** ..... रात्रि भोज करना ..... Eat dinner.
- 229. Discord** ..... सामंजस्य की कमी ..... Lack of agreement.
- 230. Disembarked** ... उतरना जहाज से ..... To leave a ship/plane after the journey.
- 231. Disillusion** ..... निराशा/मोह भंग ..... Disappointment.
- 232. Disinterested** .. निष्पक्ष ..... Impartial.
- 233. Disparagement** उपेक्षा ..... Insult/abuse.
- 234. Dispassionate** . तटस्थ ..... Not influenced by emotion.
- 235. Dispense with** . छुटकारा पाना ..... Get rid of or manage without.
- 236. Disseminate** .... फैलाना ..... Spread widely.
- 237. Docile** ..... आज्ञाकारी ..... Obedient.

**Vocabularies**

- 238. Dolorous** ..... दुखी ..... Sad.
- 239. Draconian** ..... अत्यंत कठोर ..... Extremely severe.
- 240. Drain** ..... बहा देना, नाला ..... (V) removing things; (N) pipes and sewage.
- 241. Drizzle** ..... बूँदा-बाँदी होना ..... Rain in very small light drops.
- 242. Drowsy** ..... झपकी ..... Sleepy.
- 243. Ebb** ..... घट जाना/ पीछे हटना ..... Recede.
- 244. Ebullient** ..... उत्साहित ..... Very energetic and positive.
- 245. Eccentric** ..... सनकी ..... Of strange behaviour.
- 246. Eclectic** ..... विभिन्न श्रोतों से चुने हुए ..... Selected from various sources.
- 247. Ecstasy** ..... अत्यन्त खुशी ..... A state of extreme happiness.
- 248. Edict** ..... राज्य घोषणा ..... Official command, order.
- 249. Edify** ..... शिक्षित करना खास कर नैतिक व आध्यात्मिक विकास के लिए ..... To educate morally or spiritually.
- 250. Eerie** ..... डरावना ..... Weird/strange in a frightening way.
- 251. Efface** ..... मिटा देना ..... Wipe out.
- 252. Effect** ..... परिणाम ..... Result.
- 253. Effeminate** ..... औरताना गुण ..... Having womanly traits.
- 254. Effete** ..... कमजोर ..... Weak and without power.
- 255. Effigy** ..... पुतला ..... A model representing someone, Dummy.
- 256. Effluvia** ..... बदबू ..... Noxious smell.
- 257. Effrontery** ..... अत्यन्त असम्मान ..... Extreme rudeness.
- 258. Egalitarian** ..... समतावादी ..... Believing all people are equal.
- 259. Egregious** ..... कुख्यात/बहुत बुरा ..... Notorious/extremely bad.
- 260. Egress** ..... निकासी ..... Exit.
- 261. Elated** ..... खुश ..... Overjoyed.
- 262. Elicit** ..... स्पष्ट करना ..... Draw out by discussion.
- 263. Elite** ..... कुलीन ..... A superior group.
- 264. Elope** ..... भाग जाना (शादी हेतु) ..... To leave home secretly to get married.
- 265. Elucidate** ..... स्पष्ट करना ..... To make clear and easy to understand.
- 266. Elusive** ..... पकड़ में न आनेवाला/अवर्णनीय ..... Difficult to find/describe.
- 267. Emaciated** ..... दुर्बल ..... Thin and weak.
- 268. Emanate** ..... निकालना ..... Emitting/ejecting.
- 269. Emancipate** ..... मुक्त करना ..... Set free.

- 270. Embark** ..... शुरू करना ..... To begin .
- 271. Embarrass** ..... शर्मिन्दा करना ..... To cause someone feel uncomfortable.
- 272. Embellish** ..... सुशोभित करना ..... To ornate or decorate.
- 273. Embolden** ..... साहसी बनाना ..... To make someone brave.
- 274. Eminent** ..... प्रतिष्ठित ..... Known and respected .
- 275. Emulate** ..... बराबरी करना ..... Try to be equal.
- 276. Endangered** ..... संकटग्रस्त ..... To put at risk.
- 277. Endear** ..... प्रिय बनाना ..... To cause someone to be liked.
- 278. Enmity** ..... दुश्मनी ..... Animosity, a feeling of hatred.
- 279. Enormity** ..... विशालता ..... Of very great size or importance.
- 280. Enthral** ..... मोहित करना ..... Attract.
- 281. Enthusiastic** ... उत्साहित ..... Causing excitement.
- 282. Envisage** ..... पर विचार करना ..... To expect as a possibility.
- 283. Eradicate** ..... उन्मूलन करना ..... Remove/destroy completely.
- 284. Errand** ..... दूतकार्य (ऐसा काम जिसमें आना-जाना .. A short journey to deliver/collect something. पड़े)
- 285. Errant** ..... पथभ्रष्ट, गुमराह ..... One who does something wrong.
- 286. Escalate** ..... बढ़ाना ..... To increase/to expand step by step.
- 287. Espouse** ..... समर्थन करना ..... Support/adopt a cause or way of life.
- 288. Estrange** ..... त्याग देना ..... No longer friendly.
- 289. Etch** ..... साफ झलकना ..... Make clearly defined.
- 290. Ethical** ..... नैतिक ..... Beliefs which control behaviour.
- 291. Eunuch** ..... हिजड़ा ..... A person who is neither a man nor a woman.
- 292. Exasperate** ..... क्रोध/ रोष पैदा करना ..... To irritate
- 293. Exceptionable** . आपत्तिजनक ..... Objectionable.
- 294. Exceptional** ..... अपवाद ..... Unusual.
- 295. Excruciating** ... अत्यंत तकलीफदेह ..... Extremely painful.
- 296. Executioner** .... जल्लाद ..... One who carries the job of executing someone.
- 297. Exhaust** ..... खर्च कर देना/थका देना ..... To spend/to make tired.
- 298. Exhilarate** ..... आनन्दित करना ..... Cause to feel very happy.
- 299. Expostulate** .... विरोध प्रकट करना ..... Disagree strongly.
- 300. Extravaganza** .. फिजूलखर्ची ..... Exciting and expensive event.
- 301. Fad** ..... फैशन में होना ..... A craze.
- 302. Falter** ..... हिचकिचाना ..... Hesitate.

**Vocabularies**

- 303. Fanatic** ..... कट्टर..... Extremely enthusiastic of one's religion, belief etc.
- 304. Fancier** ..... जो जानवरों का प्रजनन करवाता हों..... Breeder or dealer of animals.
- 305. Farce** ..... तमाशा के जैसी घटना ..... An absurd event.
- 306. Fatal**..... घातक ..... Having serious and deadly effect.
- 307. Fate** ..... भाग्य ..... Destiny.
- 308. Fateful** ..... महत्त्वपूर्ण पर दुर्भाग्यपूर्ण ..... Having important but negative effect.
- 309. Fatuous** ..... मूर्खतापूर्ण ..... Foolish.
- 310. Fauna** ..... किसी क्षेत्र के जानवर ..... Animals of a particular area.
- 311. Faux pas** ..... सामाजिक गलती ..... Word/behavior that is social mistake.
- 312. Feasible** ..... व्यवहारिक ..... Practical.
- 313. Feeble** ..... कमजोर ..... Weak and without energy.
- 314. Feign** ..... नखरे करना ..... To pretend.
- 315. Felicity** ..... खुशी ..... Happiness/ bliss.
- 316. Felony** ..... जघन्य अपराध ..... A major criminal act.
- 317. Feral**..... जंगली ..... Wild.
- 318. Ferry** ..... नदी को पार कराना, नाव ..... To transport people or goods/a boat for transportation.
- 319. Fetter** ..... बेड़ी अथवा सीमा में रखना ..... To keep someone within limits.
- 320. Fiends** ..... पिशाच, पिशाच तुल्य ..... An evil person.
- 321. Finesse** ..... कुशलता ..... Great skill or style.
- 322. Flabbergast** ..... विस्मित करना ..... Dumbfound/astonished.
- 323. Flare**..... भड़कना ..... To start suddenly such as violence, pain or anger.
- 324. Flaunt** ..... दिखावा करना ..... Display ostentatiously.
- 325. Flex** ..... भुजा का माँस कठोर कर दिखाना ..... Tighten a muscle.
- 326. Flog** ..... चाबुक या डण्डे से मारना ..... To beat with a whip or stick.
- 327. Flout** ..... उल्लंघन करना ..... To disobey rule/law.
- 328. Folly** ..... गलती/बेवकूफी ..... Foolishness.
- 329. Foresee** ..... पहले से जान जाना ..... Predicting something.
- 330. fragile** ..... आसानी से टूट जाने वाला ..... Which can be easily broken.
- 331. Fraught** ..... अप्रिय चीजों से पूर्ण/ ओतप्रोत ..... Full of unpleasant things.
- 332. Frown** ..... भोहें चढ़ा कर देखना/ गुस्सा करना ..... Facial expression showing anger/ annoyance.
- 333. Furore** ..... गुस्सा ..... An outbreak of public anger.
- 334. Gag** ..... मुँह में कुछ ढूँस देना ..... To put cloth etc in the mouth.



- 335. Gallantry** ..... साहस ..... Bravery.
- 336. Garish** ..... बहुत अधिक रंगीन ..... Overbright in colour/ gaudy.
- 337. Garner** ..... इकट्ठा करना ..... Store up, gather.
- 338. Gawk** ..... बेवकूफ की तरह देखना ..... Stare foolishly.
- 339. Genesis** ..... शुरूआत ..... The origin of something.
- 340. Gigantic** ..... विशाल ..... Extremely large.
- 341. Glare** ..... घूरकर देखना ..... A long angry look.
- 342. Glee** ..... खुशी ..... Great delight.
- 343. Glimmer** ..... मंद रोशनी/आशा की किरण ..... A faint light/a slight sign of something good.
- 344. Glum** ..... दुखी/निराश एवं चुप ..... Disappointed or unhappy and quiet.
- 345. Glutton** ..... पेटू ..... One who eats too much.
- 346. Gourmet** ..... पाक कला का पारखी ..... A person who knows a lot about food and cooking.
- 347. Grandeur** ..... भव्य ..... The quality of being very beautiful and attractive.
- 348. Grapple** ..... संघर्ष करना ..... Wrestle.
- 349. Grievous** ..... तकलीफदेह/ गंभीर ..... Having very serious effect or causing pain.
- 350. Grotesque** ..... विकृत, भद्दा ..... Unpleasant /distorted.
- 351. Grumble** ..... बड़बड़ाना (गुस्से में) ..... To complain about something in an annoyed way.
- 352. Guffaw** ..... ठहाका ..... Noisy laughter.
- 353. Haggard** ..... थका/बिमर सा ..... Looking ill or tired.
- 354. Hailstorm** ..... ओले के साथ तूफान ..... A sudden heavy fall of hail.
- 355. Hallucination** .. भ्रम ..... To see or feel something or someone that does not exist.
- 356. Hapless** ..... बेचारा ..... Unlucky/ helpless.
- 357. Hard hearted** ... पत्थर दिल ..... A person who is not kind.
- 358. Harrowing** ..... परेशान करने वाला ..... Extremely upsetting.
- 359. Harry** ..... परेशान करना ..... To annoy.
- 360. Hasten** ..... जल्दी करना ..... Hurry and do things quickly.
- 361. Hatch** ..... करना (षड्यंत्र) ..... To make (a secret plan).
- 362. Haughty** ..... घमंडी ..... Arrogant.
- 363. Hazardous** ..... खतरनाक ..... Dangerous.
- 364. Head Strong** .... जिद्दी ..... Stubborn.

**Vocabularies**

- 365. Heckle** ..... सवाल अथवा वक्तव्य से परेशान करना . To interrupt with loud unfriendly questions or statements.
- 366. Heinous** ..... जघन्य ..... Atrocious.
- 367. Heir** ..... उत्तराधिकारी ..... One who legally receives money or title.
- 368. Hermetic** ..... वायुरूद्ध ..... Air-tight.
- 369. Hermitage** ..... मठ ..... Home of a hermit.
- 370. Hideous** ..... भद्दा ..... Extremely ugly/bad.
- 371. Hobble** ..... लँगड़ा कर चलना ..... To walk in a way as if the leg is injured.
- 372. Homage** ..... श्रद्धाँजलि ..... Deep respect shown.
- 373. Honorary** ..... अवैतनिक ..... To work without salary.
- 374. Honourable** ..... आदरणीय ..... Respectable.
- 375. Horde** ..... समूह ..... A large group of people.
- 376. Horrendous** ..... भयावह ..... Horrifying.
- 377. Hulk** ..... बेडौल ..... Large and heavy.
- 378. Hurdle** ..... रूकावट ..... Obstacle.
- 379. Hush up** ..... रफा-दफा करना ..... Trying to prevent the discovery of particular facts.
- 380. Ideal** ..... आदर्श ..... Without fault/to be perfect.
- 381. Idle** ..... बेकार, बिना काम का ..... Not working.
- 382. Illegal gratification** नाजायज रूप से प्राप्त संतुष्टि ..... Unlawful satisfaction.
- 383. Illegible** ..... अपठनीय ..... Which cannot be read.
- 384. Illicit** ..... अवैध ..... Disapproved by the society.
- 385. Imbecility** ..... मूर्खता ..... Stupidity.
- 386. Imbibe** ..... सोख लेना ..... To absorb/receive.
- 387. Immerse** ..... डुबाना ..... To become completely absorbed.
- 388. Imminent** ..... तुरंत ..... Likely to happen very soon.
- 389. Immolate** ..... जला कर बलि देना ..... Offer as a sacrifice by burning.
- 390. Immune** ..... प्रतिरक्षित होना ..... Resistant to.
- 391. Immure** ..... बन्दी बनाना ..... Imprison.
- 392. Immutable** ..... अपरिवर्तनीय ..... Unchangeable.
- 393. Impairment** ..... अक्षम ..... Handicap and disabled.
- 394. Impalpable** ..... जो आसानी से समझ में न आए ..... Difficult to feel or understand.
- 395. Impasse** ..... अंधा मोड़ ..... A deadlock.
- 396. Imperialism** ..... साम्राज्यवाद ..... System in which a country rules other countries.

- 397. Implicate** ..... किसी अपराध में फँसाना ..... To show that someone is involved in a crime.
- 398. Impound** ..... जब्त कर लेना ..... Seize and take legal possession of something.
- 399. Impromptu** ..... बिना तैयारी के ..... Done/said without preparation.
- 400. Impulse** ..... कुछ करने का आवेग ..... Sudden urge to do something.
- 401. Impunity** ..... दण्ड से रहित ..... Freedom from punishment.
- 402. Incarnate** ..... मानव रूप में ..... In human form.
- 403. Incessant** ..... लगातार ..... Never stopping.
- 404. Incision** ..... चीरा ..... An opening made by a sharp tool.
- 405. Incongruous** ..... बेमेल ..... Unusual/different from others.
- 406. Inconspicuous** ..... जो आसानी से दिखाई न दे ..... Not easily noticed or seen.
- 407. Incumbent** ..... आवश्यक ..... Necessary as a duty.
- 408. Incur** ..... कुछ अप्रिय अनुभव करना जैसे-घाटा ..... To experience something usually unpleasant.
- 409. Indelible** ..... स्थायी ..... Unable to be removed.
- 410. Indigence** ..... गरीबी ..... Poverty.
- 411. Inducement** ..... प्रलोभन ..... Act done to persuade someone or something.
- 412. Indulge** ..... आसक्त होना ..... Allow oneself something enjoyable.
- 413. Inhibition** ..... हिचक ..... A feeling preventing one from acting naturally.
- 414. Insane** ..... पागल ..... Mentally ill.
- 415. Instigate** ..... उकसाना ..... To urge to do some action.
- 416. Interlocutor** ..... वार्तालाप करने वाला ..... Someone involved in a conversation.
- 417. Intermittent** ... रूक-रूक के ..... Not happening regularly or continuously.
- 418. Intertwined** ..... गुँथा हुआ ..... To be twisted together.
- 419. Intimidate** ..... डराना ..... Frighten.
- 420. Intruder** ..... घुसपैठिया ..... One who enters a place without permission.
- 421. Irony** ..... विडम्बना ..... Meaning opposite but in a sarcastic manner.
- 422. Irrevocable** ..... जो बदला ना जा सके ..... Impossible to change.
- 423. Isolate** ..... अलग-थलग करना ..... To place apart or alone.
- 424. Jack** ..... उठाना ..... To raise something/increase the price.

*Vocabularies*

- 425. Jamboree** ..... जमावड़ा (खुशी मनाने के लिए) ..... A large gathering to have fun.
- 426. Jeopardy** ..... खतरे में ..... In danger.
- 427. Jittery** ..... परेशान, घबराया हुआ ..... Nervous.
- 428. Jovial** ..... हँसमुख ..... Good natured.
- 429. Jubilation** ..... जश्न ..... Rejoicing.
- 430. Juncture** ..... जोड़ ..... Joining point.
- 431. kneed** ..... गूँथना ..... To prepare dough.
- 432. Knotty** ..... जटिल ..... Difficult to solve.
- 433. Languor** ..... शांतिपूर्ण ..... Quiet/peaceful.
- 434. Lanky** ..... लम्बा-पतला ..... Long and thin (not attractive).
- 435. Latent** ..... गुप्त ..... Dormant.
- 436. Laud** ..... तारीफ करना ..... To praise.
- 437. Laurels** ..... सम्मान/ तारीफ ..... Honour/praise.
- 438. Lax** ..... लापरवाह ..... Careless.
- 439. Lechery** ..... विलासिता ..... Lustfulness.
- 440. Leery** ..... शंकित ..... Suspicious.
- 441. Legend** ..... पुरानी और प्रसिद्ध कथा ..... Very old and popular story.
- 442. Legitimate** ..... जायज ..... Allowed by law.
- 443. Lenient** ..... उदारात्मक ..... Not strict.
- 444. Lessen** ..... कम करना ..... To make less strong.
- 445. Lethargic** ..... आलसी ..... Lacking energy/lazy.
- 446. Liability** ..... दायित्व ..... Legally responsible.
- 447. Lopsided** ..... तिरछा ..... With one side lower than the other.
- 448. Loquacious** ..... बातूनी ..... Talkative/Garrulous.
- 449. Lunacy** ..... पागलपन ..... Insanity.
- 450. Macho** ..... मर्दाना ..... Masculine.
- 451. Magnitude** ..... तीव्रता ..... The large size or importance of something.
- 452. Majestic** ..... शक्तिशाली/ राजसी ..... Powerful/dignified and impressive.
- 453. Malady** ..... बिमारी ..... An illness.
- 454. Malcontent** ..... असंतुष्ट ..... Person dissatisfied with existing state of affairs.
- 455. Malign** ..... हानिकारक ..... Baleful, harmful, Deadly.
- 456. Mammoth** ..... विशाल ..... Huge.
- 457. Maniac** ..... सनकी ..... A person who behaves in an uncontrolled manner.

- 458. Manifestation** . अभिव्यक्ति ..... Clear to become noticeable.
- 459. Marine** ..... समुद्रीय ..... Related to sea.
- 460. Massacre** ..... नरसंहार ..... An act of killing many people.
- 461. Maze** ..... जाल ..... A complicated set of path or passages.
- 462. Melancholy** ..... दुखी ..... Sad.
- 463. Menace** ..... समस्या ..... A dangerous or troublesome person/situation.
- 464. Milestone** ..... मील का पत्थर ..... An important event in the history of someone/something.
- 465. Miniscule** ..... काफी छोटा ..... Very small.
- 466. Mirth** ..... खुशी ..... Laughter, happiness.
- 467. Miscreant** ..... बदमाश ..... One who behaves badly/doesn't obey rules.
- 468. Mitigate** ..... कम करना ..... To make/become less severe.
- 469. Momentum** ..... संवेग, बल ..... The force that keeps motion on.
- 470. Monstrous** ..... विशाल/ भयावह ..... Like a monster (cruel and/or very big).
- 471. Morbidity** ..... विकृत/ अस्वस्थ ..... Unpleasant and strange.
- 472. Moron** ..... बेवकूफ ..... A stupid person.
- 473. Mounting** ..... बढ़ता हुआ ..... Gradually increasing.
- 474. Mow** ..... कुचल देना ..... Kill by knocking down with vehicle.
- 475. Mull** ..... विचार करना ..... To think carefully about something.
- 476. Muster** ..... एकत्र करना ..... Gather together/sum up a feeling.
- 477. Mutilate** ..... नाश करना ..... To damage severely.
- 479. Mythology** ..... प्राचीन कथा ..... Myths in general.
- 480. Myth** ..... मिथक ..... Ancient story.
- 481. Nadir** ..... निचला स्तर ..... The worst moment/the lowest point.
- 482. Nape** ..... गर्दन ..... The back of the neck.
- 483. Nemesis** ..... प्रतिद्वन्दी जिसे हराना मुश्किल हो ..... Rival that is difficult to defeat.
- 484. Neologism** ..... किसी शब्द का नया अर्थ ..... New meaning.
- 485. Neophyte** ..... नौसिखिया ..... Beginner, novice.
- 486. Nexus** ..... साठ-गांठ ..... Connection.
- 487. Nightmare** ..... दुस्वप्न ..... Frightening dream/an unpleasant experience.
- 488. Nocturnal** ..... निशाचर ..... Occurring/ active at night.
- 489. Nomad** ..... अस्थायी आवास वाले जनजाति के सदस्य ..... Member of a tribe who travels from place to place.

**Vocabularies**

- 490. Nonchalant** ..... उदासीन/भाव हीन ..... Careless/ lacking interest.
- 491. Oblivion** ..... विस्मृति ..... The state of being unaware/  
forgotten.
- 492. Obnoxious** ..... घृणित ..... Unpleasant.
- 493. Obscene** ..... अश्लील ..... Rude or shocking.
- 494. Obsessive** ..... तीव्र इच्छा रखना ..... Related to thinking about something  
constantly.
- 495. Obsolete** ..... पुराना ..... Not in use any more.
- 496. Obstinate** ..... हठी ..... Stubborn.
- 497. Occlude** ..... बंद करना ..... close up or block.
- 498. Occult** ..... गुप्त (जादू-टोना से सम्बन्धित) ..... Secret, mysterious, relating to magical  
power.
- 499. Ogre** ..... शैतान ..... A frightening character of children's  
stories who eats children.
- 500. Ombudsman** .... लोकपाल ..... Officer who deals with complaints.
- 501. Ominous** ..... कुछ बुरा होने का आभास ..... Suggesting that something  
unpleasant is likely to happen.
- 502. Opportunist** ..... अवसरवादी ..... One who grabs every opportunity.
- 503. Optimistic** ..... आशावादी ..... One who is hopeful.
- 504. Orator** ..... वक्ता ..... A skilled speaker.
- 505. Ordain** ..... आदेश देना ..... Order officially.
- 506. Ostensible** ..... दिखावटी ..... Showy.
- 507. Oust** ..... निकाल देना ..... Force out from the position of power.
- 508. Outrage** ..... बेइज्जती करना ..... Insult/offence.
- 509. Overestimate** .. ज्यादा आकलन करना ..... To think that one is greater than he  
really is.
- 510. Palate** ..... तालु/ स्वाद परखने की शक्ति ..... The top part of the inside of your  
mouth/Appreciation for food or drink.
- 511. Palatial** ..... महलनुमा ..... A huge and splendid house.
- 512. Paltry** ..... मूल्यहीन ..... Worthless.
- 513. Pan** ..... आलोचना करना ..... Criticise harshly.
- 514. Panacea** ..... रामबाण ..... A remedy for all diseases.
- 515. Panache** ..... निपुणता ..... Confidence/elegance/style.
- 516. Pandemic** ..... व्यापक ..... Widespread.
- 517. Pandemonium** .शोर शराबा ..... Great confusion/noisy disorder.
- 518. Panic** ..... डर ..... Sudden uncontrolled fear.
- 519. Paramount** ..... सर्वोच्च ..... Supreme, zenith.

- 520. Parched** ..... सूखा ..... Dried out due to heat.
- 521. Pariah** ..... सामाजिक बहिष्कार ..... Social outcast.
- 522. Parley** ..... सम्मेलन ..... Conference.
- 523. Parochial** ..... संकीर्ण नजरिया वाला ..... Narrow in outlook.
- 524. Patronage** ..... संरक्षण ..... The support given to an organization.
- 525. Pawn** ..... प्यादा ..... People of little importance.
- 526. Peck** ..... हल्का चुम्बन ..... Kiss lightly.
- 527. Peddler** ..... रेहड़ी वाला ..... One who travels door to door to sell something.
- 528. Pellet** ..... छोटा गोला ..... A small ball of something.
- 529. Pelt** ..... फेंकना ..... Throw.
- 530. Perfidious** ..... विश्वासघाती ..... Unable to be trusted.
- 531. Persevere** ..... मेहनत करना (मुश्किलों के बावजूद) ..... Continue in spite of difficulty.
- 532. Persist** ..... जारी रहना ..... Continue and last.
- 533. Personify** ..... मानवीकरण करना ..... Represent in human form.
- 534. Perspire** ..... पसीना बहाना ..... To sweat.
- 535. Perturb** ..... तंग करना ..... Disturb.
- 536. Perverse** ..... विकृत/भ्रष्ट ..... Contrary to what is accepted or expected.
- 537. Pessimist** ..... निराशावादी ..... One who is not hopeful by nature.
- 538. Pious** ..... धार्मिक ..... Religious.
- 539. Pivotal** ..... मुख्य ..... Central and important.
- 540. Plaint** ..... याचिका ..... A legal complaint.
- 541. Plight** ..... परेशानी/दुख ..... Unpleasant condition.
- 542. Polygamy** ..... बहु-विवाह ..... To have more than one wife/husband.
- 543. Pomp** ..... धूमधाम ..... Splendid and colourful ceremony.
- 544. Populace** ..... आम जनता ..... Ordinary people.
- 545. Posthumously** ..... मृत्यु-उपरान्त ..... Awarded/published after death.
- 546. Pragmatic** ..... व्यवहारिक ..... Practical.
- 547. Precedent** ..... पूर्वगामी ..... An action already taken place/decision already taken.
- 548. Precincts** ..... जहाँ कार इत्यादि ले जाना वर्जित है/अहाता ..... Part of a city where vehicles are not allowed/limits.
- 549. Predicament** ..... अप्रिय हालात जिससे निकालना मुश्किल है ..... An unpleasant situation, which is difficult to get out of.

**Vocabularies**

- 550. Prejudice** ..... पूर्वाग्रह ..... Unfair opinion.
- 551. Preposterous** ... बेवकूफी भरा ..... Very foolish/ridiculous.
- 552. Prey** ..... शिकार ..... Victim/an animal hunted by another for food.
- 553. Proclivity** ..... झुकाव ..... Tendency or inclination.
- 554. Proliferation** ... प्रचुर मात्रा में उत्पन्न होना ..... Increasing greatly and suddenly in number.
- 555. Promising** ..... आशाजनक ..... Showing signs of being successful in future.
- 556. Propensity** ..... बुरे बर्ताव के तरफ झुकाव ..... Tendency towards behaving badly.
- 557. Provocative** ..... उकसाने वाला ..... Causing an angry reaction/ inciting.
- 558. Prudence** ..... समझदारी ..... Wisdom.
- 559. Pugnacious** ..... युद्धप्रिय ..... Quarrelsome.
- 560. Punitive** ..... दण्डात्मक ..... Intended as a punishment.
- 561. Purge** ..... छुटकारा पाना/ शुद्ध करना ..... To get rid of people you don't like/to make free for harmful things.
- 562. Pyre** ..... चिता ..... A large pile of wood on which a dead body is burnt.
- 563. Quantum** ..... किसी चीज की इकाई ..... Unit of something.
- 564. Quell** ..... रोकना ..... To stop something especially by using force.
- 565. Quench** ..... बुझाना (प्यास) ..... satisfy (thirst).
- 566. Query** ..... शंका/सवाल ..... A question/doubt.
- 567. Quiescent** ..... सुप्त ..... Dormant, at rest.
- 568. Quietude** ..... शांति ..... Tranquility.
- 569. Quotidian** ..... साधारण ..... Common/ordinary.
- 570. Racial** ..... नस्लवाद से संबंधित ..... Connected with a particular race or country.
- 571. Rancor** ..... नफरत ..... Bitterness, hatred.
- 572. Rankle** ..... परेशान करना ..... Irritate.
- 573. Rapport** ..... तालमेल ..... Harmony.
- 574. Ratify** ..... अंगीकार करना ..... Confirm formally by signing it or voting for it.
- 575. Ravenous** ..... बहुत भुखा ..... Extremely hungry.
- 576. Raze** ..... नष्ट करना ..... To destroy.
- 577. Rebellious** ..... विरोधी ..... One who opposes the system.



- 578. Rebuff** ..... सहायता स्वीकार करने से मना करना ..... To refuse a helpful suggestion.
- 579. Rebuke** ..... बुरी तरह से डाँटना ..... Scold harshly.
- 580. Recalcitrant** .... उद्दण्ड ..... One who is unwilling to obey orders.
- 581. Reckless** ..... असावधान ..... Without caring for the result of an action.
- 582. Recluse** ..... अकेला ..... One who lives alone.
- 583. Recuperate** ..... ठीक होना बिमारी के बाद ..... To recover from illness.
- 584. Redundant** ..... गैर जरूरी ..... Unnecessary.
- 585. Refute** ..... खण्डन करना ..... To say/prove that a person opinion is wrong.
- 586. Regime** ..... शासन ..... Rule of.
- 587. Reign** ..... शासन ..... The monarch's period of rule.
- 588. Rein** ..... लगाम/ लगाम लगाना ..... Piece of leather which helps you to control the headgear of a horse/to bridle/to restrain.
- 589. Relegate** ..... अवनति करना ..... Place in a lower position.
- 590. Reluctant** ..... अनिच्छुक ..... Unwilling.
- 591. Remorse** ..... अफसोस ..... Feeling of guilt or regret.
- 592. Renewable** ..... नवीनीकरणीय ..... Which can be used again and again.
- 593. Repent** ..... पछताना ..... To be sorry for something.
- 594. Repercussions** . परिणाम ..... Consequence.
- 595. Replica** ..... हु-ब-हु ..... An exact copy of an object.
- 596. Reprehensible** . निन्दनीय ..... Deserving condemnation.
- 597. Reprieve** ..... बचाव ..... An escape from a bad situation.
- 598. Repugnant** ..... प्रतिकूल/ निराशाजनक ..... Unpleasant behavior or belief.
- 599. Resentment** .... नापसंद ..... Feeling of dislike.
- 600. Respite** ..... बचाव ..... Relief from something.
- 601. Resurgence** .... किसी विचारधारा का फिर से सर उठाना . A new increase of idea which had been forgotten for some time.
- 602. Resurrect** ..... फिर से जीवित करना ..... To bring someone back to life.
- 603. Retrieve** ..... फिर से प्राप्त करना ..... To find and bring back something.
- 604. Reverence** ..... सम्मान ..... Respect.
- 605. Rhetoric** ..... प्रभावशाली भाषण (परन्तु जरूरी नहीं कि ईमानदार भी) ..... Effective speech but not essentially sincere.
- 606. Rumour** ..... अफवाह ..... Piece of news that may or may not be true.

*Vocabularies*

- 607. Ruthless** ..... क्रूर..... Cruel.
- 608. Sacrament** ..... धार्मिक कार्य..... An important religious ceremony.
- 609. Sadist** ..... परपीड़क ..... One who obtains pleasure by hurting others.
- 610. Salubrious** ..... स्वास्थ्य के लिए लाभदायक ..... Good for health.
- 611. Salvation** ..... मोक्ष ..... The act of saving someone from danger, loss sin etc.
- 612. Sanctity** ..... पवित्रता ..... The quality of being holy.
- 613. Sanguine** ..... आशावित ..... Hopeful.
- 614. Sarcasm** ..... व्यंग्यकारी ..... Scornful remarks.
- 615. Scant** ..... अपर्याप्त/ कम..... Barely enough.
- 616. Scrap** ..... टुकड़ा/बकझक ..... Small pieces /Argument.
- 617. Scum** ..... गंदगी (तरल पदार्थ के सतह पर) ..... Dirt (on the surface of liquid).
- 618. Seasoned** ..... परिपक्व ..... Having a lot of experience.
- 619. Sensuous** ..... इन्द्रिय सम्बन्धी (शारीरिक रूप से आकर्षक) ..... Relating to physical senses./ Physically attractive.
- 620. Severity** ..... तीव्रता ..... Extremity.
- 621. Shambles** ..... बुरी हालत में..... A state of confusion/untidiness.
- 622. Shirk** ..... जी चुराना ..... To avoid work/ duty.
- 623. Shrewd** ..... धूर्त..... Based on clear understanding and Judgement.
- 624. Shroud** ..... छिपाना ..... Hide.
- 625. Shrug** ..... कन्धे उचका कर अनभिज्ञता/उदासीनता जाहिर करना ..... To raise and then lower the shoulder to show lack of knowledge/interest.
- 626. Site** ..... भवन-निर्माण आदि का स्थल ..... Place where something is built.
- 627. Sizzle** ..... काफी गर्म होना ..... (of food) make a hissing sound when being fried.
- 628. Skeptical** ..... सन्देही ..... Doubtful.
- 629. Slay** ..... हत्या करना ..... Murder.
- 630. Solace** ..... दिलासा ..... Comfort in time of distress.
- 631. Solidarity** ..... समर्थन ..... Support.
- 632. Solitary** ..... अकेला ..... The only person/thing in given place.
- 633. Spectre** ..... संदेह ..... The idea of something unpleasant that may happen in future.
- 634. Spinster** ..... कुंवारी महिला ..... A woman who is not married.
- 635. Sporadic** ..... अनियमित रूप से ..... Occurring at irregular intervals.
- 636. Spouse** ..... जीवन साथी ..... Life partner.

- 637. Spurious** ..... संदेहास्पद ..... False and not what it appears to be.
- 638. Squirm** ..... छटपटाना ..... To move from side to side in an awkward way because of nervousness, pain etc.
- 639. Stack** ..... एक के ऊपर एक रखना ..... Pile on one another.
- 640. Stagger** ..... लड़खड़ाना ..... To walk showing imbalance.
- 641. Strangle** ..... गला घोट कर मारना ..... To kill by pressing the throat.
- 642. Stringent** ..... कठोर ..... Strict and demanding.
- 643. Stroke** ..... थपकी/घड़ी की घंटे की घंटी ..... An act of hitting/a sound of a striking clock.
- 644. Subdue** ..... तीव्रता कम करना ..... To reduce the force of something.
- 645. Substantiate** .. वक्तव्य को प्रमाणित करना ..... To support a claim.
- 646. Subterfuge** ..... कुछ हासिल करने का गलत तरीका ..... A trick or a dishonest way of achieving something.
- 647. Subtle** ..... सूक्ष्म/बारीक लेकिन महत्वपूर्ण ..... Small but important.
- 648. Succour** ..... समय पर सहायता ..... Help given to someone in need.
- 649. Sully** ..... दाग लगाना ..... Stain/to spoil someone's perfect reputation.
- 650. Sultry** ..... उमस भरा ..... Warm and moist.
- 651. Sumptuous** ..... भरपूर ..... Luxurious/showing wealth.
- 652. Suo-moto** ..... खुद ही ..... On its own.
- 653. Surge** ..... तीव्रता से बढ़ना ..... A sudden or great increase.
- 654. Swathe** ..... कपड़े/जमीन का चौड़ा टुकड़ा ..... Broad strip of cloth/land.
- 655. Sycophancy** ..... चापलूसी ..... Attempt to win favour by flattery.
- 656. Symposium** ..... विचार-गोष्ठी ..... Official meeting.
- 657. Synchronize** .... एक ही समय पर होना ..... To (Cause to) happen at the same time.
- 658. Tangible** ..... जिसे छू कर महसूस किया जा सके ..... Real, which can be touched or experienced.
- 659. Tawdry** ..... सस्ता एवं भड़कीला ..... Cheap and gaudy.
- 660. Temerity** ..... हिम्मत ..... Boldness.
- 661. Temperate** ..... संयम रखने वाला ..... Self controlled.
- 662. Tempestuous** .. प्रबल भावना से ओत-प्रोत ..... Full of strong emotion.
- 663. Tendentious** .... किसी मत का पक्षधर होना ..... Supporting a particular opinion.
- 664. Tenements** ..... निवास स्थान ..... A large building divided into apartments.

**Vocabularies**

- 665. Terse** ..... संक्षिप्त ..... Concise/using few words.
- 666. Thumping** ..... महत्त्वपूर्ण ..... Extremely great or important.
- 667. Thunder** ..... गर्जन ..... Sudden large noise from the sky.
- 668. Thunderbolt** .... बिजली का कड़कना एवं बादल का गर्जन A flash of lightning and sound of thunder.
- 669. Timid** ..... डरपोक ..... Lacking courage/ cowardly.
- 670. Tiptoe** ..... पैरो के ऊँगलियों पर चलना ..... To walk on toes with heels not touching the ground.
- 671. Tormentor** ..... शोषक ..... One who causes sufferings.
- 672. Tout** ..... दलाल ..... The act/the person encouraging sale of anything.
- 673. Toxic** ..... जहरीला ..... Poisonous.
- 674. Traffic** ..... गैर कानूनी चीज का व्यापार ..... Illegal trade.
- 675. Trail** ..... रास्ता / धीरे चलना ..... Path/ to follow the path of someone/ to move slowly.
- 676. Traitor** ..... गद्दार ..... A person who is not loyal.
- 677. Trauma** ..... मानसिक आघात ..... Severe emotional shock.
- 678. Treason** ..... गद्दारी ..... The act of being not loyal.
- 679. Triumph** ..... बड़ी जीत ..... A great success.
- 680. Twitch** ..... फड़कना ..... Any part of body making sudden, small movement.
- 681. Unanimous** ..... सर्वसम्मत ..... To agree/support together.
- 682. Uncanny** ..... विचित्र ..... Strange/impossible to explain.
- 683. Under-privileged** गरीब ..... Poor.
- 684. Underestimate** कम करके आँकना ..... To estimate that one is inferior to what he really is.
- 685. Uninterested** ... दिलचस्पी ना होना ..... Not interested.
- 686. Unison** ..... एक साथ ..... Two/more things happening at same time.
- 687. Unruly** ..... अनियंत्रित ..... Not easy to control.
- 688. Upbeat** ..... आशावादी ..... Cheerful, optimistic.
- 689. Uproar** ..... शोर-शराबा ..... A loud noise or disturbance.
- 690. Uproot** ..... जड़ से उखाड़ देना ..... To remove from their home place/ root.
- 691. Vague** ..... अस्पष्ट ..... Not clearly expressed.
- 692. Valediction** ..... विदाई भाषण ..... Speech in which one says goodbye.
- 693. Validate** ..... प्रमाणित करना ..... Confirm, Ratify.
- 694. Vandalism** ..... संपत्ति नष्ट करने की क्रिया ..... Crime of damaging property.

- 695. Veil**..... नकाब/घूँघट ..... Thing that hides or disguises.
- 696. Vengeance** ..... बदले की भावना ..... Revenge.
- 697. Vengeful**..... बदले की भावना वाला ..... To have strong desire to punish someone who has hurt one or one's dear ones.
- 698. Venom** ..... जहर ..... Poison.
- 699. Verbose** ..... बातों से भरा ..... Using more words than necessary.
- 700. Verily** ..... सत्यतः/वस्तुतः..... In a completely truthful way.
- 701. Vestige** ..... अवशेष ..... A still existing small part of something.
- 702. Veteran** ..... अनुभवी ..... A person who has a lot of experience.
- 703. Vicarious** ..... प्रतिनिधिक/सीधे तौर पर नहीं ..... Experienced in one's imagination rather than directly.
- 704. Vicious** ..... बुरा/दुष्ट ..... Violent and aggressive.
- 705. Victimize**..... सताना ..... To treat someone in a cruel and unfair manner.
- 706. Vigorous** ..... ऊर्जावान ..... Energetic.
- 707. Virtuous** ..... नैतिक गुण वाला ..... Having good moral qualities.
- 708. Volatile** ..... क्षणिक ..... Likely to change suddenly.
- 709. Voluminous**..... भारी-भरकम ..... Loose and full.
- 710. Vow**..... कसम ..... Solemn promise.
- 711. Vulnerable** ..... जिसे आसानी से चोट पहुँचाया जा सकता है। Prone to physical/ emotional hurt.
- 712. Vie**..... प्रतिस्पर्धा करना ..... To compete with other people to obtain something.
- 713. Wan**..... कमजोर ..... Weak/pale/tired-looking.
- 714. Wanderlust** ..... घूमने की इच्छा रखना ..... Strong desire to travel.
- 715. Wholeheartedly** पूरे दिल से ..... With complete interest and enthusiasm.
- 716. Witty**..... वाकपटु ..... Using words in a clever manner.
- 717. Wizard**..... जादुगर ..... Magician.
- 718. Woes**..... दुख ..... Sorrow/distress.
- 719. Wretch**..... अभागा ..... An unhappy person.
- 720. Yawn**..... उबासी लेना ..... To breathe taking in a lot of air with mouth open.
- 721. Yearn**..... लालसा करना ..... Crave.
- 722. Zealous**..... उत्साहित ..... Enthusiastic, causing excitement.

# 18

## SYNONYMS

### CHAPTER

**Directions: in questions no. 1 to 274, out of the four alternatives, choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the given word and mark it in the answer sheet.**

1. **Irrevocable**  
(a) Change  
(b) Done  
(c) Unalterable  
(d) Reversible
2. **Adorn**  
(a) Trust  
(b) Writer  
(c) Suspect  
(d) Beautify
3. **Repose**  
(a) Place  
(b) Keep  
(c) Rest  
(d) Replace
4. **Commotion**  
(a) Cheer  
(b) Imbalance  
(c) Disturbance  
(d) Movement
5. **Nurture**  
(a) To encourage  
(b) To grow  
(c) To see  
(d) To maintain
6. **Deny**  
(a) Regain  
(b) Refuse  
(c) Repair  
(d) Reduce
7. **Abuse**  
(a) Use  
(b) Praise  
(c) Scorn  
(d) Raise
8. **Docile**  
(a) Submissive  
(b) Stubborn  
(c) Strong  
(d) Changeable
9. **Considerate**  
(a) Agreeable  
(b) Kind  
(c) Like-minded  
(d) Thoughtful
10. **Irresolute**  
(a) Undecided  
(b) Angry  
(c) Ignorant  
(d) Firm
11. **Frugal**  
(a) Economical  
(b) Miserly  
(c) Splendid  
(d) Hungry
12. **Motive**  
(a) Reason  
(b) Occasion  
(c) Intention  
(d) Preparation
13. **Pity**  
(a) Offence  
(b) Mercy  
(c) Kindness  
(d) Joy
14. **Quash**  
(a) Question  
(b) Pledge  
(c) Reject  
(d) Slash
15. **Restrict**  
(a) Curtail  
(b) Prohibit  
(c) Retain  
(d) Retail
16. **Anticipate**  
(a) Antagonise  
(b) Expect  
(c) Accept  
(d) Hope
17. **Tremendous**  
(a) Awesome  
(b) Remarkable  
(c) Considerable  
(d) Excessive
18. **Meticulous**  
(a) Correct  
(b) Clean  
(c) Methodical  
(d) Painstaking
19. **Abundant**  
(a) Sufficient  
(b) Plentiful  
(c) Significant  
(d) Vibrant
20. **Acquaint**  
(a) Arouse  
(b) Introduce  
(c) Appoint  
(d) Acquire
21. **Change**  
(a) Alter  
(b) Renew  
(c) Review  
(d) Repeat

- 22. Surreptitiously**  
(a) Calmly  
(b) Secretly  
(c) Suggestively  
(d) Quietly
- 23. Forebode**  
(a) Alarm  
(b) Foretell  
(c) Failure  
(d) Forefront
- 24. Genuine**  
(a) Good  
(b) Real  
(c) Attractive  
(d) Lovable
- 25. Adverse**  
(a) Negative  
(b) Facilitating  
(c) Decorative  
(d) Derogative
- 26. Elastic**  
(a) Rubbery  
(b) Flexible  
(c) Expensive  
(d) Exciting
- 27. Vacillate**  
(a) Waver  
(b) Never  
(c) Quiver  
(d) Queer
- 28. Impeccable**  
(a) Perfect  
(b) Fair  
(c) Faultless  
(d) Criminal
- 29. Impediment**  
(a) Clear  
(b) Ailment  
(c) Incapable  
(d) Obstruction
- 30. Advance**  
(a) Reduce  
(b) Halt  
(c) Progress  
(d) Extend
- 31. Prognosis**  
(a) Diagnosis  
(b) Forecast  
(c) Preface  
(d) Identity
- 32. Poach**  
(a) Catch  
(b) Hunt  
(c) Preach  
(d) Plunder
- 33. Repartee**  
(a) Refuse  
(b) Celebrate  
(c) Quick witty reply  
(d) Question
- 34. Exhort**  
(a) Recommend  
(b) Coax  
(c) Urge  
(d) Push
- 35. Lurid**  
(a) Happy  
(b) Abundant  
(c) Bright  
(d) Shocking
- 36. Familiar**  
(a) Well-known  
(b) Familial  
(c) Relative  
(d) Common
- 37. Dessert**  
(a) Wasteland  
(b) Abandon  
(c) Sweet-dish  
(d) Broth
- 38. Affiliate**  
(a) Control  
(b) Associate  
(c) Copy  
(d) Discriminate
- 39. Explicit**  
(a) Clear  
(b) Obvious  
(c) Cautious  
(d) Exorbitant
- 40. Diligent**  
(a) Intelligent  
(b) Energetic  
(c) Modest  
(d) Industrious
- 41. Infuriate**  
(a) Burn  
(b) Disgrace  
(c) Threaten  
(d) Enrage
- 42. Prospective**  
(a) Preceded  
(b) Prosperous  
(c) Perplexed  
(d) Possible
- 43. Lousy**  
(a) Unbearable  
(b) Awful  
(c) Loose  
(d) Stinking
- 44. Accentuated**  
(a) Accent  
(b) Devalued  
(c) Mitigated  
(d) Sharpened
- 45. Predominantly**  
(a) Emphatically  
(b) Forcefully  
(c) Mostly  
(d) Profoundly
- 46. Paucity**  
(a) Sincerity  
(b) Shortfall  
(c) Publicity  
(d) Downfall
- 47. Avert**  
(a) Hide  
(b) Obey  
(c) Excuse  
(d) Avoid
- 48. Pensive**  
(a) Careless  
(b) Thoughtful  
(c) Penitent  
(d) Unattached
- 49. Cordial**  
(a) Smooth  
(b) Friendly  
(c) Sophisticated  
(d) Reserved
- 50. Provisional**  
(a) Casual  
(b) Lucky  
(c) Visible  
(d) Temporary
- 51. Horrendous**  
(a) Very huge  
(b) Greatly unpleasant  
(c) Mildly sincere  
(d) Most pleasant

**Synonyms**

- 52. Authentic**  
(a) Admirable  
(b) Genuine  
(c) Adjustable  
(d) None of the above
- 53. Rectify**  
(a) Correct  
(b) Alter  
(c) Erase  
(d) Continue
- 54. Miraculous**  
(a) Mysterious  
(b) Sudden  
(c) Amazing  
(d) Unexpected
- 55. Warranty**  
(a) Threat  
(b) Guarantee  
(c) Order for arrest  
(d) Issue
- 56. Knave**  
(a) Emperor  
(b) Enchanter  
(c) Soldier  
(d) Scoundrel
- 57. Prodigious**  
(a) Huge  
(b) Prodigious  
(c) Enormous  
(d) Wasteful
- 58. Impost**  
(a) Fertilizer  
(b) Dispatch  
(c) Tax  
(d) Postage
- 59. Coarse**  
(a) Academic  
(b) Grain  
(c) Rough  
(d) Training
- 60. Forego**  
(a) Renounce  
(b) Disown  
(c) Leave  
(d) Accumulate
- 61. Recipients**  
(a) Creators  
(b) Donors  
(c) Receivers  
(d) Instigators
- 62. Frontier**  
(a) Edge  
(b) Landmark  
(c) Boundary  
(d) Corner
- 63. Rout**  
(a) Death  
(b) Defeat  
(c) Loss  
(d) Crash
- 64. Irreproachable**  
(a) Remarkable  
(b) Extraordinary  
(c) Faultless  
(d) Immense
- 65. Felicity**  
(a) Prosperity  
(b) Honesty  
(c) Bliss  
(d) Sorrow
- 66. Judicious**  
(a) Biased  
(b) Sensible  
(c) Exact  
(d) Honest
- 67. Transpired**  
(a) Was communicated  
(b) Was discussed  
(c) Happened  
(d) Conspired
- 68. Obstinate**  
(a) Foolish  
(b) Unyielding  
(c) Unreasonable  
(d) Mischievous
- 69. Sundry**  
(a) Countless  
(b) Various  
(c) Certain  
(d) Several
- 70. Menial**  
(a) Lowly  
(b) Tough  
(c) Dangerous  
(d) Low-paid
- 71. Impetus**  
(a) Financial support  
(b) Accelerated growth  
(c) Retarded growth  
(d) Driving force
- 72. Emulate**  
(a) Praise  
(b) Find out  
(c) Follow  
(d) Assess
- 73. Boast**  
(a) Cry  
(b) Abuse  
(c) Hate  
(d) Brag
- 74. Mass murder**  
(a) Patricide  
(b) Fratricide  
(c) Regicide  
(d) Genocide
- 75. Executioner**  
(a) Executive engineer  
(b) Explorer  
(c) Experimenter  
(d) One who inflict capital punishment
- 76. Maiden speech**  
(a) Farewell speech  
(b) Short speech  
(c) First speech  
(d) Speech about women
- 77. Interfere**  
(a) Meddle  
(b) Help  
(c) Object  
(d) Copy
- 78. Tedious**  
(a) Tiresome  
(b) Dull  
(c) Interesting  
(d) Exciting
- 79. Magnificent**  
(a) Magnanimous  
(b) Modest  
(c) Generous  
(d) Splendid
- 80. Spirited**  
(a) Heated  
(b) Drunk  
(c) Enthusiastic  
(d) Possessed



- 81. Gloomy**  
(a) Misty  
(b) Morose  
(c) Murky  
(d) Shadowy
- 82. Grumble**  
(a) To scold  
(b) To complain  
(c) To sheer  
(d) To fight
- 83. Crude**  
(a) Unrefined  
(b) Cruel  
(c) Rude  
(d) Savage
- 84. Hostile**  
(a) Poor  
(b) Antagonistic  
(c) Delinquent  
(d) Reticent
- 85. Friendly**  
(a) Gentle  
(b) Amiable  
(c) Considerate  
(d) Industrious
- 86. Veil**  
(a) Seclude  
(b) Moan  
(c) Conceal  
(d) Repent
- 87. Recurrent**  
(a) Flowing backward  
(b) Healing quickly  
(c) Happening repeatedly  
(d) Timely
- 88. Peculiar**  
(a) Same  
(b) Strange  
(c) Surprising  
(d) Tiring
- 89. Prosper**  
(a) Cherish  
(b) Promote  
(c) Thrive  
(d) Rich
- 90. Eminent**  
(a) Confident  
(b) Authentic  
(c) Ingenious  
(d) Illustrious
- 91. Fortitude**  
(a) Composure  
(b) Confidence  
(c) Courage  
(d) Produce
- 92. Sanitise**  
(a) Pleasant  
(b) Disinfect  
(c) Pious  
(d) Crazy
- 93. Favourite**  
(a) Preferred  
(b) Focused  
(c) Pleasurable  
(d) Disliked
- 94. Novice**  
(a) Beginner  
(b) Virtuous  
(c) Trainer  
(d) Learner
- 95. Adversary**  
(a) Poverty  
(b) Contestant  
(c) Opponent  
(d) Intruder
- 96. Dishonour**  
(a) Infamy  
(b) Glory  
(c) Uncouth  
(d) Wicked
- 97. Erudite**  
(a) Scholarly  
(b) Friendly  
(c) Miserly  
(d) Lovely
- 98. Idea**  
(a) Comprehension  
(b) Notion  
(c) Emotion  
(d) Gist
- 99. Takes after**  
(a) Follows  
(b) Comes after  
(c) Resembles  
(d) Imitates
- 100. Ill-favoured**  
(a) Unlucky  
(b) Weak in health  
(c) Short-tempered  
(d) Ugly
- 101. Homage**  
(a) Humility  
(b) Tribute  
(c) Obedience  
(d) Allegiance
- 102. Clue**  
(a) Hint  
(b) Inkling  
(c) Intimation  
(d) Signal
- 103. Amazement**  
(a) Shock  
(b) Wander  
(c) Surprise  
(d) Suspicion
- 104. Consistency**  
(a) Constancy  
(b) Competence  
(c) Permanence  
(d) Uniformity
- 105. Electrifying**  
(a) Attractive  
(b) Fearsome  
(c) Exciting  
(d) Disturbing
- 106. Refrain**  
(a) Dissuade  
(b) Desist  
(c) Prevent  
(d) Curb
- 107. Merited**  
(a) Deserved  
(b) Encouraged  
(c) Prompted  
(d) Supported
- 108. Candid**  
(a) Overconfident  
(b) Frank  
(c) Arrogant  
(d) Careless
- 109. Zealous**  
(a) Ardent  
(b) Jealous  
(c) Furious  
(d) Impatient
- 110. Industrious**  
(a) Indolent  
(b) Industrial  
(c) Hard-working  
(d) Economic

**Synonyms**

**111. Feasible**

- (a) Practical
- (b) Rejoice
- (c) Accentuate
- (d) Accurate

**112. Atrocity**

- (a) Envy
- (b) Violence
- (c) Jealousy
- (d) Absurdity

**113. Fortify**

- (a) Create
- (b) Generate
- (c) Prohibit
- (d) Strengthen

**114. Pacify**

- (a) Calm down
- (b) Satisfy
- (c) Rouse
- (d) Rejoice

**115. Barren**

- (a) Good
- (b) Wholesome
- (c) Unproductive
- (d) Profitable

**116. Infamy**

- (a) Notoriety
- (b) Glory
- (c) Integrity
- (d) Familiarity

**117. Intrepid**

- (a) Hesitant
- (b) Fearless
- (c) Extrovert
- (d) Familiarity

**118. Perspicuous**

- (a) Relevant
- (b) Precise
- (c) Brief
- (d) Clear

**119. Sufficient**

- (a) Full
- (b) Complete
- (c) Enough
- (d) Less

**120. Benevolent**

- (a) Beneficial
- (b) Kind
- (c) Helpful
- (d) Supportive

**121. Ancestors**

- (a) Extinct tribes
- (b) Relatives
- (c) Forefathers
- (d) Old people

**122. Embrace**

- (a) Impress
- (b) Except
- (c) Embarrass
- (d) Accept

**123. Meek**

- (a) Light-hearted
- (b) Serious
- (c) Submissive
- (d) Benign

**124. Cajole**

- (a) Insist
- (b) Persuade
- (c) Direct
- (d) Recommend

**125. Fragrance**

- (a) Taste
- (b) Aroma
- (c) Sight
- (d) Touch

**126. Fictitious**

- (a) False
- (b) Frail
- (c) Foul
- (d) Flattering

**127. Obscene**

- (a) Dirty
- (b) Unhealthy
- (c) Indecent
- (d) Unwanted

**128. Imitate**

- (a) Follow
- (b) Copy
- (c) Think
- (d) Allude

**129. Enigmatic**

- (a) Magnetic
- (b) Automatic
- (c) Speeding
- (d) Puzzling

**130. Despondent**

- (a) Deserted
- (b) Dejected
- (c) Rejected
- (d) Repentant

**131. Aversion**

- (a) Aggression
- (b) Assertion
- (c) Dislike
- (d) Impudence

**132. Desperation**

- (a) Depression
- (b) Jubilation
- (c) Fascination
- (d) Hopelessness

**133. Jubilant**

- (a) Brilliant
- (b) Proud
- (c) Ecstatic
- (d) Gloomy

**134. Liberty**

- (a) Freedom
- (b) Equality
- (c) Charity
- (d) Democracy

**135. Blister**

- (a) Chatter
- (b) Travel
- (c) Attack
- (d) Wound

**136. Trauma**

- (a) Accident
- (b) Art form
- (c) Type of medicine
- (d) Emotional shock

**137. Fabulous**

- (a) Beautiful
- (b) Marvellous
- (c) Interesting
- (d) Charming

**138. Laudable**

- (a) Sincere
- (b) Praiseworthy
- (c) Benevolent
- (d) Welcome

**139. Surpass**

- (a) Outdo
- (b) Pass over
- (c) Overdo
- (d) Pass by

**140. Defer**

- (a) Indifferent
- (b) Deft
- (c) Differ
- (d) Postpone

- 141. Cease**  
(a) Begin  
(b) Stop  
(c) Create  
(d) Dull
- 142. Pious**  
(a) Religious  
(b) Sympathetic  
(c) Afraid  
(d) Faithful
- 143. Abandon**  
(a) Forsake  
(b) Keep  
(c) Cherish  
(d) Enlarge
- 144. Intimidate**  
(a) Calm down  
(b) View  
(c) Leave  
(d) Frighten
- 145. Regard**  
(a) Respect  
(b) Liking  
(c) Love  
(d) Suspicion
- 146. Swap**  
(a) Snap  
(b) Exchange  
(c) Break  
(d) Exclude
- 147. Prudent**  
(a) Wise  
(b) Cunning  
(c) Frank  
(d) Severe
- 148. Genius**  
(a) A generous person  
(b) A foreigner  
(c) An intellect  
(d) An athlete
- 149. Culmination**  
(a) Conclusion  
(b) Climax  
(c) Abyss  
(d) Cultivation
- 150. Sporadic**  
(a) Surviving  
(b) Sweeping  
(c) Irregular  
(d) Persistent
- 151. Crass**  
(a) Casual  
(b) Formal  
(c) Unrefined  
(d) Sterile
- 152. Accomplish**  
(a) Amass  
(b) Acquire  
(c) Adhere  
(d) Achieve
- 153. Cursory**  
(a) Little  
(b) Quick  
(c) Eager  
(d) Tender
- 154. Envisaged**  
(a) Ensured  
(b) Idealized  
(c) Contemplated  
(d) Imagined
- 155. Clandestine**  
(a) Awkward  
(b) Inconsistent  
(c) Secret  
(d) Ugly
- 156. Resentment**  
(a) Annoyance  
(b) Dispatch  
(c) Disagreement  
(d) Dismissal
- 157. Obdurate**  
(a) Angry  
(b) Calm  
(c) Obsessed  
(d) Adamant
- 158. Obscure**  
(a) Unknown  
(b) Neglectful  
(c) Occasional  
(d) Old
- 159. Reluctant**  
(a) Unwilling  
(b) Forego  
(c) Redundant  
(d) Amendable
- 160. Revelation**  
(a) Anticipation  
(b) Imagination  
(c) Revel in  
(d) Disclosure
- 161. Ostracise**  
(a) Censure  
(b) Sentence  
(c) Banish  
(d) Berate
- 162. Appalled**  
(a) Shocked  
(b) Saddened  
(c) Scared  
(d) Alarmed
- 163. Imbecility**  
(a) Stupidity  
(b) Rusticity  
(c) Verbosity  
(d) Incoherence
- 164. Collusion**  
(a) Conflict  
(b) Secret agreement  
(c) Consultation  
(d) Misunderstanding
- 165. Hesitant**  
(a) Antagonistic  
(b) Grumbling  
(c) Contradict  
(d) Undecided
- 166. Deceptive**  
(a) Disagreeable  
(b) Misleading  
(c) Mistake  
(d) Debatable
- 167. Palpable**  
(a) Obvious  
(b) Immense  
(c) Sufficient  
(d) Hidden
- 168. Laid-back**  
(a) Lie in wait  
(b) Sorry state  
(c) Lame  
(d) Easy-going
- 169. Sauntering**  
(a) Jogging  
(b) Brisk walking  
(c) Travelling  
(d) Strolling
- 170. Pompous**  
(a) Grandiose  
(b) Polished  
(c) Modest  
(d) Skilled

**Synonyms**

- 171. Poignant**  
(a) Showy  
(b) Sad  
(c) Silly  
(d) Snobbish
- 172. Querulous**  
(a) Critical  
(b) Curious  
(c) Quarrelsome  
(d) Ambiguous
- 173. Audacious**  
(a) Brilliant  
(b) Powerful  
(c) Bold  
(d) Frightening
- 174. Perilous**  
(a) Hazardous  
(b) Rigorous  
(c) Resilient  
(d) Requisite
- 175. Reverie**  
(a) Determination  
(b) Day-dream  
(c) Reality  
(d) Realization
- 176. Genial**  
(a) Cordial  
(b) Unselfish  
(c) Careful  
(d) Specific
- 177. Accrue**  
(a) Accumulate  
(b) Accommodate  
(c) Grow  
(d) Suffice
- 178. Loquacious**  
(a) Talkative  
(b) Slow  
(c) Content  
(d) Unclear
- 179. Vindictive**  
(a) Imaginative  
(b) Accusative  
(c) Spiteful  
(d) Aggressive
- 180. Inclement**  
(a) Selfish  
(b) Active  
(c) Unfavourable  
(d) Inactive
- 181. Hostility**  
(a) Illness  
(b) Enmity  
(c) Disturbance  
(d) Derogatory
- 182. Indifferent**  
(a) Dissimilar  
(b) Various  
(c) Interference  
(d) Unconcerned
- 183. Condemn**  
(a) Censure  
(b) Despair  
(c) Kill  
(d) Hit
- 184. Defect**  
(a) Loss  
(b) Harm  
(c) Shortcoming  
(d) Delicate
- 185. Jealous**  
(a) Envious  
(b) Unhappy  
(c) Regretful  
(d) Remorse
- 186. Weary**  
(a) Careless  
(b) Shivering  
(c) Troubled  
(d) Weak
- 187. Plausible**  
(a) Pleasing taste  
(b) Seemingly true  
(c) Manageable  
(d) Cannot be proved
- 188. Creditable**  
(a) Able to lend money  
(b) Bringing praise  
(c) Able to repay a loan  
(d) Fit to be believed
- 189. Salient**  
(a) Most important  
(b) Salt-like taste  
(c) Pleasing  
(d) Satisfactory
- 190. Fragile**  
(a) Soft  
(b) Smooth  
(c) Flexible  
(d) Easily broken
- 191. Reticent**  
(a) Sensitive  
(b) Secretive  
(c) Not feeling well  
(d) Not saying much
- 192. Reciprocal**  
(a) Formal  
(b) Favorable  
(c) Mutual  
(d) Sustainable
- 193. Apprise**  
(a) Inform  
(b) Estimate  
(c) Admire  
(d) Require
- 194. Consensus**  
(a) Awareness  
(b) General agreement  
(c) Careful observation  
(d) Praiseworthy
- 195. Unceremonious**  
(a) Impolite  
(b) Informal  
(c) Incomplete  
(d) Irregular
- 196. Treason**  
(a) Absurdity  
(b) Disloyalty  
(c) Dishonesty  
(d) Deception
- 197. Amiable**  
(a) Popular  
(b) Generous  
(c) Friendly  
(d) Reasonable
- 198. Lucid**  
(a) Fluent  
(b) Clear  
(c) Musical  
(d) Familiar
- 199. Ravaged**  
(a) Destroyed  
(b) Spoiled  
(c) Conquered  
(d) Robbed
- 200. Perplexed**  
(a) Annoyed  
(b) Disappointed  
(c) Puzzled  
(d) Ruined

- 201. Anonymity**  
(a) Reputation  
(b) Publicity  
(c) Being unknown  
(d) Wrong address
- 202. Ephemeral**  
(a) Disturbing  
(b) Filthy  
(c) Short-lived  
(d) Poverty-stricken
- 203. Caption**  
(a) Joke  
(b) Definition  
(c) Meaning  
(d) Title
- 204. Battered**  
(a) Destroyed  
(b) Dashed on  
(c) Struck hard  
(d) Struck off
- 205. Extravagant**  
(a) Hardworking  
(b) Good  
(c) Extraordinary  
(d) Spendthrift
- 206. Redundant**  
(a) Superfluous  
(b) Uninterested  
(c) Introspective  
(d) Knowledgeable
- 207. Hindered**  
(a) Damaged  
(b) Disturbed  
(c) Obstructed  
(d) Protested
- 208. Concealed**  
(a) Covered  
(b) Closed  
(c) Sealed  
(d) Hidden
- 209. Relish**  
(a) Realize  
(b) Taste  
(c) Enjoy  
(d) Reveal
- 210. Acute**  
(a) Dull  
(b) Drowsy  
(c) Unpleasant  
(d) Sharp
- 211. Solicit**  
(a) Command  
(b) Request  
(c) Sympathize  
(d) Agree
- 212. Surmount**  
(a) Discount  
(b) Surround  
(c) Overcome  
(d) Capture
- 213. Pertinent**  
(a) Indirect  
(b) Relevant  
(c) Direct  
(d) Important
- 214. Nebulous**  
(a) Revolutionary  
(b) Vague  
(c) Starting  
(d) Idiotic
- 215. Ubiquitous**  
(a) Omnipresent  
(b) Omnipotent  
(c) Omniscient  
(d) Affluent
- 216. Corroborate**  
(a) Collaborate  
(b) Substantiate  
(c) Co-operate  
(d) Correlate
- 217. Adequate**  
(a) Necessary  
(b) Sufficient  
(c) Procured  
(d) Additional
- 218. Solecism**  
(a) Abuse  
(b) Witty quip  
(c) Clever argument  
(d) Grammatical error
- 219. Delirious**  
(a) Delicious  
(b) Pleasing  
(c) Desperate  
(d) Excited
- 220. Licentious**  
(a) Immoral  
(b) Intellectual  
(c) Moral  
(d) Without license
- 221. Squander**  
(a) Expensive  
(b) Waste  
(c) Litter  
(d) Economical
- 222. Abated**  
(a) Reduced  
(b) Vanished  
(c) Increased  
(d) Stabilized
- 223. Abrogate**  
(a) Repeal  
(b) Destroy  
(c) Delay  
(d) Dismiss
- 224. Abstemious**  
(a) Resistant  
(b) Temperate  
(c) Superstitious  
(d) Careful
- 225. Allegiance**  
(a) Servility  
(b) Obedience  
(c) Loyalty  
(d) Passivity
- 226. Amicable**  
(a) Poisonous  
(b) Co-operative  
(c) Satisfying  
(d) Heartening
- 227. Ample**  
(a) Meagre  
(b) Quantitative  
(c) Sufficient  
(d) Tasty
- 228. Baleful**  
(a) Harmful  
(b) Doubtful  
(c) Useful  
(d) Helpful
- 229. Benevolence**  
(a) Ill will  
(b) Morbidity  
(c) Kindness  
(d) Vision
- 230. Camouflage**  
(a) Hide  
(b) Reveal  
(c) Disguise  
(d) Pretend

**Synonyms**

- 231. Chivalrous**  
(a) Crude  
(b) Gallant  
(c) Handsome  
(d) Tinkering
- 232. Covenant**  
(a) Case  
(b) Coupon  
(c) Contract  
(d) Settlement
- 233. Dainty**  
(a) Carefree  
(b) Feminine and happy  
(c) Delicacy  
(d) Small and graceful
- 234. Deference**  
(a) Indifference  
(b) Sympathy  
(c) Respect  
(d) Flattery
- 235. Dormant**  
(a) Sleeping  
(b) Humble  
(c) Quick  
(d) Active
- 236. Dramatic**  
(a) Unprecedented  
(b) Thrilling  
(c) Spectacular  
(d) Effective
- 237. Dubious**  
(a) Doubtful  
(b) Disputable  
(c) Duplicate  
(d) Dangerous
- 238. Duplicity**  
(a) Repetition  
(b) Artlessness  
(c) Deception  
(d) Cleverness
- 239. Eternal**  
(a) Innumerable  
(b) Immeasurable  
(c) Prolonged  
(d) Perpetual
- 240. Evince**  
(a) Look  
(b) Try  
(c) Apply  
(d) Show
- 241. Evoked**  
(a) Escaped  
(b) Called forth  
(c) Produced  
(d) Summoned
- 242. Flabbergasted**  
(a) Scared  
(b) Embarrassed  
(c) Dumbfounded  
(d) Humiliated
- 243. Flimsy**  
(a) Weak  
(b) Strong  
(c) Justified  
(d) Impulsive
- 244. Garish**  
(a) Unusual  
(b) Exciting  
(c) Confused  
(d) Gaudy
- 245. Implacable**  
(a) Relentless  
(b) Unappeasable  
(c) Dangerous  
(d) Courageous
- 246. Indict**  
(a) To accuse  
(b) Entrapment  
(c) Indoctrination  
(d) Inducement
- 247. Indigent**  
(a) Indian men  
(b) Poor  
(c) Guilty  
(d) Untried
- 248. Innocuous**  
(a) Abominable  
(b) Harmless  
(c) Harmful  
(d) Useful
- 249. Innuendoes**  
(a) Indications  
(b) Inspiring quotes  
(c) Witty remarks  
(d) Insinuations
- 250. Insolent**  
(a) Violent  
(b) Polite  
(c) Insulting  
(d) Frivolous
- 251. Irreverence**  
(a) Disrespect  
(b) Cruelty  
(c) Unkindness  
(d) Invalidity
- 252. Latent**  
(a) Primitive  
(b) Hidden  
(c) Potent  
(d) Talented
- 253. Massive**  
(a) Tall  
(b) Large in size  
(c) Total  
(d) Little
- 254. Obnoxious**  
(a) Depressing  
(b) Disgusting  
(c) Arrogant  
(d) Filthy
- 255. Panacea**  
(a) Flatter  
(b) Praise  
(c) Inactivity  
(d) Cure-all
- 256. Pragmatic**  
(a) Practical  
(b) Playful  
(c) Causal  
(d) Clever
- 257. Reparation**  
(a) Compensation  
(b) Co-relation  
(c) Aspersion  
(d) Delegation
- 258. Salutory**  
(a) Premature  
(b) Terrible  
(c) Disastrous  
(d) Beneficial
- 259. Shrink**  
(a) Contract  
(b) Physician  
(c) Reduce  
(d) Shivel
- 260. Soporific**  
(a) Soothing  
(b) Terrific  
(c) Supreme  
(d) Sleep-inducing

- 261. Vagary**  
(a) Lapse of memory  
(b) Companionship  
(c) gang  
(d) impulse

- 262. Coax**  
(a) Pacify  
(b) Punish  
(c) Persuade  
(d) Please

- 263. Renowned**  
(a) Notorious  
(b) Great

- (c) Brave  
(d) Famous

- 264. Blaze**  
(a) Rage  
(b) Rush  
(c) Fire  
(d) Mark

- 265. Tangential**  
(a) partly  
(b) forcefully  
(c) superficial  
    relevance  
(d) fitfully

- 266. Transparent**  
(a) Translucent  
(b) Opaque  
(c) Clear  
(d) Sharp

- 267. Fruitless**  
(a) Successful  
(b) barren  
(c) Useless  
(d) Insufficient

**ANSWER KEY**

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (b) 6. (b) 7. (c) 8. (a) 9. (d) 10. (a)  
11. (b) 12. (c) 13. (b) 14. (c) 15. (b) 16. (b) 17. (d) 18. (d) 19. (b) 20. (b)  
21. (a) 22. (b) 23. (b) 24. (b) 25. (a) 26. (b) 27. (a) 28. (c) 29. (d) 30. (c)  
31. (b) 32. (b) 33. (c) 34. (c) 35. (d) 36. (a) 37. (c) 38. (b) 39. (a) 40. (d)  
41. (d) 42. (d) 43. (b) 44. (a) 45. (c) 46. (b) 47. (d) 48. (b) 49. (b) 50. (d)  
51. (b) 52. (b) 53. (a) 54. (c) 55. (b) 56. (d) 57. (d) 58. (c) 59. (c) 60. (a)  
61. (c) 62. (c) 63. (b) 64. (c) 65. (c) 66. (b) 67. (c) 68. (b) 69. (b) 70. (a)  
71. (b) 72. (c) 73. (d) 74. (d) 75. (d) 76. (c) 77. (a) 78. (b) 79. (d) 80. (c)  
81. (b) 82. (b) 83. (a) 84. (b) 85. (b) 86. (c) 87. (c) 88. (b) 89. (c) 90. (d)  
91. (c) 92. (b) 93. (a) 94. (a) 95. (c) 96. (a) 97. (a) 98. (b) 99. (c) 100. (a)  
101. (b) 102. (a) 103. (c) 104. (d) 105. (c) 106. (b) 107. (a) 108. (b) 109. (a) 110. (c)  
111. (a) 112. (b) 113. (d) 114. (a) 115. (c) 116. (a) 117. (b) 118. (d) 119. (c) 120. (b)  
121. (c) 122. (d) 123. (c) 124. (b) 125. (b) 126. (a) 127. (c) 128. (b) 129. (d) 130. (b)  
131. (c) 132. (d) 133. (c) 134. (a) 135. (d) 136. (d) 137. (b) 138. (b) 139. (a) 140. (d)  
141. (b) 142. (a) 143. (a) 144. (d) 145. (a) 146. (b) 147. (a) 148. (c) 149. (b) 150. (c)  
151. (c) 152. (d) 153. (b) 154. (d) 155. (c) 156. (a) 157. (d) 158. (a) 159. (a) 160. (d)  
161. (c) 162. (a) 163. (a) 164. (b) 165. (d) 166. (b) 167. (a) 168. (d) 169. (d) 170. (a)  
171. (b) 172. (c) 173. (c) 174. (a) 175. (b) 176. (b) 177. (a) 178. (a) 179. (c) 180. (c)  
181. (b) 182. (d) 183. (a) 184. (c) 185. (a) 186. (c) 187. (b) 188. (b) 189. (a) 190. (d)  
191. (d) 192. (c) 193. (a) 194. (b) 195. (a) 196. (b) 197. (c) 198. (b) 199. (a) 200. (c)  
201. (c) 202. (c) 203. (d) 204. (a) 205. (d) 206. (a) 207. (c) 208. (d) 209. (c) 210. (d)  
211. (b) 212. (c) 213. (b) 214. (b) 215. (a) 216. (b) 217. (b) 218. (d) 219. (d) 220. (a)  
221. (b) 222. (a) 223. (a) 224. (d) 225. (c) 226. (b) 227. (c) 228. (a) 229. (c) 230. (a)  
231. (b) 232. (c) 233. (d) 234. (c) 235. (a) 236. (c) 237. (a) 238. (c) 239. (d) 240. (d)  
241. (b) 242. (c) 243. (a) 244. (d) 245. (b) 246. (a) 247. (b) 248. (b) 249. (d) 250. (c)  
251. (a) 252. (b) 253. (b) 254. (b) 255. (d) 256. (a) 257. (a) 258. (d) 259. (d) 260. (d)  
261. (d) 262. (c) 263. (d) 264. (c) 265. (c) 266. (c) 267. (c)

# 19

# ANTONYMS

## CHAPTER

**Directions: in questions no. 1 to 298 choose the word opposite in meaning to the given word and mark it in the answer sheet.**

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| <b>1. Fastidious</b><br>(a) Fussy<br>(b) Cooperative<br>(c) Promising<br>(d) Adjustable | <b>8. Urban</b><br>(a) Rustic<br>(b) Rural<br>(c) Civil<br>(d) Foreign                        | <b>15. Rapidly</b><br>(a) Lazily<br>(b) Secretly<br>(c) Slowly<br>(d) Firmly        |
| <b>2. Shallow</b><br>(a) High<br>(b) Long<br>(c) Wide<br>(d) Deep                       | <b>9. Incredible</b><br>(a) Possible<br>(b) Believable<br>(c) Enjoyable<br>(d) Imaginary      | <b>16. Extol</b><br>(a) Heckle<br>(b) Censure<br>(c) Hate<br>(d) Scold              |
| <b>3. Explicit</b><br>(a) Elusive<br>(b) Allusive<br>(c) Ambidextrous<br>(d) Ambiguous  | <b>10. Concur</b><br>(a) Disagree<br>(b) Disappear<br>(c) Disarrange<br>(d) Discourage        | <b>17. Make</b><br>(a) Liberate<br>(b) Break<br>(c) Emancipate<br>(d) Bind          |
| <b>4. Immune</b><br>(a) Free<br>(b) Vulnerable<br>(c) Powerful<br>(d) Weak              | <b>11. Quiet</b><br>(a) Strong<br>(b) Pandemonium<br>(c) Incomplete<br>(d) Violent            | <b>18. Terminate</b><br>(a) Hasten<br>(b) Depart<br>(c) Begin<br>(d) Change         |
| <b>5. Bleak</b><br>(a) Dull<br>(b) Dark<br>(c) Bright<br>(d) Exposure                   | <b>12. Vague</b><br>(a) Clear<br>(b) Dull<br>(c) Unknown<br>(d) Shady                         | <b>19. Successor</b><br>(a) Failure<br>(b) Loser<br>(c) Predecessor<br>(d) Predator |
| <b>6. Veneration</b><br>(a) Fear<br>(b) Reverence<br>(c) Remorse<br>(d) Disrespect      | <b>13. Inevitable</b><br>(a) Avoidable<br>(b) Unnecessary<br>(c) Inseparable<br>(d) Uncertain | <b>20. Demolish</b><br>(a) Shift<br>(b) Build<br>(c) Repeat<br>(d) Hide             |
| <b>7. Insolent</b><br>(a) Ignorant<br>(b) Proud<br>(c) Laudable<br>(d) Humble           | <b>14. Humility</b><br>(a) Dignity<br>(b) Cruelty<br>(c) Anger<br>(d) Pride                   | <b>21. Genial</b><br>(a) Stupid<br>(b) Stingy<br>(c) Boorish<br>(d) Unkind          |



- 22. Prevent**  
(a) Protect  
(b) Black  
(c) Hinder  
(d) Induce
- 23. Plausible**  
(a) Inplausible  
(b) Unplausible  
(c) Implausible/ Unbelievable  
(d) Displausible
- 24. Frailty**  
(a) Energy  
(b) Intensity  
(c) Vehemence  
(d) Strength
- 25. Flair**  
(a) Spreading outward  
(b) Inability  
(c) Spotlight  
(d) Taste
- 26. Collapse**  
(a) Rise  
(b) Handicap  
(c) Crush  
(d) Crumble
- 27. Dormant**  
(a) Acute  
(b) Active  
(c) Able  
(d) Ablaze
- 28. Anxious**  
(a) Crafty  
(b) Light  
(c) Carefree  
(d) Careless
- 29. Hazy**  
(a) Plain  
(b) Light  
(c) Clear  
(d) Dull
- 30. Thrifty**  
(a) Clean  
(b) Loyal  
(c) Wasteful  
(d) Reverent
- 31. Fantastic**  
(a) Old  
(b) Ordinary  
(c) Classic  
(d) Rational
- 32. Innovate**  
(a) Sell  
(b) Buy  
(c) Close  
(d) Copy
- 33. Asceticism**  
(a) Comfort  
(b) Luxury  
(c) Anti-semitism  
(d) Humility
- 34. Enduring**  
(a) Fleeting  
(b) Painful  
(c) Permanent  
(d) Long lasting
- 35. Dissolution**  
(a) Retribution  
(b) Establishment  
(c) Persuasion  
(d) Compliance
- 36. Progressive**  
(a) Repressive  
(b) Retrogressive  
(c) Repulsive  
(d) Aggressive
- 37. Unnerved**  
(a) Confident  
(b) Nervous  
(c) Hopeful  
(d) Anxious
- 38. Vague**  
(a) Unclear  
(b) Sharp  
(c) Precise  
(d) Actual
- 39. Harmony**  
(a) Disagreement  
(b) Melody  
(c) Confusion  
(d) Concord
- 40. Purposely**  
(a) Half-heartedly  
(b) Timidly  
(c) Unintentionally  
(d) Hesitatingly
- 41. Guilty**  
(a) Innocent  
(b) Ignorant  
(c) Irreverent  
(d) Immature
- 42. Brave**  
(a) Sorry  
(b) Bold  
(c) Timid  
(d) Boisterous
- 43. Duplicity**  
(a) Complexity  
(b) Honesty  
(c) Serenity  
(d) Originality
- 44. Opaque**  
(a) Brilliant  
(b) Bright  
(c) Transparent  
(d) Lustrous
- 45. Jocular**  
(a) Merry  
(b) Morose  
(c) Jugular  
(d) Juggler
- 46. Hinder**  
(a) Encourage  
(b) Acknowledge  
(c) Prohibit  
(d) Instruct
- 47. Uncompromising**  
(a) Courteous  
(b) Flexible  
(c) Awesome  
(d) Soft
- 48. Zeal**  
(a) Disinterest  
(b) Apathy  
(c) Carelessness  
(d) Hatred
- 49. Desecration**  
(a) Consecration  
(b) Discouragement  
(c) Despondency  
(d) Expectation
- 50. Shimmering**  
(a) Gloomy  
(b) Glimmering  
(c) Refreshing  
(d) Repining
- 51. Far-fetched**  
(a) Wise  
(b) Prudent  
(c) Located for  
(d) Realistic

**Antonyms**

- 52. Takes off**  
(a) Travels  
(b) Falls  
(c) Explodes  
(d) Lands
- 53. Niggardly**  
(a) Hastily  
(b) Lavishly  
(c) Likely  
(d) Gorgeously
- 54. Melodious**  
(a) Harmonious  
(b) Tuneless  
(c) Odious  
(d) Mellifluous
- 55. Advanced**  
(a) Progressed  
(b) Outpaced  
(c) Receded  
(d) Run back
- 56. Enlightened**  
(a) Slander  
(b) Bemoan  
(c) Ignorant  
(d) Before
- 57. Exceptional**  
(a) Great  
(b) Occasional  
(c) Common  
(d) Absorbing
- 58. Permanent**  
(a) Long  
(b) Short  
(c) Durable  
(d) Temporary
- 59. Moderate**  
(a) Abnormal  
(b) Weak  
(c) Extreme  
(d) Separate
- 60. Diffidence**  
(a) Boldness  
(b) Outspokenness  
(c) Fluency  
(d) Obstinacy
- 61. Superficial**  
(a) Careful  
(b) Of surface  
(c) Thorough  
(d) Casual
- 62. Reckless**  
(a) Careful  
(b) Frank  
(c) Diffident  
(d) Smart
- 63. Scorn**  
(a) Contempt  
(b) Joy  
(c) Admiration  
(d) Pity
- 64. Grandiose**  
(a) Simple  
(b) False  
(c) Ideal  
(d) Proud
- 65. Trivial**  
(a) Serious  
(b) Violent  
(c) Wild  
(d) Unimportant
- 66. Lurid**  
(a) Dismal  
(b) Mild  
(c) Murky  
(d) Mysterious
- 67. Loquacious**  
(a) Reserved  
(b) Miserly  
(c) Eloquent  
(d) Healthy
- 68. Unscrupulous**  
(a) Conscientious  
(b) Dedicated  
(c) Single-minded  
(d) Superfluous
- 69. Confiscate**  
(a) Produce  
(b) Release  
(c) Destroy  
(d) Exhibit
- 70. Contaminate**  
(a) Sanctify  
(b) Invigorate  
(c) Taint  
(d) Purify
- 71. Often**  
(a) Usually  
(b) Rarely  
(c) Sometimes  
(d) Occasionally
- 72. Frugal**  
(a) Economical  
(b) Extravagant  
(c) Miserly  
(d) Greedy
- 73. Eminent**  
(a) Illustrious  
(b) Notorious  
(c) Intelligent  
(d) Known
- 74. Barbarous**  
(a) Civilized  
(b) Modern  
(c) Polite  
(d) Praiseworthy
- 75. Embark upon**  
(a) Launch  
(b) Analyse  
(c) Break off  
(d) Conclude
- 76. Falling off**  
(a) Shrinkage  
(b) Erosion  
(c) Improvement  
(d) Descent
- 77. Depressed**  
(a) Satisfied  
(b) Elated  
(c) Impressed  
(d) Affected
- 78. Yield to**  
(a) Submit to  
(b) Persuade  
(c) Resist  
(d) Seek terms with
- 79. Paucity**  
(a) Overflow  
(b) Inflow  
(c) Plenty  
(d) Grim
- 80. Conclusive**  
(a) Powerful  
(b) Indecisive  
(c) Exclusive  
(d) Partial
- 81. Triggered**  
(a) Choked  
(b) Tapered off  
(c) Diluted  
(d) Ignited

- 82. Parallel**  
(a) Divergent  
(b) Difficult  
(c) Similar  
(d) Crooked
- 83. Manifested**  
(a) Displayed  
(b) Concealed  
(c) Suppressed  
(d) Marked
- 84. Blocked**  
(a) Facilitated  
(b) Started  
(c) Checked  
(d) Promoted
- 85. Vindictive**  
(a) careless  
(b) forgiving  
(c) heedless  
(d) refined
- 86. Turn coat**  
(a) Loyal  
(b) Disappointing  
(c) Thrilling  
(d) Nail-biting
- 87. Inaugurate**  
(a) Terminate  
(b) Inculcate  
(c) Facilitate  
(d) Ameliorate
- 88. Embellish**  
(a) Dishonour  
(b) Demolish  
(c) Spoil  
(d) Suffice
- 89. Detest**  
(a) Test  
(b) Dislike  
(c) Like  
(d) Interest
- 90. Intentional**  
(a) Accidental  
(b) Undecided  
(c) Concentrated  
(d) Broken
- 91. Commence**  
(a) Start  
(b) Schedule  
(c) Conclude  
(d) Dissolve
- 92. Expand**  
(a) Contract  
(b) Contrast  
(c) Consist  
(d) Controvert
- 93. Prosperity**  
(a) Propriety  
(b) Property  
(c) Adversity  
(d) Perspicacity
- 94. Stimulate**  
(a) Encourage  
(b) Discourage  
(c) Tempt  
(d) Instigate
- 95. Deliberate**  
(a) Unconditional  
(b) Unintentional  
(c) Unilateral  
(d) Emotional
- 96. Perilous**  
(a) Pitiabile  
(b) Difficult  
(c) Safe  
(d) Comfortable
- 97. Disputable**  
(a) Undisputable  
(b) Indisputable  
(c) Nondisputable  
(d) Adisputable
- 98. Audacious**  
(a) Cautious  
(b) Timid  
(c) Rude  
(d) Proud
- 99. Meticulous**  
(a) Unmerited  
(b) Unimaginative  
(c) Carefree  
(d) Careless
- 100. Repel**  
(a) Attract  
(b) Interest  
(c) Tempt  
(d) Like
- 101. Dim**  
(a) Transparent  
(b) Luminous  
(c) Opaque  
(d) Dazzling
- 102. Genuine**  
(a) Genius  
(b) Honest  
(c) Affected  
(d) Fictitious
- 103. Ham-fisted**  
(a) Simple  
(b) Adroit  
(c) Difficult  
(d) Vague
- 104. Implicit**  
(a) Explicit  
(b) Implied  
(c) Explained  
(d) Exquisite
- 105. Capture**  
(a) Catch  
(b) Detain  
(c) Liberate  
(d) Stop
- 106. Repulsive**  
(a) Attractive  
(b) Offensive  
(c) Defensive  
(d) Pensive
- 107. Misery**  
(a) Sorry  
(b) Careless  
(c) Joy  
(d) Content
- 108. Escalate**  
(a) Decrease  
(b) Descend  
(c) Deliver  
(d) Derive
- 109. Anarchy**  
(a) Curfew  
(b) Permanence  
(c) Wholesome  
(d) Order
- 110. Commotion**  
(a) Transmission  
(b) Tranquillity  
(c) Transparency  
(d) Transition
- 111. Monotony**  
(a) Enthusiasm  
(b) Repetitiveness  
(c) Variety  
(d) Singularity

**Antonyms**

**112. Latter**

- (a) Earlier
- (b) Before
- (c) Later
- (d) Former

**113. Dynamic**

- (a) Stable
- (b) Still
- (c) Lazy
- (d) Static

**114. Diligent**

- (a) Intelligent
- (b) Lazy
- (c) Boastful
- (d) Notorious

**115. Hereditary**

- (a) Carried
- (b) Acquired
- (c) Possessed
- (d) Regained

**116. Philistine**

- (a) Cultured
- (b) Libertine
- (c) Sober
- (d) Educated

**117. Heretical**

- (a) Contradictory
- (b) Doubtful
- (c) Impious
- (d) Orthodox

**118. Ingest**

- (a) Disrupt
- (b) Disgorge
- (c) Dismiss
- (d) Display

**119. Implicate**

- (a) Exonerate
- (b) Impersonate
- (c) Complicate
- (d) Impose

**120. Laceration**

- (a) Convalescence
- (b) Recouperation
- (c) Healing
- (d) Palpitation

**121. Liberty**

- (a) Serenity
- (b) Slavery
- (c) Serfdom
- (d) Subordinate

**122. Disorderly**

- (a) Chaotic
- (b) Organized
- (c) Adjusted
- (d) Arranged

**123. Elevation**

- (a) Reduction
- (b) Humiliation
- (c) Increment
- (d) Debasement

**124. Glossy**

- (a) Dull
- (b) Shining
- (c) Weary
- (d) Tired

**125. Boon**

- (a) Dull
- (b) Bane
- (c) Hurt
- (d) Harsh

**126. Accomplish**

- (a) Fail
- (b) Improper
- (c) Disagreeable
- (d) Scatter

**127. Famous**

- (a) Obscure
- (b) Eminent
- (c) Lenient
- (d) Fabulous

**128. Orderly**

- (a) Unclear
- (b) Valueless
- (c) Chaotic
- (d) Incomplete

**129. Gloomy**

- (a) Radiant
- (b) Fragrant
- (c) Melodious
- (d) Illusory

**130. Strife**

- (a) War
- (b) Peace
- (c) Anger
- (d) Woe

**131. Isolation**

- (a) Segregation
- (b) Association
- (c) Seclusion
- (d) Deportation

**132. Antique**

- (a) Common
- (b) Recent
- (c) Innovative
- (d) Youthful

**133. Contented**

- (a) Dissatisfied
- (b) Emptied
- (c) Happy
- (d) Unfriendly

**134. Rapid**

- (a) Happy
- (b) Fall
- (c) Slow
- (d) Abnormal

**135. Severe**

- (a) Sharp
- (b) Mild
- (c) Important
- (d) Cut

**136. Initiated**

- (a) Complicated
- (b) Simplified
- (c) Concluded
- (d) Commenced

**137. Consensus**

- (a) Accept
- (b) Opinion
- (c) Disagreement
- (d) Permission

**138. Fatigued**

- (a) Weakened
- (b) Energised
- (c) Tired
- (d) Activated

**139. Autonomy**

- (a) Slavery
- (b) Subordination
- (c) Dependence
- (d) Submissiveness

**140. Flexible**

- (a) Rigid
- (b) Cruel
- (c) Humble
- (d) Easy

**141. Artificial**

- (a) Artful
- (b) Machine-made
- (c) Artistic
- (d) Natural

- 142. Delete**  
(a) Regress  
(b) Interpolate  
(c) Infer  
(d) Include
- 143. Benefactor**  
(a) Helper  
(b) Victor  
(c) Disciple  
(d) Enemy
- 144. Evanescent**  
(a) Clean  
(b) Tight  
(c) Eternal  
(d) Cheap
- 145. Barren**  
(a) Fertile  
(b) Rich  
(c) Prosperous  
(d) Positive
- 146. Virtue**  
(a) Vice  
(b) Failure  
(c) Fault  
(d) Offence
- 147. Nervous**  
(a) Flawless  
(b) Immature  
(c) Smooth  
(d) Composed
- 148. Confident**  
(a) Worried  
(b) Pessimistic  
(c) Diffident  
(d) Depressed
- 149. Evident**  
(a) Suspected  
(b) Disagreed  
(c) hidden  
(d) Unimportant
- 150. Adamant**  
(a) Yielding  
(b) Permissive  
(c) Liberal  
(d) Tolerant
- 151. Professional**  
(a) Novice  
(b) Amateur  
(c) Dabbler  
(d) Apprentice
- 152. Callous**  
(a) Persuasive  
(b) Caring  
(c) Gentle  
(d) Sensitive
- 153. Cessation**  
(a) Commencement  
(b) Renewal  
(c) Ongoing  
(d) Interruption
- 154. Procrastinate**  
(a) Experiment  
(b) Expedite  
(c) Exclude  
(d) Propagate
- 155. Potent**  
(a) Inefficient  
(b) Soft  
(c) Fragile  
(d) Weak
- 156. Probity**  
(a) Dishonesty  
(b) Timidity  
(c) Treachery  
(d) Insincerity
- 157. Gregarious**  
(a) Recluse  
(b) Social  
(c) Laudatory  
(d) Rustic
- 158. Sporadic**  
(a) Surviving  
(b) Sweeping  
(c) Restrained  
(d) Continual
- 159. Implication**  
(a) Consideration  
(b) Exoneration  
(c) Conclusion  
(d) Interpretation
- 160. Opposite**  
(a) Intemperate  
(b) Inappropriate  
(c) Indecent  
(d) Incriminatory
- 161. Gregarious**  
(a) Indecent  
(b) Unsociable  
(c) Above reproach  
(d) Unlovable
- 162. Chivalry**  
(a) Cawardish  
(b) Discourtesy  
(c) Disobedience  
(d) Disaffection
- 163. Dismal**  
(a) Bright  
(b) Indifferent  
(c) Fast  
(d) Energetic
- 164. Sanguine temper**  
(a) Despairing nature  
(b) Peaceful temperament  
(c) Rude behaviour  
(d) Selfish nature
- 165. Meagre**  
(a) Extravagant  
(b) Abandon  
(c) Prosperous  
(d) Surplus
- 166. Imperil**  
(a) Safeguard  
(b) Construct  
(c) Create  
(d) Brighten
- 167. Flamboyant**  
(a) Elaborately  
(b) Really  
(c) Not showy  
(d) Sensibly
- 168. Consolidated**  
(a) Disjointed  
(b) Broken  
(c) Weakened  
(d) Lost
- 169. Chronic**  
(a) Pathetic  
(b) Characteristic  
(c) Temporary  
(d) Mild
- 170. Vituperative**  
(a) Joyous  
(b) Laudatory  
(c) Critical  
(d) Virtuous
- 171. Awkward**  
(a) Awful  
(b) Satisfactory  
(c) Graceful  
(d) Easy

**Antonyms**

**172. Smug**

- (a) Satisfied
- (b) Dissatisfied
- (c) Serious
- (d) Delighted

**173. Oppressive**

- (a) Gentle
- (b) Harsh
- (c) Smooth
- (d) Orderly

**174. Obscure**

- (a) Inconspicuous
- (b) Veiled
- (c) Clear
- (d) Distinct

**175. Clinch**

- (a) Lose
- (b) Clasp
- (c) Deal
- (d) Seal

**176. Enervate**

- (a) Decelerate
- (b) Strengthen
- (c) Push forward
- (d) Aggravate

**177. To put up with**

- (a) To stay together
- (b) To talk politely
- (c) To dislike
- (d) To move along with

**178. Autonomous**

- (a) Self-government
- (b) Dependent
- (c) Defensive
- (d) Neutral

**179. Deceitful**

- (a) Sincere
- (b) Useful
- (c) Plain
- (d) Honest

**180. Exonerate**

- (a) Admit
- (b) Release
- (c) Convict
- (d) Reject

**181. Exaggerate**

- (a) Underwrite
- (b) Understate
- (c) Ignore
- (d) Condemn

**182. Controversial**

- (a) Indisputable
- (b) Restrained
- (c) Controlled
- (d) Appeasing

**183. Synthetic**

- (a) Natural
- (b) Plastic
- (c) Cosmetic
- (d) Apathetic

**184. Accord**

- (a) Disagreement
- (b) Welcome
- (c) Disrespect
- (d) Conformity

**185. Infirmary**

- (a) Employment
- (b) Indisposition
- (c) Strength
- (d) Weakness

**186. Feasible**

- (a) Useful
- (b) Impractical
- (c) Uneven
- (d) Important

**187. Deny**

- (a) Accept
- (b) Proceed
- (c) Hold
- (d) Promote

**188. Acquit**

- (a) Inform
- (b) Release
- (c) Abuse
- (d) Condemn

**189. Benediction**

- (a) Best wishes
- (b) Use
- (c) Curse
- (d) Blessing

**190. Affluence**

- (a) Not being fluent
- (b) Poverty
- (c) Difficult
- (d) Unhealthy

**191. Forbid**

- (a) Defy
- (b) Dislike
- (c) Permit
- (d) Understand

**192. Harmonious**

- (a) Selfish
- (b) Aggressive
- (c) Mechanical
- (d) Discordant

**193. Inconspicuous**

- (a) Open-hearted
- (b) Open-minded
- (c) Prominent
- (d) Smooth

**194. Factual**

- (a) Actual
- (b) Idealistic
- (c) Unrealistic
- (d) Verbal

**195. Abandon**

- (a) Assert
- (b) Retain
- (c) Produce
- (d) Twist

**196. Assent**

- (a) Breakdown
- (b) Misunderstand
- (c) Dispatch
- (d) Disagreement

**197. Fickle**

- (a) Constant
- (b) Convenient
- (c) Questionable
- (d) Faithful

**198. Discreet**

- (a) Worthy
- (b) Wishful thinking
- (c) Honest
- (d) Careless in behaviour

**199. Articulate**

- (a) Unable to understand
- (b) Unable to express oneself
- (c) Unable to agree
- (d) Unable to live

**200. Unjust**

- (a) Serious
- (b) Self-centred
- (c) Fair-minded
- (d) Considerable

- 201. Humble**  
(a) Rich  
(b) Powerful  
(c) Haughty  
(d) Strong
- 202. Exemptions**  
(a) Generalisation  
(b) Liberalisation  
(c) Exclusions  
(d) Inclusions
- 203. Prominent**  
(a) Unknown  
(b) Treason  
(c) Loyalty  
(d) Distrust
- 204. Alleviate**  
(a) Intensity  
(b) Magnify  
(c) Mitigate  
(d) Aggravate
- 205. Disperse**  
(a) Converge  
(b) Smile  
(c) Dispense  
(d) Sing
- 206. Ambiguous**  
(a) Truthful  
(b) Lucid  
(c) Logical  
(d) Systematic
- 207. Hilarious**  
(a) Unworthy  
(b) Unpleasant  
(c) Ill-fated  
(d) Serious
- 208. Tolerance**  
(a) Loathing  
(b) Brawl  
(c) Plea  
(d) Forbid
- 209. Steadfast**  
(a) Staunch  
(b) Feeble  
(c) Faint  
(d) Wavering
- 210. Conceited**  
(a) Proud  
(b) Honest  
(c) Modest  
(d) Modern
- 211. Deterrent**  
(a) Determinant  
(b) Detriment  
(c) Encouragement  
(d) Enrichment
- 212. Spurious**  
(a) Truthful  
(b) Authentic  
(c) Credible  
(d) Original
- 213. Slander**  
(a) Gain  
(b) Profit  
(c) Praise  
(d) Loss
- 214. Reveal**  
(a) Appeal  
(b) Relax  
(c) Recover  
(d) Conceal
- 215. Admonish**  
(a) Condemn  
(b) Bless  
(c) Praise  
(d) Congratulate
- 216. Adulation**  
(a) Flattery  
(b) Encomium  
(c) Confession  
(d) Condemnation
- 217. Affirmation**  
(a) Denial  
(b) Refusal  
(c) Opposition  
(d) Obstruction
- 218. Affluent**  
(a) Poor  
(b) Ordinary  
(c) Infamous  
(d) Backward
- 219. Agony**  
(a) Ecstasy  
(b) Laughter  
(c) Humdrum  
(d) Ecstasy
- 220. Appalling**  
(a) Shocking  
(b) Consoling  
(c) Scaring  
(d) Horrifying
- 221. Candid**  
(a) Frank  
(b) Diplomatic  
(c) Reserved  
(d) Impertinent
- 222. Comaraderies**  
(a) Curiosity  
(b) Ferocity  
(c) Impetuosity  
(d) Animosity
- 223. Convicted**  
(a) Charged  
(b) Relieved  
(c) Dismissed  
(d) Acquitted
- 224. Convoluted**  
(a) Simple  
(b) Complicated  
(c) Difficult  
(d) Majestic
- 225. Curtail**  
(a) Lengthen  
(b) Shorten  
(c) Entail  
(d) Close
- 226. Dense**  
(a) Scarce  
(b) Slim  
(c) Sparse  
(d) Lean
- 227. Diminished**  
(a) Created  
(b) Rose  
(c) Increased  
(d) Lessen
- 228. Ephemeral**  
(a) Eternal  
(b) Transitory  
(c) Mortal  
(d) Temporal
- 229. Escalating**  
(a) Fixed  
(b) Fluctuating  
(c) Falling  
(d) Reasonable
- 230. Esteem**  
(a) Power  
(b) Guess  
(c) Contempt  
(d) Estimate

**Antonyms**

**231. Exotic**

- (a) Wonderful
- (b) Cosmopolitan
- (c) Irrelevant
- (d) Common

**232. Fetter**

- (a) Restore
- (b) Liberate
- (c) Exonerate
- (d) Distract

**233. Flourish**

- (a) Perish
- (b) Degenerate
- (c) Decay
- (d) Dismiss

**234. Futile**

- (a) Waste
- (b) Expensive
- (c) Useful
- (d) Cheap

**235. Garrulous**

- (a) Vociferous
- (b) Eloquent
- (c) Taciturn
- (d) Vocal

**236. Gratuitous**

- (a) Uncharitable
- (b) Grand appearance
- (c) Warranted
- (d) Being grateful

**237. In toto**

- (a) Bluntly
- (b) Partially
- (c) Entirely
- (d) Strongly

**238. Fleeting**

- (a) Glossy
- (b) Perpetual
- (c) Aspiring
- (d) Sufficient

**239. Inert**

- (a) Active
- (b) Lazy
- (c) Strong
- (d) Resolute

**240. Initial**

- (a) Terminal
- (b) Commencing
- (c) Delayed
- (d) Disastrous

**241. Intimidating**

- (a) Authoritative
- (b) Casual
- (c) Non-serious
- (d) Friendly

**242. Jest**

- (a) Gravity
- (b) Grim
- (c) Genial
- (d) Sport

**243. Latent**

- (a) Unspoken
- (b) Later
- (c) Implicit
- (d) Obvious

**244. Maladroit**

- (a) Authoritative
- (b) Skilful
- (c) Maladjusted
- (d) Malevolent

**245. Malevolence**

- (a) Tenderness
- (b) Kindness
- (c) Benefiting
- (d) Indulgence

**246. Malice**

- (a) Sympathy
- (b) Goodwill
- (c) Friendship
- (d) Attraction

**247. Monotonous**

- (a) Disastrous
- (b) Terrifying
- (c) Terrible
- (d) Interesting

**248. Obscene**

- (a) Disobedient
- (b) Decent
- (c) Dislocate
- (d) Cautious

**249. Opposed**

- (a) Resistant
- (b) Against
- (c) Favouring
- (d) Similar

**250. Ostracise**

- (a) Amuse
- (b) Welcome
- (c) Entertain
- (d) Host

**251. Parsimonious**

- (a) Prodigious
- (b) Selfless
- (c) Extravagant
- (d) Ostentatious

**252. Predilection**

- (a) Acceptance
- (b) Attraction
- (c) Dislike
- (d) Choice

**253. Profound**

- (a) Deep
- (b) Superficial
- (c) Hollow
- (d) Fallow

**254. Protean**

- (a) Amateur
- (b) Catholic
- (c) Unchanging
- (d) Rapid

**255. Quiescent**

- (a) Restless
- (b) Exempt
- (c) Malignant
- (d) Mendicant

**256. Perilous**

- (a) Safe
- (b) Developed
- (c) Sophisticated
- (d) Communicative

**257. Revelation**

- (a) Rejection
- (b) Elimination
- (c) Concealment
- (d) Introduction

**258. Repulsion**

- (a) Attraction
- (b) Disapproval
- (c) Disparagement
- (d) Denigration

**259. Segregate**

- (a) Sever
- (b) Unite
- (c) Separate
- (d) Aggregate

**260. Significant**

- (a) Substantial
- (b) Miniscule
- (c) Incoherent
- (d) Unimportant



**261. Despair**

- (a) Sneer
- (b) Compliment
- (c) Irony
- (d) Hope

**262. Validate**

- (a) Disprove
- (b) Authenticate
- (c) Ingenuine
- (d) Legalise

**263. Vicious**

- (a) Godly
- (b) Virtuous
- (c) Sublime
- (d) Friendly

**ANSWER KEY**

- |         |         |         |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. (d)  | 29. (c) | 55. (c) | 81. (a)  | 107. (c) | 133. (a) | 159. (b) | 185. (c) | 211. (c) | 237. (b) |
| 2. (d)  | 30. (c) | 56. (c) | 82. (d)  | 108. (a) | 134. (c) | 160. (b) | 186. (b) | 212. (b) | 238. (b) |
| 3. (d)  | 31. (b) | 57. (c) | 83. (b)  | 109. (d) | 135. (b) | 161. (b) | 187. (a) | 213. (c) | 239. (a) |
| 4. (b)  | 32. (d) | 58. (d) | 84. (a)  | 110. (b) | 136. (c) | 162. (a) | 188. (d) | 214. (d) | 240. (a) |
| 5. (c)  | 33. (b) | 59. (c) | 85. (b)  | 111. (c) | 137. (c) | 163. (a) | 189. (c) | 215. (c) | 241. (d) |
| 6. (d)  | 34. (a) | 60. (a) | 86. (a)  | 112. (d) | 138. (b) | 164. (a) | 190. (b) | 216. (d) | 242. (b) |
| 7. (d)  | 35. (b) | 61. (c) | 87. (a)  | 113. (d) | 139. (c) | 165. (d) | 191. (c) | 217. (a) | 243. (d) |
| 8. (b)  | 36. (b) | 62. (a) | 88. (c)  | 114. (b) | 140. (a) | 166. (a) | 192. (d) | 218. (a) | 244. (b) |
| 9. (b)  | 37. (a) | 63. (c) | 89. (c)  | 115. (b) | 141. (d) | 167. (c) | 193. (c) | 219. (a) | 245. (b) |
| 10. (a) | 38. (c) | 64. (a) | 90. (a)  | 116. (a) | 142. (d) | 168. (a) | 194. (c) | 220. (b) | 246. (b) |
| 11. (b) | 39. (a) | 65. (a) | 91. (c)  | 117. (d) | 143. (d) | 169. (c) | 195. (b) | 221. (c) | 247. (d) |
| 12. (a) | 40. (c) | 66. (b) | 92. (a)  | 118. (b) | 144. (c) | 170. (b) | 196. (d) | 222. (d) | 248. (b) |
| 13. (a) | 41. (a) | 67. (a) | 93. (c)  | 119. (a) | 145. (a) | 171. (c) | 197. (a) | 223. (d) | 249. (c) |
| 14. (d) | 42. (c) | 68. (a) | 94. (b)  | 120. (c) | 146. (a) | 172. (b) | 198. (d) | 224. (a) | 250. (b) |
| 15. (c) | 43. (b) | 69. (b) | 95. (b)  | 121. (b) | 147. (d) | 173. (a) | 199. (b) | 225. (a) | 251. (c) |
| 16. (b) | 44. (c) | 70. (d) | 96. (c)  | 122. (b) | 148. (c) | 174. (c) | 200. (c) | 226. (a) | 252. (c) |
| 17. (b) | 45. (b) | 71. (b) | 97. (b)  | 123. (a) | 149. (c) | 175. (a) | 201. (c) | 227. (c) | 253. (b) |
| 18. (c) | 46. (a) | 72. (b) | 98. (b)  | 124. (a) | 150. (a) | 176. (b) | 202. (d) | 228. (a) | 254. (c) |
| 19. (c) | 47. (b) | 73. (b) | 99. (d)  | 125. (b) | 151. (b) | 177. (c) | 203. (a) | 229. (c) | 255. (a) |
| 20. (b) | 48. (b) | 74. (a) | 100. (a) | 126. (a) | 152. (d) | 178. (b) | 204. (d) | 230. (c) | 256. (a) |
| 21. (d) | 49. (a) | 75. (d) | 101. (b) | 127. (a) | 153. (a) | 179. (d) | 205. (a) | 231. (d) | 257. (c) |
| 22. (d) | 50. (a) | 76. (c) | 102. (d) | 128. (c) | 154. (b) | 180. (c) | 206. (b) | 232. (b) | 258. (a) |
| 23. (c) | 51. (d) | 77. (b) | 103. (b) | 129. (a) | 155. (d) | 181. (b) | 207. (d) | 233. (a) | 259. (b) |
| 24. (d) | 52. (d) | 78. (c) | 104. (a) | 130. (b) | 156. (a) | 182. (a) | 208. (b) | 234. (c) | 260. (d) |
| 25. (b) | 53. (b) | 79. (c) | 105. (c) | 131. (b) | 157. (a) | 183. (a) | 209. (d) | 235. (c) | 261. (d) |
| 26. (a) | 54. (b) | 80. (b) | 106. (a) | 132. (b) | 158. (d) | 184. (a) | 210. (c) | 236. (a) | 262. (a) |
| 27. (b) |         |         |          |          |          |          |          |          | 263. (b) |

# 20

## ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

### CHAPTER

<b>S.N.</b>	<b>WORD</b>	<b>हिन्दी में अर्थ</b>	<b>Meaning in English</b>
1.	<b>Abattoir</b>	कसाईखाना	Place where animals are killed for food.
2.	<b>Abbot</b>	मठाधिकारी/ मठाधीश	A man who is the head of a monastery or an abbey.
3.	<b>Abbreviation</b>	संक्षेप/ लघुरूप	A shortened form of a word or phrase.
4.	<b>Abdication</b>	औपचारिक रूप से त्याग देना	To formally give up.
5.	<b>Ablution</b>	धार्मिक स्नान	Ritual washing of the body.
6.	<b>Abstruse</b>	समझने में मुश्किल	Hard to understand.
7.	<b>Abundance</b>	आधिक्य/ प्रचुरता	A quantity that is more than enough.
8.	<b>Accentuate</b>	जोर देना	Give more force or importance to.
9.	<b>Accomplice</b>	सह-अपराधी	Helper in a wrong deed or crime.
10.	<b>Acronym</b>	प्रथमाक्षरी नाम	Word formed from initial letters of a name.
11.	<b>Addendum</b>	परिशिष्ट	Thing to be added at the end of a book, etc.
12.	<b>Advertisement</b>	विज्ञापन	A public notice offering or asking for goods, services, etc.
13.	<b>Afforestation</b>	वनारोपन	The act of forestation by planting many trees.
14.	<b>Agenda</b>	घोषणा पत्र	Items of business for consideration at a meeting.
15.	<b>Aggressor</b>	आक्रमणकर्ता	Someone who attacks first.
16.	<b>Agnosticism</b>	जो ईश्वर के अस्तित्व पर शंका करे.	Doubtful about the existence of God.
17.	<b>Alien</b>	गैर नागरिक	One who belongs to different country, race of group.
18.	<b>Alimony</b>	तलाक पश्चात् की जीवन वृति	Allowance fixed after divorce to a wife.
19.	<b>Allegory</b>	प्रतीक कथा	Story in which ideas are symbolized as people.
20.	<b>Alliteration</b>	अनुप्रास	Commencement of adjacent words with the same letter.

**One Word Substitution**

21. **Altruist** ..... परोपकारी ..... One who lives and works for the welfare of others.
22. **Amateur** ..... गैर पेशेवर ..... Lacking professional skill or expertise.
23. **Ambassador** ..... राजदूत ..... A diplomatic representative of one country in another.
24. **Ambidextrous** ..... दोनों हाथों से निपुण ..... Equally skillful with each hand.
25. **Ambiguous** ..... अस्पष्ट/ दो अर्थों वाला ..... Having more than one possible meaning
26. **Amnesia** ..... विस्मरण ..... Partial or total loss of memory.
27. **Amnesty** ..... अपराधक्षमा ..... A general pardon of political offenders.
28. **Amphibian** ..... उभयचर ..... Animals which live both on land and in water.
29. **Amphitheatre** ..... अखाड़ा/ रंगभूमि ..... A designated section of seats in any part of a theater.
30. **Analgesia** ..... दर्द की अनुभूति न होना ..... The loss of ability to feel pain while still conscious.
31. **Anarchist** ..... अराजक ..... One who wishes to destroy all established government's law and order.
32. **Anarchy** ..... अराजकता ..... The absence of government in a country.
33. **Anecdote** ..... किस्सा ..... Short amusing story about some real person or event.
34. **Anniversary** ..... साल गिरह ..... Yearly return of the date of an event.
35. **Annual** ..... सालाना ..... That which happens once in a year.
36. **Anomaly** ..... असाधारण ..... Deviation or departure from common rule or standard or what is normal.
37. **Anonymous** ..... गुमनाम ..... A book or a work of art whose author is not known.
38. **Antagonist** ..... विरोधी ..... One that opposes other.
39. **Antidote** ..... जहर-नाशक ..... A medicine to cure the effect of poison.
40. **Aphasia** ..... वाचाघात ..... Loss of ability to understand speech.
41. **Apostate** ..... धर्म त्यागी ..... One who abandons his religious faith.
42. **Aquatic** ..... जलीय ..... Animals which live in water.
43. **Arbitrator/ Arbiter** ..... मध्यस्थ ..... Someone chosen to judge and decide a disputed issue.
44. **Aristocracy** ..... कुलीन तंत्र ..... A government by the nobles.
45. **Armistice** ..... युद्ध विराम ..... The cessation of warfare before a treaty is signed.
46. **Ascetic** ..... सन्यासी ..... One who practices self denial as a spiritual discipline.

**One Word Substitution**

47. **Assassination** ..... राजनैतिक कारण से हत्या .... Killing or murder for political reasons.
48. **Astrology** ..... ज्योतिष शास्त्र ..... Science of the influence of the stars on human affairs.
49. **Astronomy** ..... खगोल विज्ञान ..... Science of universe with sun, moon, stars and planets.
50. **Atheist** ..... नास्तिक ..... A person who does not believe in the existence of God.
51. **Audience** ..... श्रोता गण ..... An assembly of listeners.
52. **Autobiography** ..... आत्म जीवनी ..... The life-history of a man written by himself.
53. **Autocracy** ..... एकतंत्र ..... A government by one person.
54. **Avaricious** ..... लालची ..... One who is greedy.
55. **Bachelorhood** ..... कुवारापन ..... The state of being unmarried (of a man).
56. **Bankrupt/Insolvent** ..... दिवालिया ..... A person unable to pay his debts.
57. **Bay** ..... खाड़ी ..... A part of the sea/ lake enclosed by a wide curve of the shore.
58. **Beach** ..... समुद्र तट ..... A stretch of sand/ stones along the edge of the sea/ lake.
59. **Bellicose** ..... लड़ाकू ..... A person who is fond of fighting.
60. **Belligerent** ..... युद्धरत ..... Engaged in war/ fight.
61. **Benefactor** ..... धर्मोपकारी ..... One who gives financial help to a school, hospital, etc.
62. **Bibliophile** ..... पुस्तक प्रेमी ..... One who loves and collects books.
63. **Biennial** ..... द्विवर्षीय ..... That which happens once in two years.
64. **Bigamy** ..... दो विवाह प्रथा ..... The custom of having two wives or two husbands.
65. **Bigot** ..... कट्टर ..... One who is filled with narrow and prejudiced opinion.
66. **Bilingual** ..... द्विभाषिय ..... One who can speak two languages.
67. **Biography** ..... जीवनी ..... The life-history of a man written by someone else.
68. **Biped** ..... दोपाया ..... Animal with two-feet.
69. **Blaspheme** ..... ईश्वर के खिलाफ बोलना ..... Speaking irreverently about God or sacred things.
70. **Bliss** ..... चरमसुख ..... Perfect happiness.
71. **Bohemian** ..... स्वेच्छाचारी ..... One who does not follow the usual norms of social life.
72. **Bookworm/Bibliophilic** किताबी कीड़ा ..... One who is interested in reading books and nothing else.

**One Word Substitution**

73. **Boorish** ..... गंवार ..... Person who is rough and ill mannered.
74. **Botany** ..... वनस्पति विज्ञान ..... The science of vegetable life.
75. **Brittle** ..... भंगुर ..... A thing which can be easily broken.
76. **Bureaucracy** ..... नौकरशाही ..... A government by the officials.
77. **Cabaret** ..... कैबरे नृत्य ..... A series of cabre dance/ acts at a night club.
78. **Cabby, Cabdriver** ..... ट्रैक्सी चालक ..... The driver of a taxi cab.
79. **Cacophony** ..... श्रुति कटुत्व ..... Harsh sound.
80. **Cajole** ..... खुशामद करना ..... Persuade by flattery.
81. **Calligraphy** ..... सुलेखन ..... Art of beautiful hand writing.
82. **Cannibal** ..... नरभक्षी ..... The man who can eat human flesh.
83. **Cannibal** ..... नरभक्षक/ राक्षस ..... One who eats human flesh.
84. **Capsize** ..... पलटना ..... Overturn in water.
85. **Carnage** ..... हत्याकांड ..... Killing of large numbers of people.
86. **Carnival** ..... मनोरंजन मेला ..... Public merry making and feasting.
87. **Cartographer** ..... मानचित्रकार ..... A person who draws maps and charts.
88. **Cartography** ..... मानचित्र कला ..... Art of map making.
89. **Catalogue** ..... पुस्तक सूची ..... List of books and other articles.
90. **Celibate** ..... ब्रह्मचारी ..... One who has taken a vow not to have sex.
91. **Cemetery** ..... कब्रिस्तान ..... The place for corpses to be buried.
92. **Centenary** ..... शताब्दी ..... Hundredth anniversary.
93. **Chronological** ..... समय के क्रमानुसार ..... According to sequence of time.
94. **Circumlocution** ..... घुमा-फिरा के बात करना ..... A roundabout way of expression.
95. **Cloakroom** ..... माल गोदाम ..... The place for luggage at a railway station.
96. **Coerce** ..... मजबूर करना ..... Compel to a course of action.
97. **Cognate** ..... एक ही उत्पत्ति के ..... Having the same source or origin.
98. **Colleagues** ..... सहकर्मी ..... Persons working in the same department.
99. **Collusion** ..... कपट सन्धि ..... Secret agreement for a fraudulent purpose.
100. **Conflagration** ..... भीषण अग्निकांड ..... Huge destructive fire.
101. **Congregation** ..... धर्म-संगति ..... Gathering of worshippers.
102. **Congruent** ..... सर्वांगसम ..... Identical in all respect.
103. **Connoisseur** ..... कला का पारखी ..... One who is well-versed in any subject/ art.
104. **Conscription** ..... अनिवार्य सैनिक सेवा ..... Compulsory enlistment for military or other services.

**One Word Substitution**

- 105. Contagious** ..... संक्रामक ..... Which spreads by physical touch or contact.
- 106. Contemporary** ..... समकालीन ..... Of the same time.
- 107. Contiguous** ..... समीपस्थ ..... Two countries or States touching a common boundary.
- 108. Contrite** ..... पश्चात्तापी ..... Showing deep sorrow for wrong doing.
- 109. Convalescence** ..... पुनःस्वास्थ्य प्राप्ति के बाद ..... The period of gradual recovery of health after illness.
- 110. Conventicle** ..... गुप्त व गैरकानूनी धर्मसभा ..... Secret and illegal religious meeting.
- 111. Coquette** ..... दिलफेंक महिला ..... A seductive woman who uses her sex appeal to exploit men.
- 112. Coronation** ..... राज्याभिषेक ..... Ceremony of crowning a king.
- 113. Cosmopolitan** ..... पूरी दुनिया का निवासी ..... A person who regards the whole world as his country.
- 114. Credulous** ..... आशुविश्वासी ..... One who is simple and easily believes whatever is told.
- 115. Crematory** ..... शमशान घाट ..... The place for corpses to be burnt.
- 116. Cripple** ..... अपंग/अपंग बनाना ..... Someone who is unable to walk normally because of an injury or disability to the legs or back.
- 117. Curfew** ..... कर्फ्यू ..... An order that certain activities/ movement are prohibited.
- 118. Cynosure** ..... आकर्षण-बिन्दु ..... Centre of attraction.
- 119. Dead** ..... मृत/ बेकार/ बेजान ..... A language that is no longer spoken.
- 120. Demagogue** ..... जनोत्तेजक ..... Political leader who delivers sentimental speeches.
- 121. Democracy** ..... लोकतंत्र ..... A government by the people, of the people, and for the people.
- 122. Denizen** ..... निवासी ..... A person, an animal or a plant that lives, grows or is often found in a particular place.
- 123. Depraved** ..... चरित्र भ्रष्ट ..... Morally bad or evil.
- 124. Deprecate** ..... विरोध करना ..... Express earnest disapproval of.
- 125. Dermatology** ..... त्वचा विज्ञान ..... The medical study of the skin and its diseases.
- 126. Despondency** ..... निराशा ..... Loss of complete hope.
- 127. Destitution** ..... अभावग्रस्तता ..... Lacking basic necessities of life.
- 128. Detrimental** ..... हानिकर ..... Causing harm or damage.
- 129. Dexterous** ..... कुशल ..... Skilful at handling things.
- 130. Diatribe** ..... कटु-निन्दा ..... Bitter and violent attack in words or writing.

**One Word Substitution**

- 131. Dictatorship** ..... तानाशाही/ निरंकुशता ..... Government carried on by an absolute ruler.
- 132. Diplomacy** ..... कूटनीति ..... The skill and policy of a country's statesmen and politicians/ skill in dealing with people.
- 133. Discrepancy** ..... विसंगति ..... Difference between two things that should be the same.
- 134. Dissimulate** ..... छिपाना ..... To hide or disguise.
- 135. Diurnal** ..... दैनिक ..... Of the daytime.
- 136. Draper** ..... जुलाहा ..... A shopkeeper selling cloth and clothing.
- 137. Draw** ..... अनिर्णित ..... The result of the match where neither party wins.
- 138. Dwarf** ..... बौना ..... A person, plant or animal who/which is below the usual size.
- 139. Dynasty** ..... वंश ..... Succession of rulers belonging to one family.
- 140. Eavesdropper** ..... चुपके से निजी वार्तालाप ..... One who witnesses secretly to private
- 141. Economical** ..... किफायती ..... One who is careful in the use of money/ fuel etc.
- 142. Edible** ..... खाने योग्य ..... That which is fit to be eaten.
- 143. Effeminate** ..... औरताना गुण होना ..... A man who is womanish in his habits.
- 144. Egalitarianism** ..... समतावाद ..... Belief that all people are equal and have the same rights and opportunities.
- 145. Egoist** ..... स्वार्थी/ अहंकारी ..... A lover of one's ownself/supercilious.
- 146. Eligible** ..... योग्य ..... Fit to be chosen; qualified.
- 147. Emergency** ..... आपातकाल ..... A sudden serious situation requiring immediate action.
- 148. Emeritus** ..... ससम्मान सेवामुक्त व्यक्ति ..... One who is honourably discharged from service.
- 149. Emigrant** ..... प्रवासी ..... A person who goes to another country to live.
- 150. Emissary** ..... गुप्तचर/ जासूस ..... A person sent on a mission (usually official).
- 151. Epicure** ..... अच्छा खाने का शौकीन ..... Person fond of delicious food.
- 152. Epidemic** ..... संक्रामक रोग ..... Disease affecting many people at the same place and time.
- 153. Epilogue** ..... नाटक के बाद का भाषण ..... A speech or a poem recited at the end of a play.
- 154. Episode** ..... कड़ी/ कथांश ..... Part of story (especially T.V. or Radio show story)

**One Word Substitution**

- 155. Episodic** ..... कभी-कभी होने वाली घटना . Happening only some times and irregularly.
- 156. Epistle** ..... धर्मपत्र/ काव्यपत्र ..... A letter.
- 157. Epitaph** ..... कब्र पर इंगित शब्द ..... Words which are inscribed on the grave.
- 158. Epithet** ..... उपाधि विशेषक ..... Adjective added to a person's name usually to criticise or praise him.
- 159. Epitome** ..... सटीक उदाहरण ..... A perfect example.
- 160. Epitomize** ..... सटीक उदाहरण होना ..... To be a perfect example.
- 161. Equanimity** ..... धैर्य ..... Calmness of mind and temper.
- 162. Erotica** ..... अश्लील ग्रन्थ ..... Books, pictures, etc. intended to arouse sexual desire.
- 163. Erudite** ..... विद्वान पुरुष ..... A learned or scholarly person.
- 164. Espionage** ..... जासूसी ..... Practice of spying.
- 165. Eternal** ..... अनन्त ..... Existing for ever — without any beginning or end.
- 166. Etymology** ..... शब्द निर्माण विज्ञान ..... The science which deals with derivation of words.
- 167. Euphemism** ..... आडंबर शैली ..... Bombastic style of writing.
- 168. Euphonious** ..... सुरीला ..... Sounding pleasant.
- 169. Euphoria** ..... अत्यन्त खुशी ..... A strong feeling of happiness.
- 170. Evanescent** ..... अस्थायी ..... Of a very short duration or period. / Ephemeral/Transient
- 171. Explicable** ..... विवेचनात्मक ..... That which can be explained.
- 172. Extempore** ..... बिना तैयारी का भाषण ..... A speech delivered without any preparation.
- 173. Extravaganza** ..... अतिशायी नाटक ..... Public activity which takes place in a very elaborate, colourful and expensive way.
- 174. Fallacy** ..... भ्रम ..... False or mistaken belief.
- 175. Fanatic** ..... कट्टर ..... One who is filled with excessive and mistaken enthusiasm.
- 176. Fastidious** ..... नखरेबाज ..... One who is hard to please.
- 177. Fatal or mortal** ..... जानलेवा ..... Resulting in death.
- 178. Fatalist** ..... भाग्यवादी ..... One who believes in destiny.
- 179. Fauna** ..... प्राणिजात ..... Animals of a certain region.
- 180. Feminist** ..... नारीवादी ..... One who works for the welfare of women.
- 181. Fiasco** ..... पूर्ण असफलता ..... Complete failure.
- 182. Flagstaff** ..... ध्वजदण्ड ..... A long pole on which a flag is flown.
- 183. Flora** ..... वनस्पति ..... All the plants of a particular area or period of time.



**One Word Substitution**

- 184. Fluke** ..... आकस्मिक सफलता ..... Stroke of good luck.
- 185. Forgery** ..... जालसाजी ..... Counterfeiting of document.
- 186. Fratricide** ..... भ्रातृहत्या ..... Killing/killer of one's brother.
- 187. Frenzy** ..... उन्माद ..... A state of extreme excitement.
- 188. Frostbite** ..... शीतदंश ..... Injury to the nose, fingers or toes, caused by extreme cold.
- 189. Gallery** ..... प्रदर्शनी स्थल ..... A room or building for showing works of art.
- 190. Gamble** ..... जुआ ..... To play games of chance, etc. for money.
- 191. Gastronomy** ..... उत्तम आहार विज्ञान ..... Science and art of preparing and appreciating good food.
- 192. Genocide** ..... जन संहार ..... Extermination of a race or community.
- 193. Geology** ..... भूगर्भ विज्ञान ..... The science of earth's history and rocks.
- 194. Germicide** ..... जीवाणु नाशक ..... A substance that kills germs.
- 195. Glutton** ..... पेटू ..... One who eats too much.
- 196. Gobble** ..... लालची की तरह खाना ..... Eat fast, noisily and greedily.
- 197. Gratis/Gratuitous** ..... निःशुल्क ..... Done or obtained without payment.
- 198. Gregarious** ..... समूह में रहने वाले ..... Animals that live in flocks.
- 199. Hallucinogen** ..... भ्रमित करने की दवा ..... A drug that causes one to hallucinate.
- 200. Hedonism** ..... सुखवाद ..... Belief that the most important thing in the world is pleasure.
- 201. Henchman** ..... सेवक ..... Faithful supporter.
- 202. Herbivorous** ..... शाकाहारी ..... Animals which feed on vegetation.
- 203. Herculean** ..... अति पराक्रमी ..... Having enormous strength or size.
- 204. Heterogeneous** ..... विषम ..... Things which contain elements of different nature.
- 205. Hexagon** ..... षट्कोणीय ..... A plane figure with six sides and angles.
- 206. Holocaust** ..... पूर्णाहूति ..... Large scale destruction by fire.
- 207. Homicide** ..... मानव हत्या ..... Murder or murderer of a man.
- 208. Homogeneous** ..... समांग ..... Things which contain elements of the same nature.
- 209. Honorary** ..... अवैतनिक ..... A post for which no salary is paid.
- 210. Horticulture** ..... बागवानी ..... Art of growing vegetables, fruit, etc.
- 211. Hospitable** ..... मेहमाननवाज ..... Fond of entertaining guests.
- 212. Hypochondria** ..... काल्पनिक बीमारी ..... Imaginary ailments.
- 213. Iconoclast** ..... गैर-परम्परावादी ..... One who opposes established institutions or beliefs.

**One Word Substitution**

- 214. Idolatry** ..... मूर्ति पूजन ..... The worship of idols or images.  
**215. Illegal** ..... अवैध ..... Contrary to law.  
**216. Illegible** ..... अपठनीय ..... Incapable of being read.  
**217. Illicit** ..... अवैध ..... A trade or act prohibited by law.  
**218. Illiterate** ..... अनपढ़ ..... One who does not know reading and writing.  
**219. Imaginary** ..... काल्पनिक ..... Existing only in the mind.  
**220. Immigrant** ..... अप्रवासी ..... A person who comes to one country from another in order to settle there.  
**221. Immune** ..... प्रतिरक्षित ..... Free from infection.  
**222. Impalpable** ..... स्पर्शातीत ..... Incapable of being perceived by touch.  
**223. Impenetrable** ..... अप्रवेश्य ..... That which cannot be penetrated.  
**224. Imperceptible** ..... अदृश्य ..... That which cannot be perceived by sense.  
**225. Imperialism** ..... साम्राज्यवाद ..... Policy of extending a country's empire and influence.  
**226. Impertinent** ..... गुस्ताख ..... Not showing proper respect.  
**227. Impiety** ..... सम्मान की कमी ..... Lack of respect or religious reverence.  
**228. Imponderable** ..... असोचनीय ..... That which cannot be guessed or calculated.  
**229. Imposter** ..... बहुरूपिया ..... One who assumes a character or title not his own to deceive others.  
**230. Impracticable** ..... अव्यवहारिक ..... Incapable of being practised.  
**231. Impregnable** ..... अजेय ..... Too strong to be overcome or defeated.  
**232. Impregnable** ..... अजेय/ अभेद ..... That which cannot be taken by force of arms.  
**233. Impresario** ..... संयोजक ..... A manager or director of a ballet, a concert, a theatre or an opera company.  
**234. Impromptu** ..... बिना तैयारी का ..... Something said or done without preparation.  
**235. Impudent** ..... रूखे व्यवहार वाला ..... Rude and not respectful.  
**236. Impunity** ..... दंड मुक्ति ..... Freedom from punishment.  
**237. Inaccessible** ..... जहाँ पहुँचा ना जा सके ..... Incapable of being reached.  
**238. Inadmissible** ..... अस्वीकार्य ..... That which cannot be admitted or allowed.  
**239. Inaudible** ..... जो सुनाई ना दे ..... A sound that cannot be heard.  
**240. Incendiary** ..... जो आग/ गुस्सा भड़काएँ ..... Designed to cause fire/likely to cause violence.  
**241. Incombustible** ..... जो जले नहीं ..... That which cannot be burnt.  
**242. Incomparable** ..... अतुलनीय/ अतुल्य ..... That which cannot be compared.

243. **Incorrigible** ..... जो सुधारा नहीं जा सकते .... Incapable of being corrected.
244. **Incredible** ..... अविश्वसनीय ..... Which can't be believed.
245. **Incurable** ..... असाध्य ..... Which cannot be cured.
246. **Indefatigable** ..... जो थके नहीं ..... Incapable of being tired.
247. **Indefensible** ..... असुरक्षित ..... Which cannot be defended.
248. **Indelible** ..... अमिट ..... Which cannot be erased or forgotten.
249. **Indemnity** ..... मुआवजा ..... Compensation for loss.
250. **Indestructible** ..... अनश्वर ..... That which cannot be destroyed.
251. **Indignant** ..... अन्याय के कारण क्रुद्ध ..... Angry at injustice.
252. **Indispensable** ..... अपरिहार्य ..... That without which one can't do.
253. **Indivisible** ..... अविभाज्य ..... That which cannot be divided.
254. **Ineligible** ..... अयोग्य ..... Not suitable to be elected or selected under the rules.
255. **Inevitable** ..... अटल ..... Incapable of being avoided.
256. **Inexcusable** ..... अक्षम्य ..... That which cannot be excused.
257. **Inexplicable** ..... अवर्णनीय ..... Which cannot be explained.
258. **Inexplicit** ..... अप्रकट ..... Not definitely or clearly expressed.
259. **Inexpressible** ..... अवर्णनीय ..... That which cannot be expressed in words.
260. **Infallible** ..... जो गलती न करें ..... Never wrong.
261. **Infanticide** ..... शिशुहत्या ..... Killing of an infant.
262. **Infectious** ..... संक्रामक ..... A disease which spreads through air and water.
263. **Inflammable** ..... ज्वलनशील ..... Which catches fire easily.
264. **Inimitable** ..... जो अनुकरणीय न हो ..... Incapable of being imitated.
265. **Insecticide** ..... कीटनाशक ..... A substance that kills insects.
266. **Insolvent** ..... दिवालिया ..... A person who is unable to pay his debt.
267. **Insurrection** ..... बगावत ..... Rising in arms against an established government.
268. **Intercede** ..... सिफारिश करना ..... Plead to obtain a favour to save someone else.
269. **Intercept** ..... रोकना ..... To check or stop on way.
270. **Intrigue/conspire** ... साजिश करना ..... Make or carry out secret planning.
271. **Introspection** ..... आत्म निरीक्षण ..... Examination of self thought or feeling.
272. **Invincible** ..... अजय ..... That which cannot be defeated.
273. **Invisible** ..... अदृश्य ..... That which cannot be seen.
274. **Invulnerable** ..... सुरक्षित ..... Incapable of being harmed.
275. **Irreconcilable** ..... असंगत ..... Impossible to find agreement between.
276. **Irrecoverable** ..... वापस न मिल सकने योग्य ... That which cannot be recovered.

**One Word Substitution**

- 277. Irreparable** ..... अपूरणीय ..... Incapable of being repaired.  
**278. Irrevocable** ..... अपरिवर्तनीय ..... That which cannot be altered.  
**279. Itinerant** ..... घुमक्कड़ ..... One who travels from place to place.  
**280. Journal** ..... अखबार ..... A newspaper or magazine that deals with a particular subject or professional activity.  
**281. Juxtapose** ..... सन्निधान करना ..... Placing a thing beside another.  
**282. Lagoon** ..... समुद्रताल ..... Salt water lake separated from the sea by sand banks.  
**283. Lexicographer** ..... शब्द कोष बनाने वाला ..... A person who compiles a dictionary.  
**284. Linguist** ..... बहुभाषाविद् (विदेशी भाषा) .. One who speaks many foreign languages.  
**285. Logic** ..... तर्क ..... The science of reasoning.  
**286. Maidenhood** ..... कुवारापन (लड़की का) ..... The state of being unmarried (of a girl).  
**287. Mammals** ..... स्तनपायी ..... Animals which give birth to babies and feed them with their milk.  
**288. Manuscript** ..... हस्तलिपि ..... Matter written by hand.  
**289. Mariticide** ..... पति हत्या ..... Killing of one's husband.  
**290. Martyr** ..... शहीद ..... One who dies for a noble cause.  
**291. Masque** ..... डांस-ड्रामा ..... A play or a dramatic performance in verse, with music, dance and fine costumes.  
**292. Massacre** ..... भीषण नरसंहार ..... Killing of large numbers of people.  
**293. Materialist** ..... भौतिकवादी ..... A person for whom money is the most important consideration.  
**294. Matins** ..... सुबह की प्रार्थना ..... Morning prayer.  
**295. Matricide** ..... मातृहत्या ..... Killing of one's own mother.  
**296. Matrimony** ..... विवाह ..... Marriage.  
**297. Maxim** ..... कहावत ..... A short statement of a general truth.  
**298. Memento** ..... निशानी ..... Something kept to remember place or event.  
**299. Mercenary** ..... किराए का टट्टू ..... One who acts only for money.  
**300. Metamorphosis** ..... रूपांतरण ..... Complete change in appearance.  
**301. Meticulous** ..... निपुण ..... Very particular about small details.  
**302. Migration** ..... प्रवास ..... Movement from one country to another.  
**303. Misandrist** ..... पुरुषद्रोही ..... One who hates males.  
**304. Misanthrope** ..... मानवता द्रोही ..... A hater of mankind.  
**305. Misogamist** ..... विवाह से घृणा करने वाला ... Hater of marriage.  
**306. Misogynist** ..... महिला से घृणा करने वाला .. A hater of womankind.  
**307. Misologist** ..... ज्ञान से घृणा करने वाला ..... Hater of learning.

- 308. Misoneist** ..... पुरातनवादी ..... Hater of new things.
- 309. Missionary** ..... धर्म प्रचारक ..... A person sent to teach Christian religion
- 310. Monastery** ..... मठ ..... Place where monks live.
- 311. Monogamy** ..... एक पत्नी प्रथा ..... The practice of keeping only one wife.
- 312. Mortal** ..... नश्वर/ प्राणघातक ..... Subject to death.
- 313. Mortuary** ..... शवगृह ..... A place where dead bodies are kept before post-mortem.
- 314. Mutilation** ..... शरीर के अंग को काटना ..... Cutting off body parts.
- 315. Naive** ..... सीधा-सादा ..... Having natural simplicity of nature.
- 316. Narcotics** ..... नशीली दवाईयाँ ..... A medicine that induces sleep.
- 317. Naturalism** ..... प्रकृतिवाद ..... Adherence or attachment to what is natural.
- 318. Neogamist** ..... नवविवाहित ..... One who is recently married.
- 319. Nepotism** ..... भाई-भतीजा वाद ..... Undue favour shown to one's own relatives.
- 320. Neurotic** ..... अत्यंत संवेदनशील या चिंतित ..... Excessive sensitive, anxious or obsessive.
- 321. Newfangled** ..... नई अनजानी चीज़ ..... Newly developed and unfamiliar.
- 322. Nonentity** ..... अस्तित्वहीन ..... Person of no importance.
- 323. Nonpareil** ..... अद्वितीय ..... Person or thing which has no equal.
- 324. Notorious** ..... कृष्यात/ बदनाम ..... Having an evil reputation.
- 325. Nuance** ..... सूक्ष्म भेद ..... Subtle difference in colour, meaning etc.
- 326. Numismatics** ..... सिक्को की पढ़ाई ..... The study of coins.
- 327. Nursery** ..... पौधशाला ..... The place where young plants are grown.
- 328. Obscurantist** ..... ज्ञानोन्नति विरोधी ..... Person who is opposed to enlightenment.
- 329. Obsequies** ..... अंतिम संस्कार ..... Funeral rites.
- 330. Obsolete** ..... पुराना, अब प्रयोग में नहीं ..... That which is no longer in use.
- 331. Octagon** ..... अष्टकोण ..... A plane figure with eight sides and angles.
- 332. Oligarchy** ..... अल्पजनाधिपत्य ..... A government by a small group of powerful persons.
- 333. Omniform** ..... सर्वाकृतिक ..... Having every form or shape.
- 334. Omnigenous** ..... सब प्रकार का ..... Comprising all kinds.
- 335. Omnipotent** ..... सर्वशक्तिमान ..... All-powerful (God).
- 336. Omnipresent** ..... सर्वविधायमान ..... Present everywhere (God).
- 337. Omniscient** ..... सर्वज्ञानी ..... Knowing everything (God).

**One Word Substitution**

- 338. Opaque** ..... अपारदर्शी ..... That which cannot be seen through.
- 339. Optimist** ..... आशावादी ..... A person who looks to the bright side of things.
- 340. Orator** ..... वक्ता ..... One who makes an eloquent public speech.
- 341. Orchard** ..... फलों का बगीचा ..... A garden of fruits.
- 342. Orphan** ..... अनाथ ..... A child whose parents are dead.
- 343. Ostracize** ..... समाज से निकालना ..... To turn out of society.
- 344. Oviparous** ..... अंड प्रजक ..... Bearing eggs and not young ones.
- 345. Pacifist** ..... शान्ति दूत ..... A person who believes in the total abolition of war.
- 346. Pageant** ..... तमाशा/ लीला/ नुमाइश ..... Elaborate public spectacle.
- 347. Palatable** ..... स्वादिष्ट ..... Food or drink that has a pleasant taste.
- 348. Panacea** ..... रामबाण ..... A remedy for all kinds of diseases.
- 349. Pandemonium** ..... शोरगुल ..... A wild and noisy disorder.
- 350. Panegyric** ..... प्रशंसा पत्र ..... Piece of writing full of praise.
- 351. Pantomime** ..... मूक अभिनय ..... Dramatic performance with dumb show.
- 352. Paramour** ..... जिस से शारीरिक संबंध हो ... Sexual partner or lover.
- 353. Parasite** ..... परजीवी ..... One who entirely depends on another.
- 354. Parasol** ..... रंगीन छाता ..... A lady's umbrella.
- 355. Parricide** ..... माँ व पिता का हत्यारा ..... Killing of both the parents.
- 356. Patricide** ..... पितृहत्या ..... Killing of one's own father.
- 357. Patrimony** ..... पैतृक ..... Inherited from father or male ancestor.
- 358. Patriot** ..... देशभक्त ..... One who loves one's country.
- 359. Patronymic** ..... पितृ नाम ..... Name derived from that of father or ancestor.
- 360. Pauper** ..... कंगाल ..... One who has no means of livelihood.
- 361. Peculation** ..... गबन ..... Use of public money for one's own benefit.
- 362. Pedantic** ..... ज्ञान दर्शाने वाला लेख ..... A style in which a writer makes a display of his knowledge and learning.
- 363. Pedestrian** ..... पैदल यात्री ..... One who walks on foot.
- 364. Peninsula** ..... प्रायद्वीप ..... Area of land almost surrounded by sea.
- 365. Pentagon** ..... पंचभुज ..... A plane figure with five sides and angles.
- 366. Perceptible** ..... इन्द्रियगोचर ..... That can be perceived by the senses.
- 367. Peroration** ..... उपसंहार/ नतीजा ..... Concluding part of a speech.
- 368. Perseverance** ..... लगन ..... Constant efforts to achieve something.

<b>369. Perspicacious</b> .....	तिक्ष्ण बुद्धिवाला .....	Quick in judging and understanding.
<b>370. Perversion</b> .....	विकृति .....	Change to something abnormal or unnatural.
<b>371. Pessimist</b> .....	निराशावादी .....	A person who looks at the dark side of things.
<b>372. Philanderer</b> .....	दिलफेंक .....	A man who amuses himself by love-making.
<b>373. Philanthropist</b> .....	मानवता प्रेमी .....	A lover of mankind.
<b>374. Philatelist</b> .....	डाक टिकट संग्राहक .....	Collector of stamps.
<b>375. Philistine</b> .....	कला के प्रति उदासीन .....	Person who is indifferent to art and literature.
<b>376. Philogynist</b> .....	औरतों से प्रेम करने वाला ....	A lover of womankind.
<b>377. Philology</b> .....	भाषा का अध्ययन .....	Science of study of language.
<b>378. Pilgrim</b> .....	तीर्थयात्री .....	One who travels to a sacred place.
<b>379. Pioneer</b> .....	अग्रसर .....	One who leads others in any field.
<b>380. Piquant</b> .....	मसालेदार/दिलचस्प .....	Pleasant or sharp to the taste/interesting.
<b>381. Placard/Poster</b> .....	विज्ञापन .....	Written or printed notice pasted in public places.
<b>382. Plagiarism</b> .....	साहित्यिक चोरी .....	The practice of borrowing words and ideas from other authors and using them as one's own; literary theft.
<b>383. Platitude</b> .....	घिसी-पिटी बात .....	Statement that is obviously true and hence dull or not stimulating.
<b>384. Plutocracy</b> .....	कुलीनतंत्र .....	A government by a rich and powerful class.
<b>385. Polyandry</b> .....	बहुपति प्रथा .....	The custom of having more than two husbands at the same time.
<b>386. Polygamy</b> .....	बहु-विवाह प्रथा .....	The custom of having more than two spouses at the same time.
<b>387. Polyglot</b> .....	बहुभाषाविद् .....	Person having command over many languages.
<b>388. Polygon</b> .....	बहुभुज .....	A figure with many angles or sides.
<b>389. Posthumous</b> .....	मरणोपरांत .....	Received after death.
<b>390. Postscript</b> .....	पश्चलेख .....	Anything written in a letter after it is signed.
<b>391. Predicament</b> .....	दुर्दशा .....	Difficult or dangerous situation.
<b>392. Prejudiced</b> .....	पूर्वाग्रही .....	Be biased against.
<b>393. Premonition</b> .....	पूर्वाभास .....	Forewarning of an impending danger.
<b>394. Prerogative</b> .....	विशेषाधिकार .....	Absolute right.
<b>395. Prodigy</b> .....	प्रतिभा संपन्न बालक .....	A child with unusual or remarkable talent.
<b>396. Prognostication</b> .....	भविष्यवाणी .....	Act of forecasting by examining present conditions.

**One Word Substitution**

- 397. Prologue** ..... मंगलाचरण ..... A speech or a poem recited at the beginning of a play.
- 398. Promiscuous** ..... अति कामुक ..... Having a lot of different sexual partners.
- 399. Proponent** ..... प्रस्तावक ..... Person who proposes something.
- 400. Propriety** ..... मर्यादा ..... State of being correct in behavior or moral.
- 401. Protagonist** ..... समर्थक/मुख्य पात्र ..... An important supporter of an idea or political system/Chief actor or character in a story or drama.
- 402. Protectorate** ..... संरक्षित राज्य ..... Country under the protection of a more powerful country.
- 403. Prudent** ..... समझदार ..... Wise.
- 404. Pseudonym** ..... कृत्रिम नाम ..... Name taken by an author instead of his real name
- 405. Punctitious** ..... अतिशिष्टाचारी ..... Very careful to behave correctly.
- 406. Pyrotechnic** ..... आतिशबाजी निर्माण-कला ..... Art of making fireworks.
- 407. Quadruped** ..... चौपाया ..... Four footed-animal.
- 408. Rebel** ..... द्रोही ..... One who takes up arms against the government.
- 409. Recapitulate** ..... संक्षेप में दोहराना ..... Repeat the main points.
- 410. Recluse** ..... एकांतवासी ..... One who lives alone and avoids company.
- 411. Reconcile** ..... मेल-मिलाप करना ..... Bring about harmony or agreement.
- 412. Reconnaissance** ..... किसी स्थान का सैन्य सर्वेक्षण .. Information gathering activity about enemy forces.
- 413. Red tapism** ..... लाल फीताशाही ..... Too much official formality.
- 414. Redundancy** ..... अनावश्यकता ..... When something is unnecessary because it is more than what is needed.
- 415. Regicide** ..... राजा की हत्या ..... Killing of a king.
- 416. Relegate/Demote** ... दर्जा घटाना ..... Reduce to a lower position.
- 417. Reluctant** ..... अनिच्छुक ..... Unwilling
- 418. Remission** ..... क्षमा ..... Pardon or forgiveness for breaking religious laws.
- 419. Rendezvous** ..... मिलन-स्थल ..... Place fixed for meeting or assembling
- 420. Renegade** ..... धर्मपरित्यागी ..... Person who changes his religious belief/support to someone else or some other nation.
- 421. Repartee** ..... हाज़िर जवाबी ..... Witty and clever answers.



**One Word Substitution**

- 422. Repercussion** ..... प्रभाव ..... Effect of some event, action or decision.
- 423. Replica** ..... प्रतिकृति ..... Copy or reproduction of a work of art.
- 424. Repository** ..... गोदाम ..... Place where things are stored for safety.
- 425. Republic** ..... गणतंत्र ..... A political system in which the supreme power lies in a body of citizens who can elect people to represent them.
- 426. Requiem** ..... शांति-यज्ञ ..... Prayer for the dead.
- 427. Restitution** ..... खोयी/चोरी हुई वस्तु की वापसी ..... Return of object stolen or lost.
- 428. Retaliate** ..... बदला लेना ..... Return the same sort of ill-treatment.
- 429. Reticent/Taciturn** .. अल्पभाषी ..... Person who does not speak too much.
- 430. Retrospective** ..... पूर्वगामी ..... An effect which has a reference to the past.
- 431. Rumour/Hearsay** ... अफवाह ..... Unverified information.
- 432. Sacrilege** ..... पवित्रता भंग करना ..... Treating something holy without respect.
- 433. Sarcasm** ..... ताना ..... Bitter and ironical remark.
- 434. Savage** ..... जंगली ..... Violent and uncivilized.
- 435. Scapegoat** ..... बलि का बकरा ..... One who is blamed for the mistakes of others.
- 436. Sceptic** ..... संदेही ..... One who is doubtful.
- 437. Screech** ..... चीखना ..... Cry out in shrill voice.
- 438. Scrimmage** ..... खींचातानी ..... Confused struggle or fight.
- 439. Scurry** ..... छोटे कदमों से तेजी से चलना ... Move hurriedly with short steps.
- 440. Sedition** ..... राजसत्ता के विरुद्ध आंदोलन .. Act or speech for inciting the public against the government.
- 441. Senility** ..... जीर्णवस्था ..... Extreme old age when a man behaves like a fool.
- 442. Siesta** ..... दोपहर का आराम ..... Period of rest or sleep after lunch.
- 443. Simultaneous** ..... साथ-साथ ..... Occurring at the same time.
- 444. Sinecure** ..... जहाँ कम काम में ज्यादा पैसे मिले . An office for which high salary is paid for little or no work or responsibility.
- 445. Smother** ..... दम घोटना ..... Kill by suffocation (especially by covering the face with something).
- 446. Sojourn** ..... थोड़ी देर के लिए रुकना ..... Stay for a short time.
- 447. Soliloquy** ..... स्वयं से एकांत में बातें करना ..... Speaking aloud while alone.
- 448. Somnambulist** ..... नींद में चलने वाला ..... One who walks in sleep.
- 449. Somniloquist** ..... नींद में बोलने वाला ..... One who talks in sleep.
- 450. Sonorous** ..... सुरीला ..... Having a deep and pleasant sound.
- 451. Soricide** ..... बहन की हत्या ..... Killing of one's own sister.

**One Word Substitution**

- 452. Spendthrift** ..... फिजूलखर्ची ..... One who spends one's money recklessly.
- 453. Spinster** ..... कुवारी महिला ..... An unmarried woman.
- 454. Spiritualist** ..... अध्यात्मिक ..... A person who believes in spiritual things.
- 455. Sporadic** ..... छिटपुट ..... Occurring irregularly.
- 456. Stoic** ..... तटस्थ: ..... A person who is indifferent to pleasure and pain.
- 457. Strangulate** ..... गला घोटना/दबाना ..... Kill by putting pressure on the throat/ to apply pressure.
- 458. Subdue** ..... काबू में करना ..... To bring under control.
- 459. Subjugate** ..... अधीन करना ..... To bring under control.
- 460. Suicide** ..... आत्महत्या ..... Taking of one's own life.
- 461. Supercilious** ..... घमंडी ..... Thinking oneself superior to others.
- 462. Sycophant** ..... चापलूस ..... Person who tries to win a favour by flattering other.
- 463. Synagogue** ..... यहूदी उपासनागृह ..... Place where Jews worship.
- 464. Talkative/Garrulous** ..... बातूनी ..... Person who is fond of talking.
- 465. Tantrum** ..... आवेश ..... Fit of bad temper or anger.
- 466. Teetotaler** ..... मद्यनिषेधी ..... One who abstains from alcoholic drinks.
- 467. Theist** ..... आस्तिक ..... A person who believes in existence of God.
- 468. Theocracy** ..... पादरीतंत्र ..... A government by religious leaders.
- 469. Thermometer** ..... तापमापक यंत्र ..... An instrument for measuring temperature.
- 470. Traitor** ..... देशद्रोही ..... One who betrays one's country.
- 471. Transgressor** ..... पापी/ अपराधी ..... One who violates a rule or law.
- 472. Transmigration** ..... आत्मा का शरीर बदलना ..... The passage of soul after death from one body to the other.
- 473. Transmogrification** ..... कायाकल्प ..... Complete change in appearance or character (especially in a magical or surprising way).
- 474. Transparent** ..... पारदर्शी ..... That allows the passage of rays of light.
- 475. Truant** ..... कामचोर ..... One who stays away from school/work without permission.
- 476. Truism** ..... स्वतः सिद्ध ..... A truth which is often repeated.
- 477. Turncoat** ..... गद्दार ..... Disloyal.
- 478. Unanimous** ..... एकमत ..... Consent of all.

**One Word Substitution**

- 479. Unavoidable** ..... अपरिहार्य ..... That which cannot be avoided.
- 480. Unique** ..... अनोखा ..... The only one of its type.
- 481. Universal** ..... विश्वव्यापी ..... Belonging to all parts of the world.
- 482. Usurper** ..... सम्पत्ती हड़पने वाला ..... One who grabs somebody's else property or title.
- 483. Uxoricide** ..... पत्नी हत्या ..... Killing of one's wife.
- 484. Uxorious/Henpecked** जोरू का गुलाम ..... Foolishly fond of one's wife.
- 485. Vacuous** ..... बुद्धिहीन ..... Suggesting absence of thought or intellect.
- 486. Vendetta** ..... वंशानुगत/ पुरतैनी झगड़ा ..... Feud in which the relatives of the dead or injured take revenge.
- 487. Verbatim** ..... शब्दशः ..... Repetition of a writing, word for word.
- 488. Verbose** ..... बातों से भरा ..... Using or containing more words than are necessary.
- 489. Versatile** ..... बहुमुखी ..... One who possesses many talents.
- 490. Verso** ..... वामपृष्ठ ..... Any left hand page of an open book.
- 491. Vespers** ..... शाम की प्रार्थना ..... Evening prayer in the church.
- 492. Veteran** ..... अनुभवी ..... One who has grown old in or has long experience of (specially military) service or occupation.
- 493. Vincible** ..... जिसे जीता जा सके ..... That which can be conquered.
- 494. Vindictive/Vengeful** .. प्रतिशोधी ..... Having or showing a desire for revenge.
- 495. Virulent** ..... जहरीला ..... Highly poisonous effect.
- 496. Viviparous** ..... सजीव प्रजक ..... Bearing living young ones and not eggs.
- 497. Volte-face** ..... आकस्मिक परिवर्तन ..... Sudden change from one set of beliefs to other.
- 498. Voluntary** ..... स्वेच्छिक ..... Of one's own free will.
- 499. Voyage** ..... समुद्री यात्रा ..... Journey by water or sea.
- 500. Vulnerable** ..... आघात योग्य ..... That which can be easily damaged or hurt.
- 501. Widow** ..... विधवा ..... A woman whose husband is dead.
- 502. Widower** ..... विधुर ..... A man whose wife is dead.
- 503. Wreathe** ..... पुष्पहार ..... Flowers fastened in a circle.
- 504. Zealot** ..... मताग्रही ..... Person who shows great and uncompromising enthusiasm for a religion, party, cause, etc.

# 21

## ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

### CHAPTER

**Directions:** In question nos.1 to 225, out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentence and choose the appropriate alternative which best expresser the sentences.

1. **A person who has no money to pay off his debts**  
(A) Insolvent (B) Poor  
(C) Destitute (D) Pauper
2. **Words uttered impiously about God**  
(A) amoral (B) philosophy  
(C) logic (D) blasphemy
3. **A number of ships.**  
(a) fleet (b) galaxy  
(c) constellation (d) group
4. **One who compiles a dictionary**  
(A) geographer (B) lexicographer  
(C) lapidist (D) linguist
5. **A test in which cells from diseased organs are removed and tested**  
(A) Biopsy (B) Autopsy  
(C) Operation (D) Amputation
6. **A small room in a big house, hotel, ship etc. where glasses, dishes, spoons, food etc. are kept.**  
(A) Portico (B) Pantry  
(C) Mezzanine (D) Kitchen
7. **A foreigner who settles in a country.**  
(A) Immigrant (B) Emigrant  
(C) Alien (D) Visitor
8. **Doing something according to one's own free will.**  
(A) Willfully (B) Obligingly  
(C) Voluntarily (D) Compulsorily
9. **Place that provides refuge**  
(A) shelter (B) house  
(C) country (D) asylum
10. **A person who gambles or bets**  
(A) punter (B) backer  
(C) customer (D) client
11. **Art of writing for newspapers and magazines**  
(A) Literature (B) Journalism  
(C) Biography (D) Artistry
12. **An abandoned child of unknown parents who is found by somebody.**  
(A) Foundling (B) Sibling  
(C) Urchin (D) Orphan
13. **Parts of a country behind the coast or a river bank.**  
(A) Swamps (B) Marshes  
(C) Hinterland (D) Isthmuses
14. **A written statement about someone's character, usually provided by an employer**  
(A) testimonial (B) memorandum  
(C) certificate (D) license
15. **One who does not make mistakes**  
(A) Pessimist (B) Optimist  
(C) Infallible (D) Hypocrite
16. **Able to use the left hand and right hand equally well**  
(A) ambivert (B) ambidextrous  
(C) ambivalent (D) ambitious

- 17. One who hates women**  
(A) philanthropist (B) ascetic  
(C) misogamist (D) misogynist
- 18. a system of naming things**  
(A) horticulture (B) miniature  
(C) genocide (D) nomenclature
- 19. A raised passageway in a building**  
(A) walkway (B) walkout  
(C) walkabout (D) walkover
- 20. A cure for all diseases**  
(A) laxative (B) panacea  
(C) antidote (D) purgative
- 21. One who cannot speak**  
(A) deaf (B) dumb  
(C) visionless (D) lame
- 22. Pertaining to cattle**  
(A) Canine (B) Feline  
(C) Bovine (D) Verminous
- 23. To look at someone in an angry or threatening way**  
(A) Glower (B) Gnaw  
(C) Gnash (D) Grind
- 24. A post with little work but high salary**  
(A) Director (B) Trustee  
(C) Sinecure (D) Ombudsman
- 25. Something that causes death**  
(A) Dangerous (B) Fatal  
(C) Brutal (D) Horrible
- 26. A person who writes decoratively**  
(A) Calligrapher (B) Colliery  
(C) Choreographer (D) Cartographer
- 27. A person who loves mankind**  
(A) misanthrope (B) anthropologist  
(C) philanthropist (D) mercenary
- 28. Capable of being interpreted in two ways**  
(A) confusing (B) unclear  
(C) ambiguous (D) ambivert
- 29. One who has narrow and prejudiced religious views**  
(A) religious (B) fanatic  
(C) bigot (D) god-fearing
- 30. The action of looking within or into one's own mind**  
(A) observation (B) examination  
(C) introspection (D) introvert
- 31. To confirm with the help of evidence**  
(A) corroborate (B) implicate  
(C) designate (D) extricate
- 32. One who is a dabbler in arts, science or literature:**  
(A) Dilettante (B) Aesthete  
(C) Maestro (D) Connoisseur
- 33. The time between midnight and noon:**  
(A) Afternoon (B) Antipodes  
(C) Ante - meridiem (D) Antenatal
- 34. Still existing and known :**  
(A) Extent (B) Extant  
(C) Eternal (D) Immanent
- 35. Fear of height:**  
(A) Agoraphobia (B) Hydrophobia  
(C) Acrophobia (D) Pyrophobia
- 36. The highest point**  
(A) zenith (B) height  
(C) zeal (D) ridge
- 37. Feeling inside you which tells you what is right and what is wrong :**  
(A) cleverness (B) conscience  
(C) consciousness (D) fear
- 38. Release of a prisoner from jail on certain terms and condition**  
(A) Parole (B) Parley  
(C) Pardon (D) Acquittal
- 39. Loss of memory**  
(A) Ambrosia (B) Amnesia  
(C) Insomnia (D) Forgetting
- 40. To struggle helplessly**  
(A) Flounder (B) Founder  
(C) Fumble (D) Finger
- 41. One who tends to take a hopeful view of life**  
(A) Magnate (B) creator  
(C) pacifist (D) optimist

**One Word Substitution**

- 42. Belonging to all parts of the world**  
(A) Common (B) universal  
(C) worldly (D) international
- 43. To be known for bad acts**  
(A) Famous (B) notorious  
(C) criminal (D) terrorist
- 44. Words of similar meaning**  
(A) Homonyms (B) pseudonyms  
(C) antonyms (D) synonyms
- 45. Instrument to measure atmospheric pressure**  
(A) Metronome (B) compass  
(C) pedometer (D) barometer
- 46. A speech delivered without previous preparation**  
(A) Soliloquy (B) Extempore  
(C) Rhetoric (D) Expression
- 47. One who pretends to be what he is not**  
(A) crocodile (B) flatterer  
(C) hypocrite (D) counterfeiter
- 48. Study of heavenly bodies**  
(A) astrology (B) astronomy  
(C) stargazing (D) astrophysics
- 49. An official call to appear in a court of law**  
(A) summon (B) notice  
(C) memorandum (D) petition
- 50. To cut apart a person's body**  
(A) amputate (B) mutilate  
(C) ambush (D) mitigate
- 51. Murder of a brother**  
(A) Patricide (B) Fratricide  
(C) Homicide (D) Parricide
- 52. One who is filled with excessive and mistaken enthusiasm about his religion**  
(A) Fatalist (B) Lunatic  
(C) Fanatic (D) Stoic
- 53. A list of items to be transacted at a meeting**  
(A) Menu (B) Agenda  
(C) Minutes (D) Records
- 54. An involuntary action under a stimulus is described as a**  
(A) complex (B) reflex  
(C) reflection (D) response
- 55. A continuous process of change is known as**  
(A) transformation (B) metamorphosis  
(C) flux (D) dynamism
- 56. The use of many words where only a few are necessary.**  
(A) circumlocution (B) circumspection  
(C) circumscription (D) circumvention
- 57. Circular building or hall with a dome.**  
(A) edifice (B) palace  
(C) rotunda (D) spire
- 58. One who is a citizen not of a country but of the world.**  
(A) Bohemian (B) Cosmopolitan  
(C) Philanthropist (D) Internationalist
- 59. An order requiring a person to attend a court.**  
(A) Courtship (B) Agreement  
(C) Subpoena (D) Command
- 60. An imaginary name assumed by an author for disguise.**  
(A) Facsimile (B) Surname  
(C) Alias (D) Pseudonym
- 61. An extreme fear of being in a small confined place.**  
(A) Hydrophobia (B) Paraphernalia  
(C) Claustrophobia (D) Progeria
- 62. An inscription on a tomb.**  
(A) epitaph (B) crypt  
(C) obituary (D) legacy
- 63. Allowance due to a wife from her husband on separation.**  
(A) patrimony (B) antimony  
(C) parsimony (D) alimony
- 64. Practice of employing spies in war.**  
(A) Esplanade (B) Espionage  
(C) Espadrille (D) Estrangement

65. **A fixed territory in which authority can be exercised.**  
(A) Jurisdiction (B) judiciary  
(C) jurisprudence (D) juristic
66. **An appearance of objects often simulating the appearance of water:**  
(A) image (B) mirage  
(C) reflection (D) refraction
67. **The art of making fireworks :**  
(A) Chromatics (B) Numismatics  
(C) Pyrotechnics (D) Cosmetics
68. **Give off bubbles of gas :**  
(A) efface (B) effervesce  
(C) effloresce (D) effuse
69. **A system of governance controlled by persons of high intellectual ability :**  
(A) oligarchy (B) democracy  
(C) meritocracy (D) snobbery
70. **Sudden and violent change :**  
(A) Cataclysm (B) Catalysis  
(C) Catacombs (D) Catechism
71. **A small waterfall or group of waterfalls flowing down a Rocky hill side is called :**  
(A) Hurricane (B) Stream  
(C) Volcano (D) Cascade
72. **One who eats human flesh**  
(A) non-vegetarian (B) vegetarian  
(C) cannibal (D) man-eater
73. **Instrument which records earth's tremor:**  
(A) Monograph (B) Geographer  
(C) Seismograph (D) Barometer
74. **The practice of a woman having more than one husband at the same time:**  
(A) Polygamy (B) Polyphony  
(C) Polyandry (D) Polygyny
75. **Specializes in nose diseases :**  
(A) Otologist (B) Rhinologist  
(C) Endocrinologist (D) Gerentologist
76. **Boundary of an area**  
(A) Porch (B) Periphery  
(C) Balcony (D) Verandah
77. **A war of religions**  
(A) Calligraphy (B) Contraband  
(C) Cavalry (D) Crusade
78. **The Government by the nobility**  
(A) Bureaucracy (B) Aristocracy  
(C) Autocracy (D) Oligarchy
79. **To store and stock**  
(A) Hail (B) Hide  
(C) Hoard (D) Horde
80. **Study of relations of organisms to one another and to their surroundings**  
(A) Biology (B) Ecology  
(C) Psychology (D) Physiology
81. **A body of persons appointed to hear evidence and give their verdict in trials.**  
(A) association (B) council  
(C) bar (D) jury
82. **A person who dishonestly pretends to be somebody else :**  
(A) Imperialist (B) Impressionist  
(C) Implorer (D) Impostor
83. **Violent storm:**  
(A) weather (B) rains  
(C) breeze (D) tempest
84. **Careful and thorough enquiry :**  
(A) Investigation (B) Interview  
(C) Examination (D) Exploration
85. **A situation that stops an activity from progressing :**  
(A) Bypass (B) Breach  
(C) Bottleneck (D) Block head
86. **A disease which is spread by direct contact**  
(A) Contagious (B) Infectious  
(C) Epidemic (D) Endemic
87. **The study of ancient civilizations**  
(A) History (B) Anthropology  
(C) Ethnology (D) Archaeology

**One Word Substitution**

- 88. An animal story with a moral**  
(A) Fable (B) Tale  
(C) Anecdote (D) Parable
- 89. A thing likely to be easily broken**  
(A) vulnerable (B) flexible  
(C) brittle (D) delicate
- 90. Body of singers**  
(A) Coir (B) Quorum  
(C) Quire (D) Choir
- 91. Very dramatic**  
(A) Histrionic (B) Hippocratic  
(C) Hirsute (D) Hoary
- 92. A figure of speech by which a thing is spoken of as being that which it only resembles**  
(A) Metaphor (B) Simile  
(C) Personification (D) Alliteration
- 93. The process by which a person or an organization reduces the amount of money it spends**  
(A) budgeting (B) retrenchment  
(C) saving (D) closure
- 94. An established principle of practical wisdom :**  
(A) Marxism (B) Maxim  
(C) Neologism (D) Platonism
- 95. Person with whom one works**  
(A) contemporary (B) companion  
(C) colleague (D) partner
- 96. Honesty of character**  
(A) integrity (B) rectitude  
(C) honour (D) dignity
- 97. Expressions of sympathy**  
(A) congratulation (B) condolence  
(C) compliment (D) condemnation
- 98. An instrument used to record sound**  
(A) gramophone (B) hydrophone  
(C) phonograph (D) megaphone
- 99. Pertaining to horses**  
(A) Equine (B) equestrian  
(C) equinox (D) equation
- 100. One who cannot be corrected**  
(A) Incurable (B) incorrigible  
(C) hardened (D) vulnerable
- 101. Difficult or impossible to read**  
(A) Illogical (B) illegible  
(C) ineligible (D) legible
- 102. An unexpected piece of good fortune**  
(A) Turnstile (B) Windfall  
(C) Philanthropy (D) Benevolence
- 103. Those who go on to someone else's land without the owner's permission**  
(A) Delinquents (B) trespassers  
(C) offenders (D) culprits
- 104. Something that cannot be taken away.**  
(A) inalienable (B) edible  
(C) legible (D) natural
- 105. Scale used for measuring the strength of an earthquake.**  
(A) Celsius (B) Newtons  
(C) Richter (D) Linear
- 106. Something kept as a reminder of an event.**  
(A) Trophy (B) Souvenir  
(C) Prize (D) Antique
- 107. One who practises one of the fine arts:**  
(A) painter (B) artist  
(C) designer (D) architect
- 108. A general pardon of offenders.**  
(A) Parley (B) Amnesty  
(C) Parole (D) Acquittal
- 109. Place where wine is made**  
(A) bakery (B) cloakroom  
(C) tannery (D) brewery
- 110. A paper written by hand**  
(A) handicraft (B) handiwork  
(C) manuscript (D) thesis
- 111. The art of preserving skin of animals, birds and fish**  
(A) taxonomy (B) taxidermy  
(C) philology (D) seismology
- 112. Related to moon**  
(A) solar (B) moony  
(C) lunar (D) honeymoon
- 113. Sum of money to be paid for freeing a person from captivity.**  
(A) Ransom (B) Compensation  
(C) Tribute (D) Penalty



- 114. Book giving information about every branch of knowledge.**  
(A) Directory (B) Dictionary  
(C) Encyclopedia (D) Dissertation
- 115. Member of a tribe that wanders from place to place with no fixed home.**  
(A) Vagabond (B) Nomad  
(C) Wanderer (D) Truant
- 116. Fit to be chosen.**  
(A) Eligible (B) Capable  
(C) Suitable (D) Valuable
- 117. An animal or plant living in or upon another.**  
(A) master (B) dependant  
(C) insect (D) parasite
- 118. Strong dislike between two persons**  
(A) aversion (B) antipathy  
(C) apathy (D) despair
- 119. The killing of whole group of people**  
(A) genocide (B) germicide  
(C) patricide (D) suicide
- 120. The plants and vegetation of a region**  
(A) fauna (B) flora  
(C) landscape (D) environment
- 121. That which is without opposition**  
(A) unaware (B) verdict  
(C) unanimous (D) spontaneous
- 122. Animal that feeds on plants**  
(A) Carnivorous (B) Herbivorous  
(C) Insectivorous (D) Graminivorous
- 123. A number of stars grouped together**  
(A) Orbit (B) Constellation  
(C) Solar system (D) Comet
- 124. Lasting only for a very short while**  
(A) Transparent (B) Temporal  
(C) Temporary (D) Temperate
- 125. Murder of a man**  
(A) Regicide (B) Fratricide  
(C) Homicide (D) Genocide
- 126. Use of force or threats to get someone to agree to something**  
(A) Coercion (B) Conviction  
(C) Confession (D) Cajolement
- 127. A place where gambling is practised**  
(A) hotel (B) casino  
(C) restaurant (D) theatre
- 128. An object or portion serving as a sample**  
(A) Specification (B) Spectre  
(C) Spectacle (D) Specimen
- 129. The practice of submitting a proposal to popular vote**  
(A) Election (B) Reference  
(C) Popularity (D) Referendum
- 130. Code of diplomatic etiquette and precedence**  
(A) Statesmanship (B) Diplomacy  
(C) Hierarchy (D) Protocol
- 131. To renounce a high position of authority or control**  
(A) Abduct (B) Abandon  
(C) Abort (D) Abdicate
- 132. Talking about the affairs of other people**  
(A) teasing (B) gossiping  
(C) criticising (D) slandering
- 133. Medical examination of the body after death**  
(A) diagnosis (B) irradiation  
(C) corpse (D) autopsy
- 134. A person born or living at the same time as another**  
(A) corollary (B) accessory  
(C) contemporary (D) auxiliary
- 135. Bad beyond reform**  
(A) irreversible (B) irrevocable  
(C) irredeemable (D) irreparable
- 136. That which is certain to happen**  
(A) inevitable (B) invincible  
(C) incorrigible (D) immediate
- 137. The process of deciding the nature of a disease by examination**  
(A) test (B) perusal  
(C) diagnosis (D) operation

**One Word Substitution**

- 138. That which makes it difficult to recognise the presence or real nature of somebody or something.**  
(A) cover (B) comouflage  
(C) pretence (D) mask
- 139. To bear a hand**  
(A) interfere (B) join  
(C) assist (D) rejoice
- 140. One who makes an official examination of accounts**  
(A) auditor (B) accountant  
(C) clerk (D) official
- 141. A government by the officials**  
(A) Plutocracy (B) Aristocracy  
(C) Bureaucracy (D) Monarchy
- 142. One who offers his services without charging for it**  
(A) Philanderer (B) Volunteer  
(C) Mercenary (D) Missionary
- 143. A tank where fish or water plants are kept**  
(A) aviary (B) aquarium  
(C) nursery (D) sanatorium
- 144. Avoiding wastage**  
(A) economic (B) economical  
(C) minimal (D) optimational
- 145. Sole right to make and sell some invention**  
(A) Franchise (B) Authorize  
(C) Dealership (D) Patent
- 146. The scientific study of living organisms**  
(A) Biochemistry (B) Zoology  
(C) Organic chemistry (D) Biology
- 147. One who lives for more than a hundred years**  
(A) saint (B) meteorologist  
(C) demagogue (D) centenarian
- 148. Detaining and confining someone**  
(A) Interruption (B) Interrogation  
(C) Interment (D) Internment
- 149. An underhand device resorted to in order to justify misconduct**  
(A) Subterfuge (B) Manoeuvre  
(C) Stratagem (D) Complicity
- 150. Science of the races of mankind**  
(A) Genealogy (B) Etiology  
(C) Ethnology (D) Sociology
- 151. Impossible to describe**  
(A) Miraculous (B) Ineffable  
(C) Stupendous (D) Appalling
- 152. One who criticises popular beliefs which he thinks is mistaken or unwise**  
(A) Philistine (B) Iconoclast  
(C) Imposter (D) Cannibal
- 153. One who hides away on a ship to obtain a free passage.**  
(A) Composer (B) Stoker  
(C) Stowaway (D) Shipwright
- 154. Clues available at a scene**  
(A) Circumstantial (B) derivative  
(C) inferential (D) suggestive
- 155. An emolument over and above fixed income or salary.**  
(A) Honorarium (B) Sinecure  
(C) Perquisite (D) Prerogative
- 156. The animals of a particular region.**  
(A) Flora (B) Museum  
(C) Zoo (D) Fauna
- 157. A person who is physically dependent on a substance.**  
(A) Criminal (B) Martyr  
(C) Gladiator (D) Addict
- 158. A child born after the death of its father is called.**  
(A) A deprived child (B) An orphan  
(C) A posthumous child (D) A waif
- 159. A legal agreement by which a person borrows money from a bank usually to buy a house.**  
(A) Document (B) Mortgage  
(C) Lease (D) Invoice
- 160. Failing to discharge one's duty.**  
(A) Debacle (B) Dereliction  
(C) Determination (D) Deterrent
- 161. A movement of part of the body to express an idea or feeling.**  
(A) Jibe (B) Gesture  
(C) Pose (D) Mimicry

- 162. To surround a place with the intention of capturing it**  
(A) Bivouac (B) Besiege  
(C) Invade (D) Intern
- 163. To send back a person to one's country**  
(A) Repatriate (B) Expatriate  
(C) Migrate (D) Emigrate
- 164. One who is opposed to intellectual progress**  
(A) Impostor (B) Chaperon  
(C) Prospector (D) Obscurant
- 165. A woman with dark brown hair**  
(A) Blonde (B) Brunette  
(C) Termagant (D) Coiffure
- 166. One who has special skill in judging art, music, tastes, etc.**  
(A) Connoisseur (B) Raconteur  
(C) Sybarite (D) Amateur
- 167. One who devotes his life to the welfare and the interests of other people**  
(A) Minion (B) Martyr  
(C) Altruist (D) Fugitive
- 168. A place where animals are kept alive, and nearly as possible as in their natural state**  
(A) Vivarium (B) Orchard  
(C) Paddock (D) Zoo
- 169. One who hates mankind**  
(A) Misanthropist (B) Misnomer  
(C) Misogynist (D) Philanthropist
- 170. The period between two reigns**  
(A) Interregnum (B) Interval  
(C) Interdict (D) Intercept
- 171. One who walks in one's sleep.**  
(A) dreamer (B) somnambulist  
(C) neomatic (D) ignorant
- 172. A place where money is coined.**  
(A) mint (B) press  
(C) treasury (D) bank
- 173. The house of an Eskimo.**  
(A) hamlet (B) downy  
(C) igloo (D) hut
- 174. One who collects postage stamp.**  
(A) philatelist (B) stamp collector  
(C) vendor (D) lexicographer
- 175. What cannot be heard.**  
(A) inaudible (B) audible  
(C) unheard (D) ineffaceable
- 176. A poem of mourning.**  
(A) elegy (B) sonnet  
(C) lyric (D) epic
- 177. A game in which no one wins.**  
(A) abandoned (B) drawn  
(C) postponed (D) obsolete
- 178. Too much official formality.**  
(A) delayed (B) officiousness  
(C) formality (D) red tapism
- 179. One who knows many languages.**  
(A) linguist (B) polyglot  
(C) stylist (D) debator
- 180. That which can be carried.**  
(A) portable (B) edible  
(C) potable (D) bearable
- 181. A writer who steals ideas from others.**  
(A) plagiarist (B) copier  
(C) editor (D) translator
- 182. Examination of a dead body.**  
(A) autopsy (B) surgery  
(C) operation (D) tanning
- 183. A speech made to oneself.**  
(A) dialogue (B) speech  
(C) soliloquy (D) monologue
- 184. A commonplace remark.**  
(A) platitude (B) ramark  
(C) statement (D) epigram
- 185. That which cannot be captured.**  
(A) impregnable (B) incorrigible  
(C) imperishable (D) invincible
- 186. The study of birds**  
(A) ornithology (B) philology  
(C) ontology (D) geology
- 187. An insect with many legs is called.**  
(A) centipede (B) mammal  
(C) herbivorous (D) vertebrate

**One Word Substitution**

- 188. Government in which all religions are honoured.**  
(A) fanatic (B) secular  
(C) catholic (D) progressive
- 189. One who lives among strangers.**  
(A) recluse (B) alien  
(C) stoic (D) rustic
- 190. A word no longer in use.**  
(A) extant (B) obsolete  
(C) out-dated (D) nervous
- 191. A sneering person who always finds faults.**  
(A) cupid (B) kleptomaniac  
(C) cynic (D) crone
- 192. A place for keeping bees.**  
(A) aviary (B) apiary  
(C) cage (D) nest
- 193. A long journey, especially by sea.**  
(A) flight (B) voyage  
(C) odyssey (D) safari
- 194. A short walk for pleasure or exercise.**  
(A) stroll (B) gallop  
(C) jog (D) promenade
- 195. A place where government or public records are kept.**  
(A) attic (B) museum  
(C) cellar (D) archive
- 196. A person who kills somebody especially for political reasons.**  
(A) criminal (B) assassin  
(C) murderer (D) hangman
- 197. A person who opposes another.**  
(A) soldier (B) fighter  
(C) antagonist (D) prophet
- 198. A person who does not want to see the realities of life and tries to escape.**  
(A) escapist (B) hovel  
(C) plunderer (D) scavenger
- 199. A person who is very selective, disgusted easily, and is hard to please.**  
(A) misanthrope (B) fastidious  
(C) selector (D) ambiguous
- 200. A person who can be cheated easily.**  
(A) credulous (B) faithful  
(C) client (D) egoist
- 201. A sweet music.**  
(A) lullaby (B) melody  
(C) folk song (D) duet
- 202. A place where everything is perfect.**  
(A) heaven (B) platoon  
(C) cosmos (D) utopia
- 203. Decision that cannot be taken back.**  
(A) irrevocable (B) rigid  
(C) order (D) brief
- 204. Fear of strangers.**  
(A) sitophobia (B) hydrophobia  
(C) xenophobia (D) whoopee
- 205. Physical features of an area.**  
(A) geography (B) sociology  
(C) contour (D) topography
- 206. Scientific study of fungi.**  
(A) mycology (B) botany  
(C) physiology (D) zoology
- 207. A funeral bell.**  
(A) knell (B) replica  
(C) windfall (D) call
- 208. A person who is pure and clean.**  
(A) immaculate (B) neat  
(C) clean (D) irrevocable
- 209. A person who has just started learning.**  
(A) novice (B) foreman  
(C) supervisor (D) apprentice
- 210. A person who is appointed by two parties to solve a dispute.**  
(A) judge (B) arbitrator  
(C) advocate (D) barrister
- 211. A person who wishes to throw over all establishments.**  
(A) anarchist (B) hooligan  
(C) criminal (D) rebel
- 212. A person who is bad in spelling.**  
(A) cacographist (B) linguist  
(C) calligraphist (D) pedant
- 213. A person leaving his native country to settle in another.**  
(A) immigrant (B) emigrant  
(C) traveller (D) nomad
- 214. A person who is always dissatisfied.**  
(A) heresy (B) malcontent  
(C) felon (D) surrogate

**One Word Substitution**

**215. A person who enters without any invitation.**

- (A) thief (B) burglar  
(C) vandal (D) intruder

**216. A person who is talkative.**

- (A) garrulous (B) faithful  
(C) client (D) egoist

**217. One who cuts precious stones.**

- (A) lapidist (B) philatelist  
(C) jeweller (D) drover

**218. A hospital for recuperation or for the treatment of chronic diseases**

- (A) sanatorium (B) asylum  
(C) funny farm (D) bedlam

**219. A professional rider in horse races**

- (A) horse rider (B) jockey  
(C) screw (D) rider

**220. One who champions the cause of women**

- (A) lover (B) beloved  
(C) feminist (D) womanizer

**221. A man who hates marriage**

- (A) polyandrist (B) bigot  
(C) misogynist (D) widower

**222. Thick skinned animal**

- (A) pachyderm (B) prehensile  
(C) monotreme (D) hand-skinned

**223. Cow - like**

- (A) aquiline (B) bovine  
(C) feline (D) vulpine

**224. The words with opposite meanings used together**

- (A) oxymoron (B) irony  
(C) pun (D) alliteration

**225. Specialist of kidney**

- (A) nephrologist (B) paediatrist  
(C) orthopaedist (D) oncologist

**ANSWER KEY**

1. (A) 24. (C) 47. (C) 70. (A) 93. (B) 116. (A) 139. (C) 162. (B) 185. (A) 208. (A)  
2. (D) 25. (B) 48. (B) 71. (D) 94. (B) 117. (D) 140. (A) 163. (A) 186. (A) 209. (A)  
3. (A) 26. (A) 49. (A) 72. (C) 95. (C) 118. (B) 141. (C) 164. (D) 187. (A) 210. (B)  
4. (B) 27. (C) 50. (B) 73. (C) 96. (B) 119. (A) 142. (B) 165. (B) 188. (B) 211. (A)  
5. (A) 28. (C) 51. (B) 74. (C) 97. (B) 120. (B) 143. (B) 166. (A) 189. (B) 212. (A)  
6. (B) 29. (C) 52. (C) 75. (B) 98. (C) 121. (C) 144. (B) 167. (C) 190. (B) 213. (B)  
7. (A) 30. (C) 53. (B) 76. (B) 99. (A) 122. (B) 145. (D) 168. (A) 191. (C) 214. (B)  
8. (C) 31. (A) 54. (B) 77. (D) 100. (B) 123. (B) 146. (D) 169. (A) 192. (B) 215. (D)  
9. (D) 32. (A) 55. (B) 78. (B) 101. (B) 124. (C) 147. (D) 170. (A) 193. (B) 216. (A)  
10. (A) 33. (C) 56. (A) 79. (C) 102. (B) 125. (C) 148. (D) 171. (B) 194. (A) 217. (A)  
11. (B) 34. (B) 57. (C) 80. (B) 103. (B) 126. (A) 149. (B) 172. (A) 195. (D) 218. (A)  
12. (A) 35. (C) 58. (B) 81. (D) 104. (A) 127. (B) 150. (C) 173. (C) 196. (B) 219. (B)  
13. (C) 36. (A) 59. (C) 82. (D) 105. (C) 128. (D) 151. (B) 174. (A) 197. (C) 220. (C)  
14. (A) 37. (B) 60. (D) 83. (D) 106. (B) 129. (D) 152. (B) 175. (A) 198. (A) 221. (C)  
15. (C) 38. (A) 61. (C) 84. (A) 107. (B) 130. (D) 153. (C) 176. (A) 199. (B) 222. (A)  
16. (B) 39. (B) 62. (A) 85. (C) 108. (B) 131. (D) 154. (A) 177. (B) 200. (A) 223. (B)  
17. (D) 40. (A) 63. (D) 86. (A) 109. (D) 132. (B) 155. (C) 178. (D) 201. (B) 224. (A)  
18. (D) 41. (D) 64. (B) 87. (D) 110. (C) 133. (D) 156. (D) 179. (B) 202. (D) 225. (A)  
19. (A) 42. (B) 65. (A) 88. (A) 111. (B) 134. (C) 157. (D) 180. (A) 203. (A)  
20. (B) 43. (B) 66. (B) 89. (C) 112. (C) 135. (C) 158. (C) 181. (A) 204. (C)  
21. (B) 44. (D) 67. (C) 90. (D) 113. (A) 136. (A) 159. (B) 182. (A) 205. (D)  
22. (C) 45. (D) 68. (B) 91. (A) 114. (C) 137. (C) 160. (B) 183. (C) 206. (A)  
23. (A) 46. (B) 69. (C) 92. (A) 115. (B) 138. (B) 161. (B) 184. (A) 207. (A)

# 22

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES -I

### CHAPTER

<b>S.N.</b>	<b>PHRASES</b>	<b>हिन्दी में अर्थ</b>	<b>Meaning in English</b>
1.	<b>Achilles' heels</b>	कमजोर पक्ष	A small but fatal weakness.
2.	<b>Add fuel to fire</b>	आग में घी डालना	To make a matter worse.
3.	<b>An arm chair job</b>	आसान एवं अच्छी आय वाली नौकरी	Good income job with high comfort.
4.	<b>An axe to grind</b>	स्वार्थ से भरा उद्देश्य	Something done for selfish reasons.
5.	<b>An iron-will</b>	दृढ़ इच्छा शक्ति	Strong will power.
6.	<b>An old flame</b>	पुराना प्यार	A person, one had a romantic relationship with, in the past.
7.	<b>An old head on young shoulders</b>	अपनी उम्र से ज्यादा समझदार होना	A child or young person who thinks and talks like an older and experienced person.
8.	<b>An olive branch</b>	शांति निवेदन	Peace request/ peace treaty.
9.	<b>Apple of discord</b>	झगड़े का कारण	Matter of dispute.
10.	<b>Apple of one's eye</b>	दुलारा, प्यारा	Very lovable/ dearest one.
11.	<b>Apple-pie-order</b>	बिल्कुल ठीक हालत में	In good condition
12.	<b>At a loss</b>	निर्णय न ले पाना	To be unable to decide.
13.	<b>At a pinch</b>	समस्या में होना	In a trouble.
14.	<b>At arm's length</b>	दूर रखना (दोस्ती न रखना)	Avoid becoming too friendly.
15.	<b>At daggers drawn</b>	कट्टर दुश्मनी होना	To have bitter enmity.
16.	<b>At ease</b>	चिन्ता रहित	Free from pain and anxiety.
17.	<b>At one's finger's ends</b>	पूर्ण जानकारी होना	To have complete knowledge.
18.	<b>At one's wit's end</b>	चकित	Puzzled / confused / perplexed.
19.	<b>At sixes and sevens</b>	अस्त-व्यस्त	In disorder.
20.	<b>At stake</b>	दाव पर	At risk and insecured.
21.	<b>At the eleventh hour</b>	अन्तिम समय में	At the last moment.
22.	<b>Back stairs gossip</b>	नौकरो के बीच का गपशप	Talk among servants/ unfair talks.

23. **Bad blood** ..... शत्रुता ..... Enmity/ bitter relations.
24. **Bag and baggage** ..... बोरिया-बिस्तर समेत ..... With all belongings.
25. **Baker's dozen** ..... संख्या में तेरह ..... Thirteen in number.
26. **Be born with a silver spoon in one's mouth** ..... धनी परिवार में पैदा होना ..... To be born in a rich family.
27. **Be in the driving seat** .... सारी जिम्मेदारी का भार उठाना .. Bearing all responsibilities.
28. **Bear the brunt of** ..... परिणाम भुगतना ..... To bear the main part of something unpleasant.
29. **Beat about the bush** ..... घुमा-फिरा कर बातें करना ..... To talk in a roundabout manner/ circumlocution.
30. **Beat black and blue** ..... अत्यधिक पिटाई करना ..... Beating mercilessly.
31. **Beat hollow** ..... काफी आसानी ..... To defeat thoroughly and एवं बुरी तरह से पराजित करना convincingly.
32. **Beck and call** ..... आज्ञा में रहना ..... Ready to obey order instantly.
33. **Bed of roses** ..... आनंद से भरपूर ..... Pleasant situation of comfort.
34. **Bed of thorns** ..... दुःख एवं तकलीफ से भरपूर ..... A situation of extreme difficulty.
35. **Beggar description** ..... अवर्णनीय ..... A person with no resource.
36. **Bell the cat** ..... जोखिम उठाना ..... Taking first step at personal risk.
37. **Between the devil and the deep sea** ... दो गंभीर परेशानियों के बीच ..... Between two difficult situations.
38. **Big gun** ..... ऊँची पहुँच वाला व्यक्ति ..... An influential person
39. **Bird of passage** ..... यदा-कदा आनेवाला ..... One who comes occasionally.
40. **Bird's eye view** ..... सरसरी निगाह ..... Overview.
41. **Birds of feather** ..... एक ही प्रवृत्ति के लोग ..... People with the same idea, characteristics and interests.
42. **Bite the dust** ..... पराजित होना ..... To be defeated.
43. **Black sheep** ..... ऐसा व्यक्ति जो परिवार / टीम के लिए शर्मिंदगी का कारण बनें ..... A person who is regarded as disgrace for his family/ team etc.
44. **Blind alley** ..... कार्य जिसमें आगे प्रगति संभव नहीं ..... A situation in which no further progress can be made.
45. **Blind date** ..... किसी अंजान व्यक्ति से मिलना .. A meeting between a girl and a boy, who have not met before.
46. **Blow one's own trumpet** अपने मुँह मियाँ मिट्टू ..... To praise oneself.
47. **Blue blood** ..... शाही व्यक्ति ..... Royal or aristocratic descent.
48. **Blue book** ..... सरकारी रिपोर्ट ..... Government report.
49. **Body and soul** ..... पूर्णतया ..... Entirely.
50. **Bolt from the blue** ..... आकस्मिक विपत्ति ..... Unexpected problem.
51. **Bone of contention** ..... झगड़े की वस्तु/कारण ..... Subject of a dispute.

*Idioms And Phrases - 1*

52. **Boon/blessing in disguise** छिपा हुआ वरदान ..... Hidden blessing.
53. **Bosom friend** ..... जिगरी दोस्त ..... Fast friend.
54. **Break the ice** ..... चुप्पी तोड़ना ..... To start a conversation.
55. **Breathe one's last** ..... मर जाना ..... To pass away/ to die.
56. **Broad day light** ..... दिन-दहाड़े ..... In day light (when crime cannot be hidden).
57. **Broken reed** ..... अविश्वासी व्यक्ति ..... A weak, unreliable person.
58. **Brown study** ..... विचारमग्नता ..... A state of deep thought.
59. **Bull in the china shop** ... जो जगह के अनुकूल न हो ..... One who is out of place in a delicate situation.
60. **Burn a hole in the pocket** शीघ्रता से खर्च करना ..... Money spent quickly.
61. **Burn one's fingers** ..... खुद का नुकसान कर बैठना ..... To get oneself into trouble.
62. **Burn the candle at both ends** फिजूलखर्ची करना ..... To waste money.
63. **Burn the midnight oil** ... देर रात तक मेहनत करना ..... Labouring/studying till late night.
64. **Burning question** ..... ज्वलन्त प्रश्न ..... Hot issue.
65. **Bury the hatchet** ..... दुश्मनी खत्म करना ..... To end a hostility.
66. **By fits and starts** ..... रुक-रुक कर अनियमित रूप से Irregularly.
67. **By hook or by crook** ..... गलत या सही किसी भी ढंग से.. By any means, right or wrong.
68. **By leaps and bounds** ..... दिन दूनी और रात चौगुनी ..... At a rapid pace.
69. **By the skin of one's teeth/ by a whisker** थोड़े से अंतराल से ..... Narrowly/by a hair breadth
70. **Carry the coal to newcastle** बेवजह मेहनत करना ..... Spending time and energy in doing something that is useless and wastage of energy.
71. **Cast pearls before swine** बंदर के हाथ में नारियल ..... A right thing in a wrong hand.  
(किसी वस्तु को ऐसे व्यक्ति को देना जो उसका मूल्य न समझे)
72. **Castles in the air** ..... हवाई किला बनाना ..... Day dream/ a hope or desire unlikely to be realized.
73. **Cat and dog life** ..... कलहपूर्ण जीवन ..... Troublesome life.
74. **Catch a tartar** ..... शत्रु या बहुत बड़ी परेशानी से ... To grapple with a unexpectedly.  
सामना होना ..... formidable opponent.
75. **Cat's paw** ..... निजी स्वार्थ के पूर्ति में जिस ..... A person used by another as व्यक्ति का प्रयोग किया जाए..... a dupe or tool.
76. **Chew the cud** ..... मनन करना ..... To ponder over / meditate.
77. **Chicken hearted** ..... कायर ..... Lacking courage / cowardly.
78. **Cock-and-bull story** ..... मनगढ़ंत कहानी ..... A concocted story.
79. **Crocodile tears** ..... दिखावटी आँसू ..... An false display of grief.



80. **Cross swords** ..... लड़ना ..... To quarrel or fight.
81. **Cry for the moon** ..... किसी असंभव वस्तु की कामना ..... To desire the unattainable.  
करना
82. **Cry over spilled milk** .... व्यर्थ पछलाना ..... Regret in vain for what cannot be  
undone.
83. **Cut a sorry figure** ..... अपने प्रयास से तनिक भी ..... To give a poor show.  
प्रभाव न छोड़ना
84. **Cut both ways** ..... दोनों ही पार्टों के पक्ष में ..... Argue in favour of both sides.  
तर्क करना
85. **Cut no ice** ..... कोई असर नहीं डालना ..... To fail to make an impression.
86. **Cut one's coat according to one's cloth** ..... अपनी आय के अनुसार ..... To live within one's means.  
व्यय करना
87. **Dance to one's tune** ..... हुक्म का पालन करना ..... Obeying one's order.
88. **Dark horse** ..... जो अप्रत्याशित रूप से जीत जाए ..One who wins unexpectedly.
89. **Dead letter** ..... कानून, जो कभी लागू ..... A law or ordinance that is no  
था लेकिन अब लागू नहीं है। longer enforced.
90. **Democle's sword** ..... सिर पर मंडराता खतरा ..... Constant threat.
91. **Die a dog's death** ..... लज्जाजनक मौत मरना ..... To die a shameful death.
92. **Die in harness** ..... अपने कार्यावधि के दौरान ..... Die while in service.  
ही मृत्यु होना
93. **Dog in the manger** ..... जो दूसरो को उस सुख ..... A person who prevents others  
का भोग करने नहीं देता है from enjoying what he cannot.  
जो उसके किसी काम का नहीं
94. **Donkey's years** ..... काफी समय बाद ..... A long time.
95. **Draw a line** ..... मर्यादा तय करना ..... Set a limit.
96. **Duck in a thunder storm** ..... व्यथा में ..... In a painful condition.
97. **Eagle eyed** ..... तेज नजर वाला ..... With keen eye sight.
98. **Eat humble pie** ..... शर्मीन्दगी झेलना ..... To apologize.
99. **Eat one's words** ..... शब्द वापस लेना ..... Take a statement back.
100. **Elbow room** ..... काम करने की स्वतंत्रता ..... Sufficient scope to move or  
function.
101. **End in smoke** ..... कोई परिणाम न निकलना ..... Come to nothing.
102. **Escape one's lips** ..... बोल जाना ..... Speak unintentionally or  
unexpectedly.
103. **Fabian policy** ..... सावधानीपूर्ण मन्दगति नीति ..... Deliberate slow policy/ policy of  
delaying decisions.
104. **Fair and square** ..... निष्पक्ष ..... In an honest way .
105. **Fair sex** ..... नारी जाति ..... Women.
106. **Fair weather friend** ..... मुसीबत में साथ न ..... Selfish friends who are with us

*Idioms And Phrases - 1*

	देने वाला मित्र	only in comfortable situation.
<b>107. Fancy price</b> .....	मुंहमांगी कीमत .....	At any cost/ at demanded price.
<b>108. Feather in the cap</b> .....	अच्छी उपलब्धि .....	Additional success.
<b>109. Feather one's nest</b> .....	अपने पद का लाभ .....	To enrich oneself by taking
	उठा कर कमाई करना, भविष्य	advantage of one's position.
	के लिए जुगाड़ करना	
<b>110. Fight shy of</b> .....	टालना .....	To attempt to avoid a thing or
		person.
<b>111. Fish in troubled waters</b> ..	विषम परिस्थिति का लाभ उठाना	To take advantage of the problems
		of others.
<b>112. Fish out of water</b> .....	कष्टप्रद अवस्था में .....	Out of one's usual and comfortable
		place.
<b>113. Fly in the ointment</b> .....	असुविधा .....	A slight unpleasant thing that
		obstruct the enjoyment of
		something.
<b>114. Fool's paradise</b> .....	झूठी उम्मीद में खुश होना .....	A state of being happy for foolish
		or unfounded reasons.
<b>115. Forty winks</b> .....	झपकी .....	A nap.
<b>116. French leave</b> .....	बिना सूचना के अनुपस्थित होना	A leave without information or
		permission.
<b>117. Fringe benefits</b> .....	वेतन के अलावा मिलने .....	An additional benefit apart
	वाला लाभ .....	from salary.
<b>118. From hand to mouth</b> .....	सिर्फ गुजारा भर .....	Providing only bare essentials.
<b>119. Gala day</b> .....	आनंदोत्सव का दिन .....	Celebration day.
<b>120. Get away with</b> .....	बच निकलना .....	To escape.
<b>121. Get down to</b> .....	काम गंभीरतापूर्वक आरंभ करना	To attend to work seriously.
<b>122. Get into a soup</b> .....	झंझट में पड़ना .....	Get into trouble.
<b>123. Get into hot water</b> .....	समस्या में फँसना .....	Get into trouble.
<b>124. Get off scot free</b> .....	अदण्डित निकल जाना .....	To escape without punishment.
<b>125. Get on one's nerves</b> .....	तंग करना .....	To irritate or annoy.
<b>126. Gobble-gabble</b> .....	मूर्खतापूर्ण वार्तालाप .....	Foolish talk.
<b>127. Gift of the gab</b> .....	चतुराईपूर्वक धारा प्रवाह .....	Talent for speaking.
	बोलने की शक्ति	
<b>128. Give a piece of mind</b> .....	डाँटना .....	To rebuke or scold.
<b>129. Go through fire and water</b>	कोई भी खतरा मोल लेना .....	To brave any danger.
<b>130. Go to dogs</b> .....	व्यर्थ होना .....	To deteriorate/ degenerate.
<b>131. Go to rack and ruin</b> .....	विनाश होना .....	To decay or get destroyed.
<b>132. Good Samaritan</b> .....	दयालु व्यक्ति .....	A person who helps and pays

- sympathy to those in distress.
133. **Grass widow** ..... ऐसी विवाहिता जिस का ..... A woman who is separated,  
पति उससे दूर हो divorced or lives apart from her  
husband.
134. **Grease the palm** ..... रिश्वत देना ..... To bribe.
135. **Green room** ..... अभिनेता का भेष-भूषा का कमरा A lounge in a theater or studio  
for the performers to get ready.
136. **Grist to one's mill** ..... फायदेमंद ..... Something that can be used for  
one's advantage.
137. **Halcyon days** ..... खुशगवार दिन ..... Peaceful days.
138. **Hammer and sickle** ..... समाजवाद का प्रतीक ..... A symbolic representation of  
communism in general.
139. **Hammer and tongs** ..... बहुत अधिक मेहनत से ..... With great effort or energy.
140. **Hand and glove with** ..... अच्छे सहयोग से ..... In close co-operation.
141. **Hang by a thread** ..... बहुत नाजुक स्थिति में होना ..... Be in a risky situation.
142. **Hard nut to crack** ..... जटिल समस्या/ व्यक्ति ..... A difficult problem to solve/ A  
person difficult to understand.
143. **Haul over the coals** ..... कोसना, भर्त्सना करना ..... To take to task, to reprimand.
144. **Have finger in the pie** ... किसी कार्य में शामिल रहना ..... To be involved in something.
145. **Have one's hands full** .... काम की कमी नहीं होना ..... To be completely occupied.
146. **Have one's way** ..... अपनी इच्छा के अनुसार ..... The way one wants.
147. **Have several irons  
in the fire** ..... एक ही समय कई कार्यों में ..... To be involved in many projects  
शामिल होना ..... or activities at the same time.
148. **Hen-pecked husband** .... जोरू का गुलाम ..... Admirer of one's own wife in a  
servile manner.
149. **Herculean task** ..... बहुत कठिन कार्य ..... Task requiring tremendous  
effort.
150. **High and dry** ..... अकेला ..... In a deprived situation (alone).
151. **High handed** ..... निरंकुश ..... Overbearing.
152. **High living** ..... ऐश आराम की जिन्दगी ..... Living with comfort and ease.
153. **Hit below the belt** ..... गलत तरीके से प्रहार करना ..... To strike unfairly.
154. **Hit the jackpot** ..... बड़ी कामयाबी मिलना ..... Gaining a big/ great success  
(speci-ally by luck).
155. **Hit the nail on the head** सही समय पर सही ..... To do the right thing at the  
बात/कार्य करना right time
156. **Hobson's choice** ..... कोई विकल्प न होना ..... No alternative.
157. **Hole and corner policy** .. गुप्त नीति ..... Secret policy.
158. **Hue and cry** ..... हो-हल्ला ..... Any loud public outcry.

**Idioms And Phrases - 1**

- 159. Hush money** ..... किसी बात को गुप्त रखने के लिए दिया जाने वाला पैसा..... Money given to someone to keep something secret.
- 160. In a nutshell** ..... संक्षेप में ..... In very brief form.
- 161. In black and white** ..... लिखित में ..... In printed or written form.
- 162. In full swing** ..... पूरे जोरों पर ..... At the height of activity.
- 163. In the blues** ..... दुःख/संताप में ..... In dumps depressed.
- 164. In the long run** ..... अन्ततः..... Ultimately.
- 165. In the nick of time** ..... ठीक समय पर ..... At the last possible moment.
- 166. In the same boat** ..... एक ही हालात में ..... Sharing the same problems.
- 167. In vogue** ..... प्रचलित ..... In the current fashions.
- 168. Ins and outs** ..... विस्तृत विवरण ..... Intricacies or complications/ full detail.
- 169. Iron hand/ Iron fist** ..... कड़ाई से ..... Rigorous control.
- 170. Itching palm** ..... रिश्वत लेने की आदत होना ..... Craving for bribe.
- 171. Itsy bitsy** ..... अत्यन्त छोटा ..... Very small or tiny.
- 172. Jack of all trades and master of none** ..... जो आदमी किसी भी काम में ... निपुण न हो, लेकिन सभी ..... A person who knows many different kinds of work but is a master of none.
- 173. Jail bird** ..... जो जेल में हो या पहले रह चुका हो ..... A person who is or has been confined to jail.
- 174. Jaundiced eye** ..... पक्षपातपूर्ण दृष्टिकोण ..... To look at something with a prejudiced view.
- 175. Judas kiss** ..... झूठा प्यार ..... False love.
- 176. Jump to a conclusion** .... बिना सोचे-समझे नतीजे पर पहुँच जाना ..... To come to a conclusion prematurely.
- 177. Kangaroo court** ..... गैर-कानूनी न्यायालय ..... An illegal court.
- 178. Keep one's cards close to one's chest** .. किसी बात को छिपाना ..... Hiding something.
- 179. Keep one's fingers crossed** किसी अच्छी घटना के होने की कामना करना . To wait expectantly.
- 180. Keep one's word** ..... प्रतीज्ञा पूरी करना ..... To keep one's promise.
- 181. Keep the ball rolling** ..... जारी रखना ..... To maintain the progress of a project or plan.
- 182. Keep the wolf from the door** दरिद्रता से संघर्ष करना ..... To avert poverty/ starvation.
- 183. Kill two birds with one stone** एक कार्य करके दो समस्याओं से निपट लेना ..... Doing two things at the same time while effort is made for one
- 184. Kith and kin** ..... बन्धु-बान्धव ..... Blood relations.

185. **Knit one's brow** ..... त्रौरियों चढ़ाना (गुस्सा करना) .. To frown.
186. **Lady's man** ..... जो महिलाओं के संगत में रहना . A man who is fond of the  
पसंद करता हो ..... company of women.
187. **Lame excuse** ..... असंतोषजनक बहाना ..... False excuse/ baseless excuse.
188. **Left- handed compliment** प्रशंसा के रूप में अपमान ..... An insult disguised as a  
compliment.
189. **Lion's share** ..... सबसे बड़ा हिस्सा ..... Large part.
190. **Live in an ivory tower** ... सम्पन्नता में जीना एवं ..... Living in comfort and being  
आम लोगों के दुःख से unaware of realities of others'  
खुद को दूर रखना miseries.
191. **Loaves and fishes** ..... व्यक्तिगत लाभ ..... Material benefit.
192. **Look off colours** ..... अस्वस्थ दिखाई देना ..... Look ill or unhealthy.
193. **Look through coloured glasses** ..... झूठे आवरण से देखना ..... To see with different/ wrong  
views.
194. **Lump in the throat** ..... गला भर जाना (भावनात्मक क्षण में) A tight or uncomfortable feeling  
in throat due to emotions.
195. **Mad as a March hare** ..... सिरफिरा ..... Crazy and insane.
196. **Make a clean breast** ..... सच कबूल लेना ..... To confess especially something  
bad or illegal.
197. **Maiden name** ..... विवाहिता स्त्री का विवाह से ..... A women's surname before  
पूर्व का नाम marriage.
198. **Maiden speech** ..... प्रथम सार्वजनिक भाषण ..... First speech.
199. **Make a hash** ..... गड़बड़ कर देना ..... To mess up.
200. **Make a mountain out of a mole hill** ..... बात का बतगड़ बनाना ..... To exaggerate a minor difficulty.
201. **Make both ends meet** ... आय के अंदर ही गुजारा करना .. To live within one's means.
202. **Make hay while the sun shines** ..... मौके का लाभ उठाना ..... To take the benefit of an  
opportunity.
203. **Make or mar** ..... बनाना या बिगाड़ना ..... To make or destroy.
204. **Make the best of both the worlds** ..... दोनों हाथ में लड्डू ..... Getting benefited from both the  
sides.
205. **Make up one's mind** ..... निश्चय करना ..... To decide.
206. **Man of means** ..... समृद्ध व्यक्ति ..... A wealthy man.
207. **Man of iron** ..... दृढ़ इच्छा शक्ति वाला ..... Man with strong will-power.
208. **Man of letter** ..... विद्वान आदमी ..... Learned person.
209. **Man of parts** ..... सुयोग्य व्यक्ति ..... A man of qualities.
210. **Man of spirit** ..... उत्साहित व्यक्ति ..... A man full of enthusiasm.
211. **Man of straw** ..... वह आदमी जिसका कोई मत न हो A weak person.

*Idioms And Phrases - 1*

- 212. Man of the world** ..... अनुभवी व्यक्ति ..... An experienced person.
- 213. Man of word** ..... जुबान का सच्चा ..... True to one's word.
- 214. Mare's nest** ..... झूठी अफवाह ..... A false invention.
- 215. Midas touch** ..... जादूई शक्ति (जिस काम में हाथ लगाए वह लाभदायक सिद्ध हो) ..... A man with extraordinary power or capacity to make any venture profitable.
- 216. Mince matters** ..... ज्यादा सख्त शब्दों के प्रयोग से बचना ..... To moderate or restrain one's language.
- 217. To Mind one's P's and Q's** ..... शिष्टाचार का पूरा ध्यान रखना .. Taking care of behaviour properly.
- 218. Miss the beat** ..... अवसर खोना ..... To lose an opportunity.
- 219. Mother wit** ..... आम जानकारी ..... Common sense.
- 220. Move heaven and earth** आकाश-पाताल एक करना ..... To try one's best.
- 221. Much cry and little wool/ Much ado about nothing** राई का पहाड़ बनाना ..... Lot of fanfare for something which has very little importance.
- 222. Narrow escape/Close Shave** बाल-बाल बचना ..... To escape by a little margin.
- 223. Nig-nag** ..... जो लगातार परेशान करें ..... A noun used to address someone (African-American (with joke or frustration) के लिए नस्ल-सूचक शब्द के रूप में प्रयुक्त शब्द)
- 224. Nine day's wonder** ..... कम समय का सुख (चार दिन की चाँदनी) ..... Something that arouses great interest but for a very short period.
- 225. Nip in the bud** ..... आरंभ में ही नष्ट कर देना ..... To put on end to something in its initial stage.
- 226. Null and void** ..... बेकार ..... Ineffective.
- 227. Nurse a grudge** ..... शत्रुता भाव कायम रखना ..... Bear resentment for long period.
- 228. Oily tongue** ..... खुशामद की भाषा ..... Flattering words.
- 229. On one's guard** ..... सावधान/सचेत रहना ..... Vigilant.
- 230. On one's last legs** ..... खत्म होने की स्थिति में होना ... Close to collapsing.
- 231. Once for all** ..... हमेशा के लिए (काम खत्म करना) ..... For the last time/ Conclusively.
- 232. Open question** ..... सवाल जिस का एक से अधिक उत्तर हो सकता है। ..... A question which may have more than one answer.
- 233. Palmy days** ..... अच्छे व शांतिपूर्ण दिन ..... Prosperous/ affluent days.
- 234. Pandora's box** ..... समस्याओं का भंडार (जिससे वाकिफ न हो) ..... A source of extensive but unforeseen troubles.
- 235. Part and parcel** ..... आवश्यक अंग ..... Inseparable part.

- 236. Past master** ..... विशेषज्ञ ..... An expert.
- 237. Pay the piper** ..... खर्च वहन करना ..... To bear the cost of something/  
some service rendered.
- 238. Pay through his nose** .... अत्यधिक खर्च वहन करना ..... To pay dearly.
- 239. Penny wise pound foolish** छोटे खर्च में किफायत करना .... Careful about trifles but wasteful  
और बड़ी रकम उड़ाना ..... in large ventures.
- 240. Pick up the gauntlet** .... चैलेंज कबूल कर लेना ..... To accept the challenge.
- 241. Play ducks and drakes** .. पैसे बर्बाद करना ..... To waste money.
- 242. Play second fiddle** ..... निचला स्थान स्वीकारना ..... To be at a subordinate position.
- 243. Play truant** ..... बिना इजाजत काम से ..... To be absent from duty without  
गायब रहना ..... permission.
- 244. Poison someone's ears** .. कान भरना ..... To speak against one to another.
- 245. Poke one's nose** ..... टाँग अड़ाना ..... To Interfere.
- 246. Pour oil on troubled waters** क्रोध शांत करना ..... To pacify the matters.
- 247. Pros and cons** ..... पक्ष और विपक्ष ..... For and against.
- 248. Pull ones' legs** ..... टाँग खिंचना (मजाक उड़ाना) ... To make fun of or to tease.
- 249. Pull the wool over  
somebody's eyes** ..... धोखा देना ..... To mislead.
- 250. Put a spoke in one's wheel** तंग करना/ बाधा उत्पन्न करना ... To obstruct.
- 251. Put in cold storage** ..... काम को लम्बित कर देना ..... To keep a work pending.
- 252. Put one's foot down** ..... अपने प्राधिकार को दर्शाना ..... To act firmly.
- 253. Put one's shoulders  
to the wheel** ..... स्वयं अपने प्रयासों से किसी ..... To work or exert oneself heavily.  
कार्य को करना
- 254. Put the cart before the horse** कोई काम उल्टे सिरे से ..... To do things wrongly.  
प्रारंभ करना
- 255. Put the cat among pigeons** गलत काम/ बात से काफी ..... To say/ do something that  
लोगों का गुस्सा भड़का देना ..... causes trouble or make many  
very angry.
- 256. Quarrel with one's  
bread and butter** ..... जहाँ से रोजी-रोटी मिलती ..... To fight with the executive or  
है, वहाँ के वरिष्ठ अधिकारी ..... employer, who is providing one's  
से लड़ना ..... means of living.
- 257. Queer fish** ..... अजीब व्यवहार वाला व्यक्ति .... Strange person.
- 258. Rain cats and dogs** ..... तेज बारिश होना ..... Rain very heavily.
- 259. Rainy day** ..... आर्थिक कष्ट के दिन ..... Future time of need, especially  
financial need.
- 260. Read between the lines** . छिपा हुआ अर्थ समझ जाना ..... To understand the hidden  
meaning.

*Idioms And Phrases - 1*

- 261. Red handed** ..... अपराध करते समय ..... Exactly while committing a crime or doing something wrong
- 262. Red letter day** ..... सौभाग्य का अत्यन्त महत्त्वपूर्ण दिन ..... A memorably important or happy occasion.
- 263. Red tapism** ..... लाल फीताशाही ..... Strict adherence to excessive paper work and official formalities.
- 264. Rest on one's laurels** .... भूतकाल के उपलब्धि पर निर्भर रहना ..... Depending on the achievement made in the past.
- 265. Rhyme or reason** ..... किसी भी कारण से ..... Sense, logic or meaning.
- 266. Right hand man** ..... मुख्य सहायक व्यक्ति ..... One's most valuable assistant or supporter.
- 267. Rise like a phoenix from its ashes** ..... बहुत बड़ी समस्या से उबर कर निकल आना .. To make a miraculous comeback after a seemingly insurmountable setback.
- 268. Rock the boat** ..... संतुलन बिगाड़ना ..... To disturb a situation which was otherwise stable.
- 269. Rolling stone** ..... जो स्थिरता के साथ कार्य नहीं करता है ..... A restless person.
- 270. Royal road** ..... आसान रास्ता ..... An easy or direct way of achieving a desired result.
- 271. Rule the roost** ..... रोब जमाना ..... To dominate.
- 272. Run amuck** ..... सनक सवार होना ..... Mad with murderous frenzy.
- 273. Run in the same groove** ..... संबंधो को मधुर बनाए रखना .... Maintaining a sweet relationship.
- 274. Run-of-the mill** ..... सामान्य ..... Average/ common.
- 275. Run the gauntlet** ..... बुरे अनुभव से गुजरना ..... To go through an unpleasant experience.
- 276. Sail under false colours** ..... धोखा देना ..... To pretend to be something that you are not.
- 277. Save ones' skin** ..... स्वयं को बचाना ..... To save oneself.
- 278. See eye-to-eye** ..... पूर्णतः सहमत होना ..... Showing agreement/ to agree.
- 279. See pink elephants** ..... अत्यधिक नशा के कारण उन चीज़ों को देखना जो वास्तव में न हो ..... Any visual hallucination arising due to intoxication.
- 280. See red** ..... गुस्से में होना ..... Be very angry.
- 281. See through** ..... समझ जाना ..... Comprehend/ understand.
- 282. Set at naught** ..... असम्मान करना ..... To disregard or treat as of no importance.
- 283. Set one's face against** ... कड़ा विरोध करना ..... To oppose with determination.



- 284. Set one's heart on** ..... बहुत चाहना ..... To have as one's ambition to obtain something.
- 285. Set one's teeth on edge** . परेशान करना..... To irritate or annoy someone.
- 286. Set the Thames on fire** . आश्चर्यजनक कार्य करना..... To achieve something amazing.
- 287. Shoulder to shoulder** .... पूर्ण सहयोग के साथ ..... With united effort.
- 288. Show white feather** ..... भय प्रदर्शित करना ..... To show cowardice.
- 289. Sine die** ..... अनिश्चित काल के लिए..... Indefinitely.
- 290. Sit on the fence** ..... किसी का पक्ष नहीं लेना ..... Refuse to take side in a dispute.
- 291. Slip of the tongue** ..... जुबान फिसलना ..... Spoken unintentionally.
- 292. Slow coach** ..... आलसी व्यक्ति ..... A person with lazy approach of working.
- 293. Small fry** ..... गैर महत्वपूर्ण व्यक्ति ..... Insignificant person.
- 294. Smell a rat** ..... कुछ गलत है-ये ..... To suspect of something wrong  
महसूस कर लेना done.
- 295. Smooth sailing** ..... परेशानी के बिना ..... Easy progress.
- 296. Snake in the grass** ..... आस्तीन का सांप/ कपटी मित्र ... A secret enemy.
- 297. Shake in the shoes** ..... डर से काँपना ..... A tremble with fear or apprehension.
- 298. Sow the dragon's teeth** . भविष्य के लिए परेशानी ..... To create future troubles for  
इक्छा करना yourself or others.
- 299. Speak one's mind** ..... मन की बात करना..... Speak what one really thinks.
- 300. Spick and span** ..... साफ-सुथरा ..... In order/ neat and clean.
- 301. Stand on one's own legs** आत्म-निर्भर होना ..... To be self dependent.
- 302. Stand/Stick to one's guns** अटल रहना ..... To be strict and determined.
- 303. Stand somebody in** ..... लाभदायक सिद्ध होना ..... To be of great use and benefit to  
good stead someone.
- 304. Steal a march** ..... चुपके से लाभ प्राप्त कर लेना ... To obtain an advantage by secret means.
- 305. Step into another's shoes** किसी दूसरे की जगह लेना..... To take over a job/responsibility of some other person.
- 306. Stiff-necked person** ..... दृढ़ ..... Stubborn or arrogant.
- 307. Stir a finger** ..... कोशिश करना ..... Making effort.
- 308. Stone's throw** ..... बहुत नजदीक ..... Very near.
- 309. Street Arabs** ..... बेघर एवं अनाथ ..... A homeless person (especially who survives by begging).
- 310. Sum and substance** ..... सारांश ..... Main idea or gist.
- 311. Swan song** ..... मरने/ सेवानिवृत्ति के पहले की ... The last ceremony or farewell.  
बिदाई संगीत या समारोह

*Idioms And Phrases - 1*

- 312. Sweat of one's brow** ..... कड़ी मेहनत ..... Hard labour.
- 313. Swelled head** ..... घमंडी ..... Grand opinion of oneself/  
conceited.
- 314. Sworn enemies** ..... कट्टर दुश्मन ..... People hating each other a lot.
- 315. Take away one's breath** . भौचक्का कर देना ..... To overwhelm with surprise.
- 316. Take by storm** ..... अचानक प्रभावित करना ..... To surprise unexpectedly.
- 317. Take into account** ..... पर विचार करना ..... To consider.
- 318. Take one at one's word** .. किसी के कहने पर..... To be convinced of one's  
विश्वास करना sincerity and act in accordance  
with his/her statement.
- 319. Take the bull by the horns** संकट का सीधा एवं खतरनाक ... To adopt the most direct but the  
तरीके से सामना करना most dangerous way of facing  
adifficulty.
- 320. Take to one's heels** ..... भाग जाना ..... To run away.
- 321. Talk big** ..... डींगें मारना ..... To boast or brag.
- 322. Talk of the town** ..... चर्चित बात ..... To be the person or subject  
everyone is talking about.
- 323. The printer's devils** ..... छपाई त्रुटि ..... Error in printing.
- 324. Think twice** ..... सोच समझ कर निर्णय लेना ..... To consider carefully before  
deciding.
- 325. Through thick and thin** . सभी परिस्थितियों में ..... In good and bad times.
- 326. Throw cold water upon** .. हतोत्साहित करना ..... To discourage.
- 327. Throw down the gauntlet** चैलेंज करना ..... To challenge.
- 328. Tooth and nail** ..... पूरी ताकत से..... Violently.
- 329. True to one's salt** ..... वफादार/ नमक हलाल ..... Loyal person.
- 330. Turn a deaf ear to** ..... अनसुना करना ..... Not to pay attention to.
- 331. Turn over a new leaf** ..... बुरे आचरण छोड़ अच्छी दिशा .. To be entirely changed (for good).  
में पूर्ण रूप से बदलना
- 332. Turn the corner** ..... किसी कार्य में आये संकटपूर्ण ... To pass through a critical point  
स्थिति से उबर जाना in a process.
- 333. Turn turtle** ..... उलट-पलट जाना ..... To overturn.
- 334. Turn up one's nose at** .... नीचा समझना..... To take lightly with contempt.
- 335. Under the nose of** ..... आँखों के सामने, नाक के नीचे . Right in front of someone.
- 336. Under the thumb of** ..... के वश में होना ..... Under the power or influence of.
- 337. Up and doing** ..... काम में सक्रिय रूप से लगना ... Active in work.
- 338. Up one's sleeves** ..... छिपा के रखी गई वस्तु जिसका . An item kept hidden and used  
प्रयोग जरूरत पड़ने पर करें whenever required.

- 339. Uphill task** ..... बहुत कठिन कार्य ..... Difficult task.
- 340. Upon one's sweet will** .... अपनी इच्छा पर..... On self desire or wish.
- 341. Ups and downs** ..... उतार-चढ़ाव ..... Good and bad times.
- 342. Utopian scheme** ..... आदर्श किन्तु कार्यान्वित न ..... A visionary scheme though होने वाली योजना ..... Impractical.
- 343. Weather the storm** ..... समस्या से मुकाबला कर ..... Survive by coming out of सुरक्षित बाहर निकलना ..... difficulties.
- 344. Well-to-do** ..... सम्भ्रांत ..... Affluent.
- 345. Wet blanket** ..... मजा किरकिरा करने वाला ..... One who spoils the enjoyment.
- 346. Wheels within wheels** ... जटिल कार्य का और ..... A series of intricately connected जटिल होना ..... events
- 347. White elephant** ..... महंगा परंतु बेकार ..... Expensive but of no use.
- 348. White lie** ..... छोटा एवं गैर-महत्त्वपूर्ण झूठ ..... A minor lie.
- 349. Will O' the wisp** ..... भ्रामक उम्मीद ..... Elusive/ unreal.
- 350. Windfall** ..... ऐसा लाभ जिस की ..... Sudden gain received उम्मीद ना हो ..... unexpectedly.
- 351. With a grain of salt** ..... स्वीकार करना लेकिन शंका के साथ To accept with misgiving.
- 352. With one accord/ in one voice** एक स्वर में ..... Unanimously.
- 353. Wolf in sheep's clothing** मित्रता जताने वाला ..... A malicious person in harmless खतरनाक आदमी ..... or benevolent disguise.
- 354. Word for word** ..... शब्दशः..... In exactly the same word.
- 355. Word of mouth** ..... अनौपचारिक वार्तालाप ..... Informal oral communication.
- 356. Yeoman's service** ..... अति उत्तम..... Excellent work.

# 23

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES - 2

### CHAPTER

#### 'LET'S USE THEM IN SENTENCES'

1. **Above board** (*honest and straightforward, ईमानदारी एवं निःछल*)- Gandhi ji was above board and hence had nothing to hide.
2. **Adam's ale** (*pure water, शुद्ध जल*)- In the remotest parts of Rajasthan, people walk miles for Adam's ale.
3. **Add a new feather in one's cap** (*to acquire a new honour or distinction, कोई नया सम्मान प्राप्त करना*)- Paramount Coaching Centre has added a new feather in its cap by starting Paramount Reader Publication .
4. **Add insult to injury** (*to harm as well as humiliate, जले पर नमक छिड़कना*)- She has added insult to injury by returning the gift and sending a 'get lost' note.
5. **After one's own heart** (*similar to you, जो आप के जैसा ही है*)- Seeing your inclination towards art and Literature, I can say that you are clearly a person after my own heart.
6. **An eye wash** (*a pretence, दिखावा*)- The whole investigation was just an eye wash as no one was held guilty.
7. **An hair-breadth escape** (*very narrow escape, बाल-बाल बचना*)- He had a hair-breadth escape when his bike skid on the oil drenched road.
8. **An old flame** (*long time love, पुराना प्यार*)- He met his old flame in the market yesterday but prudently avoided eye contact .
9. **An old head on young shoulders** (*to be more matured than one's own age, अपनी उम्र से ज्यादा समझदार होना*)- He is an old head on young shoulders as he teaches Physics at a university at an young age of 25 .
10. **As fit as a fiddle** (*strong and healthy, स्वस्थ*)- He feigned illness but I knew that he was as fit as a fiddle.
11. **Assume airs** (*to pretend superiority, बड़प्पन दिखाना*)- After becoming an IAS officer he has assumed airs.
12. **At a stone's throw** (*at a little distance, थोड़ी दूरी पर*)- Lal Quila is at a stone's throw from my house.
13. **At large** (*absconding, कानून के गिरफ्त से दूर*)- Many terrorists are at large and posing serious threat to the security of India.
14. **At logger heads** (*to be at strife, शत्रुता की अवस्था*)- Congress is always at logger heads with the BJP.

15. **At naught** (*to disregard or treat as of no importance, असम्मान करना*)- Leaders today set Gandhiji's ideals at naught.
16. **At odds** (*in disagreement, असहमत होना*)- Various political parties are at odds in the matter of Women Reservation Bill.
17. **At sea** (*to be confused, उलझन में*)- He was at sea when he saw the question paper.
18. **At one's beck and call** (*at service, आज्ञा में हाजिर रहना*)- The servants were always at the beck and call of the rich merchant.
19. **Back stairs influence** (*improper and private influence, ऐसा प्रभाव जो असार्वजनिक हो एवं सही नहीं हो*)- He tried to get a government job by back stair influence.
20. **Bad egg** (*a worthless person, अवांछनीय व्यक्ति*)- Often a prodigal son of a rich father becomes a bad egg for the society.
21. **Bandy words** (*to argue, जुबान लड़ाना*)- The two neighbours usually bandy words and create a lot of nuisance.
22. **Bank upon** (*depend on, count on, पर निर्भर होना*)- You can bank upon us at the time of need.
23. **Bated breath** (*holding your breath, in anxiety, चिंता इत्यादि से साँस रूकना*)- We waited for the good news outside the delivery room with bated breath.
24. **Caught red-handed** (*to be caught while committing a crime, रंगे हाथ पकड़े जाना*)- My brother felt ashamed when he was caught red handed reading my personal diary.
25. **Be in bad books of** (*out of favour, कृपा पात्र न होना*)- She is in bad books of her parents as she went to see a movie without informing them.
26. **Be in bad odour of** (*to be out of favour, किसी की बुरी राय में होना*)- A corrupt minister is always in bad odour of the public.
27. **Be in good books of** (*to be in kind favour, कृपा पात्र होना*)- She is in good books of her employer as she is very efficient and hardworking.
28. **Be in good odour of** (*to be in good favour, किसी की अच्छी राय में होना*)- An honest minister is always in good odour of the public.
29. **Be in the driving seat** (*to take the whole responsibility, सारी जिम्मेदारी का भार उठाना*)- Ramesh is the eldest son and so he is in the driving seat after his father's death.
30. **Bear the palm** (*to be victorious, विजयी होना*)- Our school bore the palm in the dance competition held at the district level.
31. **Beat the air** (*to make useless efforts, व्यर्थ प्रयास करना*)- Trying to reform a hard-core criminal is like beating the air.
32. **Bed of roses** (*an easy and comfortable situation, सरल और आराम की स्थिति*)- The life of the prince was a bed of roses.
33. **Bee in one's bonnet** (*go on talking about something which other people think is not important, राग अलापना उस बात का जो दूसरों के लिए महत्वपूर्ण नहीं हो*)- She has a bee in her bonnet about recycling of waste material.
34. **Behind the scene** (*secretly, छिपे रूप में*)- The minister is the mastermind behind the scene and the police are arresting small fries.
35. **Below the belt** (*to strike unfairly, गलत तरीके से प्रहार करना*)- One must compete with others in a fair manner and should not hit anyone below the belt.

**Idioms And Phrases - 2**

36. **Beside oneself** (to feel extremely nervous or worried, बहुत अधिक चिन्तीत या व्याकल होना)- Before any exam I am beside myself.
37. **Beside the mark** (irrelevant, अप्रासंगिक)- The judge did not hear any argument that was beside the mark.
38. **Between Scylla and Charybdis** (between two great dangers, दो कठिन परिस्थितियों के बीच)- She is between Scylla and Charybdis: If she obeys her mother-in-law she will lose her job and if she does not she will lose her family.
39. **Bid defiance** (to defy, अवज्ञा करना)- The army is bidding defiance by going against the government.
40. **Bite the dust** (to be defeated, हार जाना)- In every match , the Pakistani team bit the dust.
41. **Blaze the trail** (to be pioneer and make path for others, दूसरो के लिए रास्ता बनाना)- Only a man of iron can blaze the trail.
42. **Blessing in disguise** (something intrinsically good but having a bad appearance, ऊपर से बुरी दिखने वाली पर वास्तव में अच्छी बात)- He missed the train but it was a blessing in disguise as the train met with an accident.
43. **Blow one's own trumpet** (to praise one's ownself, अपनी ही शोखी बघारना)- Every political party always blows its own trumpet and denounces the other political parties.
44. **Blue stocking** (an educated intellectual lady, पढ़ी लिखी महिला)- A blue stocking was rarely found in Medieval India.
45. **Book worm** (a bibliophilic person, किताबी कीड़ा)- She is not a book worm but still comes first.
46. **Break the ice** (to break silence by speaking first, निस्तब्धता तोड़ना)- Shyam broke the ice by talking to me after a long time.
47. **Bring down the house** (receive great applause, भरपूर तारीफ पाना)- The performance of Lata Mangeshkar brought the house down.
48. **Bring home** (to explain, समझाना)- I was unable to bring my views home before my parents.
49. **Bring to book** (to punish, सजा देना)- The guilty should be brought to book.
50. **Bring to light** (to disclose, पता लगाना, छिपी बात को प्रकाश में लाना)- The CBI has brought many indiscrepancies to light in many high profile cases.
51. **Brow beat** (to intimidate, डराना)- The Government must not brow beat the social reformers if they protest against any unjust law.
52. **Burn one's boats** (point of no return, वापसी का रास्ता बंद कर देना)- By signing the agreement he burnt his boat. Now he will have to work in this organization for two more years.
53. **By and by** (gradually, धीरे-धीरे)- You will learn the norms of this organization by and by.
54. **By and large** (on the whole, संपूर्ण रूप से देखने पर)- My friend is by and large an honest person.
55. **By dint of** (by means of, के बल पर)- You can succeed by dint of hard work only.

56. **By fair or foul means** (*by any way right or wrong, सही या गलत किसी भी प्रकार से*)- He will try to get a job by fair or foul means but will ultimately lose his peace of mind.
57. **By the rule of thumb** (*according to practical experience, व्यवहारिक रूप से*)- By rule of thumb we must not allow children to take major decisions.
58. **Call a spade and spade** (*to be frank, मुंहफट बात करना*)- He never hesitated in calling a spade a spade and hence he has few friends.
59. **Call names** (*to abuse, गाली देना*)- He has a bad habit of calling names.
60. **Capital punishment** (*death penalty, मौत की सजा*)- Capital punishment should be abolished as it is the cruelest form of punishment.
61. **Carrot and stick policy** (*reward and punishment policy, इनाम और सजा की पॉलिसी*)- The multinational companies adopt carrot and stick policy to get maximum output.
62. **Carry matters with a high hand** (*to deal with a person strictly, सख्ती से निपटना*)- The police carry matters with high hand.
63. **Cast a slur** (*to bring disgrace, अपय'ी का कारण बनना*)- Taking bribe could cast a slur on the honour of your family.
64. **Cave in** (*yield, झुक जाना*)- One must not cave in under pressure or temptation.
65. **Chapter and verse** (*in full detail, पूर्ण विवरण के साथ*)- I cannot narrate the whole incident in chapter and verse.
66. **Cheek by jowl** (*close together, साथ-साथ*)- Many poor people live cheek by jowl in a small room.
67. **Child's play** (*a very easy task, बच्चों का खेल*)- It is not a child's play to address a crowd.
68. **Clinch the issue** (*to clear the controversy, विवाद खत्म करना*)- The college administration clinched the issue by accepting the demands of the students.
69. **Clip one's wings** (*to weaken the power, पर कतरना*)- Sonia Gandhi clipped the wings of some ministers by withdrawing the powers delegated to them.
70. **Close shave** (*a narrow escape, बाल-बाल बचना*)- His family had a close shave in the bus accident.
71. **Cloven hoof** (*symbol of disgrace or evil intention, असम्मान या शैतानी इरादे का प्रतीक*)- Usually some or other leader of the BJP shows cloven hoof to the BJP leadership.
72. **Cock a snook** (*to show impudent contempt, असम्मान प्रकट करना*)- He refused to accept the award, cocking a snook at the Filmfare Award jury.
73. **Cock sure** (*very sure and certain, सुनिश्चित होना*)- I am cock sure, we will win the match.
74. **Cold reception** (*not a hearty welcome, जो गर्मजो'री से भरा स्वागत नहीं हो*)- We were very unhappy when we were given cold reception at his marriage party.
75. **Come across** (*meet by chance, अचानक मुलाकात होना*)- I came across a problem when I was solving the equation.
76. **Come home to** (*to understand, समझ में आना*)- At last, it came home and we got the correct answer.
77. **Come in handy** (*to be useful, काम का होना*)- This opener comes in handy when we need to open this container.
78. **Come to a pass** (*a difficult situation, किसी घटना का होना*)- The accident came to pass due to the negligence of the driver.

**Idioms And Phrases - 2**

79. **Come true** (*to prove true, सही साबित होना*)- My dreams have come true as I have got selected.
80. **Cool one's heels** (*to be kept waiting, इन्तजार कराया जाना*)- We sat down and cooled our heels for the minister who didn't turn up.
81. **Corporal punishment** (*bodily punishment, शारीरिक दण्ड*)- Corporal punishment is banned in schools.
82. **Count chickens before they are hatched** (*To anticipate profit before hand, पहले से लाभ का वि'वास कर लेना*)- Don't dream of profit now as it is futile to count your chickens before they are hatched.
83. **Cross one's mind** (*to occur to oneself, अचानक दिमाग में आना*)- I was resting when suddenly a new idea crossed my mind.
84. **Curry favour** (*to win favour by flattery, खुशामद करके के कृपा का पात्र बनना*)- Many developing countries curry favour with America.
85. **Curtain lecture** (*a private scolding by wife to her husband, अकेले में पति को दी गई डाँट*)- Don't tell me that your father has never got any curtain lecture in his life.
86. **Cut both ends** (*to argue in support of both sides of the issue, दोनों पक्षों के तरफ से तर्क देना*)- Mahesh always cuts both ends and hence he has neither friends nor foes.
87. **Cut the Gordian knot** (*to solve a difficult problem, किसी कठिन समस्या का हल निकालना*)- The national leaders cut the Gordian knot by making India a secular country.
88. **Cut throat** (*tough, कठीन*)- We face cut throat competition in every field.
89. **Damp squib** (*complete failure though earlier thought to be exciting, पूर्ण असफलता, जो लगता था उत्तेजनात्मक होगा*)- The performance of team India turned out to be a damp squib.
90. **Dance attendance upon** (*to be in servile attitude all the time, चापलूसी करना/ हाजिरी बजाना*)- The mother-in-law wanted the lady to dance attendance upon her.
91. **Dark Horse** (*unexpected winner, अप्रत्याशित विजेता*)- An unknown independent candidate came out as a dark horse after the election.
92. **Days of reckoning** (*a time when the effects of one's past mistakes or misdeed catch up with one, जब भूतकाल में की गई गलतियों का असर दिखने लगे*)- You have been manipulating the account for a long time. Now days of reckoning have come.
93. **Dead broke** (*penniless, दिवालिया*)- Due to recession he has become a dead broke.
94. **Die-hard** (*obstinately resistant to change, परिवर्तन के खिलाफ दृढ़ता से होना*)- He is a die-hard fan of Devanand.
95. **Dig one's own grave** (*to do something which causes you harm, ऐसा कृत्य जो मुसीबत में डाल दे*)- You are digging your own grave by writing your pass word in your diary.
96. **Dog's life** (*very miserable life, कष्टदायक जीवन*)- Due to unchecked inflation, the poor are living a dog's life.
97. **Double dealing** (*deceitful actions, धोखेबाजी के कार्य*)- The double dealing of the lawyer was exposed by a sting operation.
98. **Double-edged sword** (*act that will harm oneself as well as the others, ऐसा कार्य जो दूसरे को और स्वयं को भी नुकसान पहुंचा सके*)- Corruption is a doubled edged sword for the public as well as the Government.



99. **Down and out** (*lacking funds, resources or prospects, फण्ड, संपदा इत्यादि की कमी होना*)- He was down and out when his factory was burnt to the ground.
100. **Down in the mouth** (*filled with melancholy and despondency, दुख एवं निराशा से भरा होना*)- She was down in the mouth when she saw her husband's dead body.
101. **Draconian law** (*extremely severe law, अत्यन्त क्रूर कानून*)- There are still many draconian laws in under developed countries.
102. **Draw the long bow** (*to tell large stories or to exaggerate, लम्बी कहानियाँ बनाना या बढ़ा-चढ़ा कर कुछ बताना*)- Come to the point. Don't draw a long bow.
103. **Drawn battle / match** (*a battle or match in which no party wins, बराबर की बाजी होना*)- The drawn battle created a lot of excitement till the last ball.
104. **Drop in the ocean** (*very insignificant amount, अत्यन्त ही थोड़ी मात्रा*)- My knowledge about Archeology is only a drop in the ocean.
105. **Ducks and drakes** (*to waste money, पैसे बर्बाद करना*)- I cannot allow you to play ducks and drakes with my hard earned money.
106. **Dutch courage** (*bravery under alcoholic influence, शराब के नशे में दिखाये जाना वाला साहस*)- His dutch courage will vanish when he will gain his sense.
107. **Easy money** (*bribe, रिश्वत*)- Many officers make easy money.
108. **Eat one's word** (*to admit that something you said in the past was wrong, ये स्वीकार करना कि कही हुई बात गलत थी*)- Those who said that Amitabh Bachhan's charm was over had to eat their word after the success of Kaun Banega Crorepati.
109. **Egg on** (*to urge somebody to do some thing that is generally wrong, कुछ गलत कार्य करने के लिए प्रोत्साहित करना*)- He egged me on to drive faster.
110. **Eke out** (*to support (existence) with difficulty and effort or to add (something insufficient), especially with effort, बहुत मुश्किल से कुछ उपलब्ध कराना*)- He is trying to eke out an income by doing over time.
111. **Elixir of life** (*nectar of life, जीवन का अमृत*)- Contentment is the elixir of life.
112. **Enough and to spare** (*plentiful, प्रचुर मात्रा में*)- He earns enough and to spare.
113. **Ever and Anon** (*now and then, जब-तब*)- The night was dark and we could hear the howling of dogs ever and anon.
114. **Every dog has his day** (*good fortune comes sooner or later, अच्छा दिन सबका आता है*)- When he bagged three movies in a row, he realized that every dog has his day.
115. **Every Inch** (*Completely, पूर्ण रूप से*)- She is an honest person by every inch .
116. **Eye wash** (*ineffective remedy which is just for show, सिर्फ दिखावे का*)- The committee set up to look into the multiple scams was just an eye wash.
117. **See eye-to-eye** (*showing agreement/ to agree, पूर्णतः सहमत होना*)- The two competitors never see eye to eye.
118. **Face the music** (*to face opposition, कठिनाई या विरोध का सामना करना*)- Every leader has to face the music if he doesn't fulfill promises made by him.
119. **Fan the flame** (*to aggravate, बढ़ावा देना*)- I don't want to fan the flame of the tension between the husband and the wife.
120. **Few and far between** (*very rare, बहुत कम*)- The houses in this remote village are few and far away.

**Idioms And Phrases - 2**

- 121. Fight to the finish** (*to fight to the end, आखिरी नतीजे तक लड़ना*)- When she was blamed and sued without any rhyme or reason, she pledged to fight the case to the finish.
- 122. Fish in troubled waters** (*to take advantage of the difficulties of others, दूसरों की परेशानी का लाभ उठाना*)- Many lawyers don't hesitate from fishing in troubled waters.
- 123. Fit to hold a candle to** (*match for, equal in quality, बराबरी का होना*)- He is such a miser that he is not fit to hold a candle of such a lavish reception.
- 124. Flash in the pan** (*something or someone that became successful quickly and is unlikely to be repeated, अस्क्रामत सफलता पाना जो क्षणिक हो और भविष्य में फिर शायद न हो*)- The success of Kumar Gaurav in his debut movie 'Love Story' was a flash in the pan.
- 125. Flesh and blood** (*human nature or physical existence, together with its weaknesses / substance and depth in artistic portrayal, हाड़-माँस का होना/ किसी कला में पायी जाने वाली गहराई*)- The movies of late seventies lacked flesh and blood with their ketchup blood and round the tree romance.
- 126. Flog a dead horse** (*to waste one's energy, बेकार की कोशिश करना*)- Trying to reform a terrorist is like flogging a dead horse.
- 127. Fly in the face of** (*to defy/ to brave/ to withstand, अवज्ञा करना/ साहस से सामना करना*)- The theory about the existence of heaven and hell flies in the face of all logic and common sense.
- 128. Fly into a passion** (*to be enraged, क्रोधित होना*)- He flies into a passion within seconds if someone ignores his instructions.
- 129. Fool's errand** (*a fruitless mission or undertaking, निष्फल कार्य*)- Many projects of Mohammad -bin-tuglaq were fool's errand.
- 130. Foot the bill** (*bear expenses, खर्च वहन करना*)- You had ordered these tasteless pizzaz . Now you will have to foot the bill.
- 131. For good** (*for ever, हमेशा के लिए*) He educated him and sent him to America for good.
- 132. For the rainy day** (*precaution for emergency, कठिन परिस्थितियों के लिये प्रबन्ध*)- I have kept some money in the bank for the rainy days.
- 133. Foul Play** (*treachery, धोखाधड़ी*)- Foul play destroys the fun of life.
- 134. French leave** (*leave without information, बिना सूचना के अनुपस्थित होना*)- If you take french leave, you will be fined.
- 135. From the bottom of one's heart** (*very sincerely, अन्तर मन से*)- I thanked him from the bottom of my heart for his timely help.
- 136. Gain ground** (*to progress/ advance, तरक्की करना/ वर्चस्व बढ़ाना*)- Due to the misgovernance by the ruling party, the opposition is gaining ground.
- 137. Gentleman at large** (*wealthy man with time on his hands, धनी व्यक्ति जिसके पास समय की कमी न हो*)- Here he was, talking like a gentleman at large who was free to come and go and roam about the world at pleasure,
- 138. Get down to brass tacks** (*discuss the basic facts or realities/ to deal with the matter straight, किसी मुख्य विषय पर चर्चा करना*)- After avoiding the thorny question of tax reforms for months, the ruling party finally got down to brass tacks last week and drafted a preliminary proposal.
- 139. Get into a scrape** (*find oneself in a difficult or awkward situation, खुद को मुश्किल हालात में पाना*)- By signing the bond he will get into a scrape.

- 140. Get the better of** (*to overcome, काबू पा लेना*)- At last he got the better of his problems and opponents.
- 141. Get wind of** (*to know the secret, भेद जान लेना*)- The opposition got the wind of the plans of the ruling party.
- 142. Gird up the loin** (*to be well prepared for some difficult task, किसी कठिन कार्य को करने के लिए कमर कस कर तैयार होना*)- If we all gird up the loin, we can remove illiteracy.
- 143. Give a wide berth** (*to give ample space or distance to avoid an unwanted consequence, किसी अवांछनिय नतीजे से बचने के लिए दूरी बनाये रखना*)- Being an understanding father, you should give a wide berth to your son and wait for the right time to talk to him.
- 144. Give cold shoulder** (*pay no attention to, ध्यान न देना*)- He went to the police for help but they gave him cold shoulder.
- 145. Give somebody enough rope (to hang themselves)** (*to allow someone to do what he wants to, knowing that he will probably fail or get into trouble, किसी को कुछ करने की अनुमति दे देना ये जानते हुए कि वह असफल हो जाएगा*)- Don't stop him. Give him enough rope to hang. He will be rejected for his poor performance and will return home.
- 146. Give the devil his due** (*even the wicked person should be given the credit due to him, बुरे आदमी की भी उचित प्रशंसा करना*)- In spite of being so rude, he helped me in need. The devil should be given his due.
- 147. Give up the ghost** (*to die, मर जाना*)- My grandfather gave up to ghost last Sunday.
- 148. Give vent to** (*to express one's thoughts or feelings, अपने विचारों या भावनाओं को प्रकट करना*)- Every Indian is free to give vent to his thoughts.
- 149. Wool-gathering** (*to engage in fanciful daydreaming, मनभावन कल्पना में खोए रहना*)- Work hard. Wool gathering will not help you in any way.
- 150. Go back on one's word** (*to change one's mind about/ repudiate, बात से पीछे हट जाना*)- She has decided to do charity and she should not go back on her word.
- 151. Go broke** (*become bankrupt, दिवालिया होना*)- He has gone broke and is unable to make both ends meet..
- 152. Whole hog** (*the whole way/ Completely, पूर्ण रूप से*)- She went the whole hog and checked the account of the whole month in one go.
- 153. Golden opportunity** (*very favourable opportunity or chance, सुनहरा अवसर*)- He missed the golden opportunity by declining the offer.
- 154. Green horn** (*an inexperienced or immature person, especially one who is easily deceived, अनुभवहीन व्यक्ति जिसे बेवकूफ बनाना आसान हो*)- He incurred heavy loss because he relied on the green horn who was his own nephew.
- 155. Hang in balance** (*have two equally possible results/ be uncertain, अनिश्चित्य की स्थिति*)- After the opposition party won the election, whether or not the new highway will be built, hangs in the balance.
- 156. Hang over one's head** (*to have something bothering or worrying one, परेशानी या समस्या का बने रहना*)- He committed suicide because troubles and court cases hung over his head.
- 157. Hard and fast** (*definite, निश्चित*)- There is no hard and fast rule for solving these numericals.

**Idioms And Phrases - 2**

- 158. Harp on the same string** (*to keep on talking on the same topic, एक ही विषय पर बात करते रहना*)- Some obsessed people have the habit of harping on the same string.
- 159. At the nick of time** (*at the last possible moment, ठीक समय पर*)- I reached the examination hall at the nick of time.
- 160. Heart and soul** (*with complete faith and dedication, सच्चे दिल से*)- He has put heart and soul in his work.
- 161. Heart to heart** (*very frankly, पूरे दिल से, खुले रूप से*)- The two friends had a heart to heart talk as they met after many years.
- 162. Hen-pecked husband** (*admirer of one's own wife in a servile manner, जोरू का गुलाम*)- Every boy boasts, "I will never become a hen pecked husband."
- 163. Himalayan blunder** (*a serious mistake, गंभीर गलती*)- He committed a Himalayan blunder by leaving for work without his body guards and was shot dead.
- 164. Hit the nail on the head** (*to act in the right way, ठीक नि' जाने पर चोट मारना*)- You have hit the nail on the head by making the bid at the right time.
- 165. Hold good** (*valid/ applicable, लागू/ उचित ठहराना*)- Rule of triple talaq doesn't hold good even in the Islamic countries.
- 166. Hold one's ground** (*to stand firm, दृढ़ता से डटे रहना*)- The Indian soldiers held their ground to the end.
- 167. Hold one's jaw** (*to stop talking, बोलना बन्द होना*)- Please hold your jaw else I shall go away.
- 168. Hold the fort** (*to stand firm on one's position, अपने स्थान पर डटे रहना*)- Our soldiers held the fort and proved their valour.
- 169. Hold the scales even** (*to be impartial, निष्पक्ष रहना*)- The Judge must hold the scales even.
- 170. Hold water** (*to stand up to critical examination, सही साबित होना*)- Your argument does not hold water.
- 171. Hot water** (*trouble, परेशानियाँ*)- Your cousin is in hot water due to his controversial speech.
- 172. In a fix** (*in a difficult mental state, मानसिक उलझन में*)- He was in a fix when he saw his mother in ICU.
- 173. In a tight corner** (*in difficult situation, मुश्किल हालात में*)- I found myself in a tight corner when I lost my journey ticket.
- 174. In doldrums** (*to be depressed, निराशा में*)- He was found in doldrum when he could not succeed even in his third attempt.
- 175. In embryo** (*immature/ in the making, अविकसित अवस्था में*)- My plan of expanding my business is still in embryo.
- 176. In no time** (*in a very short time, थोड़ी ही देर में*)- He can solve any mathematical problem in no time.
- 177. In one's teens** (*from thirteen to nineteen years of age, तेरह से उन्नीस साल तक*)- A person in his teen is spirited, full of dreams and optimistic.
- 178. In the air** (*in circulation/ in people's thoughts, चर्चा में*)- News of his cold blooded murder is very much in the air.

- 179. Down in the dumps** (*unhappy, depressed, दुखी/ निराश*)- He is down in the dumps after his father's death.
- 180. In the family way** (*pregnant, गर्भवती*)- She has applied for leave as she is in the family way.
- 181. In the good books of** (*to be in favour with a person, पक्ष में करना*)- People usually flatter their boss to remain in their good books.
- 182. In the jaws of** (*in the grip of, दांतों के बीच, किसी के कब्जे में*)- The boy was in the jaws of the kidnappers.
- 183. In the limelight** (*at the centre of attention, आकर्षण का केन्द्र*)- Film stars are habitual of remaining in the lime light.
- 184. In the lurch** (*in a difficult and embarrassing position, मुश्किल एवं बीच मंझार वाली स्थिति में*)- when the experiment failed, the sub-ordinates left the eminent scientist in lurch.
- 185. Melting pot** (*a place where immigrants of different cultures or races form an integrated society, ऐसा स्थान जहाँ अप्रवासी लोग अपनी-अपनी सभ्यता के साथ एक समाज बनाते हैं*)- With immigrants from all over the world getting an easy passage to India, our country is becoming a melting pot.
- 186. In the red** (*in debt, कर्ज में*)- The company is in the red due to its unfeasible projects.
- 187. In the teeth of** (*in opposition to or defiance of/ facing danger or threats, के विरुद्ध/ खतरे का सामना करना*)- The tribe was in the teeth of starvation.
- 188. In the twinkling of an eye** (*in a moment/ in no time, क्षण भर में*)- The house came down in the twinkling of an eye.
- 189. To fish in troubled waters** (*to take advantage of the problems of others, विषम परिस्थिति का लाभ उठाना*)- Many self-centred lawyers fish in troubled water.
- 190. For all intents and purposes** (*for all practical purposes, हर व्यावहारिक उद्देश्य के लिए*)- This dictionary is useful for all intents and purposes.
- 191. Snake in the grass** (*a secret enemy, आस्तीन का सांप/ कपटी मित्र*)- Politicians playing caste based politics are snakes in the grass.
- 192. Keep abreast of** (*not to fall behind, पीछे न रह जाना*)- We must keep ourselves abreast of the latest development in technology.
- 193. Keep an eye on** (*to watch, नजर रखना*)- It is very necessary for us to keep an eye on our growing children.
- 194. Keep an open table** (*to entertain all, सब का स्वागत करना*)- It is not very difficult to keep an open table in a party.
- 195. Keep at an arm's length** (*to keep at a distance, दूरी बना कर रखना*)- You must keep bad habits at arm's length.
- 196. Keep at bay** (*To keep someone at a distance, दूर रखना*)- He held the police at bay with a gun for several hours.
- 197. Keep body and soul together** (*to be able to pay for just those things that you need in order to live, सिर्फ जीवन-यापन भर का जुगाड़ कर पाना*)- They can barely keep body and soul together on what he earns.
- 198. Keep the pot boiling** (*to keep going on actively, जीवन चर्या जारी रखना*)- One has to keep the pot boiling inspite of all odds one has to face in life.

**Idioms And Phrases - 2**

- 199. Keep up appearance** (*to keep one's prestige/ to maintain outward show, बाहरी दिखावा बनाये रखना*)- In spite of being a bankrupt, he is able to keep up his appearance.
- 200. Kick one's heels** (*wait impatiently to be summoned, बुलावे के लिए बेसब्री से इंतजार करना*)- The whole day we kicked our heels outside the court room.
- 201. Kick the bucket** (*to die, मर जाना*)- He kicked the bucket and left his family in extreme financial difficulty.
- 202. Kill the fat calf for** (*to arrange a lavish reception for someone, किसी का धूमधाम से स्वागत करना*)- India killed the fat calf for the Common Wealth Games.
- 203. Kiss the dust** (*to be humiliated, अपमानित होना*)- In Indo-Pak war our enemies had to kiss the dust.
- 204. Knock against** (*to hit against, टक्कर खाना*)- I couldn't see the transparent door and knocked against it.
- 205. Lapped in luxury** (*brought up in luxury, विलासिता में पलना*)- Great people are generally not lapped in luxury.
- 206. Laugh in one's sleeves** (*to laugh secretly, चुपके से*)- Our neighbours laughed in their sleeves when they saw my grand father wearing a pair of fashionable goggles.
- 207. Lead by the nose** (*to lead someone by coercion/ to guide someone very carefully, दबाव में या मार्गदर्शन करने हेतु किसी को रास्ता दिखाना*)- I had to lead him by the nose to the meeting. He will never find his way through the admission form unless you lead him by the nose.
- 208. Lead to the altar** (*to marry, शादी करने जाना*)- He promised her to lead her to the altar.
- 209. Leap in the dark** (*to do something though there is uncertainty about the outcome, अनिश्चित परिणाम होने पर भी कोई कार्य करना*)- To play lottery is to leap in the dark.
- 210. Leave no stone unturned** (*to make all possible efforts, कोई भी प्रयत्न बाकी न छोड़ना*)- He worked very hard to pass the Civil Services Exams and left no stone unturned.
- 211. Leave one in the lurch** (*to leave one in difficulties, किसी का कठिनाईयों में साथ छोड़ देना*)- He kicked the bucket and left his family in the lurch.
- 212. Let by-gones be by-gones** (*to forget old things, पुरानी बातों को भूल जाना*)- India and Pakistan must start bi-lateral talks and let by-gones be by-gones.
- 213. Lick the dust** (*to get defeated, हार जाना*)- The team licked the dust in the final match.
- 214. Lie in wait** (*wait in hiding to attack, घात लगाये बैठे रहना*)- The policemen were lying in wait for the kidnapers.
- 215. Live in an Ivory tower** (*where one can be aloof from the realities of life, जहाँ जीवन की वास्तविकता से दूर रहते हैं*)- The queen lived in an ivory tower and did not know the meaning of poverty.
- 216. Long and short** (*all that can or need be said, सारांश*)- The long and short of the whole discussion will be made available to all in black and white.
- 217. Look down upon** (*To hate a person, किसी व्यक्ति से घृणा करना*)- I hate those people who look down upon the poor.
- 218. Lose the day** (*to be defeated, हार जाना*)- My favourite football team lost the day.
- 219. Make a fortune** (*To grow rich, धनी बन जाना*)- He made a fortune by selling smuggled goods.

- 220. Make after** (*to pursue or chase, पीछा करना*)- The people made after the chain snatcher and caught him.
- 221. Make amends** (*to compensate, हर्जाना देना*)- He had to make amends for his bad behavior.
- 222. Make head or tail of** (*to understand, समझना*)- The doctor could not make the head or tail of his illness.
- 223. Make one's mark** (*to achieve distinction, अपना प्रभाव छोड़ना*)- India has made its mark in the field of technology.
- 224. Make out** (*to understand, समझ लेना*)- I could not make out what he was saying.
- 225. Make up the leeway** (*struggle out of a bad position, especially by recovering lost time, गवां चुके समय की क्षतिपूर्ति करके बुरे हालात से निकलना*)- The Government will have to make up the leeway by taking remedial actions immediately.
- 226. Make up one's mind** (*To determine, निश्चय करना*)- She has made up her mind to divorce her cruel husband.
- 227. Make a clean breast** (*to confess especially something bad or illegal, किसी गुनाह का सच कबूल लेना* )- After months of lying about the money, he decided to make a clean breast of it and tell the truth.
- 228. Man in the street** (*common man, साधारण व्यक्ति*)- The life of a man in the street has become very difficult because of rising price.
- 229. Man of iron** (*man with strong will-power, दृढ़ इच्छा शक्ति वाला*)- Nothing can deter a man of iron .
- 230. Meet half-way** (*to be prepared for compromise, समझौते के लिए राजी होना*)- We were ready to meet the other party half way and settle all litigation.
- 231. Milk of human kindness** (*human compassion, मानवता से भरा हृदय*)- Milk of human kindness is necessary for the existence of humanity.
- 232. Narrow circumstances** (*hard days/ poverty, गरीबी के दिन*)- After his father's death, he is living in narrow circumstances.
- 233. Neither chick nor child** (*no child, कोई बच्चे का न होना*)- She feels very lonely because she has neither chick nor child.
- 234. No love lost** (*having no love, किसी प्रकार का प्रेम/मित्रता का न होना*)- There is no love lost between these two neighbours who are fighting an endless court case.
- 235. Nook and corner** (*at every place, प्रत्येक स्थान पर*)- I searched for my book at every nook and corner of the house.
- 236. Oil someone's hands** (*to bribe, रिश्वत देना*)- We should stop oiling the officials' hands.
- 237. Beauty is only skin deep** (*physical beauty is not important, बाहरी सुन्दरता महत्वपूर्ण नहीं*)- She took a wrong decision by not marrying this gentleman. She doesn't know that beauty is only skin deep.
- 238. On and on** (*to continue, जारी रखना*)- She went on and on but nobody listened to her.
- 239. On the horns of a dilemma** (*to face a difficult situation between two problems, मुसीबत में फंसना, दो कठिन अवस्थाओं के बीच में*)- The demolition drive has put many shops on the horns of a dilemma because if they do not shut down, their shops will be sealed and if they do, they lose their means of livelihood.

**Idioms And Phrases - 2**

- 240. On the wrong side of** (*one's age being more than, अधिक उम्र का होना*)- He is on the wrong side of fifty now.
- 241. Open secret** (*known to all, सर्वविदित*)- He is bankrupt and this is an open secret now.
- 242. Order of the day** (*some common things of the time, कोई प्रचलित बात*)- Following new fashion is the order of the day.
- 243. Out of the wood** (*out of difficulties, मुसीबत से छुटकारा*)- At last India came out of the wood and got independence.
- 244. Pay one back in one's own coin** (*tit for tat, जैसे को तैसा*)- The person doing wrong should be paid back in his own coin.
- 245. Pell mell** (*very fast and not organised, बहुत जल्द और अस्त-व्यस्त तरीके से*)- Every thing was done pell mell as we got the order at the eleventh hour.
- 246. Petticoat-Government** (*undue influence of women, स्त्रियों का अनुचित दबाव*)- Petticoat-government may adversaly influence your whole project.
- 247. Pick holes in** (*to find fault with, दूसरों में दोष निकालना*)- My boss has the habit of picking holes in our performance.
- 248. Pin prick** (*troubles that are for short time, जो समस्याएं कुछ सिर्फ समय के लिए हो*)- We should ignore such pin pricks and get on with the job.
- 249. Play a double game** (*to act dubiously, धोखाधाड़ी करना*)- My friend was playing a double game.
- 250. Play fast and loose** (*be unreliable, अविश्वसनीय होना*)- How can you trust a man who plays fast and loose changing his statement every minute?
- 251. Play one false** (*to deceive, किसी को धोखा देना*)- He played her false and married again.
- 252. Play one's cards well** (*to do the correct things to achieve a desired result, समझदारी से काम करना*)- If you play your cards well, you will get selected..
- 253. Play the fool** (*to act foolishly, बेवकूफी करना*)- Why do you play the fool when it comes to spending money?
- 254. Pocket an insult** (*to bear insult, अपमान सहन कर लेना*)- Indians had to pocket much insult during their fight for Independence.
- 255. Poison one's ears against** (*to set a person against another, किसी के विरुद्ध कान भरना*)- She has poisoned the ears of my mother-in-law.
- 256. Past master** (*an expert, किसी क्षेत्र का विशेषज्ञ*)- He is a past master in cheating others.
- 257. Pour oil on troubled waters** (*to pacify the anger of others, क्रोध को शान्त करने का प्रयत्न*)- He solved the matter by pouring oil on troubled waters with his good behaviour.
- 258. Pull the string** (*to exercise secret influence, छिपे रूप से प्रभाव डालना*)- When I saw extreme level of red-tapism in the organization, I had to pull my strings to get my work done.
- 259. Pull to pieces** (*to criticise severely, कटु आलोचना करना*)- The leader of opposition has pulled the ruling party to pieces.
- 260. Put an end to** (*to finish, समाप्त कर देना*)- She has put an end to her unfeasible ideas.
- 261. Put pen to paper** (*to start writing, लिखना आरम्भ कर देना*)- In my board examination I put my pen to paper without wasting a second.
- 262. Put the saddle on the right horse** (*to blame the really guilty person, सही अपराधी पर आरोप लगाना*) The court put the saddle on the right horse and passed the right order.



- 263. Put to the sword** (*to kill, मार देना*)- Nadir Shah put even children to the sword.
- 264. Put up with** (*to tolerate, सहन करना*)- Maharana Pratap could not put up with insult.
- 265. Rank and file** (*lower middle class people, साधारण श्रेणी के लोग*)- The extra-ordinary speeches of the great orators cannot be appreciated by the rank and file.
- 266. Red rag to a bull** (*something that will surely produce a violent reaction, निश्चित ही उत्तेजित करने वाली बात*)- The racial comments against the Indians proved to be a red rag to a bull and the riot took place.
- 267. Rise to the occasion** (*to show that you can deal with a difficult situation, ये दिखा देना कि आप मुश्किल हालात का सामना कर सकते हैं*)- Mahatma Gandhi rose to the occasion and dared the British.
- 268. Roll up one's sleeves** (*to be prepared for hard work, कड़ी मेहनत के लिये तैयार रहना*)- We will have to roll up our sleeves as the time of examination has come.
- 269. Rub shoulders with** (*to meet and spend time with, किसी के निकट सम्पर्क में आना*)- He claims to have rubbed shoulders with Salman Khan during his journey to Sydney.
- 270. Run down** (*reduced in health/to criticize, स्वास्थ्य में गिरावट/ निन्दा करना*)- I was worried because she looked run down .  
Do not run down your friends in public.
- 271. Run short/ Hard up** (*not proving sufficient, shortage of money/ something, किसी चीज/ पैसे की कमी*)- I am running short of money these days.  
If you are hard up, you can come to me.
- 272. Scratch one's head** (*to be perplexed, परेशान हो जाना*)- I scratched my head when I saw the puzzles in the PO exam.
- 273. Screw up one's courage** (*to gather courage, साहस बढ़ाना*)- Working women have to screw up their courage to handle eve teasing incidents at their working places.
- 274. Seal of love** (*kiss, चुम्बन*)- They validated their marriage with a seal of love.
- 275. See the light** (*to be born, जन्म लेना*)- Many female babies are aborted before they see the light.
- 276. Set price on one's head** (*to offer reward for killing or helping in the arrest of a criminal, किसी अपराधी को मारने या पकड़वाने में मदद करने पर इनाम की घोषणा*)- The government of America had set price on Osama's head.
- 277. Show a clean pair of heels** (*to run away, भाग जाना*)- The chain snatcher showed a clean pair of heels and the people were unable to catch him.
- 278. Sink fast** (*to deteriorate in quality or condition, बद से बदतर होना*)- The patient was sinking fast.
- 279. Slip of the pen** (*a small unintentional mistake in writing, लिखने में अनजाने में की जाने वाली गलती*)- The slip of the pen created a lot of confusion.
- 280. Snake in the grass** (*some hidden enemy, अज्ञात शत्रु*)- Many leaders are snake in the grass creating disharmony in the society.
- 281. Sow wild oats** (*indulgence in youthful follies, युवावस्था की बेवकूफियां करना*)- Mothers always keeps an eye on their daughters to see that they do not sow wild oats.
- 282. Square meal** (*full meal, पेट भर भोजन*)- A poor person does not get even one square meal a day.

**Idioms And Phrases - 2**

- 283. Stand in good stead** (*to be of great service, बहुत सहायक होना*)- Your experience will always stand in good stead when you join a full time job.
- 284. Storm in a tea cup** (*much hue and cry over a little matter, छोटी सी बात पर बहुत शोरगुल करना*)- Do not worry about these silly rows. They are just storm in a tea cup.
- 285. Strain every nerve** (*to make every possible effort, हर प्रकार का प्रयत्न करना*)- I strained every nerve to get out of the problem.
- 286. Sword of Damocles** (*an imminent danger, सिर पर लटकी तलवार*)- Terrorism is a sword of Damocles hanging over the whole world.
- 287. Take a leaf out of another man's book** (*to imitate another person, नकल करना*)- He has no originality of thought; he only takes a leaf out of another man's book to make quick money.
- 288. Take an exception to** (*to be offended by something, किसी बात का बुरा मानना*)- She took an exception to his joke.
- 289. Take into one's head** (*to suddenly decide to do some thing, often silly or surprising, कुछ बेवकूफी भरी हरकत करने का अचानक निर्णय लेना*)- It took into their heads to get married next sunday.
- 290. Take pains** (*to work hard, कठिन परिश्रम करना*)- She took pains to bring up her children after her husband's death.
- 291. Take the bull by the horns** (*to face danger with courage, खतरे का हिम्मत से सामना करना*)- Bhagat Singh took the bull by the horns and bravely challenged the British empire.
- 292. Take to one's heels** (*to run away, भाग जाना*)- when the police came, the robber took to his heels.
- 293. Tall talk** (*boasting, शेखी मारना*)- One of my friends Rajesh is famous for his tall talks.
- 294. The Fourth Estate** (*the press, प्रेस*)- Today the fourth estate can influence the court proceedings of any case.
- 295. The knock down price** (*very low price, बहुत कम कीमत*)- I bought every thing at the mega sale at knock down prices.
- 296. Sheet anchor** (*a person or thing to be relied upon in an emergency, आपातकाल में काम आने वाला व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु*)- His uncle proved to be his sheet anchor after his father's death.
- 297. Thick-skinned person** (*not easily offended, insensitive, लज्जाहीन या संवेदनहीन व्यक्ति*)- He is such a thick- skinned person that he laughed when people cursed and abused him.
- 298. Think lightly** (*not to be serious about a thing, मजाक के रूप में लेना*)- Don't think of your married life lightly.
- 299. Throw light on** (*to make something easier to understand, किसी विषय पर प्रकाश डालना*)- I wanted to throw light on the pitiful life of the bar dancers.
- 300. Throw mud at** (*try to make a low opinion of someone by saying unpleasant things about him, बदनाम करना*)- Companies should think carefully before slinging mud at someone who may respond with a libel action costing it crores of rupees.
- 301. Tool in the hands of** (*under the authority of another, दूसरे के हाथ में कठपुतली की भाँति*)- The whole legal system has become a tool in the hands of the politicians.
- 302. Turn one's coat** (*to change one's party, दल बदल लेना*)- Some people are so ambitious that they often turn their coat.

- 303. Turn the tables** (*to change the situation completely, स्थिति को बिलकुल बदल देना*)- The ruling party had an easy victory in the last Lok sabha election but inflation and corruption have totally turned the table.
- 304. Under a cloud** (*under suspicious conditions, सदेहपूर्ण स्थिति में*)- Ever since the rumours of corruption started, the former chief minister has been under a cloud .
- 305. Under the rose** (*secretly, गुप्त रूप से*)- He is selling confidential documents under the rose.
- 306. Under the thumb of** (*completely under one's power or influence, किसी के वर्चस्व में दबा होना*)- He is under the thumb of his mother and does not listen to the problems of his wife.
- 307. Upto the mark** (*up to standard, उचित स्तर तक*)- I have to watch my staff all the time to keep them up to the mark.
- 308. Vexed question** (*much debated and discussed, जिस प्रश्न पर काफी बहस हो चुकी हो*)- 'Mercy killing should be granted or not' has become a vexed question.
- 309. Wash dirty linen in public** (*to expose private affairs in public, व्यक्तिगत बातों को बाहर उछालना*)- There is nothing as bad as washing one's dirty linen in public.
- 310. Wash one's hand of** (*to be free from, किसी बात से मुक्त हो जाना*)- Police have washed their hands of the kidnapping case.
- 311. Wear a long face** (*to look gloomy, उदास दिखाई देना*)- In spite of losing his job, he did not wear a long face.
- 312. Wild goose chase** (*useless efforts, व्यर्थ का प्रयत्न*)- Pakistan's efforts to grab Kashmir have proved to be a wild goose chase.
- 313. Win laurels** (*to win honours, य'1 प्राप्त करना*)- Sachin won laurels for India.
- 314. Without rhyme or reason** (*without any justification, अकारण*)- Don't shout at anyone without rhyme or reason.

# 24

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

### CHAPTER

### (PRACTICE SET)

**Directions :** In questions 1 to 300, four alternatives are given for the idiom/ phrase underlined in the sentence. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase and mark it in the Answer Sheet.

1. **To strain every nerve**  
(A) to make utmost efforts  
(B) to feel weak and tired  
(C) to be a diligent worker  
(D) to be methodical in work
2. **To flog a dead horse**  
(A) to whip a dead horse  
(B) attempt to do the impossible  
(C) waste one's efforts  
(D) to take advantage of a weakness
3. **To show a clean pair of heels**  
(A) to hide (B) to escape  
(C) to pursue (D) to follow
4. **To die in harness**  
(A) premeditated murder  
(B) dying young in an accident  
(C) to die while in service  
(D) to be taken by surprise
5. **To feather one's nest**  
(A) to make a residential house  
(B) something that lasts for a short time  
(C) to profit in a dishonest way  
(D) none of the above
6. **To doctor the accounts**  
(A) to make changes in account books  
(B) to clear the doctors' bill  
(C) to verify the accounts in detail  
(D) to manipulate the accounts
7. **She could never measure up to her parent's expectation.**  
(A) Reach the level  
(B) Work as hard  
(C) Assess the amount  
(D) Increase her height
8. **The little girl with her flawless performance stole the show.**  
(A) Stole something from the show  
(B) Crept into the show  
(C) Won everybody's praise  
(D) Disappeared from the show
9. **The thief was on good terms with the police.**  
(A) Kept terms and conditions  
(B) Was friendly  
(C) Followed the rules  
(D) Agreed with them
10. **John's offer of help was turned down by the police.**  
(A) Sent back  
(B) Twisted around  
(C) Refused  
(D) Handed over
11. **To be all at sea**  
(A) a family voyage  
(B) lost and confused  
(C) in the middle of the ocean  
(D) a string of islands

- 12. To take to one's heels**  
(A) to walk slowly  
(B) to run away  
(C) to march forward  
(D) to hop and jump
- 13. To bite the dust**  
(A) eat voraciously  
(B) have nothing to eat  
(C) eat roots  
(D) to fail
- 14. A bolt from the blue**  
(A) a delayed event  
(B) an inexplicable event  
(C) an unexpected event  
(D) an unpleasant event
- 15. Cold comfort**  
(A) absurdity  
(B) deception  
(C) slight satisfaction  
(D) foolish proposal
- 16. The reputed company is in the red due to the recession.**  
(A) making money  
(B) losing money  
(C) in danger  
(D) spending money
- 17. When the Principal was entering the class, all my friends quietly disappeared, leaving me alone to face the music.**  
(A) to listen to him  
(B) to enter into the class  
(C) to bear the criticism  
(D) to listen to a favourable comment
- 18. The Kenyan team proved to be the dark horse in the ICC World Cup Cricket.**  
(A) a strong intruder  
(B) a skilled team  
(C) the most powerful  
(D) an unexpected winner
- 19. Having no arguments to defend his point, the speaker began to beat about the bush.**  
(A) wander across the words  
(B) speak in a haphazard manner  
(C) speak in a round-about manner  
(D) make use of irrelevant reference
- 20. They were offered six months' rent in lieu of notice to vacate the building.**  
(A) in spite of  
(B) in place of  
(C) despite of  
(D) in addition to
- 21. We know that he is the one responsible for the discord but as he is well - connected all we can do is send him to Coventry.**  
(A) transfer him  
(B) commend him  
(C) boycott him  
(D) dismiss him
- 22. The noble man gave up the ghost.**  
(A) left the ghost  
(B) lived like a ghost  
(C) invited ghost  
(D) died
- 23. A Prime Minister cannot ride roughshod over his ministerial colleagues for long.**  
(A) deal unkindly with  
(B) take for granted  
(C) be high-handed with  
(D) exploit wilfully
- 24. He was down in the mouth as he was defeated in the elections.**  
(A) unable to speak  
(B) very depressed  
(C) very angry  
(D) very confused
- 25. They say, join the Army to drink life to the lees.**  
(A) to have the best of fun and fortune  
(B) to enjoy a life of drinking and dancing  
(C) to have a life full of adventures  
(D) to have the best of life

**Idioms And Phrases**

- 26. The car in the backyard is proving to be a white elephant.**  
(A) very huge item  
(B) costly and useless possession  
(C) very expensive investment  
(D) useful material
- 27. He takes leave once in a blue moon.**  
(A) regularly  
(B) often  
(C) rarely  
(D) once a fortnight
- 28. The meeting has been put off indefinitely.**  
(A) cancelled  
(B) postponed  
(C) advanced  
(D) announced
- 29. The rules of the deal are set forth in the brochure.**  
(A) stated  
(B) accepted  
(C) contradicted  
(D) printed
- 30. She bought her new house for a song.**  
(A) very cheaply  
(B) on loan  
(C) at a loss  
(D) very easily
- 31. Raju had given up doing exercise after surgery.**  
(A) learned (B) started  
(C) continued (D) stopped
- 32. The chairman tried to get his point across, but the members just wouldn't listen.**  
(A) give them a lesson  
(B) insist on  
(C) make them understand  
(D) motivate them
- 33. Ashok had all fair-weather friends.**  
(A) friends who face difficulties calmly.  
(B) favourable friends  
(C) friends who desert you in difficulties  
(D) reliable friends
- 34. Since the company has lost a good deal of time and money, you will have to make good the loss.**  
(A) make a good effort  
(B) try to minimize the loss  
(C) compensate for the loss  
(D) ensure that there are no forth losses
- 35. a damp squib**  
(A) rainy weather  
(B) a disappointing result  
(C) a skirt in a laundry  
(D) none of the above
- 36. in cold blood**  
(A) angrily  
(B) deliberately  
(C) excitedly  
(D) slowly
- 37. to take someone for a ride**  
(A) to give a ride to someone  
(B) to deceive someone  
(C) to be indifferent  
(D) to disclose a secret
- 38. to move heaven and earth**  
(A) to cause an earthquake  
(B) to try everything possible  
(C) to pray to all Gods  
(D) to travel in a rocket
- 39. to smell a rat**  
(A) to smell foul  
(B) to see a rat  
(C) to chase a rat  
(D) to be suspicious
- 40. The possession of Jerusalem is a bone of contention between Israel and Palestine.**  
(A) a subject of peace  
(B) a subject of trade  
(C) a subject of dispute  
(D) a subject of exports
- 41. My friend turned a deaf ear to my tale of loss and refused to help me.**  
(A) paid no heed  
(B) went far away  
(C) listened carefully  
(D) turned his ear away

42. **Helena was over head and ears in love with Demetrius.**  
(A) carefully (B) completely  
(C) brilliantly (D) cautiously
43. **Gopi works by fits and starts.**  
(A) consistently  
(B) irregularly  
(C) in high spirits  
(D) enthusiastically
44. **Naresh Goyal had to stand on his feet very early in his life.**  
(A) to be physically strong  
(B) to be independent  
(C) to stand erect  
(D) to be successful
45. **It is high time he came out of his shell.**  
(A) appeared suddenly  
(B) became more sociable  
(C) became a loser  
(D) removed his clothes
46. **Every political party is at present playing to the gallery.**  
(A) adopting cheap tactics  
(B) befooling the common man  
(C) fighting for votes  
(D) appeasing the masses
47. **His blood ran cold when he heard his uncle was murdered.**  
(A) He was frightened  
(B) He was horrified  
(C) He was disgusted  
(D) He was depressed
48. **This is so simple that even a man in the street can understand it.**  
(A) an ordinary person  
(B) an illiterate person  
(C) an unknown person  
(D) a stranger
49. **When he went to claim insurance for his car, the agent said he hadn't a leg to stand on.**  
(A) had been injured in an accident  
(B) was lame  
(C) did not have much hope of getting it  
(D) would have to wait for some time
50. **to cast aspersions**  
(A) to act as the pillar of support  
(B) to raise aspirations  
(C) to make unpleasant remarks  
(D) to dissolve all the differences
51. **on the cards**  
(A) impossible  
(B) shocking  
(C) evident  
(D) anticipated
52. **To turn over a new leaf**  
(A) to change for the better  
(B) to start writing a new book  
(C) to work on a novel idea  
(D) to clear the garden
53. **To keep up one's appearances**  
(A) to make public appearances now and then.  
(B) to maintain one's looks and appearance.  
(C) to keep up an outward show of prosperity.  
(D) to make it appear that one is not concerned.
54. **Off and on**  
(A) repeatedly  
(B) always  
(C) occasionally  
(D) never
55. **To take with a grain of salt**  
(A) to make more palatable  
(B) to take a small quantity of  
(C) to make something meaningful  
(D) to accept with misgiving
56. **To talk through one's hat**  
(A) to talk carefully  
(B) to talk softly  
(C) to talk nonsense  
(D) to talk secretly
57. **Ins and outs**  
(A) entrances and exits  
(B) details and complexities  
(C) passages and pathways  
(D) rules and regulations

*Idioms And Phrases*

58. **The thief passed himself off as a ticket examiner.**  
(A) described himself  
(B) deceived everyone  
(C) disguised himself  
(D) was regarded
59. **A brave soldier will never show the white feather in the face of his enemy.**  
(A) show signs of cowardice  
(B) act arrogantly  
(C) show intimacy  
(D) act impudently
60. **The poor man moved from pillar to post to get money.**  
(A) went to pillars  
(B) went to post  
(C) went to money lender  
(D) tried his best
61. **You have to be tactful in handling the sensitive matters rather than putting the cart before the horse.**  
(A) treating these indifferently  
(B) behaving thoughtlessly  
(C) dealing with these in haste  
(D) tackling things in the wrong way
62. **The boys cried with one voice that the examination should be postponed.**  
(A) unanimously  
(B) vehemently  
(C) loudly  
(D) strongly
63. **The scheme appears worthless at the first blush.**  
(A) first attempt  
(B) first sight  
(C) first step  
(D) first phase
64. **His pronunciation was so bad and his voice so low that the speech he made was all Greek to me.**  
(A) strange  
(B) incomprehensible  
(C) inaudible  
(D) uninteresting
65. **He looked blank when he was informed about his dismissal.**  
(A) was without any emotion  
(B) was puzzled and surprised  
(C) was uninterested  
(D) was unhappy
66. **That fellow trumped up a story**  
(A) translated  
(B) sang with the music of a trumpet  
(C) concocted  
(D) copied
67. **Though he is not a scholar, he wins arguments because he has the gift of the gab.**  
(A) gifts from many people  
(B) a lot of money  
(C) talent for speaking  
(D) a good memory
68. **The A.T.S. set the bait to arrest the terrorists.**  
(A) laid the trap  
(B) announced the reward  
(C) set the record  
(D) put the bet
69. **I have decided to give it a shot.**  
(A) click a picture  
(B) try something  
(C) pose for a picture  
(D) injure someone
70. **He turned a blind eye to his son's pranks.**  
(A) pretended not to notice  
(B) paid special attention to  
(C) covered up for  
(D) punished severely
71. **All his schemes to murder the king ended in smoke.**  
(A) fructified gradually  
(B) came to nothing  
(C) were discarded  
(D) were partially carried out



72. **This fashion of long flowing skirts will run its course.**  
(A) continue for a long time  
(B) become very popular  
(C) develop and then come to its usual end  
(D) end very soon
73. **The police caught the thief red-handed.**  
(A) in a red uniform  
(B) with blood in hands  
(C) at the time of committing the crime  
(D) after reading the rules
74. **I was so disappointed when my close friend left me in the lurch.**  
(A) went away without waiting for me  
(B) helped me in difficult times  
(C) abandoned me when I needed help  
(D) stopped helping me in emergency
75. **His position in the company was on the brink of disaster.**  
(A) at the top of  
(B) at the point of  
(C) on the side of  
(D) on the back of
76. **The car broke down just as it reached the edge of a cliff. It was indeed a close shave.**  
(A) to share one's brand  
(B) very risky  
(C) narrow escape from danger  
(D) to be happy
77. **The parents are in high spirits as their son has got a decent job.**  
(A) in good position (B) drunk  
(C) cheerful (D) shocked
78. **When she realised that she had bought a fake product, she knew that her money had gone down the drain.**  
(A) was lost forever  
(B) dropped in the drain  
(C) got washed away  
(D) her money was safe
79. **Even though the new clerk was given a difficult task, he remained cool as a cucumber.**  
(A) not nervous or emotional  
(B) caught cold  
(C) was happy  
(D) was scared
80. **Some people do not grease anybody's palm on any account.**  
(A) bribe (B) flatter  
(C) cheat (D) fight
81. **I had to pull strings to put up a good show.**  
(A) play music  
(B) use personal influence  
(C) use the instrument  
(D) play a song
82. **You can easily overcome this situation if you keep your head.**  
(A) keep faith in  
(B) remain calm  
(C) believe in  
(D) trust the others
83. **It is clear that the ideas of both reformers ran in the same groove.**  
(A) promoted each other  
(B) clashed with each other  
(C) moved in harmony  
(D) moved in different directions
84. **This place affords a bird's eye view of the green valley below.**  
(A) a beautiful view  
(B) a narrow view  
(C) an overview  
(D) an ugly view
85. **To foam at one's mouth**  
(A) to brush properly  
(B) to get very angry  
(C) to salivate on seeing food  
(D) none of the above
86. **To feel like a fish out of water**  
(A) disgusted  
(B) uncomfortable  
(C) disappointed  
(D) homeless

**Idioms And Phrases**

- 87. At the eleventh hour**  
(A) too late  
(B) too early  
(C) immediately  
(D) at the last moment
- 88. to burn one's fingers**  
(A) to get hurt physically  
(B) to suffer financial losses  
(C) to find work  
(D) to suffer nervous breakdown
- 89. to add fuel to fire**  
(A) to investigate (B) to insulate  
(C) to initiate (D) to incite
- 90. To bring to light**  
(A) to reveal  
(B) to conceal  
(C) to provide luminescence  
(D) to appeal
- 91. To hit the jackpot**  
(A) to gamble  
(B) to get an unexpected victory  
(C) to be wealthy  
(D) to make money quickly
- 92. To burn the candle at both ends**  
(A) to spend cautiously  
(B) to be stingy  
(C) to be extravagant  
(D) to survive difficulty
- 93. Status quo**  
(A) unchanged position  
(B) excellent place  
(C) unbreakable statue  
(D) long queue
- 94. By fair means or foul**  
(A) without using common sense  
(B) without difficulty  
(C) in any way, honest or dishonest  
(D) having been instigated
- 95. at one's beck and call**  
(A) to attend a call  
(B) to be helped by someone  
(C) to be useful to someone  
(D) to be dominated by someone
- 96. to explore every avenue**  
(A) to search all streets  
(B) to scout the wilderness  
(C) to find adventure  
(D) to try every opportunity
- 97. a red letter day**  
(A) a dangerous day in one's life  
(B) a sorrowful day in one's life  
(C) an important or joyful occasion in one's life  
(D) both a dangerous and sorrowful day in one's life
- 98. to have something up one's sleeve**  
(A) to hide something in the sleeve  
(B) to play a magician trick  
(C) to have a secret plan  
(D) to play hide and seek
- 99. on the spur of the moment**  
(A) to act at once  
(B) to ride a horse in a race  
(C) to act deliberately  
(D) to act at the appointed time
- 100. When my friend was in Kolkata, he ran into an old friend at the theatre.**  
(A) hit  
(B) met accidentally  
(C) planned to meet  
(D) invited
- 101. The news of the President's death spread like wild fire.**  
(A) spread rapidly  
(B) caused a major confusion  
(C) was a wild rumour  
(D) set the nation on fire
- 102. Going abroad for a holiday was out of the question.**  
(A) undesirable  
(B) impossible  
(C) unpleasant  
(D) irresistible

- 103. As a businessman, my father always maintained that his transactions constituted an open book.**  
(A) an account book always open  
(B) a book of open confessions  
(C) an opening for new ventures  
(D) straight forward and honest dealings
- 104. The project advanced by leaps and bounds.**  
(A) rapidly (B) slowly  
(C) sharply (D) simply
- 105. She is too fond of her own voice.**  
(A) loves singing  
(B) very selfish  
(C) does not listen properly to anyone else  
(D) very talkative
- 106. Indian police is, on the whole, high handed in dealing with citizens.**  
(A) kind  
(B) overbearing  
(C) prompt  
(D) adept
- 107. I take exception to your statement that I am bad tempered.**  
(A) do not agree  
(B) feel unhappy  
(C) object  
(D) feel angry
- 108. His speech fell short on the audience.**  
(A) had no effect  
(B) moved the audience  
(C) impressed the audience  
(D) was quite short
- 109. The officer called for an explanation from the cashier for the shortage of cash.**  
(A) asked (B) begged  
(C) served a notice (D) demanded
- 110. We wanted the gift to be a surprise for my mother, but my sister gave the game away.**  
(A) lost the game  
(B) gave out the secret  
(C) gave away the gift  
(D) withdrew from the plan
- 111. The actress took cue from her brother and became successful.**  
(A) some help  
(B) a hint  
(C) some money  
(D) learnt acting
- 112. Let us have a heart to heart talk to solve this problem.**  
(A) good talk  
(B) emotional talk  
(C) frank talk  
(D) loving talk
- 113. To miss the bus**  
(A) to miss the bus that one regularly takes  
(B) to miss an opportunity  
(C) to have something to fall back upon  
(D) to find fault with others
- 114. Birds of the same feather**  
(A) persons of same caste  
(B) persons of same colour  
(C) birds with same type of feather  
(D) persons of same character
- 115. To fight tooth and nail**  
(A) to fight a losing battle  
(B) to fight heroically  
(C) to fight cowardly  
(D) to make every possible effort
- 116. To call a spade a spade**  
(A) to be frank  
(B) to be sly  
(C) to be rude  
(D) to be diplomatic
- 117. by putting two and two together**  
(A) to mix several things  
(B) to make an arithmetical calculation  
(C) to keep people in pairs  
(D) to deduce from given facts
- 118. to look down one's nose**  
(A) to show anger  
(B) to retaliate  
(C) to insult in the presence of others  
(D) to regard with contempt

**Idioms And Phrases**

**119. to shed crocodile tears**

- (A) to weep profusely
- (B) to pretend grief
- (C) to grieve seriously
- (D) to mock something

**120. To call it a day**

- (A) to conclude proceedings
- (B) to initiate proceedings
- (C) to work through the day
- (D) None of the above

**121. To put up with**

- (A) to accommodate
- (B) to adjust
- (C) to understand
- (D) to tolerate

**122. To take to heart**

- (A) to be encouraged
- (B) to grieve over
- (C) to like
- (D) to hate

**123. Yeoman's service**

- (A) medical help
- (B) excellent work
- (C) social work
- (D) hard work

**124. to go scot-free**

- (A) to walk like a native of Scotland
- (B) to get something free
- (C) to escape without punishment
- (D) to save tax

**125. to see red**

- (A) get broke
- (B) get angry
- (C) feel lucky
- (D) become rich

**126. in the nick of time**

- (A) in an unexpected time
- (B) after some time
- (C) at a time when it was too late
- (D) precisely in the right time

**127. the stage has been set**

- (A) the conditions are beyond control
- (B) the platform for meeting is ready
- (C) the situation is getting worse
- (D) the situation is conducive

**128. on this side of the grave**

- (A) outside the grave
- (B) by the side of the grave
- (C) in this world
- (D) before going to grave

**129. A man who, while pretending to be your friend, sets a spy to watch your activities is indeed a snake in the grass.**

- (A) secret enemy
- (B) mean fellow
- (C) dangerous man
- (D) cunning fellow

**130. The audience was greatly impressed though I spoke off the cuff.**

- (A) away from the mike
- (B) without preparation
- (C) off the subject
- (D) about the cuff

**131. After listening to the student's statements, the teacher had to eat her words.**

- (A) withdraw her words
- (B) stop speaking
- (C) apologize
- (D) quarrel

**132. to lose ground**

- (A) to become less powerful
- (B) to become less popular
- (C) to lose foundation
- (D) to be without a leader

**133. to make both ends meet**

- (A) to buy costly articles
- (B) live a luxurious life
- (C) to live within one's income
- (D) to please all people

**134. to fall back on**

- (A) to oppose something important
- (B) to suffer an injury on the back in an accident
- (C) to fail to do something important in time
- (D) to seek support out of necessity

- 135. to make one's blood boil**  
(A) to make somebody furious  
(B) to develop fever  
(C) to get excited  
(D) to make someone nervous
- 136. She decided that she would get this job by hook or by crook.**  
(A) by compromising or other responsibilities  
(B) by impressing the interviewers  
(C) by any means, right or wrong  
(D) by becoming a specialist in the field
- 137. In a debate, no one is allowed to sit on the fence.**  
(A) to avoid taking sides  
(B) to insult a speaker  
(C) to relax while others speak  
(D) to agree with everyone
- 138. The matter has been sorted out.**  
(A) revised (B) supported  
(C) resolved (D) changed
- 139. The soldiers carried out the orders of the General very effectively.**  
(A) exited (B) executed  
(C) supported (D) applied
- 140. They set off by car for Mumbai late in the evening.**  
(A) started (B) travelled  
(C) entered (D) resonated
- 141. Once his crime was discovered, he had no option but to come clean.**  
(A) to deny the crime  
(B) to confess to the crime  
(C) to accuse someone else of the crime  
(D) to apologize for the crime
- 142. The employees were kept in the dark about the latest developments.**  
(A) were informed after office hours  
(B) were informed when it was too late  
(C) were given secret information  
(D) were not informed at all
- 143. When things go wrong, everyone starts passing the buck.**  
(A) analyses the problem  
(B) prepares to resign  
(C) pays a bribe  
(D) blames someone else
- 144. To keep the wolf away from the door.**  
(A) to avoid a bad person  
(B) to clean the house  
(C) to avoid extreme poverty  
(D) to visit the zoo
- 145. To break the ice**  
(A) to clear the snow  
(B) to start quarreling  
(C) to commence an interaction  
(D) to revive old enmity
- 146. Spick and span**  
(A) neat and clean  
(B) hard-working  
(C) kitchen implements  
(D) calm and quiet
- 147. The pros and cons**  
(A) good and evil  
(B) first and last  
(C) fair and foul  
(D) for and against
- 148. Build castles in the air**  
(A) waste time (B) daydream  
(C) build houses (D) work hard
- 149. Sought after**  
(A) highly paid  
(B) pursued by  
(C) in great demand  
(D) with great talent
- 150. All at sea**  
(A) very proud (B) overjoyed  
(C) puzzled (D) excited
- 151. To hit below the belt**  
(A) to punish  
(B) to tie with a belt  
(C) to hit with a belt  
(D) to attack unfairly

**Idioms And Phrases**

- 152. Pot-luck dinner**  
(A) dinner where everybody brings something to eat  
(B) dinner where everybody brings his food  
(C) dinner where only soup is served  
(D) dinner where people eat and play games at the same time
- 153. His friends beat the boy to pay off old scores.**  
(A) to refund old dues.  
(B) to take revenge.  
(C) to force him to be a scorer in a match.  
(D) because he had not scored well earlier.
- 154. Chintan is so innocent that he wears his heart on his sleeve.**  
(A) Wears dress that does not match.  
(B) Expresses his feelings openly.  
(C) Wears colourful dresses.  
(D) Expresses his feelings with the shape of a heart printed on its sleeve.
- 155. Tagore was a man of letters.**  
(A) of wide contacts.  
(B) an excellent letter dictator.  
(C) a great writer of letters.  
(D) proficient in literaterary art.
- 156. The poor subordinates are made scapegoats by their superiors.**  
(A) punished for others' misdeeds.  
(B) developed poor relations.  
(C) treated humbly and respectfully.  
(D) scolded with arrogant reactions.
- 157. She was on the horns of a dilemma as she had either to leave her job or divorce her husband.**  
(A) in nervous condition  
(B) in terrible mood  
(C) in difficult situation  
(D) in suspense
- 158. Brown study**  
(A) to study sincerely  
(B) to study uselessly  
(C) deep in thought  
(D) practical advantage
- 159. The young boy was kicking his heels inspite of his mother's stern warnings.**  
(A) playing happily  
(B) kicking someone  
(C) forced to wait  
(D) passing a gesture of disrespect
- 160. She denied point-blank her involvement in the crime.**  
(A) directly  
(B) desperately  
(C) stubbornly  
(D) rudely
- 161. It is hard to strike a bargain with a woman.**  
(A) to finalize a deal  
(B) to negotiate a deal  
(C) to negotiate  
(D) to deal
- 162. He took his father's advice to heart.**  
(A) casually (B) patiently  
(C) seriously (D) quietly
- 163. Can you give me a hand with this luggage?**  
(A) keep a watch on  
(B) handle  
(C) provide me with  
(D) help me with
- 164. Fling away**  
(A) to have an affair (B) to flare up  
(C) to throw violently (D) to swing
- 165. Stick by**  
(A) to adhere closely  
(B) stand by someone  
(C) to paste  
(D) to pass by
- 166. Wink at**  
(A) to tease somebody  
(B) to like someone  
(C) to pretend not to see  
(D) to stare at

- 167. To be on the wane**  
(A) to complain  
(B) to be sick  
(C) to be on boat  
(D) to be diminishing
- 168. To give a person the cold shoulder**  
(A) to offer someone ice-cream  
(B) to be humble  
(C) to threaten  
(D) to treat coldly
- 169. To get one's back up**  
(A) to become irritated or angry  
(B) to sit straight  
(C) to act proud  
(D) to give support
- 170. To strike oil**  
(A) to have found an oil well  
(B) to have lucky success  
(C) to have a close escape  
(D) to be unsuccessful
- 171. To talk shop**  
(A) to talk a lot  
(B) to use phrases peculiar to one's employment  
(C) to like to shop  
(D) to lie
- 172. To draw a line**  
(A) to fix a limit  
(B) to caution someone  
(C) to be stern  
(D) to insult someone
- 173. A swan song**  
(A) melodious song  
(B) disharmonious display  
(C) utterance/statement made just before death or retirement  
(D) concocted tale
- 174. Knit one's brows**  
(A) to disappoint somebody  
(B) to frown  
(C) to have a headache  
(D) to express discontentment
- 175. To plough the sands**  
(A) to be extremely accomplished  
(B) to be resourceful  
(C) to be dejected  
(D) to busy oneself in an unprofitable proposition
- 176. To rip up old sores**  
(A) to destroy something  
(B) to act cruelly  
(C) to reopen a quarrel  
(D) to inflict pain on someone
- 177. To rate soundly**  
(A) to censure strongly  
(B) to acquire heavy profits  
(C) to be at peace  
(D) to assure somebody
- 178. To be no spring chicken**  
(A) to be brave  
(B) to be honest  
(C) to be no longer young  
(D) to be childish
- 179. To take to one's bed**  
(A) to be very attached to one's belongings  
(B) to lie in bed due to illness  
(C) to fight with one's husband  
(D) to agree with someone
- 180. To stand on ceremony**  
(A) to celebrate an occasion in a grand way  
(B) to be extravagant  
(C) to get married  
(D) to insist on excessive formality
- 181. To be at sixes and sevens**  
(A) a state of total confusion and disorder  
(B) to be a great success  
(C) to be certain  
(D) to give away generously
- 182. To break the ice**  
(A) a strong man  
(B) to start a quarrel  
(C) to break the awkward silence  
(D) to become violent

*Idioms And Phrases*

**183. Put one's foot down**

- (A) to demand
- (B) to take rest
- (C) to be firm about something
- (D) to do something stupid

**184. Backstairs influence**

- (A) one who is easily influenced
- (B) influential person
- (C) influence exerted secretly
- (D) wife's influence on her husband

**185. Long in the tooth**

- (A) distant journey
- (B) rather old
- (C) ailment
- (D) young

**186. A brazen-faced fellow**

- (A) cruel person
- (B) ugly person
- (C) dark-complexioned person
- (D) impudent fellow

**187. To see pink elephants**

- (A) to dream
- (B) to anticipate luck
- (C) to be afraid of
- (D) to have hallucination due to excessive alcoholic intake.

**188. Elbow room**

- (A) opportunity for freedom of action
- (B) special room for the guest
- (C) to give enough space to move or work in
- (D) to add a new room to the house

**189. French leave**

- (A) a person who does not take leave
- (B) leave without permission
- (C) to take long leave
- (D) to take a day off and have fun

**190. To commit to memory**

- (A) to learn by heart
- (B) to tax one's memory
- (C) to be forgetful
- (D) to commit oneself totally to a task

**191. To burn a hole in the pocket**

- (A) to steal from someone's pocket
- (B) to destroy other's belongings
- (C) to be very miserly
- (D) money that is spent quickly

**192. To bury the hatchet**

- (A) to have found a treasure
- (B) to make peace
- (C) to purchase something without discretion
- (D) to act in a suspicious manner

**193. To beggar description**

- (A) something of least importance
- (B) something beyond description
- (C) to describe a beggar
- (D) an accurate description

**194. To beat the air**

- (A) efforts that are vain or useless
- (B) to be satisfied with one's performance
- (C) to be extremely relieved
- (D) to be very happy

**195. To provide against a rainy day**

- (A) to provide plentiful
- (B) to provide for a possible future, in time of difficulty or need
- (C) to store for the family
- (D) to store for the rainy season

**196. To be all eyes**

- (A) to be cautious
- (B) watching closely and attentively
- (C) to be amazed
- (D) to be non-plussed

**197. Swollen headed**

- (A) to be suffering from illness
- (B) to be conceited
- (C) to be narrow-minded
- (D) to be dumb

**198. To stir up a hornet's nest**

- (A) to excite the hostility of people
- (B) to do some social service
- (C) to be totally at a loss in a situation
- (D) to be bankrupt

**199. My hands are full**

- (A) I am having a lot of things to carry
- (B) I am having lots of money
- (C) I am very busy
- (D) I am anxious



- 200. No love lost between them**  
(A) to have a fight  
(B) to dislike each other  
(C) to be as friendly as ever  
(D) to be upset
- 201. To be hand and glove with someone**  
(A) to be social  
(B) to be playful  
(C) to be annoyed  
(D) to be intimate
- 202. To play fast and loose**  
(A) to deceive someone  
(B) to be agile  
(C) say one thing and do another  
(D) to be efficient
- 203. To take stock of**  
(A) to imagine  
(B) to supply  
(C) to survey  
(D) to attract
- 204. A man of straw**  
(A) a man of no substance  
(B) a man without means  
(C) a man of character  
(D) a generous man
- 205. Wolf in sheep's clothing**  
(A) to act on the sly  
(B) to be a good actor  
(C) to be a hypocrite  
(D) to be money-minded or materialistic
- 206. To cut someone short**  
(A) to oblige someone  
(B) to assist someone  
(C) to interrupt someone  
(D) to insult someone
- 207. To stick to one's colours**  
(A) to refuse to yield  
(B) to be patriotic  
(C) to be notorious  
(D) to be straightforward
- 208. An old head on young shoulders**  
(A) to be old before one's age  
(B) to be wise beyond one's age  
(C) to be youthful in spite of one's old age  
(D) to maintain good health
- 209. To snap one's fingers at**  
(A) to honour someone  
(B) to greet someone  
(C) to beckon someone  
(D) to treat with contempt
- 210. Falling foul of**  
(A) quarrelling with  
(B) becoming friends with  
(C) being dishonest with  
(D) being scared of
- 211. Harp on the same string**  
(A) to play music  
(B) to dwell tediously on the same subject  
(C) to beat someone  
(D) to acknowledge
- 212. Keep a good table**  
(A) to have an artistic taste  
(B) to throw a party  
(C) to be a good host  
(D) to be extravagant
- 213. Take up the cudgels**  
(A) to take notice  
(B) to accept a present  
(C) to defend someone vigorously  
(D) to accept a challenge
- 214. Splitting hairs**  
(A) to be worried  
(B) to be venturesome  
(C) to trouble someone  
(D) to dispute over petty points
- 215. A great hand at**  
(A) to be a good artist  
(B) to be an expert  
(C) to be a good player  
(D) to be generous
- 216. To make a pile**  
(A) to make a fortune  
(B) to make a mess  
(C) to be absent-minded  
(D) to be corrupt
- 217. Under someone's wing**  
(A) to work under someone  
(B) to be under someone's protection  
(C) to be alert  
(D) to be in the army

*Idioms And Phrases*

**218. To sow one's wild oats**

- (A) to swear
- (B) to be at ease
- (C) to engage in youthful excesses
- (D) to till the land

**219. An olive branch**

- (A) an offer of peace
- (B) an idea
- (C) a lady
- (D) a wicked person

**220. Not worth a rap**

- (A) worth nothing
- (B) very expensive
- (C) worth a lot
- (D) modestly priced

**221. In merry pin**

- (A) perplexed
- (B) merry making
- (C) embarrassed
- (D) in a cheerful mood

**222. To leap the pale**

- (A) to throw a bucket
- (B) to get into debt, to spend more than one's income
- (C) to have much of fear
- (D) to become pale

**223. To cut the gordian knot**

- (A) to perform the opening ceremony
- (B) to be present at the opening ceremony
- (C) to solve a difficult problem
- (D) to get a sharp cut

**224. To sow the wind and reap the whirlwind**

- (A) to enjoy the fruits of hard work
- (B) to be deprived of one's reward
- (C) to act wisely
- (D) to suffer for one's foolish conduct

**225. To play possum**

- (A) to play hide and seek
- (B) to feign ignorance or pretend to be sleeping or dead
- (C) to cheat somebody
- (D) to play seriously

**226. A grass widow**

- (A) a young widow
- (B) widow who has illicit relations with men
- (C) a woman whose husband is temporarily away from her
- (D) a working old woman

**227. Mad as a March hare**

- (A) sane
- (B) intoxicated
- (C) as mad as a hare in spring
- (D) slightly touched in the brain

**228. Halcyon days**

- (A) long days
- (B) short days
- (C) happy and peaceful days
- (D) disturbed days

**229. Mother wit**

- (A) to have an intelligent mother
- (B) university
- (C) silly
- (D) common sense

**230. A blind date**

- (A) a cloudy day
- (B) unknown future
- (C) meeting with someone you do not know
- (D) death-day

**231. Much ado about nothing**

- (A) to take something seriously
- (B) to play false
- (C) to make a fuss
- (D) to add

**232. Judas' kiss**

- (A) wooing
- (B) a narrow escape
- (C) hypocritical affection
- (D) a religious person

**233. To have no truck with**

- (A) have no means of conveyance
- (B) scientifically backward
- (C) to have no trade with
- (D) to have no dealings with

**234. To clean the Augean stables**

- (A) to purge/ clean the administration of its abuses
- (B) to buy horses
- (C) to sell horses
- (D) to improve working conditions

**235. A fly in the ointment**

- (A) to clean a thing
- (B) to sterilise
- (C) Small annoyance that spoils a pleasant experience.
- (D) an unsuccessful attempt

**236. Of the deepest dye**

- (A) of the worst/ extreme type
- (B) of the best type
- (C) of the most colourless type
- (D) of the colourless type

**237. To throw up the sponge**

- (A) to accept the challenge
- (B) to forget the past offences
- (C) to admit defeat
- (D) to send message

**238. To rule the roost**

- (A) to measure the height of something
- (B) to measure the depth
- (C) to strike with a stick
- (D) to dominate

**239. Bats in the belfry**

- (A) to be mad
- (B) something needed cleanliness
- (C) an impending danger
- (D) to be deceived

**240. To have a jaundice eye**

- (A) to have jaundice
- (B) to have fever
- (C) to be prejudiced
- (D) to lose colour

**241. Rank and file**

- (A) Common people
- (B) Officers
- (C) People of high rank
- (D) Army personnel

**242. To egg on**

- (A) to egg on slowly
- (B) to destroy slowly
- (C) to give a walk over
- (D) to instigate/ cause to proceed further

**243. To haul over the coals**

- (A) to walk over the fire
- (B) to burn
- (C) to scold for something done wrong
- (D) to throw into fire

**244. To draw a bead on**

- (A) to say prayers
- (B) to count the beads
- (C) to do one's best
- (D) to take careful aim at

**245. Fabian policy**

- (A) dictatorial policy
- (B) democratic policy
- (C) systematic policy
- (D) policy of cautious persistence

**246. To play to the gallery**

- (A) to try to get the appreciation from the least intelligent people
- (B) to try to win appreciation of intelligent people
- (C) to play in the gallery
- (D) to disturb people sitting in the gallery

**247. Pyrrhic victory**

- (A) Permanent victory
- (B) Defeat
- (C) Easy victory
- (D) Victory at high cost

**248. Go the whole hog**

- (A) to do something thoroughly
- (B) sleep
- (C) to neglect duty
- (D) to mishandle the case

**249. To bite one's lips**

- (A) to feel sorry
- (B) to repress one's anger or other emotions
- (C) laugh at others
- (D) to have doubt

**Idioms And Phrases**

**250. To hold someone in leash**

- (A) to restrain
- (B) to be firm
- (C) to be unsure
- (D) to touch the exact point

**251. To cool one's heels**

- (A) to give a cold treatment to somebody
- (B) to be kept waiting for sometime
- (C) a closed chapter
- (D) a hot issue

**252. Bag of bones**

- (A) a bag full of bones
- (B) a dead person
- (C) a person about to die
- (D) an extremely weak person

**253. All moonshine**

- (A) show
- (B) lighted only by moon
- (C) false
- (D) far from reality

**254. To shake the dust off one's feet**

- (A) to wash feet
- (B) to walk fast
- (C) to leave a place with a sense of resentment
- (D) to rest after a long journey

**255. Off hand**

- (A) Without preparation
- (B) Out of hand
- (C) Rehearsed
- (D) In hand

**256. A bird of passage**

- (A) a flying bird
- (B) an unreliable person
- (C) one who stays for a short time
- (D) bad time

**257. Count on**

- (A) Depend on
- (B) as a result of
- (C) ceremonially
- (D) to wait for the benefactor

**258. With a string**

- (A) not to give any aid
- (B) to give unconditional aid
- (C) gift or aid with condition
- (D) to accept aid

**259. To set stores by**

- (A) to value highly
- (B) to hoard a large quantity of something
- (C) to set up store
- (D) fix a price

**260. To draw the long bow**

- (A) to shoot
- (B) to exaggerate
- (C) to criticize
- (D) to admire

**261. To know the ropes**

- (A) to recognize the lost things
- (B) to do rigging
- (C) to know the procedure of doing a job
- (D) to flog

**262. To give the devil his due**

- (A) to be just to a person even though he does not deserve such treatment
- (B) to surrender oneself willingly when one's mistake is detected
- (C) to punish an innocent person
- (D) to punish a guilty person

**263. In the swim**

- (A) knowing latest current things
- (B) to cross a river by a boat
- (C) to cross a river by swimming
- (D) to be in the river

**264. To knuckle under**

- (A) to be in a crisis
- (B) to submit
- (C) to take rest
- (D) to go to bed

**265. To have a dig at**

- (A) to criticise someone
- (B) to sow seeds
- (C) to weed out
- (D) to praise someone

- 266. In vogue**  
(A) in fashion  
(B) fair  
(C) smooth  
(D) total absence
- 267. Three R's**  
(A) radiogram, radiograph, radio telescope  
(B) rabble, rattle, razzle  
(C) reading, writing, arithmetic  
(D) rail, radar, raft
- 268. A wild goose chase**  
(A) foolish and useless enterprise  
(B) to hunt  
(C) a violent chase  
(D) to speak harshly
- 269. To rest on one's laurels**  
(A) to cease to strive for further glory  
(B) to be lazy  
(C) to be proud of one's victory  
(D) to die
- 270. Raw deal**  
(A) unjust treatment  
(B) unripe fruit  
(C) early stage of business  
(D) contract not yet finally decided
- 271. A forlorn hope**  
(A) a plan which has remote chances of success  
(B) hope about unforeseeable future  
(C) hope of a single person  
(D) hope of a silly person
- 272. Printer's devil**  
(A) an apprentice in a printing office  
(B) blunder  
(C) low type of printed material  
(D) delay in printing
- 273. To call on the carpet**  
(A) subject to criticism  
(B) to summon for a scolding  
(C) a heartfelt welcome  
(D) on the ground
- 274. To bring the house down**  
(A) to appeal greatly to the audience  
(B) to pull down a building  
(C) to defame one's family  
(D) to pass a bill unanimously
- 275. To have an edge on**  
(A) to cut with a knife  
(B) to threaten to wound  
(C) to be slightly better than  
(D) to be in a dangerous situation
- 276. In sackcloth and ashes**  
(A) to cremate  
(B) in a state of great mourning  
(C) dirty clothes  
(D) cheap clothes
- 277. To put two and two together**  
(A) to progress steadily  
(B) to compare the debit and credit  
(C) to conclude keeping in view the merits and demerits  
(D) to oppose as a last resort
- 278. To weather the storm**  
(A) to face a crisis  
(B) to survive a crisis  
(C) to be the victim of a crisis  
(D) to create crisis
- 279. Lump in the throat**  
(A) to be hoarse  
(B) a highly emotional state  
(C) food of low type  
(D) wind-pipe
- 280. To fight shy of**  
(A) to keep aloof from  
(B) to fight social evils  
(C) to be bold  
(D) to fight and win
- 281. Hobson's choice**  
(A) lion's share  
(B) the best choice  
(C) option of taking the one offered or nothing  
(D) the last chance
- 282. To hit it off**  
(A) to quarrel  
(B) to be hostile  
(C) to agree or be congenial  
(D) to threaten

**Idioms And Phrases**

**283. To whitewash**

- (A) to clean a place
- (B) to work hard
- (C) to retrieve damaged reputation
- (D) to use cosmetics

**284. Within an ace of**

- (A) very close
- (B) within one's means
- (C) within a narrow circle
- (D) near centre

**285. To keep an open mind**

- (A) to remember
- (B) to forget
- (C) to come to no decision on a subject until one knows all the facts
- (D) to be clear-headed

**286. Open question**

- (A) a question put to all
- (B) a question without any generally agreed answer
- (C) a permanent problem
- (D) a clearly-written/expressed question

**287. On one's mettle**

- (A) roused to do one's best
- (B) to put on an overcoat
- (C) to safeguard against attack
- (D) to use one's own money properly

**288. To keep the pot boiling**

- (A) to maintain interest
- (B) to heat
- (C) to show anger
- (D) to do experiments

**289. Grist to one's mill**

- (A) grain to be ground
- (B) useful for one's purpose
- (C) income from will
- (D) to work one's machine

**290. Kangaroo court**

- (A) a group of kangaroos
- (B) the young kangaroo
- (C) unofficial court
- (D) unofficial estimate

**291. Wool gathering**

- (A) to become a shepherd
- (B) to shear sheep

- (C) to engage in idle or aimless day dreaming
- (D) to live in the countryside

**292. Between Scylla and Charybdis**

- (A) between two hills
- (B) between two rivers
- (C) between two enemies
- (D) between two dangers

**293. Achilles' heel**

- (A) bare-foot
- (B) to run fast
- (C) to wait on somebody
- (D) one's vulnerable or susceptible spot

**294. To know which side the bread is buttered on**

- (A) to know where one's interest lies
- (B) to be a glutton
- (C) to be fond of rich diet
- (D) to know how to increase one's income

**295. To eke out**

- (A) to subtract
- (B) to supplement
- (C) to etch
- (D) to oust

**296. To be in the doldrums**

- (A) to be in low spirits
- (B) to be within doors
- (C) to praise loudly
- (D) to be in a crisis

**297. Wild cat strike**

- (A) a furious attack
- (B) strike not approved by the trade union
- (C) a strike in which violence is committed
- (D) to face a strong enemy

**298. Blind alley**

- (A) blindness due to old age
- (B) a dark room
- (C) unprofitable action
- (D) to continue to make efforts in spite of confusion

**299. Tied to the apron strings of**

- (A) be independent
- (B) to be dominated by
- (C) to live together
- (D) to fall in love with

**300. Our school is within a stone's throw from the railway station**

- (A) Very far-off
- (B) with a certain radius
- (C) at a short distance
- (D) within a definite circumference

**ANSWER KEY**

- |     |         |         |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |     |
|-----|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----|
| 1.  | (A) 31. | (D) 61. | (D) 91.  | (D) 121. | (B) 151. | (D) 181. | (A) 211. | (B) 241. | (A) 271. | (A) |
| 2.  | (B) 32. | (C) 62. | (A) 92.  | (C) 122. | (A) 152. | (B) 182. | (C) 212. | (C) 242. | (D) 272. | (A) |
| 3.  | (B) 33. | (C) 63. | (B) 93.  | (A) 123. | (B) 153. | (B) 183. | (C) 213. | (C) 243. | (C) 273. | (B) |
| 4.  | (C) 34. | (C) 64. | (B) 94.  | (C) 124. | (C) 154. | (B) 184. | (C) 214. | (D) 244. | (D) 274. | (A) |
| 5.  | (C) 35. | (B) 65. | (A) 95.  | (D) 125. | (B) 155. | (D) 185. | (B) 215. | (B) 245. | (D) 275. | (C) |
| 6.  | (D) 36. | (A) 66. | (C) 96.  | (D) 126. | (D) 156. | (A) 186. | (D) 216. | (A) 246. | (A) 276. | (B) |
| 7.  | (A) 37. | (B) 67. | (C) 97.  | (C) 127. | (D) 157. | (C) 187. | (D) 217. | (B) 247. | (D) 277. | (C) |
| 8.  | (C) 38. | (B) 68. | (A) 98.  | (C) 128. | (C) 158. | (C) 188. | (C) 218. | (C) 248. | (A) 278. | (B) |
| 9.  | (B) 39. | (D) 69. | (B) 99.  | (A) 129. | (A) 159. | (C) 189. | (B) 219. | (A) 249. | (B) 279. | (B) |
| 10. | (C) 40. | (C) 70. | (A) 100. | (B) 130. | (B) 160. | (A) 190. | (A) 220. | (A) 250. | (A) 280. | (A) |
| 11. | (B) 41. | (A) 71. | (B) 101. | (A) 131. | (A) 161. | (A) 191. | (D) 221. | (D) 251. | (B) 281. | (C) |
| 12. | (B) 42. | (B) 72. | (C) 102. | (B) 132. | (B) 162. | (C) 192. | (B) 222. | (B) 252. | (D) 282. | (C) |
| 13. | (D) 43. | (B) 73. | (C) 103. | (D) 133. | (C) 163. | (D) 193. | (B) 223. | (C) 253. | (D) 283. | (C) |
| 14. | (D) 44. | (B) 74. | (C) 104. | (A) 134. | (D) 164. | (C) 194. | (A) 224. | (D) 254. | (C) 284. | (A) |
| 15. | (C) 45. | (B) 75. | (B) 105. | (D) 135. | (A) 165. | (A) 195. | (B) 225. | (B) 255. | (A) 285. | (C) |
| 16. | (C) 46. | (D) 76. | (C) 106. | (B) 136. | (C) 166. | (C) 196. | (B) 226. | (C) 256. | (C) 286. | (B) |
| 17. | (C) 47. | (A) 77. | (C) 107. | (C) 137. | (A) 167. | (D) 197. | (B) 227. | (C) 257. | (A) 287. | (A) |
| 18. | (D) 48. | (A) 78. | (A) 108. | (A) 138. | (C) 168. | (D) 198. | (A) 228. | (C) 258. | (C) 288. | (A) |
| 19. | (C) 49. | (C) 79. | (A) 109. | (D) 139. | (B) 169. | (A) 199. | (C) 229. | (D) 259. | (A) 289. | (B) |
| 20. | (B) 50. | (C) 80. | (A) 110. | (B) 140. | (A) 170. | (B) 200. | (C) 230. | (C) 260. | (B) 290. | (C) |
| 21. | (C) 51. | (D) 81. | (B) 111. | (B) 141. | (B) 171. | (B) 201. | (D) 231. | (C) 261. | (C) 291. | (C) |
| 22. | (D) 52. | (A) 82. | (B) 112. | (C) 142. | (D) 172. | (A) 202. | (C) 232. | (C) 262. | (A) 292. | (D) |
| 23. | (C) 53. | (C) 83. | (C) 113. | (B) 143. | (D) 173. | (C) 203. | (C) 233. | (D) 263. | (A) 293. | (D) |
| 24. | (B) 54. | (C) 84. | (C) 114. | (D) 144. | (C) 174. | (B) 204. | (A) 234. | (A) 264. | (B) 294. | (A) |
| 25. | (C) 55. | (D) 85. | (C) 115. | (D) 145. | (C) 175. | (D) 205. | (C) 235. | (C) 265. | (A) 295. | (B) |
| 26. | (B) 56. | (C) 86. | (B) 116. | (A) 146. | (A) 176. | (C) 206. | (C) 236. | (A) 266. | (A) 296. | (A) |
| 27. | (C) 57. | (B) 87. | (D) 117. | (D) 147. | (D) 177. | (A) 207. | (A) 237. | (C) 267. | (C) 297. | (B) |
| 28. | (B) 58. | (C) 88. | (B) 118. | (D) 148. | (B) 178. | (C) 208. | (B) 238. | (D) 268. | (A) 298. | (C) |
| 29. | (A) 59. | (A) 89. | (D) 119. | (B) 149. | (C) 179. | (B) 209. | (D) 239. | (A) 269. | (A) 299. | (B) |
| 30. | (A) 60. | (D) 90. | (A) 120. | (A) 150. | (C) 180. | (D) 210. | (A) 240. | (C) 270. | (A) 300. | (C) |

# Paramount

## Coaching Centre Pvt. Ltd.

### An Introduction

**PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE PVT. LTD. AN ISO 9001:2008 CERTIFIED COMPANY** was established with the sacred objective of imparting quality education to the students of various competitive examinations such as SSC (GL/+2/ML), Delhi police, CDS, Assistant Commandant, Bank (PO/CLERK), B.ED etc at a reasonable rate. The core members of paramount team adopted innovative, meticulous and extremely lucid methods of teaching supplemented by self developed conceptual tricks and techniques. With absolutely no capital in hand, Paramount was started in a small room of just 25 students' capacity with only strong determination, belief in self and hard work. Slowly but steadily the name Paramount spread amongst the students and students from far off places flocked to study at **PARAMOUNT**. Today Paramount has six (6) branches, each equipped with all modern amenities to provide the students a conducive and comfortable environment for distraction free discussion.

**PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE- THE MECCA OF QUALITY EDUCATION** in real sense believes in giving nothing but the best. The teaching faculty includes highly qualified and experienced teachers, who with their simple and lucid methods and conceptual short cut tricks and techniques help the students, solve maximum number of questions in minimum amount of time and hence they not only get selected but also secure topmost positions. Each subject is handled by its expert as we simply denounce the concept of Jack of all trades and master of none. Our students are excelling largely due to the faculty's unique teaching methodology, commitment and dedication. All doubts of students are cleared and concepts are made crystal clear to them in the classroom itself. With separate teachers for every subject, and many experts for every subject, Paramount stands much ahead of all other Institutes. Paramount is today a leading name in the field of education for its innovative teaching methodology, impeccable quality and honesty. With the names of toppers of SSC and thousands of other selections in its kitty, today **PARAMOUNT** is reaching places.

For our constant endeavour in bringing awareness among the students of rural areas and our commitment towards the students, **PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE PVT. LTD.** has been conferred the **BEST COACHING INSTITUTE OF DELHI-NCR AWARD**. Our students constructive feedback and suggestions are our guiding light and **PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE PVT. LTD.** has today become the epitome of quality education.

**PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE** has added another feather to its cap by starting its own publication division in the name of **PARAMOUNT READER PUBLICATION** to meet the pressing demand of the students for various competitive exams.



## Paramount Reader Publication

704, 1st floor, Dr. Mukherjee Nagar, Delhi-110009